nia

Prospect of the Country at the Cape of Good Hope.

A

VOYAGE

TO THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE,

TOWARDS THE

ANTARCTIC POLAR CIRCLE,

AND

ROUND THE WORLD:

BUT CHIEFLY INTO THE

COUNTRY OF THE HOTTENTOTS AND CAFFRES,

FROM THE YEAR 1772, TO 1776.

BY ANDREW SPARRMAN, M.D.

PROFESSOR OF PHYSIC AT STOCKHOLM, FELLOW OF THE ROYAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES IN SWEDEN, AND INSPECTOR OF ITS CABINET OF NATURAL HISTORY.

TRANSLATED FROM THE SWEDISH ORIGINAL.

WITH PLATES.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR G. G. J. AND J. ROBINSON, PATER-NOSTER-ROW.

M DCC LXXXV.

*DT
826
S73rE
1785
v.1-2

PREFACE.

RELATIONS of voyages and travels have at all times, and in all ages, ſince the invention of letters, been favourably received by the public: but, perhaps, in no age ſo well as in the preſent; writings of this kind being bought up with avidity and read with eagerneſs, more eſpecially in this iſland, not only by the learned and polite, but alſo by the rude and illiterate. The reaſon is evident. The age in which we live, has not unfrequently been accuſed of frivolity and indolence. With what juſtice, it is not our buſineſs at preſent to determine. Its turn for experiment, however, and diſpoſition to enquire into facts is univerſally acknowledged: and indeed, may, perhaps, be partly deduced from the principle abovementioned. Now every authentic and well-written book of voyages and travels is, in fact, a treatiſe of experimen-

 tal

2 vols. in 1
gift

tal philoſophy. From theſe ſources natural hiſtory derives its moſt copious ſtreams: and the obſervations which, in compoſitions of this kind, every where occur on winds and ſeaſons, ſoils and climates, in ſhort, on the whole of what may be called *ſtill nature*, are undoubtedly of the greateſt advantage to phyſical ſcience. With reſpect to moral philoſophy and metaphyſics, it may be ſufficient to mention the works of PAUW, RAYNAL, KAIMES, and ROBERTSON, to evince the utility of journals and deſcriptions of voyages in theſe and ſimilar reſearches. It is alſo worthy of obſervation, that it is the modern philoſophers chiefly, and the living inſtructors of our own times, who have moſtly had recourſe to theſe treaſures, as containing the beſt materials for the purpoſe of building their ſyſtems, or at leaſt, as being beſt adapted to the ſupport and confirmation of their doctrines.

Few, indeed, are the travellers, whoſe writings may be relied on as the pure ſources of truth, unadulterated with error, or undiſguiſed by wilful miſrepreſentation. But is the number of writers anſwering to this deſcription greater among thoſe who have collected and reported facts, avowedly for the purpoſe of rendering them ſubſervient to philoſophy? Have not, on the contrary, the major part of theſe collectors greatly diſtorted and miſrepreſented the facts they have laid before the public, in conſequence of a previous attachment to favourite ſyſtems? Doubtleſs they have;

have; and it is therefore in the original writers of itineraries and journals, that the philoſopher looks for genuine truth and real obſervation; as the authors of them for the moſt part have had neither philoſophical abilities, nor any other motive ſufficient to induce them to report theſe facts, otherwiſe than they have preſented themſelves to their notice.

The author of this journal, though a man of much *real* knowledge and genuine learning, diſcovers in every page of his book too little attachment to ſyſtem and hypotheſis, to allow us to ſuppoſe him likely to be guilty of a ſimilar error. Fired with the love of ſcience and of truth, he ſet out for the deſert wilds of Africa, without money, and without friends or ſupport of any kind; and was even obliged to labour for ſome time, before he could acquire wealth enough to enable him to put his favourite ſcheme in execution. In this reſpect, indeed, he may deſerve to be compared to our illuſtrious countryman, the preſent preſident of the Royal Society, whoſe zeal for the promotion of uſeful knowledge induced him, at nearly the ſame age, though at a ſomewhat earlier period, to go on a much more dangerous and extenſive expedition, than that which is the principal ſubject of the following ſheets, and to ſacrifice fortune, eaſe and health, in the cauſe of ſcience.

Indeed, excluſively of the conſiderations above-mentioned, the work itſelf in every page bears evident marks of

that

that paſſionate regard for truth, which firſt inſpired the undertaking. In the deſcriptions of animals he is accurate to a degree; inſomuch that it is to be feared, that ſome of his readers, who are not ſufficiently apprized of their general utility, may think him tedious: but in deſcribing ſcenes and ſituations, whether partaking of the ſublime, the beautiful, or the ridiculous, he is no longer an author, he is a painter: and, quitting his pen for the pencil, ſets every object before us in colours equally vivid with thoſe of nature herſelf. Phyſician, naturaliſt, and philoſopher, neither human manners, nor civil inſtitutions, rural œconomy, nor police, nothing, in fine, eſcapes the keenneſs of his obſervation. Never relying on the relations of others, except when it is impoſſible for him to do otherwiſe, he ſees every thing with his own eyes, and truſts only to the report of his own ſenſes: and at the ſame time knows perfectly well (which is never the caſe with the ignorant traveller) both how to ſee and what to look for. Hence we have ſo many accurate deſcriptions and drawings of animals never before ſeen, or elſe ſtrangely miſrepreſented by his predeceſſors.

In fact, the account given by him of the whole face of the country, may be conſidered, in a great meaſure, as new: though (beſides ſuch navigators as have occaſionally touched at the Cape, from whom, indeed, much information could not poſſibly be expected) ſeveral others, the

chief of whom are KOLBE and DE LA CAILLE, have either reſided in this part of the world for ſeveral years, or made expeditions into the country previouſly to our author. It might appear invidious in us to expatiate on their demerits, or to enquire into the cauſes of their failure in their reſpective undertakings. We will therefore rather confine ourſelves to that which is the ſubject of the following ſheets.

Our author, together with a ſpirit of obſervation not ſeen in every traveller, had, as we are informed by his friend Mr. GEORGE FORSTER, admittance into the houſes of the firſt families at the *Cape*. This advantage he ſeems to have been very ſolicitous to turn to the beſt account; and to it we, perhaps, in a great meaſure, owe the annexed map of the country, which is certainly no ſmall acquiſition to geographical ſcience.—Before he had attained the ſtate of manhood, he had prepared himſelf for an expedition of this nature, by a voyage which he made under his kinſman, the Chevalier EKEBERG; and the *Amœnitates Academicæ*, publiſhed under the inſpection of the great LINNÆUS, exhibited divers proofs that he had not made the voyage in vain. On his return to *Upſal*, he applied to the ſtudy of phyſic; but his attention was principally engroſſed by the ſcience of botany, which he purſued with the greateſt ardour under its celebrated reſtorer, and became one of his favourite diſciples. With an education of this kind,

kind, which, it muſt be owned, was the moſt favourable that could well have been imagined to ſuch a purpoſe, he ſet out for the *Cape*, at a time of life the beſt adapted to an enterprize of this nature, nominally to inſtruct the children of M. KERSTE, the reſident at that place; but in reality, to ſearch for the works of the Creator in a part of the world hitherto hardly known to naturaliſts. How he has ſucceeded, the reader muſt judge for himſelf.—But it was not this obſcure corner of the globe only that he was deſtined to illuſtrate. By the arrival of the RESOLUTION and ADVENTURE at the Cape with Meſſrs. FORSTER, he had an opportunity offered him of extending his reſearches to an infinitely greater diſtance, and all nature now lay open to his view. It was, perhaps, not more to the advancement of natural knowledge than to that of theſe gentlemen's reputations, that chance threw ſo great a zoologiſt as Dr. SPARRMAN in their way at ſo critical a juncture; and it is to be hoped, that we ſhall one day be informed of the extent of our obligations to him on this ſcore. In the mean while, we muſt content ourſelves with the few ſpecimens he has given us in the Swediſh Tranſactions, where he has inſerted, and ſtill continues to inſert, the various diſcoveries he has made on the continent of Africa.

Our author having, in December 1775, during his abſence from his native country, been promoted to the degree of

of doctor of phyſic, was on his return home made a member of the Royal Academy at *Stockholm*, and of ſeveral other learned ſocieties. After the death of the great entomologiſt Baron DE GEER, who had engaged Dr. SPARRMAN to live with him at his houſe, the Baron having bequeathed his magnificent collection of natural curioſities to the Academy, our author was made inſpector of it. He was likewiſe inveſted by the Academy with the nominal dignity of profeſſor: and, on reſigning to his ſucceſſor the charge of preſident of this ſociety, after having held it for the ſpace of three months, pronounced an oration "on the augmentation and advantages which ſcience in general, and more particularly that of natural hiſtory, have acquired, and are farther likely to acquire, from exploring the Pacific Ocean." Publiſhed at Stockholm in 1778.

To this ſhort account of the author it may be neceſſary to add, that we have taken the liberty of reforming the orthography of moſt of the places mentioned in the courſe of the work, both with reſpect to the map and to the work itſelf: the author, whoſe purſuit was things and not words, having been careleſs in his language, and more eſpecially in his nomenclature, to a high degree: as likewiſe that we have adopted the diviſions into chapters and ſections made by the editor of the German tranſlation, as rendering the following ſheets more intelligible,

and greatly relieving the attention of the reader. Having mentioned this, we will no longer treſpaſs on the reader's time and patience, but leave this work, which, to uſe the words of Mr. GEORGE FORSTER, the author's friend and German editor, is *adapted to every claſs of readers*, in the hands of its beſt judge and protector, the Public.

INTRO-

INTRODUCTION.

IN the month of September I had occaſion to think of making a voyage to the ſouthernmoſt promontory of Africa. What gave riſe to this deſign, was the following circumſtance.

The ingenious Captain EKEBERG, who never neglects any opportunity of promoting the intereſts of ſcience, had, during a ſhort viſit he had made to the Cape of Good Hope, made it his buſineſs to obtain permiſſion to ſend thither a natural hiſtorian.

But in order that this perſon, in the courſe of his reſearches after plants, inſects, and other objects of his inquiry, might not run the riſque of being conſidered as a ſpy on the country and its government, and at the ſame time that he might compaſs his intentions with as little expence as poſſible, it was agreed that he ſhould inſtruct

the reſident's children in *False-bay* in geography, French, and mathematics.

M. EKEBERG was no ſtranger to the turn I had for natural hiſtory, having been acquainted with it in the courſe of a voyage to Canton in China, which I had the happineſs to make under his command, in the years 1765 and 1766. He therefore had me in view when he thought on this voyage to the Cape.

I accepted his offer with the greateſt pleaſure, as I had long wiſhed for an opportunity of ſeeing diſtant parts of the world. Still, however, it depended entirely on the ſpecial favour of the directors of the Royal Swediſh Eaſt-India Company, whether I could be allowed a paſſage in ſome veſſel bound for the *Cape* and *Canton*.

M. EKEBERG, therefore, mentioned my intended voyage to the board, as likely to be of ſervice to ſcience. From the conſideration of ſo ſpecious an object, I was flattered by theſe gentlemen with the greateſt hopes of ſucceſs in my application, till ſuch time as, agreeably to their ſtatutes, a written petition ſhould be preſented to them on this ſubject.

The late Archiater LINNÆUS, as zealous for the advancement of his favourite ſcience as he was deeply ſkilled in it, heard of this with peculiar pleaſure; and, in his own name, drew up a petition for the voyage to be made.

The

The directors * well knowing, that a well-regulated commerce as well as navigation in general, has its foundation in ſcience, and at the ſame time receives light from it, while this, in return, derives ſupport from, and owes its extenſion to the two former, not only conſented to what I requeſted, but likewiſe, in their great kindneſs, went beyond my deſires.

Accordingly they ordered, that I ſhould have my paſſage gratis from Gottenburg to the Cape, together with every convenience, in one of their ſhips, called the *Caſtle of Stockholm*, which, it was expected, would be ready to ſail on the Chriſtmas following. The laſt-mentioned place was pitched upon, for the firſt ſtation to be reſorted to for the purpoſe of taking in refreſhments in our way to China.

Before I begin the journal of my travels, I muſt aſſure every gentleman of a hearty welcome, who intends doing me the honour to accompany me in them by means of this paper-conveyance, provided he will deign to be pleaſed with his entertainment.

* Baron Fabian Loeven.
Meſſieurs Peter Theodore Koenig.
——— Martin Holterman.
——— David of Sandeberg.
——— John Abraham Grill.
——— John Malm Ericsson.
——— Charles Godfrey Kysel.

A man

A man who travels to a great diſtance from home, can never meet with the objects of his reſearches in the order and arrangement that he himſelf would wiſh for: how then ſhould he be able to diſpoſe and arrange his travels upon paper, agreeably to every one's peculiar taſte and liking? With reſpect to my ſtyle, which, in conſequence of my being unuſed to compoſition, is ſometimes ſo unequal, as well as unhappy in point of expreſſion, that I have frequently been diſpleaſed with it myſelf, I have need, more than moſt authors, to beg for the reader's kind indulgence. In fact, all my writing for theſe many years paſt, has conſiſted chiefly in ſhort notes and memorandums, expreſſed ſometimes in one language and ſometimes in another, (juſt as my occupations and the part of the world I was in gave occaſion to) and ſometimes in many languages blended together in one. From this medley I have now tranſlated and expreſſed in a more diffuſe ſtyle, and in my native language, what I had formerly ſet down, in the manner above-mentioned, by way of memorandum only. And though I do this with pleaſure, conceiving it to be a duty I owe to my curious and inquiſitive countrymen, yet the performance of this taſk is by no means unattended with anxiety; inaſmuch as on account of the want of practice for many years, proceeding from my attention to affairs of greater importance, I do not find myſelf

ſelf able to come up to the reader's wiſhes in this particular.

Nevertheleſs, though I can pledge myſelf for the principal article requiſite in all compoſitions of this kind, viz. for the truth of the occurrences here related, it will be of no avail, if at the ſame time, I cannot avoid being conſidered as being rather unſucceſsful in the choice of my materials, in the variety and uncommonneſs of them, and laſtly, in the ſtyle and manner in which they are preſented to the public. Indeed, it has been given me to underſtand, that from one, whom a reſtleſs inquiſitive diſpoſition has enticed from his native country, to follow the calls of deſtiny all round the globe, and more particularly through the land of the Hottentots and the wild and deſert regions of Africa, from ſuch a man accounts are expected of a moſt entertaining and wonderful import. Nor is this expectation abſolutely ill-founded. Nature has preſented herſelf to me in various ſhapes, always worthy of admiration, often enchanting, and ſometimes terrible, and clothed with horror. But at the ſame time I muſt appriſe the reader, that a great many prodigies and uncommon appearances, about which I have frequently been aſked by many, who have been brought to entertain theſe conceits by peruſing the deſcriptions of others, are not to be found in my journal. Men with one foot, indeed, Cyclops, Syrens, Troglodytes, and ſuch like imaginary beings, have almoſt entirely diſappeared

peared in this enlightened age. At the ſame time, however, many have been hitherto induced to give credit to tales almoſt as marvellous, with which authors, who have before me viſited and deſcribed the Hottentots, have ſeaſoned their relations, in order to make them go down the better with the public. So that the reader muſt not be ſurprized to find my accounts frequently differ much from thoſe of various of my predeceſſors; and at the ſame time, I ſhall now and then be obliged to take up my own and his time with ſome very narrow limitations of what they have advanced. Otherwiſe, in fact, the public would have reaſon to doubt of my own veracity.

I muſt here likewiſe previouſly inform the reader, that I do not undertake to give a full and complete hiſtory of the Cape of Good Hope, but merely ſuch relations concerning every thing remarkable, as I have either been able to collect, or have myſelf obſerved with reſpect to this part of the world. A deficiency of this kind may, perhaps, even in matters of importance, meet with a ready excuſe from many of my readers, when it is conſidered, that without being either rich myſelf, or in the leaſt ſupported by others, I undertook an expedition, which, when conſidered with reſpect to theſe circumſtances, will appear to be of no ſmall extent. The whole of the ſum that I took out with me to bear my travelling expences was about twenty-five rix-dollars, and what, by dint of œconomy, I had made my-

ſelf maſter of by the time I got home, was ſomewhat more than double that ſum.

Thus ſo far was I from being able to purchaſe collections, or to obtain at my eaſe, or by dint of money, opportunities of enlarging the ſphere of my knowledge, that I even could not poſſibly arrive at them without great trouble and danger. In this caſe, I have been obliged to content myſelf with what fortune has thrown in my way, as I may ſay, gratis.

The arranging by way of journal the occurrences and events which I have deſcribed, though in certain reſpects it be not the beſt method, is yet in general, the moſt natural. In order to acquire an adequate idea of a variety of objects out of the great number of thoſe that have preſented themſelves, it conduces not a little to know on what days they were ſeen. In fact, the time, the manner, and the order, in which things occur, are accidental circumſtances from which much light may be derived. But the greateſt advantage accruing from this method is, that hereby it becomes eaſier both for the writer and reader to diſtinguiſh, what is the actual reſult of the author's own experience, from what he has, in defect of this, been obliged to advance on the ſtrength of the information given him by others.

At the ſame time, in order to come to a more ſpeedy and pleaſing concluſion of the travels themſelves, certain deſcriptions, critical ſtrictures, and reflections are deferred

at preſent, which will be inſerted at the end of the ſecond volume *, partly in the form of notes to this, and partly conſtituting diſtinct heads by themſelves. Above two thouſand of the productions of nature hitherto unknown, which, in conſequence of a moderate degree of attention only, I have diſcovered in Africa, (a country in many reſpects very different from the reſt of the globe) but have not been able as yet fully to arrange and put in order, cannot have place here, either deſcribed at full length, or in the more compreſſed form of ſketches and definitions.

* This ſecond volume, if it ſhould ever appear, muſt evidently be conſidered as a work of a very different nature from the preſent: the tranſlator, therefore, did not think himſelf bound to take any notice of it in the title-page.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

Occaſion and deſign of the voyage. Some general reflections and ſtrictures on writers of travels and voyages.

CHAP. I.

VOYAGE FROM GOTENBURGH TO THE CAPE.

Departure from Gottenburgh in Sweden. Deſcription of a violent ſtorm. Diſtreſſed ſituation of a Dutch veſſel. Lights in the ſea. A diſſertation on their nature and their different ſpecies. Arrival at the Cape, p. 6.

CHAP. II.

RESIDENCE AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE TILL THE AUTHOR'S VOYAGE TO THE SOUTH SEA.

SECT. I.

Reſidence at Cape Town.

Deſcription of the Cape Town and the adjacent country. The author waits on the governor and commandant. Sketch of the character and hiſtory of Baron Van PREHM, p. 13.

SECT. II.

Reſidence at Bay Falſo.

Goes to Bay Falſo to wait on the reſident, whoſe children he is to educate. Is entertained on the road at night by a rich boor, with gritty bread, and meat preſerved with pepper. Peculiar courteſy of the French nation contraſted with the manners of the Dutch at this colony. Meets with his old chum, Dr. Thunberg, at Cape Town. Deſcription of Falſe Bay and the adjacent country. Dutch politeneſs at table. Story of an Engliſh lady going to be married in the Eaſt-Indies. Seal-ſhooting. The torpedo. Deſcription of various fiſhes, inſects, and plants, p. 29.

SECT. III.

Reſidence at Älphen, near Conſtantia, till the author's trip to Paarl.

Removes to Conſtantia with the reſident. The plants there. The vine-yard. The ſilver-tree. Uncommon diſpoſition of Table-mountain, with reſpect to rain. Beautiful proſpect from the ſouth-ſide of it. Adventures in conſequence of loſing his way at night. Diſſertation on the Conſtantia and Cape wines. Hout-bay deſcribed. The palmites plant. Divers kinds of ſmall antilopes. Several ſorts of viverræ, or weaſels. The method of catching them, and their uſes. A young hippopotamus. The eſteem in which botany is held at the Cape, exemplified in the behaviour of a Cape phyſician, p. 50.

SECT. IV.

Trip to Paarl.

Letter to a brother ſailor, deſcribing a ſix-weeks excurſion made on foot in October. Hires a baſtard, a man of family, for his guide. Racks, wheels, and gibbets, expoſed in the public roads. New ſpecies of cicindela. Is taken up by a waggon drawn by twelve oxen, but ſoon quits it. Concert of jackalls, frogs and owls. Is lodged and entertained by a ſlave. Battle between the houſe-ſlave and the cow-herd. The ſorts of ſeed ſown in this colony. Curious method of ſerving at the ſame time God and mammon. Salutation of a boor. The author very

very ungallantly neglects to requite the services of a female slave. A slave's revenge on his niggardly master. At a rich widow's house is in danger of being kicked out of doors, on his hat being discovered with the brim stuck full of insects. Floats naked over the river to an islet on a bundle of palmites plants, in order to botanize there. Behaviour of a surly but hospitable miller. Makes a sexton and his wife happy, by prognosticating the death of the latter. Is hospitably received by a learned boor. The tower of Babel. Drunken soldiers. Obliged, together with his host, to bolt his chamber-door, for fear of being murdered by the slaves. A curious love-scale. Prices of slaves and cattle. Bad consequences of the slave-trade. His guide has not the least idea of a deity. Conclusion of the letter, p. 77.

SECT. V.

Residence at Alphen, after the author's return from Paarl.

Observations on the uniola and pisang, p. 79.

CHAP. III.

VOYAGE TO THE SOUTH SEA.

SECT. I.

The circumstances which gave occasion to this Voyage.

Goes round the world with Capt. Cook, as an assistant to Messrs. Forster. The occasion of his undertaking this voyage, p. 84.

SECT. II.

Voyage from the Cape of Good Hope to New-Zealand.

Continuation of the journal of the voyage, p. 87.

SECT.

SECT. III.

First Voyage from New Zealand to Otaheite, and from thence back again to New Zealand.

Some events not related by Cook and Forſter, p. 91.

SECT. IV.

Second Voyage from New Zealand to Otaheite, and from thence back again.

Journal continued, p. 97.

SECT. V.

Voyage from New Zealand to Terra del Fuego, and from thence farther on towards the South Pole.

Journal continued, p. 99.

SECT. VI.

Return to the Cape of Good Hope.

Return to the Cape. Ship's proviſions utterly ſpoiled, p. 104.

CHAP. IV.

JOURNEY FROM CAPE TOWN TO THE COUNTRY OF THE CAFFRES.

SECT. I.

Reſidence at Cape Town, previous to the author's African Expedition.

Dangerous ſituation of a veſſel in Table-bay. A ſhipwreck. Lives of the crew ſaved by an old ſoldier on horſeback. Cruelty and ingratitude of

of the government at the Cape. Humane inſtitution of the Chineſe in theſe caſes. Regiſter of the weather at the Cape, for May, June, and July, 1775, p. 113.

SECT. II.

Preparations for the African Expedition.

Undertakes an expedition into the interior parts of the country. Equipment for that purpoſe. Buys a waggon with twelve oxen. Is accompanied by Mr. Immelman, the ſon of an officer at the Cape, p. 119.

SECT. III.

Journey from the Cape to the Warm Bath.

Bad accommodations on the road. Manner of travelling in the African waggons. Deſcription of Guſtavus's ſceptre, a plant. No bridges in Africa. Account of the manner in which they paſs the rivers with waggons in this country. Deſcription of the landſcape about Bot-river. Wretched wine at Agter de Berg. Sees various ſorts of gazels in his way to the warm bath; and likewiſe whole troops of zebras. Oſtrich-hunting. Method of reckoning the length of journies here; and of harneſſing the oxen, p. 135.

SECT. IV.

Reſidence at the Warm Bath.

Hottentot-Holland's warm baths deſcribed. The bathing-houſes and wells. Chemical analyſis of the waters. Cures performed by means of them. Diſſertation on their origin. Remains of a volcano. Onkjes, vernal flowers of the iris kind; their uſes in food, and in reckoning time. Shoots a wild cat in a tree. The different ſorts of them in this country enumerated and examined. Deſcription of a porcupine-hunt. Cape partridges and pheaſants, the korr-hen, and ſecretaries-bird, otherwiſe called the ſerpent-eater, deſcribed. Uſes of this latter, and its manner of attacking ſerpents. The author frequently viſits a patient in theſe parts, and is paid in milk and proviſions. Wild dogs very dangerous animals. Their manners. Hunt in packs, and ſometimes

turn, when hunted, and hunt their purſuers. Tiger-wolf, or hyæna, eats up the carcaſes and bones of animals which are left untouched by other wild beaſts, and would otherwiſe contaminate the atmoſphere. Its cowardly but artful manner of attacking other animals. By imitating the cries of other creatures, it decoys them away from the reſt of the herd, with a view to devour them. Is the moſt voracious as well as watchful of all animals. Betrays its approach by an involuntary barking, proceeding from an empty and conſtantly craving ſtomach. At night is ſuffered to enter the town at the Cape, being of great uſe in clearing the ſhambles. Adventure of a drunken trumpeter with a hyæna. This ſpecies never before accurately deſcribed. Eats up one of the traces belonging to the author's waggon. Pretended change of its ſex accounted for; as likewiſe the ſtories of its imitating the human voice, and enchanting the ſhepherds, ſo that they cannot ſtir from the ſpot where they are. Seldom caught, and hardly ever ſhot. Uſe of this creature's long ſhaggy coat, p. 171.

CHAP. V.

Journey from the Warm Bath to Zwellendam.

The driver has not the leaſt knowledge of the road. Not being able to get a Hottentot any where to lead their oxen, make a virtue of neceſſity, and turn ox-leaders themſelves. Procures a Hottentot to drive his waggon, who gets at the brandy the author had taken with him, for the purpoſe of preſerving animals in, and treats his companions with it. The author and his friend in danger of being murdered by theſe fellows in their liquor. The author puts a live ſerpent into the liquor. Hottentots uſed to ſwallow the poiſon of ſerpents, conſidering it as a preſervative againſt the bite of theſe animals. Is cheated in the bargain he made for his oxen. One of them runs home. The farm and foreſt at Tiger-hoek deſcribed. Deſcription of the perſons, clothing, ornaments, and arms of the Hottentots. Beſmeared with greaſe and ſoot, which alters their natural complexion. This ill deſcribed by authors. The males have no defect in the organs of generation, nor have the females any ſuperfluity in thoſe parts: what appears there being not natural but artificial. Hottentots perfume themſelves with the powder of a plant called bucku. Do not wear the inteſtines of animals, but a number of leathern rings about their arms and legs. Their field ſhoes. Method of making them particularly deſcribed. Their craals or villages and huts. Their manners and diſpoſition. Boſhies-men, or wild Hottentots.

Their

Their maxims and weapons. Live in deſerts on berries, caterpillars, and other inſects. Their amazing voracity. Are ſmall and ſlender, but, after being caught, are fattened in the ſpace of a few weeks. The coloniſts hunt them like wild beaſts; and frequently make parties for the purpoſe of catching and enſlaving them. Very much given to run away, but never carry any thing off with them. Almoſt always in a ſtarving ſtate, and numbers of them periſh for want. Neither they nor the Hottentots have any conception, neither can any be infuſed into them, of a God. Conſider rain at all times as an evil. Bully the thunder. Have great faith in ſorcery. The ſorcerers are their phyſicians, and cure them of their diſeaſes by thraſhing them. Inſtances of various cheats put on them by their ſorcerers. Though ſuperſtitious, are not afraid of darkneſs: yet ſeem to have ſome notion of ſpirits and a future life. Reſpect, but do not worſhip inſects of the mantis kind. Do not worſhip the moon. Kolbe's miſtakes with reſpect to this point corrected. Chriſtianity taught at Tygerhoek by a Moravian, who was accuſed of ſiniſter practices. No remains of religion here at preſent. Two Hottentot girls pay them a viſit. Their odd behaviour. The author endeavours in vain to hire a driver for the expedition. At laſt a lad agrees to go as far as Zwellendam with them. Sloth and idleneſs of the Hottentots. Hard fate and ſenſible reflections of a ſlave. Regiſter of the weather for Auguſt. Heſſaquas kloof. A ſingular diſorder among the horſes. The Landroſt of Zwellendam offers him a better team of oxen. State of the weather at that place. Zebras and quaggas, both ſpecies of the wild horſe. The former do not fear the hyæna, but guard the other cattle from its attacks. Both ſorts eat leſs, and are more hardy than the common horſe, and might be uſed for drawing. Misfortune of a man who harneſſed ſome quaggas to his carriage, before they were properly tamed. Riet valley. Language of the Hottentots, compared with that of the Sneſe Hottentots. Their muſical inſtruments and tobacco-pipes. Curious method of ſmoking. Their card-playing, improperly ſo called by the coloniſts, p. 231.

CHAP. VI.

Journey from Zwellendam to Muscle-Bay.

Black-monkies. Groot Vaders-boſch. Stop a bit, a plant growing there. Loſe their way at night. Saddle-oxen. Viſit a Hottentot craal, and are entertained with milk curdled by being kept in the ſkins of animals.

Sweet milk unwholeſome. The Hottentot Captain Rundganger. Captain an empty title. Captains ſpies on their countrymen. Hottentots oppreſſed by the Dutch, and obliged to ſhift their quarters continually more inland. Thorn- or gum-arabic tree. Large dairy-farms. River of butter-milk. Diſtinction between the carrow, ſour, and ſweet fields. The firſt rendered fertile by aqueducts. Cows that gnaw each other's horns. Hottentots continually ſhifting their quarters, from ſuperſtitious motives: a practice which prevents the degeneration both of their lands and cattle. Coloniſts faulty in this reſpect. Rhinoceros-buſh. Overflowing of Gauritz-river. Hoar froſt of ſalt. Deſcription of Muſcle-bay. Houtniquas-land. Algoa-bay. Hints for the advancement of trade and the improvement of the colony, p. 260.

CHAP. VII.

Journey through the Houtniquas.

Animals to be found in Houtniquas. Deſcription of the boſch-bock. Hadelde-bird. Regiſter of the weather. Almoſt a whole province intoxicated with a hogſhead of brandy. Deſcription of a Hottentot miſtreſs. Baſtards not chriſtened. Stratagem of a burgher at Batavia to get his child baptized. Style of building in this province. The author's Hottentots run away on being corrected for drunkenneſs. State of the weather in September, p. 291.

CHAP. VIII.

Journey through Lange Dal.

Departure from Houtniquas. Loſe their way on horſeback. Paſs the night out of doors, expoſed to a violent rain. Artaquas-kloof. Infeſted with a herb called p— graſs, which kills the cattle with the ſtrangury. Obliged to live abroad in the air, the walls and every part of the houſe being covered by flies. Curious method of killing them. Canna's land. Miſtake of Mr. Maſon with reſpect to it in the Philoſophical Tranſactions. The Canna ſhrub, a new ſpecies of ſalſola, deſcribed. Method of fertilizing the moſt dry barren country. New method

method of dreſſing partridges. Immoderately fat ſheep, with tails weighing above twelve pounds. The author bleeds a Hottentot lad. An inſtance of Dutch compaſſion. Hottentot women's lamentation over the dead. The boy comes to life again. African otters and fiſh. Taken in by a farmer's wife in a bargain about a pair of oxen. Strange caſe of a prolapſus uteri. Loſe their way again. Unkind behaviour of ſome Hottentots. His horſe ſinks with him into the mire. Princely ſhepherds. Miſerable condition of Hottentot fugitives. Stone-heaps. Pitfalls for the larger kind of game. Mountain Hottentots. Flight of a Hottentot child. Coal-black lizard. The daſs, an animal of the cavia genus. Daſſen-piſs taken for petrolæum. Seems to be the menſtrual evacuation of this animal, p. 310.

CHAP. IX.

JOURNEY FROM LANGE DAL TO SITSICAMMA, AND FROM THENCE TO SEA-COW RIVER.

Kromme-rivier. Eſchen-boſch. The pneumora, an inſect ſuppoſed to live on the wind. They come to a perſon when called. Boſhies-men carouſing on elephants fleſh. Deſcription and admeaſurement of the remains of the carcaſe. How this animal was ſhot by two farmers. The beſt methods of ſhooting theſe beaſts diſcuſſed. One man will attack a whole herd of elephants. Ceaſe to fly when wounded. Elephant's way of ſwimming. Hiſtories of ſome dangerous rencounters with them. De la Caille's ſtrange anecdote a mere impoſition. Do not copulate like human creatures. Never ſeen in the act of copulation, excepting once, by two of the author's acquaintance. Elephant's diet. Expence of keeping them. Hiſtory and uſe. Negroes buy and ſell the tails at a vaſt price from ſuperſtitious motives. Tails deſcribed. Foſſil elephant's teeth. Mammouth's bones found in Siberia are nothing but the bones of elephants. The theories of Buffon and others overturned. Lemning-mouſe, and other migrating animals, adduced as proofs of the author's aſſertions. Divers inſtances of the ſagacity of elephants. Wreck of the Doddington Eaſt-Indiaman on this coaſt. Survivors robbed by the Hottentots. A Dutch captain ſent from the Cape to look after the cargo, comes back purpoſely without doing any thing. Bilious fever prevails among the Hottentots.

Strange

Strange method of cure uſed by the author. Hottentot-ball. The bee. Monkey-dance. Polygamy of the Hottentots. Pitiful caſe of an old polygamiſt. Marriage ceremony performed among the Hottentots by ſprinkling the bride and bride-groom with urine. Manner of burying their dead. Bury alive or expoſe ſuch children as have loſt their mothers. Starve their old people to death. Extenuation of their crime. Preparations for the expedition through the deſert. White ants eaten by the Hottentots. Miſchief done by them. Hottentots imagine the ſwarms of locuſts with which the country is ſometimes over-run, to be ſent to them for food. Locuſt ſoup. Locuſts of uſe in clearing the lands, p. 368.

ERRATA.

Page 1, *line* 1, *for* A Voyage from Gottenburgh, &c. *read* Voyage from Gottenburgh to the CAPE.
—— 18, *l.* 7, *for* quaae, *read* quaade.
—— 40, *l.* 6 and 7, *for* ſiggar, *read* liggar.
—— 64, *l.* 13, before the 'ſquire's half brother, *read* of.
—— 179, *l.* 3, *for* Tigerhoek, *read* Tygerhoek.
—— 236, *l.* 15, *for* wait, *read* ſtop.
—— 283, *l.* 16, ſhould be read thus: and was beſides as well beſmeared with ſoot and greaſe.

A VOYAGE

A

VOYAGE

TO THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

CHAP. I.

A VOYAGE FROM GOTTENBURGH, &c.

ON the 10th day of January, in the year 1772, I sailed from Gottenburgh in the *Castle of Stockholm*; a ship belonging to the Swedish East-India Company. The wind was favourable, so that we soon dismissed our pilots, and even in a short time lost sight of the delightful pastures of Sweden. We found the weather, as it usually is at this cold season, something milder in the open sea, than it was upon the coast. The Swedish East-Indiaman, the Louisa, destined for Cadiz, to take in refreshments there, with money

1772. January.

1772. January. for both ſhips, kept us company till we paſſed the north of Scotland. The ſtormy weather however, uſual in theſe parts, and at this time of the year, made us ſeparate before we intended it. The wind blowing ſtill ſtronger likewiſe, carried away our main-top-ſail, though it was quite new, and made of a ſtrong cloth. The damages were reckoned to amount to ſeveral hundred rix-dollars.

This ravage and deſtruction afforded in itſelf nevertheleſs a fine ſpectacle, which to me was entirely new. Sudden guſts of rain now combined with the night to ſhrowd every thing in darkneſs. Let the reader repreſent to himſelf for a moment the foaming billows on all ſides ſurrounding the ſhip, and ſwelling up ſometimes even to our yard-arms; while the long ſhivers of the top-ſail got looſe, and being white, were diſtinctly diſcerned waving to and fro in a moſt alarming manner, and at length totally vaniſhed through the darkened air. At the ſame time the violence of the wind cauſed thoſe parts of the ſails which yet remained on the maſt, together with the ends of the broken cordage, to beat about, and craſh with ſuch force as for a time to drown every other noiſe.

This ſpectacle did not make the leſs impreſſion, when by degrees we could better diſtinguiſh the roaring of the ſea, the ſwell of the waves, the bluſtering of the wind, and the crackling noiſe made by the maſts and the joints of the planks; particularly when to this we add, that the captain was continually roaring out, and was anſwered in the ſame ſtrain by the men at the helm, *ſtar-board and port*, as the ſtem of the ſhip heaved to right or left; not

not to mention the uſual noiſe and buſtle from all quarters of the deck, the ſailors and tackling being in conſtant agitation and motion. 1772. February.

On the 2d day of February in the afternoon, when we had got to 34 deg. 22 min. N. lat. 1 deg. 32 min. eaſt of the meridian of Paris, a ſhip at a diſtance fired ſeveral guns, thereby giving us to underſtand that ſhe was in diſtreſs, and deſirous to ſpeak with us. We accordingly waited for her coming up, and found her to be a Dutch Eaſt-Indiaman, called the Duivenbrock, bound homewards, and commanded by Capt. CONRAD LOUE. They had loſt their rudder, and in conſequence of the great ſwell of the ſea, had not been able to laſh on another; on which account likewiſe the ſhip had got ſo far out of her courſe. The crew were emaciated to a great degree, and in want both of water and proviſions. Our commander made them a preſent of as much of both as their long-boats were able to carry; but at length, the night coming on, and the wind blowing up freſher, they were deprived of that farther degree of aſſiſtance, that every one of us very much wiſhed to give them. Even our common ſailors not only ſhewed great compaſſion on their parts, but aſſiſted them effectually out of their own ſtock with tobacco, and other refreſhments.

On the 12th day of February, juſt under the tropic, or 24. 51. N. Lat. we ſaw a ſea animal ſeven or eight feet long, known to ſea-faring men by the name of the *ſea devil*. It is reported by writers of voyages, to be very dangerous to the people engaged in the pearl-fiſhery. In a voyage to China I formerly made, I happened to ſee one

1772. February. of theſe animals, and on examining it, concluded it to be a ſpecies of RAY.

On the 21ſt day of February at ſix in the evening, 3 deg. 24. min. N. of the equator, we obſerved a beautiful meteor. It was like a red hot cannon-ball, which waved to and fro with a gentle whizzing noiſe, directly over our veſſel, and between the maſt-tops; but notwithſtanding what the ſailors prognoſticated from it, it did not ſeem to bring with it any change of weather.

On the 4th day of March we paſſed the line, when a number of idle ceremonies were performed according to cuſtom.

On the 5th, at about 37 deg. S. lat. and 21 deg. weſt of Paris, beſide the uſual lights that frequently appear ſparkling, as it were, on the ſurface of the ſea, there was ſeen in the night a ſtrong gleam of light, called by the ſailors *maarſken*, or ſea-ſhine. It appeared chiefly in a round form of three feet diameter, and was like a glowing light throughout its whole extent. As the ſhape of it was ſometimes changed to an oblong, it was conjectured, from this circumſtance, to be occaſioned by the daſhing of the ſea. With luminous bodies of this kind the whole extent of the ocean was now adorned, ſometimes at the diſtance of ſeveral times the length of the ſhip from each other, and ſometimes only a few feet aſunder. We were not fortunate enough to examine them nearer.

The wind at times blew freſh, being ſometimes accompanied with heavy ſhowers of rain. The next day there was nothing uncommon to be obſerved on the ſurface of the

the ſea, that might be conſidered as the cauſe of this luminous appearance. A night or two before this, we had already begun to perceive ſome of theſe lights. The weather at that time was only overcaſt. Some of the moſt experienced among the ſailors informed me, that theſe lights were met with particularly in the north ſeas, as well as in the creeks on the coaſt of Mexico; and that from theſe appearances they uſed to prognoſticate a ſpeedy change in the weather. The lights that are uſually ſeen in the ſea are ſuppoſed to proceed partly from the conſtituent parts of the ſea itſelf, and partly from the fiſh and other kinds of infinitely ſmall animals which have their abode there. But with reſpect to the *maarſken*, I have not found any navigators ſpeak of them. Are they not occaſioned by ſome ſlimy or gelatinous animals (ſuch as the *molluſca*), which only of nights, at certain places, and in conſequence of certain changes of the atmoſphere, riſe to the ſurface of the ſea? The ſame riſing and ſinking motion, which I now obſerved in theſe animals, I remember to have perceived in the *Meduſæ*, particularly in the year 1775, in the bays about the Cape of Good Hope, after my return from my voyage round the world. At that time it had been ſtormy the whole preceding night, with a great part of the following morning; when, to my great amazement, after ſo long a voyage, I now, for the firſt time, ſaw theſe ſea-animals in ſuch quantities, as to form a thick maſs of ſeveral fathoms depth, as if they had been preſſed down together. Where they were collected into a thinner maſs, one might diſcern that one part of them was blue, another of a flame-colour, and another again of a lighter hue.

1772. March.

1772. March. hue. They were moſtly of the form of a necklace (*moniliformes*,) and at that time were probably driven together in ſo great numbers by the ſtorm; ſo that the great quantities of *maarſken*, ſerve to give a ſtill greater degree of credit to my conjecture. A ſmall corner only of the ſea, viz. *Table-bay*, at this time afforded nouriſhment to more animals at once, than perhaps are to be found on the whole face of the earth. This opened to me a door, if I may be allowed the expreſſion, to nature's copious ſtorehouſe in the deep; ſo that at one haſty view I could get a glimpſe of that amazing ſuperfluity, which feeds millions of fiſhes, and at the ſame time lines the inſide of the whale, that great Coloſſus of the deep, with that oily fatneſs, with which it abounds.

It may from hence be readily concluded, that it was theſe inſects that the fat ſea-lions and ſeals, diving and amphibious fowls, many kinds of albatroſſes, (*diomedeæ*) *procellariæ*, together with ſea-gulls of all ſorts, were in queſt of, when I ſaw theſe latter ſo aſſiduouſly hunting about near the Cape, and in the South Sea.

On the 12th of April we got ſight of the Cape, and came the ſame day to anchor in Table-bay.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

RESIDENCE AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE TILL THE AUTHOR'S VOYAGE TO THE SOUTH SEA.

SECT. I.

Reſidence at Cape Town.

THE Cape is uſually mentioned in too high terms by ſea-faring men; particularly by ſuch as have been there only for a ſhort time. The reaſon probably is, that people, who are weary of a long and tedious voyage of ſeveral months duration, are uſually enchanted with the firſt ſpot of earth they ſet foot upon, of which they afterwards make their reports according to the impreſſion it firſt made upon them. This is ſo much more likely to happen with reſpect to the Cape, as ſea-faring men are ſeldom uſed to ſtay there long enough to be weary of it. On the contrary, however, it is not unuſual for ſailors to pine and grow unhappy even here, after being ſome months on ſhore, and to long to go to ſea again. I have been informed by

1772. March.

1772. March. by Captain COOK, that he, as well as Sir JOSEPH BANKS and Dr. SOLANDER, prejudiced by the relations of others, conſidered the Cape, the firſt time they ſaw it, as the moſt delightful and fertile place in the world. So that even the barren heaths to the north of the town, were at the ſame time very innocently miſtaken for fine fields of corn.

For my part, not to lead my readers into any error concerning this point, the account I here give of the Cape has not been written without ſome conſideration. I muſt, notwithſtanding, previouſly remind them, that a view of the map inſerted at the end of the book, will give the beſt and cleareſt idea of the poſition of the harbours and creeks of this part of the world, as well as of the names and ſituation of the different mountains. By this means the following deſcription will be the more eaſily underſtood.

The town itſelf is the only one in the whole colony, and is properly called the *Cape*, though this name is often injudiciouſly given to the whole ſettlement. The above-mentioned town is ſituated between the ſhore and the north ſide of the mountain, which, in conſideration of its apparent equality of ſurface, has obtained the name of the *Table*. According to the meaſurement of the Abbé de la Cailles, the ſhore of this bay is 550 toiſes above the ſurface of the ſea, and 1344 toiſes in length, when taken from Eaſt to Weſt; the middlemoſt part of it being ſituated South-eaſt of the town, and 2000 toiſes from it.

Duyvel's-Kop, (the *Devil's-Head*,) called by the Engliſh *Charles Mountain*, is in a great meaſure connected with the *Table Mountain*, but is full 31 toiſes lower,

and at the ſame time is peaked and bare. *Leeuwen-Kop*, called by the Engliſh the *Lion's-Head*, and likewiſe the *Sugar-Loaf*, is a hill more ſeparated, but leſs elevated, than the former: the ſame may be ſaid of its neighbour, the *Leeuwen-Staart*, called by the Engliſh the *Lion's-Rump*, and likewiſe the *Lion's-Tail*. 1772. March.

From one of theſe ſignals are given, by the firing of guns for every veſſel that comes that way, and appears bound for the harbour. When they approach ſtill nearer, a flag is hoiſted on this mountain, which ſerves for a ſignal to the captains of the Dutch ſhips; but nobody but they and the governor of the Cape know, how the colour of the flag is to be varied for each reſpective month. The intention of this regulation is, that a Dutchman who is coming into the harbour, may immediately know, if the harbour is fallen into the hands of the enemy, and accordingly take care not to run into it.

The above-mentioned hills are in a great meaſure bare, and that part of Table Mountain that looks towards the town is pretty ſteep. The buſhes and trees (if they may be ſo called) which here and there grow wild, are ſtunted partly by their own nature, and partly by the South-eaſt and North-weſt winds. Hence they, moſt of them, look dried up, with pale blighted leaves, and, upon the whole, have a miſerable appearance. Some of them, ſheltered by the cliffs, and at the ſame time watered by the rills that run down the ſides of the mountain, may perhaps be ſomewhat more healthy and vigorous; but they are univerſally deficient in that lively verdure which adorns the oaks, vines, myrtles, laurels, lemon-trees, &c. planted at the

1772. March. bottom near the town. Still farther on, the dry heathy lands and ſandy plains on the ſtrand, contribute to give the country an arid and barren look. It muſt be owned, indeed, that a conſiderable quantity of the moſt beautiful African flowers are ſcattered up and down in different parts during the fine ſeaſon; but they cannot ſhew their ſplendid colours to any great advantage among the various kinds of graſs here, which are moſtly perennial and of a pallid hue, among the dry buſhes, and in the fields, which, at leaſt near the Cape, are almoſt continually grazed off. Theſe plains, therefore, cannot captivate the eye, nearly ſo much as the European Flora, with her green meadows replete with annual graſs. I am ready to allow, indeed, that the verdant plantations, together with a few acres of arable land round about the town, make a beautiful appearance, oppoſed to the African wilds and deſerts with which they are ſurrounded, and which ſerve to ſet them off to a greater advantage; but then clipped and trimmed trees, with regular plantations of groves reared up by art, cannot ſo long keep their ground in our taſte, as that lively verdure of nature which a European, at leaſt after having reſided for ſome time at the Cape, I think cannot help miſſing.

The town is ſmall, about 2000 paces in length and breadth, including the gardens and orchards, by which one ſide of it is terminated. The ſtreets are broad, but not paved; a great many of them are planted with oaks. The houſes are handſome, two ſtories high at the moſt; the greateſt part of them are ſtuccoed and white-waſhed on the outſide, but ſome of them are painted green: this

latter

latter colour, which is never ſeen upon our houſes in Sweden, being the favourite colour with the Dutch for their clothes, boats, and ſhips. 1772. April.

A great part of their houſes as well as churches are covered with a ſort of dark-coloured reed (*Reſtio tectorum*) which grows in dry and ſandy places. It is ſomewhat more firm than ſtraw, but rather finer and more brittle.

How this thatching is performed, certainly deſerves the conſideration of our country gentlemen and men of landed property; and a deſcription of it will be given by Captain *Ekeberg* on ſome other occaſion. The reſt of the houſes in the Cape are covered with what is called Italian tiling, which reſembles the flat tiles we uſe for floors.

The company's gardens, ſo differently ſpoken of by KOLBE, BYRON, and BOUGAINVILLE, are the largeſt in the town, being 400 paces broad and 1000 long, and conſiſting of various quarters planted with cale, and other kinds of garden ſtuff, for the governor's own table, as well as for the uſe of the Dutch ſhips and of the hoſpital. Fruit-trees are planted in ſome of the quarters, which, in order to ſhelter them from the violence of the South-eaſt wind, are ſurrounded with hedges of myrtle and elm. Beſides this, the greater walks are ornamented with oaks thirty feet high, which by their ſhade produce an agreeable coolneſs, and are much reſorted to by the ſtrangers that viſit the port, and chuſe to walk in the heat of the day.

The four quarters that lie neareſt to the governor's reſidence, which is ſituated in the pleaſure-garden towards the north, have indeed ſome beds of flowers in them; but this pleaſure-garden is very far from deſerving the com-

1772. April.

mendations beſtowed upon it by KOLBE, who cries it up as having no equal, and being ſtored with the moſt coſtly plants from all parts of the world. At the end of the pleaſure-garden and to the eaſt of it, is the menagerie, paliſaded and railed off, in which are ſhewn *oſtriches*, *caſuaries*, *zebras*, and ſometimes different ſorts of *antilopes*, and other ſmaller quadrupeds, almoſt all of them natives of the country. In another partition are kept various foreign and domeſtic fowls.

The fortifications lie ſome hundred paces north of the town, being ſeparated from it by a verdant mead, which is cut through with canals and roads. On both ſides of the town towards the ſtrand, batteries are placed; and to the ſouth, where the land is higher, are ſeen the burial grounds of the Chineſe and free Malays that live at the Cape; as well as one belonging to the Dutch, which has a wall round it. But what diſgraces the town is a gallows, with racks and other horrid inſtruments of torture, which the governor has lately ordered to be erected in the place of honour, if I may ſo call it, or oppoſite to the fortification in the above-mentioned meadow. Beſides this, the well-known hardneſs of heart of the Dutch ſettled in the Indies, has ſhewn itſelf here by two other gibbets erected within ſight of the town, viz. one on each ſide of it.

On the 30th of April, being the morning after we came to anchor, I for the firſt time ſet foot upon African ground. The firſt thing I did was to wait upon the governor, Baron JOACHIM VON PLETTENBERG, to whom I paid my reſpects, and intimated my wiſh to live under his protection. As ſoon as he was informed of the nature of my

my appointment, he granted my requeſt without the leaſt difficulty; and ſoon offered me the privilege of practiſing phyſic, as I had given him to underſtand, that it had been my principal ſtudy. Upon the whole, I received great civilities from many members of the regency, particularly from the commander of the troops, Baron van PREHM, who was an African born; but, what is very rare with his countrymen, and to his honour muſt be mentioned, he had viſited Europe, and was a lover of ſcience. Neither muſt it be paſſed over in ſilence, that he had ſerved in the capacity of a Pruſſian *aide de camp* in the laſt German war; and, as a proof of his having been in the wars, bore about him the ſcars of ſeveral wounds. As it may give pleaſure to ſuch as are fond of hearing that merit meets with its reward, I will add, that he returned inveſted with the place he now enjoys, and about the ſame time made his fortune, by marrying the fineſt woman in the whole colony. 1772. April.

SECT.

SECT. II.

Reſidence at Bay Falſo.

1772. April. ALTHOUGH I had already been ſome days at the *Cape*, I had not yet had an opportunity to ſee the reſident, (now *ſub-governor*) whoſe children I was to inſtruct. The reaſon was, that he was gone to *Bay Falſo*, about eighteen miles from the Cape, in order to receive and make proviſion for the ſhips which had juſt before run into the Bay. I therefore ſet out to pay him a viſit there; but ſtaid over night at a reſpectable yeoman's, to whom I was addreſſed, in order that he might be my guide. Here I for the firſt time found, what inconveniences a man is expoſed to, who does not underſtand the language of the people among which he lives. I had made a ſhift to pick up a little German in my voyage from *Gottenburgh* to the *Cape*; but this was but of very little ſervice, either towards my making myſelf underſtood in this place, or towards my underſtanding a Dutchman in his language. The neceſſity, however, that I was under of communicating my thoughts, contrary to what I had ſuppoſed, increaſed my power of comprehending others, as well as that of expreſſing my own meaning. My hoſt, who was very inquiſitive with regard to affairs

in Europe, as well as desirous to get some information on medical subjects, was incessantly propounding his questions to me, as well as he could, in the German tongue. I, on my side, repeated my answers again and again, expressing them, in I myself did not know what language. It should seem, that the German, Swedish, and Dutch languages have a great analogy to, and much in common with each other; but the great difference in the pronunciation of them, as well as in their dialects, seldom allows one to perceive the similitude. My phlegmatic hostess, who stood by with open mouth to overhear our conversation, without understanding one single word of it, relying upon my ignorance of the language, asked her husband, whether any thing else than absolute want of the necessaries of life in Europe could possibly induce me, and many other strangers, to come to reside in Africa? This remark shewed, that she had conceived very indifferent notions of strangers; and was the more difficult for me to digest, as they had given me a very moderate supper, consisting of stewed red cabbage, meat preserved with pepper, and gritty bread. I mention this, however, only as a proof, that the Africans, ignorant of every thing beyond the limits of their own habitation, universally entertain most advantageous and flattering ideas with respect to their own country. 1772. April.

The next morning I arrived at *Bay Falso*. The resident there promised to perform his engagement with Captain EKEBERG, and likewise conferred upon me immediately the post of interpreter between him and the French, who came to that harbour. The politeness of this nation in conjecturing what one is going to say, and

at

1772. April. at the ſame time correcting one in the moſt inſinuating manner when one makes uſe of an improper expreſſion in their language, was at this juncture extremely agreeable to me; and the more ſo, as I had not the leaſt knowledge of the dialect and terms in uſe among them in India. In this kind of civility, which proceeds from a good diſpoſition as well as a good education, many of the inhabitants of the Cape, the fair ſex in particular, were moſt lamentably deficient. On this account, the Europeans are apt to conceive rather unfavourable ideas of the politeneſs of the African coloniſts. However this be, theſe latter learn very little of any foreign language, though they are otherwiſe indefatigable in their application to trade, and every thing that tends to their emolument; and although the income of the whole colony, as well as the particular intereſt of moſt of the inhabitants, depends entirely on their trade with foreigners.

The next day I went back again to the Cape, to fetch my baggage from on board of ſhip, and take leave of my friends. I could not help being tenderly affected at parting from them, and indeed this was the laſt time that I ſaw many of them. It was not till I had loſt ſight of the Swediſh colours, that I felt myſelf an abſolute ſtranger on the African coaſt.

During the few days, however, that I yet had to ſtay in town, I enjoyed the greateſt felicity in the company of an old *Upſal* chum, Dr. THUNBERG, now demonſtrator in that univerſity, whoſe taſte for botany had induced him to undertake a voyage to this remoteſt point of Africa. He travelled at the expence of ſome gentlemen in Holland, and had come hither with a Dutch ſhip a few days after me.

me. Nothing could have happened more unexpected to him, than to see in person at the Cape, a man whom, agreeable to the latest advices, he now supposed to be at Upsal, engaged in courses of academical lectures; and nothing could be more pleasing to him, than to receive the letters which I brought him from his friends and relations. 1772. April.

I was soon however obliged to return to *False-bay*, by which means I lost the company of my countryman, who alone could make the *Cape* for me a little Sweden; and render our favourite study, which we both applied to in common, still more easy and delightful. In the meanwhile, perhaps none but a lover of natural history can imagine, what pleasure we enjoyed together among the herbs and flowers. At first almost every day was a rich harvest of the rarest and most beautiful plants; and I had almost said, that at every step we made one or more new discoveries. And as I had many Swedish friends, and particularly the great LINNÆUS, always present in my memory, every duplicate or triplicate of the plants that I gathered, gave me a sensible pleasure; though my covetousness for myself and my friends, frequently induced me to gather more than I was able to attend to, and dry in a proper manner. This, doubtless, happens more or less to every botanist who travels into foreign parts: but besides this circumstance, I was not a little taken off, by my business with the resident, from the more agreeable application to my beloved science.

By this means I was often deprived of opportunities of investigating some of those plants that I had collected: I therefore neglected no opportunity of sending to Sir CHARLES

1772. April. LINNÆUS duplicates of every thing I found, together with my remarks upon them. Unfortunately this great man's illneſs, declining years, and intervening death, have prevented us long from ſeeing them in print, in a *Mantiſſa tertia*.

I was now to reſide in *Falſe-bay* till the end of the winter, which is called the bad ſeaſon (in Dutch, *quaae mouſſon*,) and is reckoned from the 14th of May till the 14th of Auguſt. It is not diſtinguiſhed by any particular degree of cold; for we had frequently at this time the fineſt ſummer days. Once or twice there fell ſome hail, but I never ſaw any ſnow. We had ſometimes the moſt violent ſhowers of rain, and that moſtly for ſeveral days in continuation, by which means the air was very ſenſibly cooled. We were not unfrequently troubled with the north-weſt wind, and this is principally the reaſon why the Dutch ſhips, at the time of year before-mentioned, have been ordered to run into *Table-bay*, ever ſince the year 1722; when out of ten ſhips belonging to that nation lying there, eight were caſt on ſhore and loſt. This likewiſe has induced the Dutch company to have ready at hand every neceſſary for their ſhips, under the inſpection of the Reſident at *Falſe-bay*. They have erected here an extenſive magazine, which at the ſame time includes forges and baking-houſes, with houſe-room for the workmen, who do the whole duty of the guard, and are commanded by a ſerjeant and two corporals. The ſlaughter-houſe makes a diſtinct building by itſelf, as do likewiſe the Reſident's houſe and the hoſpital. About the time of my departure from Africa, they were building another large and handſome houſe for the accommodation of the Governor, when he

he chuſes to retire thither for his pleaſure. Good freſh water is conveyed from the neighbouring hill to a quay, where it is very convenient for uſe. A tradeſman or two have got leave to build an inn here, in which, however, there is not always room and conveniencies ſufficient to receive all ſuch as, after a long ſea-voyage, are deſirous of refreſhing themſelves on ſhore; the ſhips that land here being chiefly ſuch as contain not much above twenty paſſengers. Board and lodging are paid for here as at the *Cape*, from one rix-dollar to one and a half a day; a tolerable good table is likewiſe uſually kept here, and the attendance is none of the worſt. A perſon that wiſhes to go poſt from *Falſe-bay* to the *Cape*, a diſtance of about ſixteen miles, will find it comparatively dear enough. Three or four rix-dollars muſt be paid for a ſaddle-horſe, and from twelve to ſixteen for a waggon; which is, for the moſt part, inconvenient, and uſually drawn by three or four pair of horſes, or elſe by the ſame number of oxen. 1772. April.

Excepting in the winter, *Falſe-bay* is ſeldom or ever viſited by any ſhips, as the ſouth-eaſt wind, which prevails at every other time of the year, makes this Bay in many reſpects inconvenient; blowing with ſuch violence, as to cover two hills there with a thick layer of drift ſand, all along from the ſtrand up to their very tops. This ridge of ſand is ſeen from afar from the mouth of the harbour, and ſerves as a beacon for ſhips; for *Simon*'s-*bay*, which is the place where they are to anchor, lies directly from the eaſt, or ſomething more to the ſouth. The breadth of *Falſe-bay* is not ſo great, but that in clear fine weather, one may ſee from *Simon*'s-*bay* the lands laying oppoſite in

1772. April.

the eaſt, or the *Schaapen-Bergen* (Sheep-Mountains) in *Hottentots Holland*; and with a perſpective glaſs, one may even diſtinguiſh the houſes in the laſt mentioned place.

From the point of land, called the Cape of Good Hope, ſtraight on to the town itſelf, there is extended a chain of hills, which, following the courſe of the ſtrand in *Simon*'s-*bay*, is continued to the northernmoſt part or bottom of *Falſe-bay*; and afterwards, ſtriking off to the weſtward to *Conſtantia*, goes on to the north of it, to join *Table-Mountain*. This range of mountains, however, reckoning from *Simon*'s-*bay*, is intercepted in two places, viz. firſt, by means of a dale near *Conſtantia*, through which the road goes to *Hout-bay*; and next, by a ſandy vale a little to the north of *Simon*'s-*bay*. Through this vale there is a ſhort way between the weſtern and eaſtern coaſts; and in all probability it was formerly a ſmall ſtraight or ſound, which has been gradually filled up by the winds and ſurge of the ſea. The whole of the low lands, conſiſting of ſandy plains and tracks of heathy country to the eaſt of the town, was in all likelihood formed in the ſame manner; and the Cape of Good Hope was in the beginning an iſland, which was not connected with the Tiger-Mountain and ſhore of Hottentots Holland, but by degrees, and in the courſe of time. It is, in my opinion, particularly with ſand, ſea-ſhells, trunks of trees, and ſuch like rubbiſh, that the ſea has thus encroached upon the land, and ſet itſelf narrower limits. To this the violence of the ſouth-eaſt wind contributes not a little, as it ſometimes tears up hedges, trees, and vegetables of all kinds by the roots,

roots, at the ſame time caſting up high ridges of ſand, as I mentioned before. 1772. April.

Even *Table-bay* is by degrees grown ſhallower; ſo that the houſe that is built by the ſea-ſhore is now farther from it, and time after time they have been obliged to lengthen the quay that has been made in the harbour. Farther, in reſpect to this circumſtance, I can refer to the ſhells of different ſizes that I found in the ſandy parts of a meadow a little below Tiger-Mountain. A well-behaved and ſenſible yeoman, CORNELIUS VERVEY by name, who conducted me to this place, ſituated at the diſtance of about two leagues from the ſea-ſhore, was of opinion, that the ſea-ſhells were left in that place, after the ſea had retired from it, but were by no means brought thither by the Hottentots, as they could not poſſibly live there on account of the want of water.

The road between the *Cape* and *Falſe-bay* is very heavy, and even ſometimes dangerous. At this latter place, at the time that the ſouth-eaſt wind prevails, there is wont to be ſo high a tide, that the ſea, even at its loweſt ebb, at ſome places riſes up to the foot of the mountains, which partly encompaſs this extenſive harbour; ſo that one is obliged to travel for a long way (as it were) below the ſhore, though the ſurf or ſurge of the ſea often riſes above the nave of the wheels, and even into the body of the waggon; nay, it ſometimes ſeems as it would carry out to ſea waggon, horſes, and all. For which reaſon they have in general extremely ſtrong and ſubſtantial waggons, and ſteady horſes, that are accuſtomed to this kind of work, together with ſober and ſkilful drivers, ſo that an accident

1772. April.

accident of this kind cannot eaſily happen: relying upon theſe, people ſometimes even drive a little below the ſea-ſhore, as the ſands are there preſſed down and even; whereas higher up they are looſe, deep, and heavy. In a large plain, that cloſes up the north ſide of *Falſe-bay*, there is a conſiderable field of ſand, through which the road is carried. This the violent rains, that fall in the winter ſeaſon, joined to a higher tide than uſual, are wont ſometimes to lay entirely under water; ſo that travellers are in danger of getting up to the middle in holes and pits. Some accidents of this kind happened the winter I was there.

Ships of various nations, Engliſh, French, and particularly the Dutch Eaſt-Indiamen, anchored this ſeaſon in *Simon's-bay*. The principal officers and paſſengers of this nation lodged chiefly with the reſident; ſo that at meal-times, various European dialects, together with the languages uſed in commerce with the Indians, viz. the Malay, and a very bad kind of Portugueſe, were ſpoken all at one time; ſo that the confuſion was almoſt equal to that of the Tower of Babel. The diſſimilitude likewiſe in manners and behaviour was ſometimes equally great. A circumſtance that occurred on this occaſion, and that appeared to me rather ſingular, deſerves to be mentioned. When the ſtrangers of other nations began their deſert, two Dutch captains put on their hats and lighted their pipes. Upon this I aſked ſome Dutchmen that ſat by me, whether this was not looked upon as unuſual and impolite? I was anſwered, that tobacco was a more delicious deſert, and had more charms for an old ſailor, than cakes and

ſweet-meats; and that this cuſtom is ſtill more practiſed in other places in the Eaſt-Indies. Indeed I obſerved at the Cape, that the Dutch commonly wore their hats in the houſe, and that even in company, without its being looked upon as the leaſt breach of politeneſs. At leaſt the cuſtom, which is conſtantly practiſed in Europe, of carrying one's hat under one's arm, is ſtill more unnatural. This moſt undeniably abſurd practice I never obſerved in the Eaſt-Indies. 1772. April.

We often enjoyed the company of Engliſh ladies, ſome of whom even ſtaid out our elegant deſert of pipes and tobacco. Some of theſe ladies came from the Eaſt-Indies, on their return from Europe, and ſome from England. The married ones, to ſee their huſbands either at *Bombay*, *Madras*, or *Bengal*; the unmarried ones, to get huſbands. Some of the former had not ſeen their huſbands for ſeveral years, theſe not having being able to ſend for them before, for want of having acquired money enough to keep houſe in the expenſive manner requiſite in this part of the world. The latter ſeldom make the voyage in vain, being extremely welcome to ſuch of the ſingle men, as have had time to get a tolerable ſhare of the treaſures of India, but could not perſuade themſelves to wed the dark Indian beauties, (as many however are accuſtomed to do) and have not had leiſure to go to Europe merely for the purpoſe of chuſing themſelves wives. It was therefore ſuppoſed, that ſome of theſe beautiful travellers were actually, in a manner, ſent for by commiſſion, though not inſerted in the invoice.

Be

1772. April.

Be that, however, as it may; they all in the mean while ſeemed highly deſerving of rich and good huſbands, as well for their courage and reſolution in venturing upon the ocean, as for many other fine qualities they were poſſeſſed of. As they were always in the company and under the care of ſome reſpectable married lady, nobody ſeemed to harbour the leaſt doubt of their good conduct. On this occaſion, the following anecdote deſerves to be mentioned.

One of the ladies, who had ſome time before paſſed by the Cape, had been ſent for to be married to a certain governor. He, as ſoon as ſhe arrived, was for performing his engagements immediately; but the lady poſitively refuſed, and finally gave as a reaſon for her conduct, that ſhe did not chuſe to deceive him; for during her voyage, ſhe had betrothed herſelf to the captain of the ſhip, who however was baſe enough to retract his promiſe, although ſhe feared that their connection had been productive of certain diſagreeable conſequences. The governor repaid her frankneſs by the moſt generous conduct; and was not at all ſurprized that ſhe ſhould rather give her hand to a young fellow, who had beſides had the advantage of being on the ſpot, than wait in uncertainty for an elderly man, who was an abſolute ſtranger to her, and was moreover at a diſtance from her. He therefore married her himſelf without heſitation, after having in vain endeavoured to perſuade her falſe lover to take this ſtep.

The little iſland of *Malagas* in *Falſe-bay*, is particularly reſorted to by *penguins* and ſeals; and although *Robben* (or Seal Iſland) otherwiſe called *Penguin* Iſland in *Table-bay*, bears the name of theſe latter animals, yet they are ſeldom found

found there now, ſince the iſland has been inhabited. But on *Daſſen* Iſland they are found in much greater quantities, inſomuch that ſometimes a general ſhooting party is made with advantage to deſtroy the ſeals there, for the ſake of their blubber. Their ſkins, though very good in their kind, are to be had very cheap; and are, as far as I know, in requeſt only among the boors for tobacco-pouches, for which they are extremely well calculated, as they keep the tobacco from growing dry. I brought home with me the ſtuffed fœtus of a *phoca* from the Cape. It is of the ſame ſpecies with thoſe that I inveſtigated together with Meſſrs. FORSTER, and eat at *New Zeeland*, *Terra Del Fuego*, and the *Southern Thule*. When the train-oil was ſeparated, the fleſh was really good and eatable, eſpecially as in thoſe places we could get nothing better: we imagined indeed, that it taſted like beef, but it muſt be owned that it had a diſagreable black hue. 1772. April.

I have opened the inteſtines of divers *phocæ*, and always found them empty, excepting a little ſand and ſmall ſea-ſhells, together with a few ſtones from the ſize of a nut to that of an egg. The reaſon of this emptineſs of the bowels may have been, either that theſe creatures have very ſtrong digeſtive powers, ſo as ſpeedily to diſſolve the ſea animals on which they probably live, or elſe, that during their dwelling and copulating on ſhore, they abſtain for a long time from all food whatever.

Various ſorts of *ſea-fiſh* are taken at the *Cape* and *Falſe-bay*. At the latter place they had juſt caught the electric *ray-fiſh*, (*raia torpedo*) but unluckily I chanced to be abſent, while it was yet alive, and experiments were made

1772. April. with it. Out of ſeveral that touched it, every one had felt (as it were) a ſtong electric ſhock, the reſident only excepted, who could handle this fiſh without the leaſt inconvenience. Whether he was in like manner inſenſible to ordinary electricity, he had never tried; but it was very likely that this was the caſe, particularly as we find an inſtance in MUSSCHENBROEK's *Introduct. to Nat. Phil.* §. 832, No. 3, of three perſons, who were found to be exempt from the operation of electricity, though the experiment was made on them more than once. I am beſides acquainted with a certain man, who ſeems to poſſeſs a great antielectric power. From the reſult of many experiments made with the *torpedo*, and related in the Philoſophical Tranſactions for the years 1773, 74, 75, and 76, there appears to exiſt an incontrovertible analogy between electricity and the abovementioned fiſh.

The cancer norvegicus, a kind of lobſter, is often eaten in the Bay. A ſort of ſnail or cockle, *klipkaus* (*Haliotis*, LINN.) from half a foot to a foot and a half diameter, is uſually ſtewed, but makes in my opinion a very unſavoury diſh. The ſame may be ſaid of the *ſepia loligo*, and the *ſepia octopodia*, which are made into ſoup, and are known to our ſailors by the name of *black-fiſh*, and *ſea-cats*, and to the Engliſh by the name of *cuttle-fiſh*. A ſmall kind of oyſter is likewiſe found in a particular ſpot in the Bay, and is kept by the governor for his own table. As to muſcles I ſaw but few of them; but in *Table-bay*, below the Lion-Mountain, they are found in great abundance, and have a delicious taſte. The *myxine glutinoſa*, was not eaſy to be diſcovered among the *vermes*; it is like an eel or a

ſnake with a flat tail. Its mouth was formed by an oblong opening under its noſe, not tranſverſe, but longitudinal in the direction of its body, with double and moveable jaws well furniſhed with teeth. The bite of it is reported to occaſion a diſagreeable tumour, but not to be mortal. 1772. April.

Among the vegetables that I found in Bay-Falſo, the *cunonia capenſis* was almoſt the largeſt tree there, though barely twice or three times the height of a man. It grows near the water, and contains in its peculiar *ſtipal. bivalv. ſagittat.* a cream-like matter to appearance, but in fact a viſcid or gummy ſubſtance. Various *ſophoræ* bloomed here towards the ſpring, and required a good ſoil: but on the *ſophora capenſis*, there was found in particular a new ſort of *viſcum* in great abundance. The *antholyza æthiopica* grew from three to ſix feet in height, with beautiful red flowers, being always found at no great diſtance from the ſhore, and chiefly in the ſhade of other plants. I met with it afterwards in the woods near the Cape, particularly in the *Houtniquas*. The *antholyza maura* *, remarkable for its flowers, half white and half black, I found on one ſpot only of the mountain near one of the rivulets, that trickle down juſt before the ſlaughter-houſe. A very ſmall *triandrous* plant (*ſtaminibus monadelphis*) with comparatively large but beautiful yellow flowers, in the fine part of the day adorned a large plat of ground with its open bloſſoms, which however at other times were ſo entirely cloſed, as almoſt to diſappear. The *calla æthiopica*

* This compoſes now a new genus, and is called by Dr. Thunberg the wittenia maura.

1772. April. delighted chiefly in moiſt places near the ſea-ſhore, and was in flower the whole winter. *Proteas*, *ericas*, *cornuſes*, *gnaphaliums*, *gnidias*, *echias*, *phyllicas*, *brunias*, and *periplocas*, two varieties of the *myrica cerifera*, together with *cliffortias*, *theſias*, *polygalas*, *hermannias* and *aſters*, were ſtrewed promiſcuouſly over the dry places on the declivity of the mountain. Among theſe ſome *reſtios* ſeemed quartered on the bare ſand, together with divers *meſembryanthemums*. The *hyobanche ſanguinea*, a *paraſitic* plant, towards ſpring, began to throw out its blood-red tufts of flowers in the naked ſand; an *oſteoſpermum* or two, as well of the *arboreous* as *herbaceous* kind, were now and then likewiſe found in the bare ſand. *Arctotides*, *calendulas*, and *othonnas*, throve chiefly in ſandy places. On the mountain beſides *proteas*, *brunias*, *dioſmas*, *ericas*, and the *ſtilbe*, we found *indigoforas*, *erinuſes*, *ſelagos*, *manulias*, *chironias* of different kinds, together with many gynandrous plants. We likewiſe found greens and kitchen-garden plants in great plenty at this inauſpicious time of the year. Towards ſpring, divers ſorts of *ixias*, *gladioluſes*, *moreas*, *oxaliſes*, *meſembryanthemums*, *antirrhinums*, and even various beautiful ſmall *iriſes*, ſeveral inches high, with the corolla partly white and partly blue, began to puſh out of the ground.

Of the partly known and partly quite new plants which we met with at this ſpot, ſome were rather uncommon, others again was not to be found again in the other places I viſited in Africa. Every diſtrict has always ſomething peculiar to itſelf: no wonder then, if Dr. THUNBERG and I ſhould have paſſed over various ſpecimens of the vegetable

table tribe unnoticed, and the common ſaying, *Semper aliquid novi ex Africa*, ſhould ſtill hold good for many years to come. Botaniſts, therefore, muſt not expect in this place a more accurate catalogue of plants, which would be too tedious a buſineſs; but content themſelves with acquiring, *en paſſant*, as it were, and at a diſtance, by means of the preceding liſt, ſome idea of the country, juſt as it is, covered with the herbs and trees moſt commonly found in it on different ſpots, and at different times of the year. 1772. April.

SECT.

SECT. III.

Reſidence at Alphen near Conſtantia, till the Author's Trip to Paarl.

1772. April. WHEN the winter was paſt, and the ſhips now preferred anchoring in *Table-bay*, I went with the reſident to an eſtate of his called *Alphen*, ſituate in the neighbourhood of *Conſtantia*, about three miles from it, and nearly half way between *Table* and *Simon*'s-*bay*. Before we could get over the mountainous part of this road, we obſerved a troop of baboons very nimbly clambering up the ſteep rocks, and ſcouring away as faſt as they could to ſave themſelves from our hounds, which ſet after them in full cry. On the plain before us we ſaw a large flock of *flammingos* (*phœnicopt. ruber*) a ſpecies of bird of the crane kind (grallæ) ſeeking their food in pools and puddles that were beginning to dry up. As they were larger than our cranes, and of a ſnow-white colour, with their wings of a flaming roſy hue, it is eaſy to imagine, what an agreeable appearance they made on the green field, clad in ſo beautiful a livery. After this our road was over a ſandy plain, a place that, during part of the winter, one is obliged to wade over, as it then lies under water. We then

then came to a field overgrown with a great many different ſorts of heath and other ſhrubs and buſhes, with ſome ſmall trees of the *protea* kind. Part of the flowers and herbs that were ſcattered among theſe ſhrubs, I found later than in *Falſe-bay*; probably by reaſon, that in this latter place they were brought forward partly by the vapours ariſing from the ſea, and partly by the ſun-beams reflected upon the mountains. On the other hand, divers *ixias*, *gladioluſes*, *moreas*, *hyacinths*, *cyphias*, *melanthias*, *albucas*, *oxaliſes*, *aſperugos*, *geraniums*, *monſonias*, *arctotiſes*, *calendulas*, *wachendorfias*, and the *arctopus*—ſome of them never, ſome of them rarely ſeen in the Bay, were now found every where by the road-ſide in their greateſt beauty. The pleaſure enjoyed by a botaniſt, who finds all at once ſo rich a collection of unknown, rare, and beautiful vernal flowers, in ſo unfrequented a part of the world, is eaſier to be conceived than deſcribed. I was now quite impatient to get to the end of my journey, however agreeable it was otherwiſe. At length we arrived at the reſident's country-ſeat, and I did not delay a moment to procure myſelf a ſtill more delightful recreation, viz. that of walking out to reconnoitre ſuch plants as were yet unknown to me. 1772. April.

The premiſes are very well built, and contiguous to them is a pretty extenſive garden, and a conſiderable vineyard, which increaſes yearly in ſize. But there is hardly an acre of arable land to be found in the whole neighbourhood; nor did the owners of the vineyards here think it worth their while to trouble themſelves about the culture of it, but were then, viz. towards the end of the month of Auguſt, buſied in digging about their vine-

ſtocks,

1772. April.

ſtocks, and planting new. They never deſtroy their vine-plants; that is, they do not let them run up to any height, but cut them down low, and generally ſurround their vineyards and fruit-trees with hedges, in order to ſhelter them the better from the wind. A ſmall ſpecies of *curculio* in particular, did infinite damage to the vine-buds, and the tender leaves. They were therefore very buſy in plucking this inſect from the plant as ſoon as ever it appeared, and as ſoon as they could poſſibly get at it; the only means yet known of preventing the ravages of this creature.

As ſummer was now approaching, the *exacum* and the * *gentiana exacoides* began to cover the ground with yellow patches; and many ſorts of ſhrubs of the extenſive genus of *aſpalathus*, came out by degrees with their yellow bloſſoms. But the *protea argentea*, or the ſilver-tree, as it is called, exhibited the whole year throughout its gloſſy white, or ſilver gray leaves. This tree has at firſt a very uncommon, and indeed beautiful appearance. I am of opinion, however, that we ſhould not chuſe to change for it our delightful aſpen-groves. The ſilver-tree ſcarcely ever grows higher than twenty feet; and if I remember right, I have been informed, that they arrive at this height in twelve to fifteen years. But in a rich ſoil this tree grows twice as quick, and is the largeſt of all the *protea* kind. One or two of them are found planted near ſome of the farms; but we ſeldom meet with any that have grown wild of themſelves in theſe parts, though a little grove of them is ſeen

* Now the ſebœa exacoides.

near

near *Conſtantia*. For this reaſon it has been ſuppoſed, that the ſilver-tree was tranſplanted hither from the beginning; yet no one has been able to inform me from what place it firſt came: probably it was brought from the borders of *Anamaqua*; for I now travelled over the whole north-eaſt ſide of Hottentots Holland, without finding it either in its wild ſtate or planted. In the mean while, as it is the largeſt of all the *proteas*, and indeed almoſt of all the trees *indiginous* at the *Cape*, it is remarkable, that together with ſome others it has not attracted the attention of government to the planting of it, eſpecially as they cannot be ignorant that the conſumption of wood ſtores, as well for the uſe of the ſhips as that of the town, daily increaſes faſter than they can be ſupplied by their reſources. It is chiefly from the level ground near the ſhore, that the company at preſent fetches its wood, which conſiſts chiefly of two ſmall and crooked ſorts of *protea*. That wood is dear at the Cape, may be concluded, from the circumſtance of private perſons rather finding their account in getting it from the mountains by means of ſlaves; though it takes up one of theſe a whole day to get a moderate load of ſhrubs and dry branches of trees, the value of which is generally the fourth part of a rixdollar. And indeed it is ſo far fortunate for the Dutch in a place ſo bare of wood, that a fire is not wanted in this country, excepting for dreſſing of victuals, lighting their pipes, and the women's ſtoves.

1772. April.

Alphen, or the farm where I paſſed this ſummer, was on the ſouthern ſide of Table-Mountain, about a mile and a half from the foot of it. This mountain ſeems here, as well as at Table-Bay, level at the top, though there it

1772. April.

has conſiderable inequalities. In the rainy ſeaſon large pools of water are found upon it, but by no means any lake, as ſome pretend. When a cloud covers this range of mountains, and the north-weſt wind blows, it ſhould ſeem that this ſame wind muſt inevitably drive the cloud over the neighbouring plains on the other or ſouth ſide of theſe mountains, at the ſame time cauſing it to rain there; but on the contrary, the fact is, that it never does rain there; a circumſtance that, without doubt, like all other natural phænomena, has its real and certain foundations in nature. The moſt probable ſolution that occurs to me is this, that the vapours, which are driven up from the ſea by the north-weſt wind, gather round the mountain in conſequence of their being attracted by it, and there remain as long as they preſerve any degree of rarefaction; but when at length they become more and more denſe and preſſed together, ſo as neceſſarily rather to yield to the greater force of the wind than to the attractive power of the mountain, they are carried away too quick to fall in rain directly at the foot of the mountain; a circumſtance that does not happen before they reach the other ſide of *Zout Rivier*.

Having ſeveral times in my walks been, without any reaſon, apprehenſive of being wetted through by the above-mentioned cloud, at length I reſolved to aſcend the mountain, in order to ſee how things were ſituated. The weather was at that time fine at the bottom of the mountain, and the wind pretty ſtill; but at the upper edge of the mountain I met with ſeveral guſts of wind, which precipitated, as it were, down upon me, moiſt and cold, and

with

with a ſenſible violence. The temperature of the air, with which I was ſurrounded for about three quarters of an hour, varied according as the weather changed from fine to hazy, and from that to drizzling or downright rain. The barenneſs of the mountain and the coldneſs of its air, together with the ſmall number of plants upon it, and thoſe ſtunted by the climate; nay, the rainy weather itſelf, all combined to form around me a backward autumn. From this ſpot, however, I had an agreeable ſummer proſpect towards the bottom of the mountain, viz. the verdant plains lying round about it, enlightened and warmed by the genial rays of the ſun. At the bottom of this range of hills there ſeemed to ſhoot out many roundiſh oblong ridges, pretty nearly of the ſame form, and parallel to each other, and ſeparated by a like number of dales, at the bottom of ſeveral of which ran the water previouſly collected by the mountain, and deſtined, as it were, to water the plains. A number of green trees and ſhrubs, which had planted themſelves along the ſides of theſe rills, formed a beautiful girdle on the declivity of the mountain, and on the hillocks projecting at the foot of it. Several neat compact farms ſcattered up and down, the houſes belonging to which were white with black roofs, at the ſame time that the grounds were laid out in a regular and judicious manner with verdant orchards and vineyards, lay diſtinctly open to the eye in all their reſpective ground-plots, forming a moſt natural as well as beautiful picture. Next to theſe, a little further on, were ſeen pale and bleak tracts of heath, among which were ſtrewed, as it were, various plots of ſand, together with

1772. April.

1772. April.

ſandy roads winding about in a ſerpentine form, and waggons and timber-tugs creeping along them with a ſluggiſh motion. Theſe extenſive plains were bounded by *Tyger-mountain* and the ſhores of *Hottentots Holland*. Next to theſe, but farther on, were ſeen other mountains, which, according to the diſtance at which they were placed, grew more and more indiſtinct, till they entirely diſappeared in the clouds. From hence too, beſides ſeveral pools of rain-water, a great part of the creek which forms *Falſe-bay*, was ſeen. This, from its calmneſs and diſtance, appeared at that juncture as ſmooth as a looking-glaſs; at the ſame time that it was terminated by the ocean, or rather, according to the appearance it made in my eyes, by the horizon itſelf.

From the miſt, or fog, which ſurrounded me on the mountain, I perceived at times ſpecks of clouds ſnatched off by the north-weſt wind, and driving along with violence through the air both above and below the ſpot I then ſtood upon, and directly followed by their ſhadows formed upon the ſame plains. In a word, this extenſive and delightful ſpectacle was as enchanting as it was ſingular. Being not uſed to run any great riſks, I did not venture ſo far out as I would have wiſhed, in order to examine the top of Table-mountain on this ſide; for, as it grew towards dark, I might have eaſily loſt my way, and fall a prey to leopards and hyænas, which frequent theſe parts in great numbers, and at night are very bold and daring. A little while before they had committed ravages in a farm yard juſt below the mountain; I likewiſe heard their howlings the ſame evening about duſk,

duſk, from the very place where, two hours before, I had been botanizing. That very day, at broad day-light, I narrowly eſcaped being plundered by a troop of ſlaves, that had ſome time before run away from their maſters, and who were ſuſpected at that time to have their haunts about *Table-mountain*. A fire that I found there newly extinguiſhed, was probably ſome of their reliques. Still, however, the beautiful proſpect that I have juſt been deſcribing, would perhaps have kept me longer on the mountain, if I had not begun to feel a kind of ſtiffneſs and rheumatic pains in my limbs, owing to my having got into a cold air at the top of the mountain all in a ſweat and too lightly clad. This probably would have had ſerious conſequences, if I had not accidentally wrought myſelf into a moſt violent ſweat; the fact was, that in my deſcent, wiſhing to examine ſome of the cloſeſt thickets on the ſides of the rills, that trickle down the mountain, I went out of the right path, and got into a very thick over-grown coppice, ſo that I could not without the greateſt difficulty extricate myſelf from it. 1772. April.

Some time before this, or in the beginning of September, I rode to town to take leave of Dr. THUNBERG, who was going to take a long journey up the country, at the expence of the Dutch Eaſt-India company. I ſtaid at his houſe rather late in the evening, which occaſioned me in my way home to be caught in the dark and to miſs my way. I therefore rode up to a farm-houſe to enquire for the road, and from the information I got, thought to find my way home; but, it beginning to rain, and the darkneſs increaſing, I took a bye-road, which led me

1772. April. me to an elegant houſe, the property of a private gentleman. After I had ſtood out the attacks of a number of dogs, there came out a heap of ſlaves, from ſixteen to twenty. Theſe fellows were ſo malicious as not to anſwer me, though certainly ſome of them underſtood me extremely well, and though, after having promiſed them ſomething to drink, I aſked them the way in tolerable good Dutch; on the contrary, they conferred with each other in broken Portugueſe or Malay, in ſuch a manner, as to make me ſuſpect, that they had no better will towards me, than they have to others of a different nation from themſelves, who are accuſtomed to ſell them here, after having partly by robbery and open violence, and partly in the way of bargain or purchaſe, got them from their native country, and thus eventually brought them to the grievous evils they then ſuſtained. Had the maſter of the houſe been at this time at home, of which however I much doubt, it would have made very little difference to me, as even in that caſe I could not have ſpoken with him; for every body in this country is obliged to bolt the door of his chamber at night, and keep loaded fire-arms by him, for fear of the revengeful diſpoſition of his ſlaves. This being the caſe, it was ſtill eaſier for them to murder me, and afterwards conceal the deed by burying my body, or drag it into a thicket to be devoured by wild beaſts; I therefore took again to the road, in ſearch of a better fate. To this end I gave my horſe the bridle, in hopes that he would hit upon the right road better than myſelf. In conſequence of this he made ſuch uſe of his liberty, as to quit all the beaten tracks, perhaps with a view to find the ſhorteſt way home:

home: ſo that I ſoon found myſelf in a heavy marſhy ground, overgrown with buſhes, and full of brooks and rivulets, till at length he made a ſudden leap, on which we both tumbled head over heels into a pit, and parted. My horſe's ſudden flight gave me reaſon to fear, that ſome wild beaſt being near us was the occaſion of it; for which reaſon, not thinking myſelf over and above ſecure, I immediately prepared to defend myſelf with a large knife, which I generally carried about me for the purpoſe of digging up the roots of plants. The beſt ſtep I could now take, was, like many more foot-paſſengers, to make up to ſome farm-yard, and run the riſk of being torn to pieces by great dogs, which are let looſe at night for the purpoſe of keeping off thieves. To paſs the night in the open air, at a time when the weather ſeemed ſet in for rain, was as diſagreeable as dangerous. In the mean time I took to walking about, to keep myſelf warm. In the ſpace of a few minutes, after I had gone over a little hill, I found myſelf near a farm-houſe. It being dark, I was obliged to conſider ſome time before I could know it again to be my own houſe. I found my horſe already at the ſtable-door, ſtanding quite ſtill and quiet, and was lucky enough into the bargain, to be able to conceal the whole adventure from the family, as the particular footing on which I was at that time required. 1772. April.

Conſtantia is a diſtrict conſiſting of two farms, which produce the well-known wine ſo much prized in Europe, and known by the name of *Cape*, or *Conſtantia*-wine. This place is ſituated at the diſtance of a mile and a half from *Alphen*, in a bending formed by, and nearly under the

1772. April. ridge of hills, which comes from *Meuiſen-mountain*, and juſt where it ſtrikes off towards *Hout-bay*. One of theſe farms is called Little Conſtantia. Here the white Conſtantia wine is made. The other produces the red. According to M. De La Cail's account, not more than ſixty *ſiggars* of red, and ninety of the white Conſtantia wine are made, each *ſiggar* being reckoned at ſix hundred French pints, or about one hundred and fifty Swediſh cans; ſo that the whole produce amounts to twenty-two thouſand five hundred cans. As the company are uſed to keep one third of this for themſelves, the remainder is always beſpoke by the Europeans long before it is made. At the Cape this wine is ſeldom ſeen at table, partly becauſe it is dear, and partly becauſe it is the produce of the country. The red Conſtantia wine ſells for about ſixty rixdollars the half awin; but the white is uſually to be purchaſed at a more reaſonable rate: otherwiſe the price of the common white wine at the Cape is from ten to ſeventy rixdollars the ſiggar, according to the year's growth and the demand that is for it. They make beſides, in the environs of the Cape, *Burgundy*, *Madeira*, *Moſelle*, *Muſcadel wines*, ſo called from ſome analogy they bear to the European wines of the ſame name, as well as from the reſpective places in Europe whence the vine-ſtocks were firſt brought. Theſe wines are at a proportionably higher price than the ordinary white. As the Cape wines, in conſequence of the great demand from the ſhips, have all a quick ſale, they are ſeldom to be found of any age; otherwiſe by longer keeping, together with better care, and a leſs liberal uſe of ſulphur, they would doubtleſs be equally good with the beſt European wines.

wines. The genuine Conſtantia wine is undeniably a very racy and delicate deſert wine, and has ſomething peculiarly agreeable in the flavour of it. That its ſuperiority is not owing to any thing peculiar in the manner of preparing it, I am fully convinced; for then, without doubt, a great deal more of it would be made. But the fact is, that the genuine wine can only be produced by certain particular ſoils. The diſtricts that lie next to theſe yield merely the common Cape wine, notwithſtanding that they have been planted with vine-ſtocks taken from this, as well as with ſome brought from the banks of the Rhine, whence it is ſuppoſed that the true Conſtantia ſort originally comes; nay, even though all the vineyards about Conſtantia ſeem to have the ſame ſoil. We have inſtances at the Cape, as well as in Europe, that good grapes ſometimes produce a bad wine; while, on the other hand, bad grapes will yield a good ſort of wine: therefore, towards making wine of a certain quality, beſides finer materials, there muſt be certain conditions and circumſtances, which, by a diligent and rational inveſtigation, might probably be explored to the great benefit of mankind. 1772. April.

Such as are apprized in what quantities Conſtantia wine is conſumed in Europe, have perhaps already remarked, that my calculation of the produce of the above-mentioned wine is too limited. This, however, is by no means the caſe; the overplus being the produce of avarice, which, goaded on by the deſire of gain, will always hit upon ſome method of ſatisfying the demands of luxury and ſenſuality. The votaries of theſe, accuſtomed to be put off with empty ſounds, do not ſeldom drink with the

1772. April.

higheſt reliſh, an imaginary *Conſtantia*, with which, however, this liquor has nothing in common beſides the mere name. It is therefore adviſeable, even at the Cape itſelf, to take care, that whilſt one has a genuine ſample given one to taſte, one is not made to pay for a made-up red Conſtantia, which otherwiſe is in general ſold for half the price. When a wine of this kind has been (as it uſually is) meliorated by a voyage, and at the ſame time chriſtened with the pompous name of genuine Conſtantia, of which it has indeed in ſome meaſure the flavour, it eaſily ſells for ſuch in Europe.

This ſummer likewiſe I viſited *Hout-bay*. The direct road to it goes through a narrow vale, from which the harbour is ſupplied with freſh water, by means of a little river or ſtream covered with *palmites*, a kind of *acorus* with a thick ſtem and broad leaves, which grow out from the top, as they do in the palm-tree, a circumſtance from which the plant takes its name. Theſe palmites are found in great abundance in moſt rivers and ſtreams, which they block up more or leſs by means of their ſtems and roots intertwining with each other. On the other hand, this ſame *Hout-bay* has very little title to the name it bears; as, in direct contradiction to the ſignification of it, there is and ſeems ever to have been, a great deficiency of timber and bruſhwood in that place. Conſidered as a harbour, this bay ſeemed to me to be extremely narrow, and at the ſame time too open to the ſouth wind. The anchorage, however, was good; at leaſt, I was ſo informed by two fiſhermen I met with there. A heap of ſand is driven up by the ſea to the fartheſt part of the bay, and

there appeared to form a ſhoal of a conſiderable extent, by which means the river above-mentioned is not a little blocked up. This ſand was at that time very looſe at many places, ſo that one could not walk upon it without danger of being drowned in the water that lay under it. In time, perhaps, the apertures will be entirely filled up, ſo as to become ſolid. A nook in a mountain on the weſt ſide of the bottom of the bay is entirely covered with ſand, which probably has been carried up from the ſtrand by the violence of the wind from the ſea. The eaſt ſide is compoſed of a ſteep mountain, which reaches to the brink of the water, while the weſtern ſhore is very much covered with large looſe granites. There are, nevertheleſs, very good landing-places here for boats. In other reſpects the harbour is inconvenient, as well in reſpect to the guſts of wind that come from the mountains, as from the want of a convenient watering-place, and a wind to carry the ſhips out to ſea. 1772. April.

A farm with plantations of vines lay a few ſtones throw higher up in the vale. The owner, a European, was the only one in Africa who had ſenſe enough to make uſe of aſſes; being of opinion, that as they were more ſerviceable in hilly countries as beaſts of burden, and at the ſame time their food, conſiſting of ſhrubs and the coarſer kinds of graſs, was eaſier to be procured, they were better adapted to that part of the world than horſes. I had here a haſty glimpſe of a little black quadruped, in ſhape approaching neareſt to the otter, which ran and hid itſelf in a heap of ſtones.

1772. April.

The game here, and in the country about Conſtantia, conſiſts chiefly of ſmall *antilopes*, as in *Falſe-bay*, viz. of *ſteenbocks*, the *antilope grimmia* of PALLAS, and of *Klip-ſpringers*, which, however, I have not had an opportunity of examining near; likewiſe of *diving goats*, ſo called from a peculiar manner they have of leaping and diving, as it were, under the buſhes. The method of hunting theſe ſmall antilopes is to drive them from their cover among the buſhes, which is beſt done by hounds; at which time the ſportſman muſt take care to be ready with his gun. They are likewiſe caught with ſnares placed at the entrance into vineyards and kitchen-gardens. Theſe ſnares are faſtened to the top of an elaſtic branch or bough of a tree, one end of which is made quite faſt in the earth, and the other being bent downwards, is attached very ſlightly to a board, which is laid on the ground, and covered a little with earth. It is farther ſo contrived, that when the animal treads on the board, this gives a little ſwing, upon which the elaſtic bough flies looſe, and draws the ſnare over one or two of the animal's legs, at the ſame time lifting the creature up along with it into the air, ſo that it remains hanging there. Among other animals I ſaw here *ichneumons* (*viverra ichneumon*) and *civet cats* (*viverra genetta*) caught in traps near farm-houſes. They were ſomething bigger than a common cat, and have a bad name with houſewifes for making great havock among the poultry and eggs; though, on the other hand, they do a great deal of ſervice by deſtroying the larger kind of rats. In the more general œconomy of nature, theſe animals are ſtill more ſerviceable; more ſo indeed than the people at the

the *Cape* are capable of diſtinguiſhing, or know how to turn to their advantage. The river *Nile* and *Egypt* itſelf for inſtance, would be full of *crocodiles*, if their eggs were not in a great meaſure deſtroyed by the *viverra ichneumon*. In the Eaſt-Indies this animal is famous for leſſening the number of lizards and venomous ſerpents, which too much abound there; and the ſame ſervice is undoubtedly done by the *viverra* ſpecies in Africa. Theſe certainly contribute alſo to keep the number of moles within certain limits. The *ichneumon* is likewiſe uſed to be made tame in the Eaſt-Indies, ſo as to follow its maſter as tractably as a dog; and by its means it has been diſcovered, that the *ophiorhiza* is an excellent antidote againſt the bite of ſerpents. Probably a diſcovery of equal utility might be made at the *Cape*, if the *ichneumon* was made tame there, and theſe animals were purpoſely ſuffered to be bitten by ſeveral ſorts of ſerpents, and at the ſame time it was obſerved what antidote they had recourſe to; for nature, which has given, and indeed impoſed on the ichneumon the ſame office in *Africa* as in *Aſia*, viz. to limit the increaſe of the race of ſerpents, has in both places furniſhed them with equally good weapons, and an equally good preſervative. Experiments of this kind certainly deſerve to be made with the *viverra genetta*, and ſome others of that genus. The *folliculus* of this latter creature contains a kind of muſk, in all probability not without ſome particular intention in its all-wiſe Creator, nor without ſome uſe to the animal itſelf; perhaps, indeed, for that of men, when they ſhall be at the pains to make the diſcovery.

1772. April.

It

1772. April.

It would not be amiſs to make mention in this place of a third ſpecies of *viverra*, which is found in theſe parts, though I did not get a ſight of it till after my return from the South-Sea; this was the *viverra putorius*, which an acquaintance of mine caught on Mr. DREIJER's farm at *Rondeboſch*, ſituated nearer to the Cape than to *Alphen*. This animal is not known to be found any where but here and in North America; in one word, in the northern parts of the new world, and the ſouthernmoſt promontory of the old, which is directly contrary to what M. BUFFON ſays he is morally certain of. The ſureſt ſtep this great and maſterly natural hiſtorian could have taken, would have been to have contented himſelf with the contemplation of nature, which is never without its uſe, without endeavouring to lay down univerſal laws for her; as if no other animal could be common to the old and new world, than thoſe which could eaſily paſs by land from *Aſia* to *America*.

In one of my excurſions between *Alphen* and *Rondeboſch*, near a marſhy place in a dale, I came unawares upon an animal with which I was totally unacquainted; but notwithſtanding it was within 70 or 80 paces of me, I could not get a perfect view of it, on account of the intervention of the buſhes, and the creature's running away immediately. It did not ſeem however above three feet and a half high, but from its aſh-grey colour, and remarkably heavy gait in running, I was induced to think it could be nothing elſe than a young *hippopotamus*, or, as it was here called, a SEA-COW. Creatures of this kind are, indeed, never ſeen in this part of the country; but they are uſed to wander far, ſo that perhaps this had the night before chanced to

ſtray

ſtray from *Zeekoe-valley*, near *Falſe-bay*, a place to which they frequently reſort. Were it ſo, I am not at all ſorry that I did not get a nearer view of a creature otherwiſe ſo very dangerous, as, according to my uſual cuſtom, I had no other weapon about me than my knife and inſect-ſciſſars. 1772. April.

The reader will ſcarcely imagine, that the *fauna* and *flora Capenſis* would this ſummer leave me any time for the hyp or vapours; I muſt, however, confeſs, that ſome ſolitary and idle hours, combined with other circumſtances, now and then gave room and occaſion for envy and diſguſt. The days at the *Cape*, by reaſon of the greater vicinity of that place to the equator, are ſhorter in ſummer than with us. Urged by an ardent zeal and inclination for natural hiſtory, I could not help repining, that in a place where I had the beſt opportunities for this purpoſe, I found my hands tied, in ſome meaſure, by other buſineſs in the day-time, and in the long evenings was in want of books and many other neceſſary helps; but I more particularly felt the want of friends, and of ſociety with ſome one, who ſet a proper value upon ſtudy, particularly on the ſtudy and inveſtigation of nature, of which here follows an inſtance.

A Cape phyſician, who had ſtudied ſome time in Holland, paid me a viſit at the villa where I reſided, and aſked, I do not know upon what occaſion, to ſee my herbal. I, for my part, was in the higheſt degree deſirous to give myſelf, as well as him, this pleaſure, as I could not but hope to learn the virtues of divers plants in medicine. But in theſe hopes I ſoon found myſelf deceived; the African Æſculapius knowing ſcarcely the names, much leſs the uſe, of any one plant. On this ſubject the country

1772. April. try people had already given me ſome, though upon the whole, but little information. Of ſome hundred plants that I laid before him paſted in a book, we had ſcarcely turned over the third part, before he began every now and then to gape. I therefore thought it high time to give another turn to the converſation, and ceaſed to trouble him any longer with my enquiries. Inſtead of that, I endeavoured to rouſe him out of his dream, by communicating to him my thoughts of the virtues of ſuch and ſuch an herb; for what diſorders ſuch a particular plant might be tried with ſafety and hopes of ſucceſs; and this in conſequence of its affinity and ſimilitude to other plants already known, and whoſe virtues had undergone the teſt of experience, or (as far as one might conclude from hence) from the place it held among the *natural orders*, &c. My viſitor all this while was neither polite nor intelligent enough to give his aſſent to what I ſaid, but continued yawning and gaping. I therefore left above half the plants untouched, and turned the diſcourſe to the ſubject of commerce and ſhipping, upon which the converſation immediately became more lively; an event, which did not at all ſurprize me; for this worthy phyſician's income depended more upon merchandize, than upon Apollo and the Muſes; and it is much the ſame caſe with the reſt of the faculty at the *Cape*, to the great prejudice of the ſick in particular, as well as to that of natural knowledge and the art of medicine in general.

Should this journal ever chance to fall into the hands of the phyſician, who was pleaſed to yawn over the collection of uſeful ſimples that I had the honour of laying before him,

him, it is to be hoped, he will kindly excuſe my having borrowed ſo pleaſing an original as himſelf, in order to give a more lively idea of the great eſteem and credit in which botany ſtands with the collective body of Æſculapius's ſons in Africa. I muſt, however, do him the juſtice to confeſs, that he was really, in my opinion, the moſt able of the faculty in that part of the world. I acknowledge with gratitude all the civilities he afterwards ſhewed me; but he muſt not take amiſs my not being able to conceal a truth, which diſcovers the reaſon of the ſmall progreſs made by the ſciences in *Africa*, and, perhaps, in ſome other parts of the globe: he will likewiſe pardon the freedom I have taken, in ſetting the whole affair forth in its natural colours, juſt as it appeared to me; as in ſuch caſe, the reader is enabled to paſs ſentence of judgment himſelf, frequently better, perhaps, than could be done by the relator. 1772. April.

SECT. IV.

Trip to Paarl.

1772. April. SINCE my deſign, as I have already ſaid, is to give my readers the deſcription of this country and people in the ſame order and manner, in which I myſelf became acquainted with them, I have thought proper to inſert in this place an account of an excurſion I took to *Paarl* and its environs, juſt as I drew it up immediately on my return home, in a letter to a worthy friend and quondam ſhip-mate. It is written in the true ſea-ſtyle, the deſcriptions and narrative being plentifully interlarded with divers phraſes in common uſe among the gallant ſons of Neptune.

SIR,

With a carcaſe quite wearied out, I am juſt returned home from a journey on foot over the parched and torrid plains of Africa, after having had occaſion to viſit ſeveral African *boors*. So they here call a ſet of hearty honeſt fellows, who, though they do not, indeed, differ in rank from our Swediſh peaſants, and make no better figure than the yeomen in our country, are yet for the moſt part extremely

tremely wealthy. On the 9th of October in this preſent year, I ſet out for the *Cape*, to ſee the burghers perform their exerciſe, and likewiſe, according to a previous agreement with Mr. O——G, a countryman of our's, to take a view of the vegetable and animal productions of this country. By this you will find, Sir, that I intended to kill two birds with one ſtone. With regard to the military operations, the brave warriors kept within doors on the 10th on account of the high wind, which indeed was ſo violent at the bottom of *Lion-mountain*, whither I went out a botanizing, that I was ſeveral times obliged to lay myſelf down upon the ground. On the 11th the whole burgeſſy turned out into the field; the coats, as well of the horſe as of the foot, were, to be ſure, all blue, but of ſuch different ſhades, that they might as well have been red, purple and yellow. Their waiſtcoats, particularly thoſe of the infantry, were brown, blue and white, in ſhort all the colours of the rainbow. A French prieſt, clothed in black, with red heels to his ſhoes, ſtood near me, and could not help expreſſing to me his amazement at ſeeing ſuch a party-coloured equipment. However, this did not hinder them from going through their exerciſe extremely well, as a great number of them were Europeans, who had ſerved in the laſt war in Germany, and ſince that time had been in garriſon at the Cape, when, in conſequence of having ſerved five years, they had become denizens of the country. Ambitious, therefore, of keeping up their military reputation, and puffed up with pride in conſequence of their ſuperiority in point of fortune, they took it into their heads ſeveral years ago to conſider it as a very diſgraceful circumſtance, that

1772. April.

1772. April.

they ſhould be obliged to make front againſt the garriſon, which, on their ſide, felt themſelves ſo much hurt by the compariſon, that the attack became very ſerious; ſo that among other things they loaded on each ſide with coat-buttons, pieces of money, and the like. Since this accident, both theſe corps are never exerciſed at one and the ſame time. Being diſappointed at not having the company of our countryman, I ſet off on my expedition with a Mulatto for my guide, whom I hired for a quarter of a rix-dollar per diem. Over his ſhoulder he carried a ſtaff, at one end of which hung my apparatus for keeping my herbs, at the other a counterpoiſe compoſed of a wallet filled with proviſions and a few clothes. This guide of mine, proud of the name of *baſtard*, ſoon gave me to underſtand, that he was no ſlave, as moſt of the blacks are, but was free-born by his mother's ſide, as her mother was a Hottentot, and her father an European (as he ſuppoſed) of a tolerable good family. To make ſhort of my ſtory, I quitted the town, implicitly following my blind deſtiny and my tawny pilot. We ſteered our courſe north-weſt, and after a number of traverſes over the plains, by twelve o'clock we had got to the gallows. *Heus Viator!* Here we ſtopped a little to contemplate the uncertainty of human life. Above half a ſcore wheels placed round it, preſented us with the moſt horrid ſubjects for this purpoſe; the inevitable conſequences, and at the ſame time the moſt flagrant proofs of ſlavery and tyranny; monſters, that never fail to generate each other, together with crimes and miſdemeanors of every kind, as ſoon as either of them is once introduced into any country. The gallows itſelf, the largeſt

I ever

1772. April.

I ever ſaw, was indeed of itſelf a ſufficiently wide door to eternity; but was by no means too large for the purpoſe of a tyrannical government, that in ſo ſmall a town as the *Cape*, could find ſeven victims to be hanged in chains. Farther on, where the ſand had been formed into a hard maſs by the rain-water lying upon it, I found a number of cicindelæ ſkipping about, of an unknown ſpecies. At this my companion, who had never before ſeen an inſect-hunter, fell a laughing as if he was out of his wits, and ſeemed all wonder and aſtoniſhment.

There is not a bridge to be found in all Africa. We were therefore obliged to wade over ſome pretty deep brooks and rivers; ſo that herborizing, it muſt be owned, is a very troubleſome buſineſs here: but then, on the other hand, the harveſt is rich. As ſoon as I had ſat myſelf down, I made a curious diſcovery of a remarkably prickly *rumex* (or dock), and likewiſe of the *tribulus terreſtris*. Now and then we rambled up and down recruiting for my regiment of inſects, and my collection of plants; an employment which, in proportion as it enlivened my mind, infuſed freſh ſpirits into my body, and ſtrength into my limbs. Theſe latter I had likewiſe an opportunity of reſting on the following occaſion. Among the waggons that overtook us, there was one drawn by ſix pair of oxen, after the faſhion of the country. In this a ſlave lay aſleep, as drunk as David's ſow, likewiſe in a great meaſure after the country faſhion. Another however more ſober than he, ſat at the helm, with a whip, the handle of which was three times the length of a man, and the thong in proportion. In this country they never uſe reins to their oxen, for which reaſon,

1772. April. reaſon, though he flouriſhed his whip about from right to left with great dexterity, the beaſts not being under much diſcipline heaved continually from larboard to ſtarboard, ſometimes acroſs the road, and ſometimes along-ſide of it; ſo that the driver was not unfrequently obliged to jump off from the waggon, in order to impreſs his ſentiments with the greater energy on the foremoſt oxen of the team. The waggons are ſo large and wide in the carriage that they cannot eaſily overturn, and where the road is worſe than ordinary, the foremoſt oxen are uſually led. Up in the waggon ſat a Dutchman, who being much hurt at ſeeing me on foot, very courteouſly obliged me, together with my ſervant, to get into the waggon and ride. In about the ſame latitude we were overtaken by a farmer. We hailed one another, that is, we called to, and ſaluted each other, as ſhips do at ſea; and were informed by him, that he was a *Mother-country* lad (ſo the Europeans are called here), and had a wife and family near the *twenty-four rivers*, at the diſtance of forty *uurs* from thence, in one of the prettieſt ſpots, to his mind, in the whole country. But I now began to reflect, that neither TOURNEFORT in the *Levant*, nor LINNÆUS in the *Lapland* mountains, nor any other botaniſt, had ever gone out a herborizing in a ſix-yoked waggon, and at the ſame time that my ſtudies and collections could be in no wiſe forwarded by a carriage of this kind; moreover, that although by this means my legs might get ſome eaſe, the other parts of me would ſuffer for it in conſequence of the jolting of the carriage; therefore taking to my feet again, I went on till I arrived at the company's farm. The

ſteward

ſteward (or as they call him there, the *baas*) preſented me with a glaſs of a ſtrong-bodied wine, which was by no means adapted to quench my thirſt; but the water here was brackiſh, and had a ſalt taſte, and they had no milk nor cows, although there was upon the farm a conſiderable number of horſes and other cattle. The reaſon of this was, that in ſuch places there is uſually ſtationed a guard of ſoldiers, who care more for wine than milk; the paſture was likewiſe greatly in fault, being unfavourable for milch-cows, and drying up their milk. I therefore took leave of the *baas*, an appellation given to all the chriſtians here, particularly to bailiffs and farmers. The next farm belonged to a peaſant, who was a native of Africa. I now took it into my head for the firſt time, to make a trial of this people's ſo much boaſted hoſpitality; but unluckily the man himſelf was gone to the review at the *Cape*, and had left only a few ſlaves at home, under the command of an old Crone, who ſaid that the bed-clothes were locked up. I could eaſily perceive, that ſhe had as little deſire to harbour me, as I had to ſtay with her. It was now already dark, but notwithſtanding this and my ſtiff and wearied legs, I reſolved to go on to another farm-houſe, that appeared in ſight. We miſſed our way in a dale, and wandered among the thickets and buſhes. The *jackalls*, or African *foxes*, now began their nightly ſerenade, pretty much in the ſame notes as our foxes in Europe; frogs and owls filled up the concert with their horridly plaintive accompaniment. At length we came to a little riſing ground, whence we could again diſcern the farm, and diſcover the right road. A guard of dogs, which in

1772: April.

Africa

1772. April. Africa are allowed the unlimited privilege of falling foul on ſuch foot paſſengers of a night, (the later the more liable to ſuſpicion,) ſet upon us, and frightened us not a little. It was now half an hour paſt eight; however, as the people were not yet in bed, they came out to our aſſiſtance, ſo that we received no other wounds than thoſe inflicted on the ſkirts of our coats. We were turned into the kitchen, where we heard a piece of news, that ſounded like a thunder-clap to us; this was, that the *baas* or ſteward was gone to the review, and that every accommodation was locked up. But I felt the preſſure of this difficulty ſtill more at break of day. In the mean time the ſlave, with the greateſt good-nature and reſpect, begged me to be ſo kind as to make ſhift with a little tea and bread which he had of his own. My ſervant, together with this houſe-ſlave, and another that looked after the cattle, fell on board a loaf of coarſe bread and lard; to them a moſt delicate and ſavoury diſh. After they had deliberated ſome time upon the matter in the Portugueſe language, I was put into the abſent *baas*'s own bed-chamber. The bed was tolerable, but the floor was made of loam, the walls bare, and the whole furniture conſiſted of a cracked tea-caniſter, with a few empty bottles, and a couple of chairs.

As the door would not lock I ſet the chairs againſt it, ſo that in caſe any attempt ſhould be made againſt my life I might be awakened by the noiſe. After this I laid myſelf down to ſleep, with a drawn knife under my pillow. The many murders that, to my knowledge, were committed in this country, rendered this caution extremely neceſſary.

The

The next morning I began to aſk for my breakfaſt, which conſiſted of ſome ſtale *ſmalt*, a kind of lard prepared and kept in a wooden trough, to be uſed by way of butter; I likewiſe got hold of a chop of veniſon, which they broiled for me, but ſeaſoned it too high with pepper. My hunger made me ſo civil, as not to ſhow any ſlight to my black hoſt's entertainment, but I did not ſit long at table. An unexpected but very violent quarrel, carried on in the Portugueſe language, which I did not underſtand, now aroſe between the domeſtic ſlave and the cow-keeper. Both their black faces looked like coals on fire. At laſt the latter taking out his knife, the other was forced to buy him off with a large ſlice of meat; upon which lighting his breakfaſt pipe, he went his way, after they had on both ſides renewed their friendſhip with looks of the utmoſt cordiality. However, for all this ſeeming reconciliation, the houſe-ſlave took a cruel revenge on his antagoniſt's dog, which happened to ſtay behind in the kitchen. Yet, notwithſtanding his having been guilty of ſo mean an action, this ſlave had caught ſo much of the generous flame of the African hoſpitality, that I could not eaſily perſuade him to accept of a trifling acknowledgment for his ſervices. Soon after break of day I ſet out again on my journey, when, for the firſt time ſince my arrival in theſe parts, my eyes were gratified with the ſight of extenſive corn-fields, which were now in full verdure, with their blades riſing a foot out of the ground; for in Tyger-mountain diſtrict, where I was at this time, the tillage of corn is the huſbandman's chief employ. Wheat and barley, however, are the only ſorts of corn that are

1772. April.

1772. April. found in the whole colony. The former is uſed only to be bread, the latter merely for the purpoſe of foddering horſes; partly in this way, that the green corn is cut down in the blade once or oftener according as the growth of it will admit, and partly by grinding it into groats, and then mixing it with the cut ſtraw for their horſes as ſoon as it comes to its full growth, as is practiſed with us. About ten o'clock I took ſhelter from the rain in a farm-houſe, where I found the female ſlaves ſinging pſalms, while they were at their needle-work. Their maſter, being poſſeſſed with a zeal for religion quite unuſual in this country, had prevailed with them to adopt this godly cuſtom; but with that ſpirit of œconomy which univerſally prevails among theſe coloniſts, he had not permitted them to be initiated into the community of chriſtians by baptiſm; ſince by that means, according to the laws of the land, they would have obtained their freedom, and he would have loſt them from his ſervice. This very godly *boor* was born at Berlin, and had been mate of a ſhip in the Eaſt-Indies. This occaſioned us to enter into a converſation on the victories of his much-loved monarch, and in the ſpace of an hour after that, upon every ſubject that could be imagined. My throat ſtill felt as if it was burnt up with pepper, and my ſtomach was tormented with hunger. The former was aſſuaged by a couple of glaſſes of wine, but being aſhamed to complain of the latter, I left it to its fate to wait till noon (when perhaps I might chance to get an invitation from ſome good ſoul,) and returned to my botanical calling and occupation among the ſhrubs and buſhes, with which this country is almoſt entirely covered, excepting ſuch ſpots as are cultivated.

Hardly a ſtick of wood, indeed ſcarcely any wild tree, is to be ſeen here. The ſoil hereabouts, viz. round about *Tyger-berg* and *Koe-berg*, is, to all appearance, moſtly a dry barren ſand or gravel; yet, in this diſtrict, ſo full of hillocks, there are certain dales covered with mould, and yielding a plentiful harveſt to a few peaſants, who apply to the culture of lemon, orange, and pomegranate-trees. At three in the afternoon I arrived at the houſe of farmer *Van der Spoei*, who was a widower, and an African born, and likewiſe brother to the perſon, who, you know, is proprietor of the red or old *Conſtantia*. Without ſeeming to take the leaſt notice, he ſtood ſtock-ſtill in the houſe-paſſage waiting for my coming up, and then did not ſtir a ſingle ſtep to meet me, but taking me by the hand, greeted me with *Good day! welcome! how are you? who are you? a glaſs of wine? a pipe of tobacco? will you eat any thing?* I anſwered his queſtions in the ſame order as he put them, and at the ſame time accepted of the offer he made at the cloſe of them. His daughter, a clever well-behaved girl about twelve or fourteen years of age, ſet on the table a fine breaſt of lamb, with ſtewed carrots for ſauce; and after dinner offered me tea with ſo good a grace, that I hardly knew which to prefer, my entertainment or my fair attendant. Diſcretion and goodneſs of heart might be plainly read in the countenance and demeanour of both father and child. I ſeveral times addreſſed myſelf to my hoſt, in order to break in upon his ſilence. His anſwers were ſhort and diſcreet; but upon the whole, he never began the converſation himſelf, any farther than to aſk me to ſtay with them that night: how-

1772. April.

1772. April. ever, I took leave of him, not without being much affected with a benevolence as uncommon to be met with, as undeſerved on my part. In my great zeal for botany, I did not pay the leaſt attention to my ſtiff and wearied legs, but hobbled as well as I could over the dry and torrid hills, moving all the day long as if I was upon ſtilts. Towards evening I felt myſelf leſs weary, as, by a continuation of the motion of walking and jumping, my limbs were grown more pliable. Not far from the farm we had a brook to croſs, where we met with a female ſlave, who very officiouſly and obligingly ſhewed us the ſhalloweſt places. She ſeemed to lay her account in receiving ſome amorous kind of acknowledgment, in which ſhe could not be otherwiſe than diſappointed, as ſhe had the misfortune to meet with a delicate as well as a weary philoſopher. In the evening I arrived in good time at a farm, where the father and mother were from home; but *Maſter John* and *Miſs Suſey* gave me houſe-room notwithſtanding. It was a handſome building, and, like all the reſt on the road, compoſed partly of brick, and partly of well-wrought clay, but without any other floor than the bare earth. I had intended to go on farther, but when I ſaw a large churn on the floor, and heard from Suſey's own mouth, that they had thirty milch-cows, you may imagine that I did not think of going, eſpecially as I had ſeldom found milk very plentiful ſince my arrival in Africa. The farm was ſaid to yield about three thouſand two hundred buſhels of corn yearly, which was from ten to fifteen times the quantity that was ſown. A good wheaten loaf, light and well-baked, and about two feet in diameter, was ſet upon the

the table, and of this, with ſome milk and freſh butter, I made an excellent meal. They ſeemed to take a great pleaſure in entertaining me, and (though they ſtrove to conceal their laughter) appeared highly entertained in their turn with my broken Dutch, and my apparatus for catching and preſerving inſects. My collection of herbs they liked very well, as they themſelves prepared a kind of plaiſter with herbs and wax. The next morning they brought me coffee, which I left untouched, it being full of grouts, and, according to the cuſtom of the country, as weak as ſmall beer. However, I ſet out again on my journey, quite lively and briſk after the high treat I had had of milk. As my box of inſects was already quite full, I was obliged to put a whole regiment of flies and other inſects round the brim of my hat. On the road we paſſed a cow-keeper, who was roaſting a ſmall tortoiſe, the fleſh of which taſted like that of a chicken. Two or three miles farther on we met with a ſhepherd, that was regaling himſelf with roaſt lamb at his maſter's expence. My companion, who knew the full value of his liberty, expreſſed great ſatisfaction at finding, that poor ſlaves had ſometimes an opportunity of revenging themſelves on their tyrants by a breach of truſt. He informed me, that it was common for ſhepherds, who had rigid and niggardly maſters, when a ewe had twins, to keep always one of them for themſelves, and very often the other too, whenever they had an opportunity of concealing the theft. At three o'clock we came to another farm. Here I had ſome converſation with the old lady of the houſe about her gout, which ſhe had in her hands and feet, and at the ſame time con-

1772. April.

1772. April. concerning her good man's rheumatiſm, which in order to get rid of by ſweating, he was gone on a journey to the warm baths. A houſe plaiſtered up in a ſlovenly manner with clay, a heap of dirty ſcabby children, a female ſlave dragging after her a heavy iron chain faſtened to one of her legs, the features of the old woman herſelf, her peaked noſe, her perpetually ſcolding her ſervants, and laſtly, her entertaining me with nothing but cold water, plainly indicated that poverty dwelt in her houſe, and at the ſame time that the gout had in her choleric temperament a very fertile ſoil to grow in. She adviſed me to ſet myſelf down in the *Paarl* (a tract of ground a little way from thence planted with vines, and inhabited by vine-dreſſers,) in order to make my fortune by turning quack. She informed me, that there had been a phyſician there before, who had had no practice, as his price was too high. She ſaid, that ſhe never could, nor ever ſhould be perſuaded to be bled, or to take any kind of phyſic; nevertheleſs, ſhe thought it very comfortable for a perſon to have acceſs to a phyſician in caſe of ſickneſs. You ſee, Sir, that an African cottage will afford you a view of mankind, ſimilar to what you may have had in the palaces of Europe, where (it muſt be owned) they call in phyſicians to their aſſiſtance, but ſeldom fail to manage themſelves in a great meaſure according to their own caprice. In purſuance of the information I got I took the road to the right, which, I was told, would carry me to the houſe of a rich and infirm widow of fifty-two years of age. My ſervant, who was acquainted there, warned me not to frighten the good woman into fits with my inſects ſtuck on the brim of my hat;

hat; for which reaſon, having arrived there about five o'clock, and been well received by her, I took care to turn the crown of my hat away from her, and afterwards hid my hat in a corner of the room. Immediately my mouth was crammed with bread, butter, and cheeſe, wine and tea, and at the ſame time was employed in giving diſſertations on the gout, apoplexy, violent bleedings at the noſe, coughs, and her poor deceaſed huſband's dropſy. The good lady was attentive to hear, and I to eat, as much as ever my lectures would permit me. During theſe, a tell-tale huſſey of a female ſlave, who was a favourite with her miſtreſs, had been pumping my ſervant in the kitchen, on which ſhe whiſpered her miſtreſs in the ear, that my hat was full of little beaſts (*kleine beſtjes.*) The old lady immediately quitted the fine inſtructions that I was about giving her with reſpect to diet, in order to go and look at the ſtrange and wonderful ſight that was to be ſeen on my hat. But what aſtoniſhed her the moſt in this affair was, to ſee the little animals run through the body with pins, and faſtened to the brim of my hat. An explanation was required on the ſpot. It was now neceſſary for me to ceaſe eating a while, for fear of being choaked with ſome of the big words and long Dutch phraſes, which I was obliged to coin on the ſpot, in order to convince her of the great utility of underſtanding theſe little animals for medical and œconomical purpoſes, and at the ſame time to the glory of the great Creator. Fortunately for me I deſcanted on this ſubject with great ſucceſs, though not without ſome inquietude; for, in caſe I had not ſucceeded, I ſhould certainly have been turned out of doors for a conjuror (*hexmeeſter:*)

1772. April.

1772. April. *meeſter*:) but now, on the contrary, the good woman begged me to ſtay, and I promiſed myſelf a good night's reſt in ſuch an elegant and well-furniſhed houſe. Soon after there came a light cart, with company. This conſiſted, firſt, of her daughter; ſecondly, of a very ſtout fat country 'ſquire or yeoman, Mr. M * *, who was ſaid to be able to give each of his daughters four thouſand guineas on their marriage, one of whom had, by ſome accident or other, already lain in of a black child, the father of which, as a reward for his kindneſs, had been advanced from the condition of ſlave to that of priſoner for life in one of the *Robben* iſles, and the lady herſelf to that of wife to her father's bailiff; thirdly, the 'ſquire's half brother, ſtill more corpulent than himſelf. The father of theſe gentlemen was a native of *Livonia*, and had been a ſoldier in the Swediſh ſervice. They had ſeen an inſect-hunter before, but when they looked into my collection of herbs, and found it to contain not only flowers, but likewiſe graſs and ſmall branches of ſhrubs and trees, they could not forbear laughing at a ſight ſo unexpected. The young lady got from me all the intelligence I could give her on the ſubject of pimples and freckles, and, by way of reimburſing myſelf, I aſked her ſeveral queſtions concerning domeſtic remedies and the warm bath, which ſhe had lately uſed for three weeks. She likewiſe, together with her mother, adviſed me to practiſe phyſic in PAARL; but it is a great pity, they added, that a man who ſeems to underſtand our diſorders ſo well, ſhould ſpeak our language ſo ill.

There

There was no milk to be had here, but the want of it was amply ſupplied by a very good and well-dreſſed ſupper. The wine went round in bumpers to each others healths, and to the continuance of our friendſhip and acquaintance. The converſation turned upon various ſubjects, and among others, thoſe of corpulency, and the cuſtom of ſleeping after dinner; and the efficient cauſe of theſe, viz. the Livonian gentlemen's uſe of the warm bath in this climate, was diſcuſſed with great preciſion. We wiſhed one another a good night; but I myſelf reſted very ill; for the unuſually purſy batchelor, who fell to my ſhare, ſnored continually, and proved very troubleſome. He looked indeed very good-humoured, as well as his lively and *plaiſirige broeder*, but was not able to ſay much; and when he did ſpeak, he wheezed ſo much, as to be for the moſt part unintelligible to me. He puffed and blowed more in putting on his ſhoes and ſtockings, than I did when I laſt went up Table-mountain. The next morning I bid theſe good people adieu, and took the road leading to *Mountain-river* in *Paarl*. The ferry lay a good deal out of my way, who had no particular buſineſs to tranſact on the other ſide; ſo that having obſerved an uncultivated iſlet, three or four fathoms diſtant from the bank, where the ſheep and goats could not get to foreſtall me in the blooming produce of the ſoil, I ventured over on ſome bundles of the palmites, I ſpoke of above, (*acorus palmita*) which were ſo ſmooth and brittle, that, if I had chanced to make the leaſt ſlip, I muſt have been inevitably drowned by getting between them, or elſe under them. My hat and queue excepted, I went a botanizing on this iſland in the ſame dreſs

1772. April.

1772. April. as Adam wore in his ſtate of innocence. My ſkin quite parched up by the ſun, ſerved, however, to convince me, that I had loſt in my little paradiſe the dominion over the gnats and horſe-flies. Theſe diminutive animals ſoon obliged me to turn back and put on my clothes, when I afterwards botanized along the courſe of the river, and ſo paſſing through ſeveral farms, I arrived at *Paarl* at a miller's, who was ſitting and taking his afternoon's nap. A more ſerious and even ſeemingly ſurly chap, I never ſaw in my life. He ſet before me an old crazy chair, and without aſking who I was, ſaid directly, *What will you chuſe to have?* (*Wat zal ye bruiken?*) I ſee, replied I, you have got ſome tea, be ſo kind as to give me ſome bread to it, for I am both hungry and thirſty; I have ſpent the whole day in culling of ſimples. *What, have you eat nothing to-day? Girl, bring ſome meat, bread, and a bottle of wine!* ſays the croſs-grained old fellow. Accordingly I ate my belly full, and afterwards drank to his health; during the whole of which time he was ſmoking his pipe in ſilence, and poring over an aſtrological almanack of the laſt century. During all which time, he did not once addreſs himſelf to me; and to a queſtion or two I aſked him, he anſwered me ſo ſhort, that I imagined he was extremely diſpleaſed with my viſit, and therefore could not help preſſing him to accept of a pecuniary recompence for my entertainment. He anſwered me poſitively with a moſt inflexible air, *No*; *that I certainly will not, it is our duty to aſſiſt travellers.* For my ſervant, without my knowledge, had ordered a good luncheon of bread and meat, but did not follow me half way over his ſlippery loam-floor when I took my leave of him. Affected

with an internal ſenſe of gratitude, I wiſhed within myſelf, that heaven might pardon ſo worthy a miller, in caſe he ſhould at any time chance to treſpaſs on his neighbour's corn. 1772. April.

A little farther on lived a *Koſter*, that is, a Sexton, a ſet of people that are more reſpected by the Calviniſts than with us. He was of black extraction by the mother's ſide. I went in, ſat myſelf down, and drank a diſh of miſerable tea without ſugar. The Koſter's wife, who was rather in years, was then ſick in bed. I enquired into the nature of the diſorder: but when I was told that the patient, notwithſtanding the uſe of the warm bath for three weeks, remained as it were contracted in all her limbs, and her joints quite filled up with chalk-ſtones, I did not chuſe to ſay any thing more, than that the gout was a terrible affliction, ſhrugged up my ſhoulders, and inquired for the right road. Juſt before the door grew the *Cataputia*. I aſked the man if he made any uſe of the ſeeds, or whether I might gather any of it? He anſwered, he did not uſe them himſelf, but in general gave them to his friends: *Gather what you will*, continued he, *I never heard any body aſk after them before, what do you want them for? For medical purpoſes*, replied I. I now had brought an old houſe over my head, and was obliged to go in again, and hear the account of the old woman's illneſs, as well as explain the cauſe of it. However, I thought it neceſſary to inform her, with very little circumlocution, that her ſtay in this calamitous world was likely to be of very ſhort duration. She was glad to be freed from her miſery, and her huſband to get rid of a ſickly wife; on which account they both of

1772. April. them ſeemed to hear my fatal prognoſtic with pleaſure, and made me drink a couple of glaſſes of wine for my pains; and at the ſame time offered to ſhew me the church, which ſtood juſt by. By this edifice I could plainly perceive, that theſe boors beſtowed no more pains upon God's houſe, than they did upon their own. This church was, indeed, as big as one of our largeſt ſized hay-barns, and neatly covered, as the other houſes are, with dark-coloured reeds; but without any arching or ceiling, ſo that the tranſoms and beams withinſide made a miſerable appearance. Altars and altar-tables are, I believe, never uſed in the reformed church. There were benches on the ſides for the men, but the women have each of them their chair or ſtool in the aiſle. The pulpit was too plain and ſlovenly.

From hence I ſet off for home by a bye-way, as little known to my guide as to myſelf. Eighteen China oranges, which I had bought in *Paarl* for one ſkelling Dutch, proved extremely ſerviceable to me at this time; and a large roll of tobacco which my ſervant had taken with him, was a ſtill more deſirable *vade mecum* for him. He carried really a heavy load, which however appeared to be very little burden to him. On the other hand however, it muſt be conſidered, that he went on always in a ſtrait line, while I continually ran from one ſide to the other, peeping among the buſhes. It was already dark when we arrived at a farm-houſe, where the boor himſelf was not at home. During his abſence, I drew his wife into a converſation concerning houſhold affairs, and found (what I much wondered at in ſo ſubſtantial a houſe) that they had ſeldom any great plenty of milk; and this on account of the dry barren hills

near

near them, and other cauſes not worth mentioning here; but that on the other hand, they had a good ſtock of ſheep, ſome arable land, and vineyards, which, by means of water-conduits, might be rendered fertile. She was a generous and good kind of woman as one would wiſh to ſee, but unluckily happened to offer me juſt every thing that I did not wiſh for, wine, brandy, and tobacco. Her huſband, a very briſk lively old fellow, being at laſt come home, immediately drank to me, ſaying, *Perhaps you ſuppoſe that nobody knows any thing but yourſelf, with your herbs and you, but you ſhall ſee that we African peaſants are not all ſo ſtupid as you think for.* Upon this, by way of *ſurpriſing* me, he diſplayed a few good books, and a heap of traſh, on almoſt every ſcience; all of which I could do no other than commend, as he did nothing but run between me and his book-caſe, and read over the whole title-page of every book, the printer's and bookſeller's name not excepted. *You ſee*, ſays he, *that I do not ſpend my whole time in following the plough.* We almoſt called one another Couſin-Germans, he being a Livonian and I a Swede. At night there was no danger of ſtarving for want of victuals. *You muſt eat hearty with us farmers*, ſaid the kind-hearted dame. *Eat and ſpare not: we do not grudge it you.* They had their butter and cheeſe, together with hung-beef, or rather buffalo-fleſh, from their grazing farms, almoſt ſix hundred miles up the country. By the appearance of the ſoup and green-peas I could plainly perceive, that my learned hoſt had not ſtudied any books of cookery, which in Africa would have been of much more uſe to him than poetry and the dead languages. The good woman of the houſe was obliged to

1772. April.

go

1772. April.

go to bed alone, while her huſband employed himſelf with the hiſtory of JOSEPHUS, in order to convince me of his great attachment to ſtudy. Accordingly many people in this country call their ſlaves, ſome after the months, and others after the days of the week in which they were born. Early in the morning I was waked here by the horrid ſhrieks and cries of *January* and *February*, who were undergoing the diſcipline of their maſter's laſh, becauſe the horſes had not been found the preceding evening. Soon after the family got ready for going to church, but were prevented by a ſhower of rain. In the mean time we ate our breakfaſts, and drank to each others health; upon which I returned them thanks and took leave of them, with a luncheon of bread and butter doubled together, and ſtuffed into my coat-pocket by my hoſt and hoſteſs, by way of (*weegkoſt*) or proviſion for my journey. I was ſecretly much affected at receiving ſuch tokens of good-will, quite undeſerved on my part, from the hands of people to whom I was an entire ſtranger.

The woman was goodneſs itſelf, but this goodneſs was enſhrined in a mighty phlegmatic body. The old fellow's phraſeology, as well as his library, diſcovered, that he wsa, as well as myſelf, a run-away ſtudent. I likewiſe afterwards came to know, that he had been a ſurgeon, and had been ſent thither as a ſoldier by kidnappers; and at the ſame time I learned, that he had got the greater part of his books by marriage with a parſon's daughter, his preſent wife. This good woman could not have choſen, to counteract her *phlegm*, a more choleric piece of goods for a huſband, who, in ſpite of a naturally good diſpoſition, was

was ſaid, for trifling faults, to have beat ſeveral of his ſlaves to death. I could give you, Sir, many inſtances, that the exerciſe of any crime whatſoever, particularly ſuch as the ſlave trade, or the trafficking with the liberties of mankind, never fails to plunge men into diſorders and miſdemeanours of various kinds. 1772. April.

On the lands belonging to this farm ſtands the Tower of Babel, ſo they call a hill, which is mentioned by this name by KOLBE, as being of a remarkable ſize, and which will ever remain a ſtanding monument of this author's inaccuracy. I paſs over my little adventures with *ſerpents*, *ſcorpions*, *cameleons*, and other animals of the lizard kind, well knowing, that you are not endued with taſte enough to take pleaſure in, and be ſenſible of, the beauties of theſe reptiles, a race of animals with which this Canaan of Africa abounds. But I muſt not omit to tell you, how puzzled and undetermined we frequently were on our return homewards, particularly once on a large plain. Almoſt at the end of it we met with ſeven of the company's ſervants or ſoldiers, but by no means to our advantage; for theſe my fellow-chriſtians, intoxicated with the wine which they carried about them in leathern bottles or calabaſſes, were at variance among themſelves, and ſeemingly did not wiſh to give us any information, as every one of them pointed out to us an almoſt entirely different way. Jabbering to me all at once in High Dutch, Low Dutch, Hanoverian, &c. they all endeavoured to make me believe, that I ſhould meet with rivers, mountains, deſerts, and the like, if, according to their ſea dialect, I did not ſteer my courſe right. Another aſked me whither I was

bound?

1772. April.

bound? and then told me how I ſhould lay my tacks to ſtarboard and larboard. I thanked them, and got away from them as well as I could; on which they formed a ring round my ſervant, and chattered to him about the road till his head was quite turned. At length they got into a diſpute themſelves about the ſame ſubject, by which means we both got looſe from them. What was now to be done? Being without chart or compaſs, I endeavoured to direct my courſe by the ſun, till I overtook a black heathen, who was tending ſheep; and in conſequence of whoſe ſober and ſenſible directions, I arrived in the evening at a farm-houſe, the bailiff of which, a Hanoverian, welcomed me in the moſt friendly manner, with a hearty ſlap of the hand, in the African ſtyle. He entertained me with milk, and an account of the love affairs and intrigues he had when he was a ſoldier in England. He alſo gave me a liſt (which, by his deſire, I took down in my pocket-book, as the reſult of his own experience) of the conſtant order of precedence in love, which ought to be obſerved among the fair ſex in Africa: this was as follows. Firſt the *Madagaſcar* women, who are the blackeſt and handſomeſt; next to theſe the *Malabars*, then the *Buguneſe* or *Malays*, after theſe the Hottentots, and laſt and worſt of all, the white Dutch women. The exceſſively nice ſtewed cabbage we had for ſupper, he ſuppoſed to be the beſt in the world; and at the ſame time, that its criſpneſs proceeded from the ſoil being highly impregnated with ſalt-petre. In fact, the land here was ſandy and low, and probably contained much ſea-ſalt. Being but two chriſtians among twelve or fourteen men ſlaves, we bolted the door faſt, and had five loaded

loaded pieces hung over our bed. During the whole evening I had ſeen the ſlaves in ſuch good humour, and ſo kindly and familiarly treated, that (with regard to their temporal matters at leaſt) they really ſeemed to be better off than many ſervants in Europe; I therefore obſerved to my hoſt, that his mildneſs and kindneſs was the beſt pledge for their good behaviour, and the ſureſt preſervative againſt their attacks. It may be ſo, replied he, but beſides that, ſeveral runaway and rebel ſlaves are continually wandering about, in order to plunder houſes of victuals and fire-arms, or elſe to draw others over to their party; we have likewiſe inſtances of the blacks becoming furious at night, and committing murder, more particularly on the perſons of their maſters; but ſometimes, if they cannot get at them, on ſome of their comrades, or elſe upon themſelves. I am here in the place of a maſter to them, and am obliged to puniſh them whenever they behave ill to me or to each other. The Buguneſe in particular are revengeful, and nice about the adminiſtration of juſtice. In order to avoid jealouſy, quarrels, and murder, my maſter does not permit any female ſlaves to be kept here; but I could wiſh it were otherwiſe, as well as in other places, where I formerly was a ſervant. Now they are loneſome and ſolitary, and conſequently ſlow and ſluggiſh enough. The chief of my maſter's income from this farm ariſes from the breeding of horſes. Could he keep female ſlaves here, he would get ſtill more by the propagation of the human ſpecies; and indeed, a female ſlave who is prolific, is always ſold for three times as much as one that is barren. 1772. April.

1772. April.

From the information that I have juſt given you, you will perhaps, my good friend, be apt to think with me, that even the moſt ſupportable kind of tyranny always brings with it its own puniſhment, in troubled ſleep and an uneaſy conſcience. Slaves, even under the mildeſt tyrant, are bereaved of the rights of nature. The melancholy remembrance of ſo painful a loſs, is moſt apt to ariſe during the ſilence of the night, when it ceaſes to be diſſipated by the buſtle of the day. What wonder then, if thoſe who commit outrages on their liberties, ſhould ſometimes be forced to ſign and ſeal with their blood the violated rights of mankind? Ought not my hoſt, gentle as he was, to fear the effects of deſpair on twelve ſtout fellows forcibly taken from their native country, their kindred, and their freedom? Is it not likewiſe to be dreaded, that thus ſhut out from the commerce of the fair ſex, which ſweetens life, and renders its cares ſupportable, their inclinations, which are extremely warm, ſhould treſpaſs againſt manhood?—In the courſe of our converſation on rural œconomy I took notice, that a ſlave born in the country (eſpecially a *baſtard*) who can drive a waggon ſafe and well, and who can be truſted to inſpect the other ſlaves, or is looked upon as a clever and faithful ſervant, bears the price of five hundred rixdollars. One that is newly brought from Madagaſcar, or is in other reſpects not ſo ſkilful nor ſo much to be depended upon, coſts from an hundred to an hundred and fifty rixdollars. A horſe that in Sweden would fetch ten rixdollars, coſts at the Cape from thirty to forty; a draught ox from eight to ten; but a tolerable good milch-cow from twelve to fourteen; one

ditto brought from the mother country or any part of Europe, and of a ſort that produces a great quantity of milk, ſells for forty or fifty rixdollars, and the purchaſer thinks himſelf favoured into the bargain; all which has ſince been confirmed to me by ſeveral others. 1772. April.

On Monday morning I took leave, and aſked the road towards home, when I was anſwered, "There is no road this way. You muſt leave the road that goes to the Cape to the right, and then go ſtrait forward through the buſhes, when you will come within ſight of the mountain that ſtretches itſelf between Conſtantia and the Cape; then go ſtrait forward over the dry barren plains, to the nook in the mountain; you may remember it lies very near Conſtantia and your houſe. You will find no more farms in your way home." Well! thought I to myſelf, this looks as if I ſhould dine upon graſs to-day; I was vexed at having had no breaſtfaſt, and was too baſhful to give a hint of it to my hoſt, who the day before had received me with ſuch hoſpitality. We had not long been in ſight of the mountain, before we ſaw a cloud ariſe from it, which did not turn to rain till it arrived at the plain we were in. This ſhower, which was pretty heavy, ſubjected me to the greateſt inconveniencies, having expoſed myſelf to be wet through, in order to ſhelter my herbal. But of ſuch a nature is this climate, that in a few minutes, as ſoon as the ſun ſhone out again, I was quite dry. In the evening, when I came to *Alphen*, I learned, that it had not rained there in the leaſt, but the cloud covered the mountain in its uſual way.

I muſt not omit to tell you, that on the road I ſeveral times entered into a religious diſcourſe with my heathen

1772. April. companion; he aſſerted, that I was the firſt that had ſpoken to him on that ſubject, at the ſame time that he was ſo ſtupid (for ſo he called himſelf) as not to know or comprehend any thing concerning it, nor did he think it was for him to trouble himſelf with theſe matters; however, he did not ſeem unwilling to believe every thing that any body ſhould think proper to tell him. His thoughts had never aſcended to a ſuperior being, nor led him to the firſt origin of any thing, to the creature or to the Creator. He very well knew, that the white men aſſembled together in the churches, but had never thought of aſking to what purpoſe. Very likely it may be ſo, was the anſwer he uſually gave me, when I talked to him on this ſubject. Notwithſtanding this, he ſeemed to have in ſome meaſure an abhorrence of vice, and a veneration for what was good. The perſon, who at that time recommended him to my ſervice, gave him the character of being extremely faithful. In other reſpects his mind was capable enough of being illumined; but as the making of proſelytes brings the Dutch in neither capital nor intereſt, this poor ſoul, with many others of his countrymen, was neglected. But more of this and other matters by the next opportunity that offers.

I am, &c.

With the botanical excurſion, the detail of which is given in this letter, I was extremely well pleaſed on ſeveral accounts. The ſix laſt days of it might almoſt be called a forced march, intermixed with a good deal of leaping, and (what tires one full as much) clambering. With the

the ſame inclination, however, I think I could have laſted out ſeveral days longer in the ſame manner. The next day after my departure from the Cape, was, as I have already related, the moſt tireſome to me; afterwards both my limbs and joints ſeemed to get more uſed to the exerciſe. The two or three firſt days after I had got home, I felt myſelf ſore and tender, or, as people uſually expreſs it, beat and bruiſed all over, but this went off by degrees: in like manner as, thanks to the violent exerciſe I had taken, ſome diſagreeable, though ſlight touches, of a rheumatic gout entirely vaniſhed, with which I had been troubled ſome time before, and that chiefly in rainy weather; and which did not return upon me, before I was expoſed to the cold in the Antarctic polar circle. After my return home, however, I was wiſe enough to make a little excurſion every day. 1772. April.

SECT.

SECT. V.

Reſidence at Alphen, *after the Author's return from* Paarl.

1772. April. IN one of my excurſions I had the good fortune to meet with Mr. Hemming, the ſub-governor, on his farm, in the diſtrict of Conſtantia; who, though he thought highly of the ſcience of botany, was yet aſtoniſhed that my enthuſiaſm for it ſhould have carried me ſo far about in the ſpace of ſix days, viz. from the Cape over *Tiger-berg* through *Paarl*, *Botlary*, and ſo in a circle home again, and this by no means by the neareſt way.

Mr. Hemming's garden was one of the beſt in the diſtrict; he had taken pains to procure grafts of orange and lemon-trees, and layers of the pomegranate from Spain, from which he promiſed himſelf fruit equal to the Spaniſh, as what grows at the Cape at preſent is not quite ſo good. Divers ſorts of cherry-trees, that grow here, ſcarcely produced a ſingle cherry, though various trials had been made with them in different ſpots. The beſt method he had found of rooting out a *uniola*, which was overrunning his kitchen-garden, was to ſow it with cabbage for a year, as he had obſerved, that this weed never throve on land where cabbages had been ſown. The *piſang* was to be met with in his garden

garden of a luxuriant growth, but was ſaid not to produce fruit of ſo high a flavour as it does in its native country. A ſpecies of this grows wild in the *Houtniquas* country, a diſtrict ſomewhat to the eaſt of *Muſcle-bay*; though I could never find it there myſelf. 1772. April.

I continued at the farm at *Alphen* till about the middle of November. Entirely taken up with the Cape plants, I did not ſeldom revolve in my mind, how I ſhould go on with them for months and years enſuing; but fate had ordered it otherwiſe. In fact, it was ordained, that I ſhould ſuddenly change the continent of Africa, its delightful ſummer-climate, and its beautiful flowers, for a bleak cold ocean, blocked up with mountains of ice.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

VOYAGE TO THE SOUTH-SEA.

SECT. I.

The Circumſtances which gave occaſion to this Voyage.

1772. April. THE circumſtances which gave occaſion to this voyage were as follows: The ſhips *Reſolution* and *Adventure*, deſtined to make a voyage towards the South Pole and round the globe, were at that time at anchor in *Table-bay*. The Meſſrs. FORSTER accompanied them in the capacity of naturaliſts; and had an appointment from the Britiſh crown of 4000l. ſterling, or 8000 ducats, for the whole expedition. They were brought to *Alphen* by Major Van PREHM, in order to be introduced to me. By this means I had the pleaſure of enjoying their company for a couple of days. As the ſouthern continent, which was ſtill pretty generally ſuppoſed to exiſt, had taken no ſmall hold on my imagination, this was ſufficient reaſon for me to congratulate

theſe gentlemen on the truſt repoſed in them, and the good fortune they had in viſiting as naturaliſts, ſo diſtant and unknown a part of our globe. I found them not only eager each for his own part to fulfil what the world expected and required of them, but they even went ſo far in their zeal for the more accurate inveſtigation of nature, as to think of procuring an aſſiſtant, at no ſmall coſt to themſelves, and therefore offered me my voyage gratis, with part of ſuch natural curioſities as they might chance to collect, on condition of my aſſiſting them with my poor abilities. Such an unexpected return to my compliment, had almoſt deprived me of the power of anſwering them, had not my heart dictated to me the moſt lively expreſſions of gratitude to them for the confidence they placed in me. But before I could give a determinate anſwer to ſo lucrative and agreeable a propoſal, which at the ſame time did me ſo much honour, but likewiſe ſet before me a tedious, difficult, and dangerous voyage, the affair ſeemed to require ſome conſideration. Should I accept this offer, thought I, and the event prove fortunate, I ſhould ſoon forget my fatigues, nay, frequently remember with pleaſure the difficulties I had undergone. On the other hand, ſhould I once neglect this opportunity, I ſhould long have to upbraid myſelf with the omiſſion. I recollected, that the great Linnæus had frequently ſaid, nothing had vexed him more in his whole life, than that, when he reſided in Holland, he had not accepted of the offer which had been made him of taking a voyage to the Cape of Good Hope. 1772. April.

As two Swedes, Dr. SOLANDER and Mr. SPOERING, with remarkable honour to themſelves and advantage to ſcience,

1772. April. had before undertaken a voyage to New Holland, &c. and ſo round the world, I could not help wiſhing that a Swede likewiſe might have the opportunity of making a viſit to the ſouth pole, and the continent ſuppoſed to be in the vicinity of it. I had reaſon as well as the Meſſrs. FORSTER to hope, that the aſſiſtance of a third naturaliſt (meaning myſelf) might add to the diſcoveries of the curious productions of nature, which the two others were ſo intent upon making; eſpecially in thoſe places, which were now about to be viſited for the firſt, and probably for the laſt time. In other reſpects, in caſe that any of the plants which are ſo uſeful in the colder parts of the north ſhould be found in the ſouth, who could be ſuppoſed capable to collect them with ſuch aſſiduity, or of preſerving the ſeeds of them with ſo much care as a Swede? Again, on the other hand, if my voyage ſhould prove unſucceſsful, I was in hopes that my miſeries, together with life itſelf, and all its train of attendant evils, would have a ſpeedy end. Occupied by reflections of this kind, I paſſed the night, perhaps more reſtleſs than will eaſily be imagined. The next morning by day-break, the diſtraction of my thoughts carried me to my chamber window; here I fixed my eyes on the adjacent meadows, as though I meant to aſk the plants and flowers that grew on them, whether I ought to part with them ſo haſtily. They had for a long time been almoſt my only joy, my ſole friends and companions; and now it was theſe only, which in a great meaſure prevented me from making the voyage. At length I came to the reſolution of undertaking it; yet with a fixed determination, that if I had the good fortune to come back to the Cape,

Cape, I would again occupy myſelf on this ſame ſpot with the moſt delightful of all employments, the inveſtigation of nature. I therefore began to get ready for my journey; and ſent ſpecimens of the inſects and plants I had collected to Sir CHARLES LINNÆUS and other lovers of the ſcience. The reſt of my collections, &c. I left at the Cape, at the preſident's houſe, deſiring him to diſpatch them to Sweden, in caſe he ſhould receive any certain information of our ſhip's being loſt; or in caſe my abſence for any length of time, ſhould give him reaſon to doubt of my return. The danger of the journey was, however, the leaſt of my cares; the ſuppoſed length of it, together with my ignorance of the Engliſh language, as well as of the diſpoſition of the people, with whom I was to be converſant during the whole time, perplexed me much more. The farewel letters I wrote to ſome of my relations were ſo much the more painful to me, as I could eaſily imagine to myſelf their anxiety and uneaſineſs on the account of my impending fate. I therefore thought it moſt adviſeable, to repreſent my journey to be as eaſy and commodious as was conſiſtent with any degree of probability. 1772. April.

In the ſeven months that had paſſed ſince my departure from my native country, I had had no news from thence. I now gave up all thoughts of getting a ſingle word of intelligence from any part of Europe for four times that period. Thus circumſtanced, how much it coſt me to go on board, I leave thoſe to imagine who are not entirely devoid of feeling.

What happened during this remarkable voyage, I fear would be liable to tedious repetitions, were I to relate it in

1772. April. the form of a journal, partly on account of the frequent occurrence of events pretty nearly reſembling each other, and partly by reaſon that various iſlands were viſited ſeveral times; a more particular account of the voyage therefore, I muſt defer to ſome other opportunity. In the mean while, for the ſake of preſerving the order and connexion of time, it ſeems requiſite, that I ſhould here, in its proper place, give ſome account, though as conciſely as poſſible, of the different regions we explored during the ſucceeding twenty-eight months, till the time of my landing again ſafe at the Cape.

SECT.

SECT. II.

Voyage from the Cape of Good Hope to New Zealand.

ON the 22d of November, 1772, at four o'clock in the afternoon, we ſailed from the Cape. The very ſame day ſtormy weather, and the diſagreeable kind of ſickneſs which uſually attends people at ſea on their ſetting out, appeared to a degree ſufficient to make many wiſh themſelves on ſhore. Within eighteen days from our leaving the flowery meads of the Cape, we found ourſelves very near a conſiderable large floating iſland of ice. The thermometer ſtood at a few degrees above the freezing point, while our latitude was only 50 deg. ſouth. How diſagreeably we paſſed the remainder of the ſummer in this hemiſphere, may be gathered from this, that we made our way through floating iſlands of ice, ſometimes as big as mountains, till we came to lat. 67′. 10″; ſo that we are, and probably ſhall continue to be, the only mortals that can boaſt of the frozen honour (as I may call it) of having paſſed the antarctic polar circle. A hundred and twenty-two days, or ſomething more than ſeventeen weeks, were elapſed, without our having been able to ſee land; but not without our having gone through divers perils, not to mention the hardſhips

1772. November.

1773. April.

hardſhips which we underwent of various kinds; eſpecially that of having, for the greater part of the above-mentioned period, remained in exceſſively cold latitudes, continually ſurrounded with ice. The *aurora auſtralis*, which in the ſouth is the ſame as the northern lights in our hemiſphere, a ſpectacle never before ſeen by a European, now appeared ſeveral times in the month of March, on the 26th day of which month we anchored in *Duſky-bay*, ſituated near the ſouthernmoſt promontory of *New Zealand*. From hence we went to *Cook's-ſtrait*, where we had a ſight of that moſt ſingular junction of the water with the clouds, which by ſailors is called the water-ſpout; and the next day, being the 18th of April, we anchored in *Queen Charlotte's-ſound*. The other ſhip, the *Adventure*, had been ſeparated from us ever ſince the 8th of January in the preceding year, by a fog. After this ſhe had inveſtigated the weſtern coaſt of *Van Diemen*'s Land in *New Holland*, and a part of the coaſt by which it is ſuppoſed to be joined with *South Wales*, which latter was diſcovered in Captain Cook's former voyage. It was great pleaſure to us to find, that this ſhip had, fortunately for us, landed at the place previouſly agreed upon for the rendezvous. The plants and trees in this country are, excepting ſome of its ferns and moſſes, almoſt entirely unknown, and different from thoſe that grow in other parts of the globe. Theſe, therefore, together with the new ſpecies of birds and fiſhes which are to be found here, afforded me an agreeable occupation. The inhabitants, on the other hand, a race of cannibals, live in ſuch a miſerable condition, and have ſuch manners and cuſtoms, as may excite our pity

and

and compaſſion in behalf of our own ſpecies; yet, as among civilized nations there are not wanting ſuch as are a diſgrace to human nature, ſo among theſe very devourers of their own ſpecies, one might diſcover ſome traces of a good diſpoſition, as well as the ſeeds of ingenuity, which, under the foſtering care of the ſoul-informing ſciences, might render theſe our fellow-creatures, now plunged in darkneſs, a much more virtuous and happy people. 1773. April.

This nation chiefly depends on fiſhing for its ſupport; and by purſuing ſuch an uncertain livelihood, they want both time and inclination for agriculture and the mechanical arts, as well as for that order and regularity which is requiſite for the prevention of the barbariſm in which theſe poor people are actually plunged. For while they are ſeeking after their food in the water, they ſuffer their lands to be infeſted with an uncommonly large kind of ſtinging nettles, with other weeds and thorny plants, ſo that they are very frequently obliged to tranſport their huts to deſert ſhores, unſtable and floating, as are the animals, which they have to purſue in a boundleſs element. Notwithſtanding this, the ſoil poſſeſſes ſuch a degree of fecundity, that it is capable of being converted into the moſt fertile arable land or vine-yards, ſufficient to give food and other conveniencies of life to a great number of inhabitants, who, united among themſelves, would compoſe a very powerful republic, and be in a condition to extend their commerce and conqueſts over the whole Pacific Ocean. (Collate with this my oration on laying down the office of preſident of the royal academy of ſciences.)

SECT. III.

First Voyage from New Zealand to Otaheite, and from thence back again to New Zealand.

1773. June. ON the 7th of June we ſailed from *New Zealand*, and had thoughts of taking in refreſhments in ſome of the warmer iſlands, as the cold ſeaſon was now ſet in in this part of the world. After we had been at ſea a few days, we reſolved upon killing a fat, though ugly Dutch dog, before the ſcurvy, together with the ſhort commons of the ſhip, ſhould render his fleſh unfit for eating. Already uſed in our run between the *Cape* and *New Zealand* to put up with ſheep that had died of the ſcurvy or other diſorders, diſeaſed hens and geeſe, we certainly were not now in a condition to turn up our noſes at a roaſted dog, which was really nice and well-taſted. After we had paſſed the tropic, we came in ſight of divers iſlands, ſome of which had been diſcovered before, and others had been hitherto entirely unknown; and on the 16th of Auguſt we arrived at the far-famed, though, perhaps, too highly celebrated, iſland of *Otaheite*. We were in the greateſt danger of ſuffering ſhipwreck on this iſland, ſacred

to

to love; for our keel ſtruck ſeveral times very hard againſt the coral rocks, before we came to anchor. After remaining here fourteen days we viſited the iſlands of *Huaheine*, *Uliatea*, and *Otaha*, and afterwards diſcovered a new, but probably an uninhabited iſland; looked out for the iſlands of *New Amſterdam* and *New Middleburg*, diſcovered about a hundred years ago by TASMAN; and having found them, and taken in refreſhments there, returned again to *Queen Charlotte's-ſound*, in *New Zealand*, after having been abſent from it about half a year. During this run, according to the time of the year it was winter; but, with reſpect to our feelings and the warmth of the weather, it was ſummer. We likewiſe met with a greater variety of remarkable ſubjects for deſcription (ſuch as the different countries, their produce, the nations that inhabited them, and their peculiar cuſtoms and manners) than I am able to comprize here in a ſmall compaſs. I cannot, however, help relating ſome few events that happened at different times: as for inſtance, one evening when both ſhips, driving before a briſk gale of wind, wanted to ſpeak with each other, they came ſo near together in conſequence of the great ſwell of the ſea, and the dilatory manœuvering of the men at the helm of one of the ſhips, that notwithſtanding the officer of the watch repeatedly called out with the greateſt anxiety, *ſtarboard and port*, they were within a hair's breadth of ſtriking againſt each other; in which caſe they would doubtleſs have daſhed one another to pieces in an inſtant, or elſe have both gone to the bottom. As beſides myſelf very few people, not even the officers

1773. August.

1773. August.

belonging to the watch, were on deck, this accident is neither mentioned in the log-book of the ſhip, nor in any of the journals yet publiſhed. It ſeemed in the beginning as if both ſhips would ſtrike with their broadſides againſt each other, but directly upon that the Adventure dropped aſtern, and with the point of her bowſprit came within two or three yards at leaſt of our mizen-ſhrouds, and ſo made a flouriſh over our taffarel and enſign-ſtaff. Upon this, an officer who belonged to another watch immediately obſerved, that it was in the higheſt degree imprudent, and without the leaſt ſhow of reaſon, to ſail up to each other in ſuch a briſk gale and high ſurge; to which the officer of the watch made no farther reply, than juſt to repeat ſeveral times with great ſeeming ſatisfaction, "It is all over now." Indeed, they both allowed, that we were very near ſuffering ſhipwreck in the middle of the ocean. The other accident I ſhall relate, concerned myſelf alone. Once when I was on a botanical excurſion in Huaheine, ſome Indians fell upon me and plundered me; leaving the upper part of my body quite naked, with ſeveral marks of violence on my head and breaſt. This incident proceeded partly from a fancy the Indians had taken to my clothes, and partly from a deſire of revenge; Captain Cook having juſt before been obliged to drive away an impudent Indian by force, and take his weapons from him.

We were ſeparated from the *Adventure* on the coaſt of *New Zealand* by a ſtorm, and never ſaw her afterwards. She came to anchor in *Queen Charlotte's-ſound*, before

before we went from thence, where ſhe had the misfortune to loſe her whole boat's crew, conſiſting of ten men, who were killed, roaſted, and eaten by the cannibals. Upon which ſhe ſet out on her way home, and arrived in Europe a year before the ſhip commanded by Captain COOK. 1773: Auguſt.

SECT. IV.

Second Voyage from New Zealand to Otaheite, and from thence back again.

1773. November. ON the 25th of November in the year 1773, we ſailed from New Zealand, in order once more, and during another ſummer, to explore the cold ſouthern latitudes. From the 13th to the 21ſt of December we paſſed for the firſt, and in all probability for the laſt time, that part of the globe, which is the direct antipodes to *Sweden*; ſo that I was now on the ſpot the moſt diſtant from my native country of any on the whole globe, as the neareſt way home, ſuppoſing one could go through the center of the earth, or the length of the whole earth's diameter, was about ſix thouſand eight hundred and twenty-one miles. This aſtoniſhing diſtance, however, did not prevent my rapid thoughts from frequently viſiting my beloved countrymen and relations during this period, while my feet were in direct oppoſition to their's. After this we advanced ſtill farther, inſomuch that on the 20th of December we paſſed the *antarctic* circle a ſecond time, and did not repaſs it till the 25th, ſo that we kept our Chriſtmas-eve (though, it muſt be owned, a very meagre one) in the frigid zone. On the 26th of the following month we

we paſſed the ſouthern polar circle, for the third time. We now penetrated into the ſouthern regions as far as we could go; as before we had got to 71 deg. 14 min. we were prevented by the ice from putting in execution the ſcheme we had fondly formed of hoiſting the Britiſh flag in a ſixth part of the world, or even in the ſouthern pole itſelf. We now therefore turned about to the north, in order to take in refreſhments in a warmer climate, as winter or the cold ſeaſon was expected ſoon to return. 1774. March.

On the 14th of March we anchored off *Eaſter-iſland*, which is ſituated in 27 deg. S. lat. and 199 deg. 46 min. W. long. Here we found no good water, and few refreſhments of any ſort. The lava and other volcanic productions that we ſaw here, together with ſome huge images of ſtone raiſed to ſome height from the ground, plainly evinced, that ſome violent revolution of the earth had defaced a country which had been formerly in a more flouriſhing condition, and thereby reduced a once powerful nation to the wretched ſtate in which we now found it.

On the 16th of March we ſailed from hence, and on the 7th of April anchored off one of the *Marqueſas* iſlands. Theſe are ſituated in about 10 deg. of lat. The greater part of them were diſcovered by the Spaniards a hundred years ago. The inhabitants gave us ſeveral proofs of their diſpoſition to hoſtilities as well as thieving, ſo that we were obliged to leave them ſome bloody marks of the efficacy of our fire-arms. Having ſtaid here a few days we ſet ſail, and after a quick paſſage, landed at *Teokea*, in lat. 14′. We met with ſome hoſtilities from the people here, but contented ourſelves with inſpiring them with terror, by firing our cannons over their

1774. April. their heads. We afterwards diſcovered ſeveral ſmall iſlands, and at length, on the 22d of April, came to anchor for the ſecond and laſt time off *Otaheite*, where we remained till the fourteenth of May. Various circumſtances contributed to render our abode here more delightful than before. We now procured many more intereſting informations touching this country and people, than were known before. On the 2d of June we were informed by ſome of the inhabitants, that two ſhips had landed at *Huaheine* or *Ovaheine*, one of which was larger than ours. By ſubſequent accounts from Spain we know, that this ſhip was from the Spaniſh ſettlements in America; and that the year before, during our ſtay at Otaheite, ſome of the crew belonging to a Spaniſh ſhip had been left there, one of whom had actually hid himſelf in a crowd of people, on being, though dreſſed in the Indian faſhion, taken by an Engliſh ſailor for a European, and accordingly accoſted by him in the French language. This, with ſeveral other circumſtances, makes it highly probable, that the Spaniſh ſhips were ſent both years to be ſpies upon us, and to make repriſals upon us in return for our viſits in a part of the world of which they are ſo extremely jealous, and of which they look upon themſelves as the ſole proprietors; eſpecially conſidering that previouſly to this they have, merely on account of their carrying on an illicit commerce, puniſhed many Engliſhmen, by condemning them to hard labour in their mines. (See the Gottingen Magazine for 1780, No. I. p. 75.)

After we quitted *Otaheite* we paid a viſit to *Huaheine* and *Ulitea*, likewiſe for the ſecond and laſt time; leaving on the latter iſland a ſenſible youth, who about eight months

months before had had the courage to come on board of us. His name was OEDIDE, though otherwiſe called MAHEINE. 1774. June.

On the 4th of June we ſailed from *Ulitea*, and on the 6th paſſed by *Hove*'s iſland. On the 16th we diſcovered *Palmerſtone*'s iſland, and on the 20th *Savage* iſland, ſo called from our being received by the ſavages there in a very hoſtile manner. They hit me on the arm with a large ſtone, and threw a javelin among us. For which reaſon we did not ſtay to anchor here, but went on to *Namocka*, or *New Rotterdam*, one of the friendly iſles above-mentioned. In the ſame vicinity we ſaw ſeveral iſlands, beſides thoſe diſcovered by TASMAN, and upon one of them there appeared a volcano. On the 2d of July we deſcried a ſmall inhabited iſland, which we called *Turtle Iſland*, and the next day made a haſty landing there. On the 16th we came to the iſlands diſcovered by QUIROS, which M. BOUGAINVILLE inveſtigated more narrowly, calling them the *Cyclades*; but Captain COOK, who now diſcovered a greater number of them, gave to the whole of this *Archipelago* the name of the *New Hebrides*. Off one of theſe, to which we gave the name of *Mallicola*, we caſt anchor on the 22d of July. Here we found a diminutive race of people, with a language peculiar to themſelves, and poiſoned weapons. They received us in a friendly manner, notwithſtanding which there happened a ſkirmiſh between us; however, after ſtaying there a couple of days, we parted friends.

On the 3d of Auguſt we anchored for a few hours before *Irromanga*, a newly diſcovered iſland, the inhabitants of which offered to detain our captain and boat, an attempt which many of them paid for with their lives, although

but

1774. Auguſt. but two of our people were wounded. On the 4th we anchored before the iſland of *Tanna*, in 19 deg. 30 min. S. lat. Cloſe by the harbour there was a volcano, which ſhowered aſhes upon us every day. The ſmoke, flame, and loud thunder proceeding from this mountain, afforded a beautiful and ſublime ſpectacle. The inhabitants ſpoke a peculiar language, of which we had not the leaſt knowledge; and ſhewed us much friendſhip, though not without committing ſome hoſtilities, which drove us to the diſagreeable neceſſity of ſtaining this otherwiſe hoſpitable ſhore, with the blood of ſome of the inhabitants. On the 20th we ſteered again for the northern iſles of this Archipelago, but at length quitted them entirely, after having ſpent in the inveſtigation of them forty-ſix days; a period of time, in which we alternately experienced pleaſure, diſguſt, and danger. More than once we were expoſed to the poiſoned weapons of the natives, from the ſlighteſt wound ariſing from which, we had every reaſon to dread as painful and terrible a death, accompanied with madneſs, as happened to ſome of Captain *Carteret*'s crew, when they were wounded on the coaſt of *New Guinea*. At one time our ſhip had run aground; at another ſhe was in danger of daſhing againſt the rocks; and at another time, viz. on the 1ſt of Auguſt, of being conſumed by fire in the open ſea; when it would have been our wretched fate, either to be blown up in the air, or to have fought for death in the briny ocean.

On the 4th of September, after three days ſail, we diſcovered the largeſt iſland, next to *New Zealand*, in the whole Pacific Ocean, which by Captain Cook was called *New Caledonia*, and ſeemed with reſpect to its ſoil and ve-

getables to reſemble *New Holland.* The inhabitants were civil and hoſpitable, but poor, and ſpoke a language peculiar to themſelves. At this place, by great good fortune, I avoided eating the liver of a poiſonous fiſh, in company with the captain and Meſſrs. *Forſter*, who were extremely ill for ſome days afterwards. On the 15th, for want of wind, we were near being driven on the rocks; and on the 28th at night were in the moſt dangerous ſituation, being ſurrounded by a coral reef. That evening, when I went to bed, there was the greateſt probability that I ſhould never wake again, but at my very laſt gaſp: I however had the good fortune to go to ſleep directly, and ſlept very ſound, and the next morning to find that I had eſcaped the moſt imminent danger that could well be imagined. 1774. September.

On the 10th of October we ſaw *Norfolk* iſland, in 29 deg. 2 min. S. lat. the firſt diſcovery the Engliſh made beyond the tropics. We landed upon it, and found it uninhabited. On the 18th we came for the third time to anchor in *Queen Charlotte*'s *Sound* in New Zealand.

SECT. V.

Voyage from New Zealand to Terra del Fuego, and from thence farther on towards the South Pole.

1774. December. ON the 10th of November we ſailed from New Zealand. Our ſhip was now found to have ſprung a leak, but not of any conſequence. In the ſpace of ſix weeks, we had ſailed over the whole ocean between *New Zealand* and the ſouthernmoſt part of *America*; and on the 20th of December anchored to the ſouth of *Terra del Fuego*, where we ſaw the moſt wretched race of men in the world. On the 29th we paſſed *Cape Horn*, and on the 31ſt, or New-year's eve, we anchored off a little iſland near *Staaten-land*, in the ſtraits of *Le Maire*; here we had an agreeable amuſement in hunting an innumerable quantity of ſea-lions, ſeals, and ſea-fowls.

On the 23d of January, 1775, we ſailed to the ſouth-eaſt, and on the 14th diſcovered the iſland of *South Georgia*, in lat. 54 deg. 38 min. Here we landed in all ſpeed, and though it was now the ſummer ſeaſon, we found the whole country covered with an eternal ſnow, excepting ſome of its coaſts, on which there grew only one ſingle ſpecies of graſs, and a ſort of *ſanguiſorba*. This horrid country, however,

afforded us ſome freſh proviſions, viz. the fleſh of the ſea-lion and ſeal; a kind of food that we had ſome time before learnt to put up with. We afterwards found one after another, ſeveral ſmall iſlands and rocks; on one of which, in conſequence of a fog ariſing, we very narrowly eſcaped being ſhipwrecked; an accident which, in the circumſtances we were in, would inevitably have put an end to our voyage and diſcoveries, together with our lives. 1775. January.

On the 28th of January, in lat. 60, the ſhip could make no way on account of the ice. On the 31ſt we found ourſelves in a fog, and very near a high land, covered every where with an eternal ſnow; but the approach of winter and other circumſtances, occaſioned us to give over all farther inveſtigation of this place. This furtheſt point of land that we could ſee, we called the ſouthern *Thule*, as being the moſt diſtant land ſeen in this hemiſphere.

SECT. VI.

Return to the Cape of Good Hope.

1775. March. AT length we quite turned our backs upon theſe cold latitudes, when the daily increaſing warmth, and our approach to the north, to the civilized world, to our friends and our home, contributed to enliven us with the hopes of a quick and fortunate concluſion to the whole voyage, and the many diſagreeable circumſtances attending it. But that we now had many more hardſhips to undergo, than BYRON, WALLIS, and COOK had ſuffered in their former voyages round the earth, many of our officers, as well as of the crew, who had been on one or more of thoſe voyages, atteſted. The purpoſes intended to be anſwered by our voyage, particularly that of approaching as near as we could to the ſouth pole, required other attempts to be made, other dangers to be undergone: the remainder of the voyage conſequently, was almoſt a concatenation of dangers and hardſhips.

On the 17th of March we ſaw land, viz. the coaſt of *Africa*. The reader may eaſily imagine, how delightful a ſight this was to us. In the mean while, entirely ignorant of the ſtate of affairs in Europe, we could not, when once in ſight of

of the harbour itſelf, aſſure ourſelves that we ſhould not be picked up by ſome unknown enemy, who might carry us out as priſoners, perhaps to the moſt diſtant part of the Eaſt-Indies. The next day, however, we overtook a Dutch veſſel, and received from her the joyful news of a general peace. Before night we ſaw ſeveral ſails more, which ſeemed to be ſteering by the Cape, and making as faſt as poſſible for Europe; and with no ſmall pleaſure, particularly on my part, we ſaw the Swediſh flag flying upon two of them. The ocean had hitherto, during our voyage, been really too loneſome and deſolate a theatre to us; and it would be neceſſary to be as weary of the uniformity of it, as we were, in order to enjoy a ſight upon it, which at any other time would have been of no conſequence. Neither is it any wonder, that in ſo long a ſpace of time, we came to be in ſome meaſure weary of each others company; when, for inſtance, thoſe who were uſed to entertain the company with tales and anecdotes, were obliged to have recourſe two or three times to the ſame ſtories, in order to furniſh their quota in converſation. 1775. March.

The following morning we overtook an Engliſh ſhip called the *True Briton*, commanded by Captain BROADLY, who ſent us ſome old news-papers. Full of love for my native country, I firſt and foremoſt, with the greateſt eagerneſs, ran over all the articles in them that concerned Sweden; but found only a couple of lines, which gave me to underſtand that a great revolution had taken place there, but did not ſay when or how. This gave riſe to divers conjectures amongſt us, and was to me in particular an affecting ſubject to ruminate upon; but from what the Engliſh told

1775. March. told me, as well as from what my own ideas ſuggeſted to me, I was convinced, that the commotions in the Swediſh government were then almoſt at ſuch a height, as ſcarcely to be capable of growing worſe, and that thus this news in all probability argued ſomething better. This conſideration was not without its effect in comforting me, till time ſhewed how extremely right we had been in our conjectures.

At length on the Wedneſday following, being the 22d of March, 1775, after a voyage of ſixty thouſand miles, and an abſence of two years and a quarter from the Chriſtian and civilized part of the world, we came again to anchor in *Table-bay*. Thoſe who before us had ſailed round the globe always went to the weſtward, and thus loſt a day in their reckoning. But, as we made the ſame voyage towards the eaſt, and thus continually anticipated the riſing of the ſun, we were conſequently the firſt, and, indeed, only navigators, who had gained a day, or found a ſupernumerary day on their journals. Conſequently, according to the Dutch almanacks at the Cape, in was on Tueſday, or the 21ſt of March, that we landed there; ſo that, directly contrary to every known and uſual mode of expreſſion, we actually had two Tueſdays in one week.

It was now a thing which we earneſtly wiſhed for, as well as of the greateſt conſequence to us, to enter the harbour, as ſeveral of our crew were attacked with the ſcurvy. Our unparalleled preſervatives of ſour-crout and wort, had, it muſt be owned, pretty well kept us from the ravages of this otherwiſe deſtructive diſorder, ſo that we loſt only one of our crew by ſickneſs (an old complaint of the lungs) ſince we left the Cape; but our blood and humours

humours were, as well as our malt, and the greateſt part of our proviſions, in conſequence of the length of the voyage, ſpoiled and corrupted. Our bread was, and had been for a long time, both muſty and mouldy; and at the ſame time ſwarming with two different ſorts of little brown grubs (the *curculio granarius*, or weevil, and the *dermeſtes paniceus*) which either in that ſtate or in that of their *larvas*, or maggots, had neſtled themſelves into every bit of bread that we had, ſo that we could not poſſibly avoid eating them; and they frequently diſcovered themſelves to us, the former by a bitter, the latter by a diſagreeable cold taſte in the mouth. Nay, their larvas, or maggots, were found in ſuch quantities in the peas-ſoup, as if they had been ſtrewed over our plates on purpoſe, ſo that we could not avoid ſwallowing ſome of them in every ſpoonful we took. The peas uſed for this purpoſe, had been ground a little in England, that they might boil the eaſier, but had by this very means afforded an eaſier paſſage to theſe diſguſtful inſects. 1775. March.

What was of ſtill more conſequence, was, that we had only a quantity of bread, bad as it was, ſufficient for a few days on board; and as for the brandy, an article of great importance to the crew, it was, if I remember right, quite gone the day before we arrived in the harbour. Pepper, vinegar, coffee and ſugar, by the help of which, taking them in their turns, the ſalt proviſion would have been leſs hurtful to us, we had for a long time been entirely without. Our ſalt meat, now almoſt three years old, having been kept on board during the whole of this period, was the more dried and ſhrunk up, as the ſalt had had ſo much

the

1775. March. the longer time to abſorb to itſelf and dry up all the moiſture and juices. Theſe, with ſeveral other difficulties, occaſioned the joy we felt at having got into the harbour, where we ſhould be able in many reſpects to lead, as it were, a new life, to be as unbounded as it was univerſal. With pleaſure, likewiſe, and longing deſire, we received our letters from Europe, but not without a very natural anxiety and fear, leſt we ſhould find in them accounts of the loſs of our deareſt friends and acquaintance. After about five weeks ſtay at the Cape, the Reſolution ſailed for England, attended with my moſt hearty good wiſhes. The civilities I had received from almoſt every body on board this ſhip, the dangers I had undergone in it, and the friendſhips, which during that long ſpace of time I had had an opportunity of making, gave me, it muſt be owned, ſufficient cauſe. I, for my part, in purſuance of the reſolution I had previouſly made, ſtaid behind in Africa, in order to continue my reſearches in this country, of which I therefore now reſume the relation.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

JOURNEY FROM CAPE TOWN TO THE COUNTRY OF THE CAFFRES.

SECT. I.

Reſidence at Cape Town previous to the Author's African Expedition.

MY deſires and thoughts continually ran upon making a journey into the internal parts of this country, and viſiting the different nations of it. For the preſent, however, I was obliged to ſtay in the town, and wait for the appearance of ſpring or the fine ſeaſon. 1775. May.

I have obſerved before, that the *quaade mouſſon*, or winter, is reckoned to laſt from the 14th of May to the ſame day in Auguſt; and that during that time, ſhips ſeldom venture to run into *Table-bay*. A Dutch veſſel, which nevertheleſs ſtill ſtaid here on ſome particular buſineſs, and on the night ſucceeding the 14th day had thrown out all

1775. May. her anchors on account of the violence of the north-weſt wind, was very near being driven on the rocky ground that lies by the ſide of the fort. The day after this, or the 15th, the bay was ſo much agitated by the ſtorm, that no boat or ſloop could go to or from the above-mentioned ſhip. The next evening the wind increaſed as the night came on, and the poor ſeamen had reaſon to fear that every minute would be their laſt. The extreme darkneſs of the night, contributed not a little to make the danger, and even death itſelf more terrible. I lived in the upper ſtory of a ſtone houſe towards the higher part of the town, where the hurricane ſhook the windows, roof, and, I had almoſt ſaid, the whole houſe. This my ſituation, as well as the more dangerous one of the Dutch ſhip, awakened in me a lively remembrance of the Antarctic cold, and the various ſtorms I had experienced; and made me more thoroughly ſenſible of the comforts of a good warm bed-chamber upon terra firma, but at the ſame time excited in me ſo much the greater compaſſion for the veſſel in diſtreſs. Contrary to all expectation however, its anchor and tackling were proof that night againſt the ſtorm; and the next day's calm, at the ſame time that it put the ſhip out of danger, diffuſed ſatisfaction over the countenances of every one. Another event of this kind, though it happened during my abſence, while I was gone on my voyage to the South Sea, deſerves however to be recorded in this place, more eſpecially as it is a farther proof of the unſafeneſs of this road in winter. Here follows the account of it, as I had it confirmed to me by ſeveral eye-witneſſes.

The

The ſhip *Jong Thomas*, which happened to ſtay in Table-bay till the boiſterous ſeaſon had commenced, was driven on ſhore by a ſtorm near the land on the ſide of *Zout Rivier*, not far to the northward of the fort. Early in the morning, as ſoon as this happened, orders were iſſued by government, that no one ſhould, on pain of death, preſume to approach, even from afar, this unlucky ſhore; where, to give weight and authority to this reſolution of theirs, they had with equal readineſs erected gibbets, and at the ſame time poſted troops all over the neighbourhood; but neither theſe, nor any other meaſures taken by them, were in any way conducive to the ſaving of the crew, being merely calculated to prevent ſuch goods and merchandize being ſtolen as might chance to be thrown up in the wreck. The ſhip, however, was wrecked very near the ſhore; ſo that the crew's diſtreſs and calls for aſſiſtance, were heard very diſtinctly; but the ſwell of the ſea, which with the greateſt violence waſhed over the ſhip and broke againſt the ſtrand, made it impoſſible for them to ſave themſelves in boats, and highly dangerous to attempt it by ſwimming. Some of thoſe who ventured to ſwim to ſhore, were thrown againſt the rocks and daſhed to pieces; others, as ſoon as they had arrived at the ſhore were carried back again by another wave and drowned. One of the keepers of the company's menagerie, who before break of day, ere the prohibition was made public, had rode out to carry his ſon (a corporal in the army) his breakfaſt, came by that means to be a ſpectator of theſe poor people's diſtreſs; at the ſight of which he was touched with compaſſion of ſo noble a kind, and at the ſame time ſo opera- 1775. May.

1775. May. tive, that ſeating himſelf firm on his ſpirited horſe, he ſwam him over to the ſhip; encouraged ſome of them ſeverally to lay hold of the end of a rope, which he threw out to them for that purpoſe, and others to faſten themſelves to the horſe's tail; then turned about, and carried them ſafe on ſhore. This animal's natural aptneſs for ſwimming, the great ſize of his body, the firmneſs and ſtrength of his limbs, prevented him from being eaſily overpowered by the ſwell of the ſea.

But unfortunately this generous and active veteran himſelf became a victim to death. Fourteen young perſons he had actually ſaved; and while endeavouring to preſerve more than it was poſſible for him to do in ſo ſhort a time, he and his horſe were both drowned. The occaſion of this was as follows; after the ſeventh turn, having ſtaid a little longer than uſual to reſt himſelf, the poor wretches on board were afraid that he did not intend to return; for this reaſon being impatient, they redoubled their prayers and cries for aſſiſtance; upon which, his tendereſt feeling being wrought upon, he again haſtened to their relief ere his horſe was ſufficiently reſted. The poor animal, almoſt ſpent, now ſunk the ſooner under his burden, inaſmuch as too many ſought to be ſaved at one time; and one of them, as it was thought, happened unluckily to catch hold of the horſe's bridle, and by that means drew its head under water. This bold and enterprizing philanthropiſt commands our eſteem and admiration the more, as he had put himſelf into this danger for the relief of others, without himſelf being able to ſwim. I have therefore conſidered it as my peculiar duty, as well as a pleaſure, to preſerve

preſerve his name, which was VOLTEMAD, together with this gallant exploit of his in theſe pages. Inſpired with ſimilar ſentiments, the Eaſt-India directors in Holland, on receiving intelligence of this affair, raiſed a monument to his memory, in a manner worthy of themſelves and him, by calling one of their new-built ſhips after his name, and ordering the whole ſtory to be painted on the ſtern. Theſe orders were accompanied with letters to the regency at the Cape, the contents of which were as follows: *That in caſe* VOLTEMAD *had left any iſſue in the military or civil department, they ſhould take care to provide for them, and make their fortune as ſpeedily and effectually as poſſible.* But unfortunately, in the ſouthern hemiſphere they had not all the ſame grateful ſentiments. The young corporal VOLTEMAD, who had been an eye-witneſs to his father's having offered himſelf up in the ſervice of the company and of mankind, was refuſed his father's place, though the appointment to it could ſcarcely be conſidered as any promotion. From mere chagrin, therefore, he had already quitted that ungrateful country, and was gone to *Batavia*, where he died before the news of ſo great and unexpected a recommendation could reach him. There were ſeveral inhabitants of the Cape, who, while they, with a laudable emotion, lamented the unhappy fate of VOLTEMAD and his ſon, affirmed, that a ſmall line might, by ſome good ſwimmer, or by *Voltemad* himſelf, have been handed from the ſtrand to the ſhip; by means of which one or more ſtout ropes might have been ſtretched out between theſe latter, for the purpoſe of ſaving the crew. It was likewiſe thought, that the iſſuing of that ſevere

1775. May.

1775. May. ſevere prohibition, and the appointment of the guard of ſoldiers, were not of ſuch uſe to the company as they were imagined to be; as, not to mention other things, even ſo heavy a commodity as iron was ſtolen away from the wreck; which, after the ſtorm had abated, and the ſea, that had riſen conſiderably, had retired again, as good as lay upon dry land.

Under the pretence of preventing the people belonging to the ſhip from being plundered, they were directly put under a guard upon the ſpot from that time till the evening; and that without their having taken any refreſhment, although they were wet and hungry, and wearied out with the labour of the preceding night. For ſeveral days after this they were ſeen wandering up and down the ſtreets, begging clothes and victuals. One of theſe, indeed, is reported to have met with peculiarly rough treatment. This was a ſailor, who, in order the better to ſwim for his life, went off from the wreck almoſt naked, and having got ſafe on ſhore with his cheſt, opened it, in order to take out a waiſtcoat to cover his nakedneſs; he was, however, not only hindered in ſo doing by a young chit of an officer, but was obliged to put up with a few ſtrokes of a cane into the bargain; being told at the ſame time, that he was liable to be hanged without delay on one of the newly-erected gibbets; as, directly contrary to the expreſs prohibition of government, he had preſumed to meddle with goods ſaved from the wreck. The ſailor excuſed himſelf with ſaying, that it was impoſſible for him not to be ignorant of the prohibition, and that he could clearly prove himſelf to be the right owner of the cheſt by the key of it (which, in the

the ſailor's faſhion, was faſtened to his belt,) as well as by a pſalm-book, wherein his name was written, and which lay in that ſame cheſt. Notwithſtanding all this, it was with great difficulty that he ſaved his neck from the gallows. He was forced, however, naked and wet as he was, to wait in the fields till the evening, with no other covering than the ſky. Shivering with cold, he at length, through repeated entreaties, got permiſſion to look after his cheſt, and take what he wanted out of it, but now found it broke open and plundered. To conclude, when they had taken him to the town, and there left him near the gates naked and bare, as above deſcribed, he had, however, the good fortune to meet with a tender-hearted citizen, who immediately, without the leaſt heſitation, gave him the coat off his own back, and took him to his own houſe. 1773. May.

This anecdote of the ſailor I had from one ſingle perſon only; but though that perſon's character for veracity was unimpeached, yet, for the honour of our ſpecies, I could heartily wiſh, that my informer might be found to have over-charged his colours in the black painting he has made of this tranſaction! On the contrary, rather may the ſame compaſſionate law in favour of thoſe who have the misfortune to ſuffer ſhipwreck, take place in Europe and its colonies as it does in China! on the coaſt of which kingdom, all ſuch as are unfortunate enough to be ſtranded, whether natives or ſtrangers from the moſt diſtant country, find not only perfect ſecurity for their perſons and effects, but are likewiſe maintained and found in every thing till they get to their own home, whither they

1775. May. they are ſent at free coſt. Some of the crew of the *Frederic Adolphus*, a Swediſh veſſel, ſhipwrecked on the *Plata* bank, September the 3d, 1761, who landed in their boats before the Chineſe town *Katſie*, experienced in its fulleſt extent the efficacy of an eſtabliſhment that does ſo much honour to mankind. Mr. MAULE, the ſupercargo, who likewiſe was one of the number, has aſſured me, that they were all received with the greateſt humanity, maintained at the emperor's expence, and conveyed in one of the larger kind of Chineſe veſſels to the other Europeans at Canton.

As in the preceding pages I have made mention of the ſtormy winters at the Cape, it may not be improper to give here a ſummary abſtract of my meteorological obſervations for the months of May, June, and July. With regard to the temperature of the air I muſt previouſly remind the reader, that I made uſe of a FAHRENHEIT's thermometer, which was given me by Dr. FORSTER at our parting; and that the obſervations taken with it were made in the ſhade, in the open air, between eight and nine o'clock in the morning, when the temperature of the air was moſt like that of the night. I muſt farther remark, that the winters at the Cape are in general by no means ſevere, and that this winter was reckoned one of the mildeſt.

During the firſt half of May the thermometer kept fluctuating between 53 and 63 degrees; and during the latter half, between 50 and 58, excepting on the 27th of this month, when it was at the loweſt, or 49 $\frac{1}{2}$, although the day was clear and the ſun ſhone. The rainy days in this month were the 11th, 12th, 15th, 16th, 30th; and among

among theſe the three firſt named were the worſt, and accompanied with tempeſtuous north-weſt winds; ſo that when I paſſed Zout Rivier on the 11th, the water was no higher than my horſe's knees; but when I repaſſed it on the 15th, the water had riſen ſo high, in conſequence of the rain and tide, as to reach up to my ſaddle. 1775. March.

In the month of June the thermometer was between 54 and 60. There was a fall either of rain or ſnow on the 1ſt, 2d, 3d, 4th, 14th, 27th, and ſo on to the 31ſt incluſively. Beſides theſe, there were a few other cloudy days, attended with a high wind; but the remainder reſembled our fine ſummer days in Sweden. On the 3d, it rained very violently, when it happened that a quantity of water which, in the preceding days, had been collected on the mountain, burſt its way down to the town, and filled the canals there, at the ſame time overflowing ſome of the ſtreets; ſo that for ſeveral minutes, it roſe to the height of two or three feet againſt the houſes. It likewiſe waſhed away a ſmall wall belonging to a ſtone houſe, and carried it under the building, at the ſame time ruſhing into divers cellars.

In July, by reaſon of ſome intervening affairs that hindered me, I obſerved the ſtate of the weather only till the 19th; during that time, the thermometer kept between 54 and 59 degrees. The rainy days were the 6th, 7th, 8th, 11th, 12th; clouds without rain on the 3d, 9th, 10th, 13th, and 14th.

SECT. II.

Preparations for the African Expedition.

1775. March. DURING the major part of the winter months I lived in the town itſelf, and at times made preparations for my journey in ſeveral ways, among which might be reckoned my practiſing phyſic and ſurgery; as what I acquired by theſe means, was a great help towards equipping me out in the expenſive manner my undertaking required. My travelling purſe was farther fortified by a lucky ſpeculation in commerce, and likewiſe with ſixty ducats (for which ſum I had a right to draw a bill for acceptance) for my Engliſh tranſlation of our able Swediſh phyſician VAN ROSENTEIN'S *Treatiſe on the Diſeaſes of Children*. This work I undertook and finiſhed in the laſt year of our cruiſing in the South Sea, moſtly in the rougher climates, as I at that time was the leaſt taken up with buſineſs of any other kind, except that of writing; though even in this caſe I was not unfrequently obliged, on account of the ſtormy weather, to cling with my legs round the foot of the table, and hold myſelf faſt with one hand, in order to be able to

write with the other. I take this opportunity of acknowledging my obligations to Meſſrs. FORSTER for various alterations they were ſo kind as to beſtow on the tranſlation here alluded to, which my ſlender knowledge of the Engliſh tongue made extremely neceſſary; as likewiſe for their taking care of the impreſſion of it at London in the year 1776. 1775. March.

With a view of rendering my intended journey more agreeable and convenient, I made every poſſible enquiry where I could hear any thing concerning it; but inſtead of gaining any uſeful intelligence, I was left more in the dark than I was before, as moſt of the information I could collect was confuſed and perplexed; the various accounts I heard, being often contradictory to each other, but ſtill more frequently claſhing with probability itſelf. I was chiefly diſſuaded from the journey, as being a very abſurd and dangerous undertaking, eſpecially as, being a ſtranger, as yet unacquainted with Africa, and far from rich, I muſt neceſſarily ſubject myſelf to every kind of inconvenience; but ſince I ſaw nothing impoſſible in the affair, at leaſt not in making the experiment, I purſued my deſign. With this view I formed an acquaintance and even friendſhip with Mr. DANIEL FERDINAND IMMELMAN, a young African, who before this had, merely for the ſake of pleaſure, made a little trip into the country, to which he was induced by the following ſpirited reflection: that it was very little either to his honour or to that of the other African coloniſts, that they had neglected inveſtigating their own country, ſo that they would ſoon be obliged to apply to

1775. March. me and other ſtrangers, for intelligence concerning themſelves and the very place of their reſidence. For his own part, he was eaſily perſuaded to enter into all my deſigns and favour me with his company; but we were obliged to lay our heads together and ſtand firm by each other, in order to get the permiſſion of his relations. His mother, a ſenſible European lady, together with her lovely daughter, at length gave their conſent, and principally on this account, that young *Immelman* had very weak lungs, and the beſt remedy for him would be to take a long journey on horſeback, eſpecially as he had the advantage of being accompanied by a phyſician: and on the other hand, he had reaſon to fear a more certain and horrid death in conſequence of the complaint he laboured under, than any thing that might be apprehended from the attacks of the roving Hottentots or of the wild beaſts up the country. His father, an old experienced ſoldier, who had ſerved both in Europe and the Eaſt-Indies, and was then lieutenant in the garriſon at the Cape, at length gave his conſent on the principle, that a lad ſhould never be ſhy or backward, where there was any danger. For this purpoſe Mr. *Immelman* provided himſelf with a good eaſy nag, for which he gave fifty rix-dollars; I had already bought an ordinary galloway for thirty-four, and a new baggage-waggon, about the ſize of the ammunition-waggons in Sweden, but covered over with a tilt made of ſail-cloth, and finiſhed in the ſame manner as thoſe in which the peaſants uſually travel in this colony. The price of it was likewiſe what was uſually given for theſe carriages, that is, about

two

two hundred rixdollars, reckoning ſeventy-four for the wood-work, and eighty for the iron-work; the yoke, the hind chains, and thoſe for the traces, the ſail-cloth covering, and a box for the coom, made up the reſt of the ſum. To draw a waggon of this kind there are uſually required five pair of oxen, which I therefore bargained for at eight rixdollars a head. I further took with me medicines of ſeveral ſorts, as well for our own uſe, as for that of the peaſants, to whom they might be of great ſervice, and procure us a better reception. I likewiſe provided myſelf with a ſmall ſtock of glaſs beads, braſs tinder-boxes, ſteels for ſtriking fire with, and knives, together with ſome tobacco; all theſe were commodities peculiarly acceptable to the Hottentots. We likewiſe took with us an oaken caſk, made for the purpoſe of keeping ſerpents and other animals in brandy; alſo ſeveral reams of paper for drying plants, with leads and needles for inſects, and at the ſame time ſome neceſſary changes of apparel. Neither did we forget to take with us plenty of tea, coffee, chocolate, and ſugar, partly for our own uſe, and partly to inſinuate ourſelves into the good graces of the yeomen, who, by reaſon of the great diſtance they are at from the Cape, are often without theſe neceſſaries. I was told indeed, that liquors would infallibly anſwer this purpoſe much better; but the room they took up, their weight, and the expence of them, prevented me from taking any with me. We were well provided with needles of ſeveral ſorts, as by means of theſe, and a few good words, we ſhould be enabled to gain the good graces of the farmer's daughters, as well as their aſſiſtance in collecting inſects. 1775. March.

I bought

1775. March. I bought too thirty odd pounds of gunpowder, with a ſmall quantity of which we filled ſeveral horns, which we kept near at hand; the remainder we emptied into a leathern bag, and locked it up in my cheſt, by way of keeping it out of the way of the lighted pipes of the Hottentots. We took with us ſhot of different ſizes, about ſeventy pound in weight, with a tolerable ſtock of balls, lead, and moulds for caſting. It is certain, that the expence and quantity of this ammunition, was much more than we were adviſed to take with us, or than I myſelf thought neceſſary. On our return to the Cape, however, after an eight month's journey, it was almoſt all uſed. I would therefore adviſe every body, who may hereafter undertake an expedition of this kind, to ſtock themſelves well with powder and ſhot. Every ſhot does not take place, and not a little is expended in the ſhooting of ſmall birds; ſome too muſt be ſpent in ſhooting at marks. Beſides, it may happen, as it did to me and my party, that for ſeveral weeks together, one may have little elſe to live upon than what falls before one's gun; not to mention, that prudence requires one to be prepared with ammunition againſt the hoſtile attacks of the Boſhies-men and Caffres.

As the coloniſts here are enjoined by the laws to ſeize and bring to the Cape all ſuch as travel about the country without being able to ſhew a permiſſion in writing for that purpoſe, I therefore ſolicited and obtained the governor's paſs, requiring that I ſhould paſs every where free and unmoleſted; and at the ſame time that the inhabitants ſhould aſſiſt me as far as lay in their power, on receiving a rea-

a reaſonable compenſation. In another letter, the people belonging to the warm baths in *Hottentots Holland* were enjoined to find me in lodging; for this remedy I was reſolved to try againſt the rheumatic pains I experienced in conſequence of the cold, to which I had been expoſed in the Antarctic circle. 1775. March.

SECT.

SECT. III.

Journey from the Cape to the Warm Bath.

1775. July. ON the morning of the 25th of July I rode from the Cape. My waggon was driven by the boor, who ſold me the five pair of oxen before-mentioned. But this I was not to have till I got to this ſame man's farm near *Bott-Rivier*, which is in the way to the warm bath, whither I was going. There are no houſes of entertainment eſtabliſhed in the inland part of this country; ſo that every one is obliged to travel with their own horſes and carriages, as well as their own proviſion. Our road lay through the low country over dry ſand and heaths. In the middle, or the warm part of the day, like other travellers in this country, we let our oxen go to water and look out for paſturage. Theſe animals are eaſily ſatisfied with the poor nouriſhment of the dry ſhrubs and graſs, which are moſt common about the Cape, but the horſes are under a greater difficulty to find proviſion ſufficiently fine and nouriſhing. It is chiefly for this reaſon, that in Africa moſt of the beaſts of burden they uſe are oxen; and it is, perhaps, from the ſame cauſe, that the horſes here are ſeemingly leſs ſtrong and hardy than they are in Europe.

As

As ſoon as the cool of the evening came on, we continued our journey over *Eerſte Rivier* to the foot of a high mountain, called *Hottentot Holland's Kloof*. The environs here were higher and leſs parched up than in the former part of our journey, and were beſides adorned with ſeveral pleaſant farms. It was already night, and as dark as pitch, when we alighted; we made a little fire, by which, after we had finiſhed a moderate ſupper, we went to ſleep. All the conveniencies I had for ſleeping were at preſent, as well as during the major part of my journey, reduced to the bare ground for a bed, a ſaddle for my pillow, and a great coat to cover me from the cold of the night; for a place to lie in we looked out for the ſide of ſome buſh, which ſeemed moſt likely to ſhelter us from the ſouth-eaſt, or any other wind that might chance to blow at that time. When it rained, we lay in the tilt-waggon itſelf. Here, on account of our baggage, we were ſtill worſe off. The beſt place I could find for myſelf was my cheſt, though even that had a round top; Mr. IMMELMAN, being ſlender and leſs than me, was able, though not without great difficulty, to ſqueeze himſelf in between my cheſt and the body of the waggon, where he lay on ſeveral bundles of paper: he had, however, no reaſon to boaſt of a much eaſier bed. Sometimes we made our bed under the waggon, where, being under cover, we were ſomewhat ſheltered indeed from the rain and the dew; but on the other hand, had rather too near, and not quite ſo agreeable neighbours in our oxen, which were tied up to the wheels and poles, and alſo to the rails of the waggon, and were ſo obſtreperous, that we could only venture to creep among the gentleſt of

1775. July.

1775. July. them. Theſe companions of ours were moreover very reſtleſs, when any wild beaſts were near the ſpot. Again, when we had an opportunity of taking a night's lodging at a peaſant's houſe, we were for the moſt part rather worſe lodged. In moſt places the houſe conſiſted of two rooms only, with the floor of earth or loam. The interior one of theſe was uſed for a bed-chamber for the boor himſelf, with his wife and children. The outer one compoſed the kitchen, in a corner of which they ſpread a mat for us on the floor; and in this generally conſiſted all the conveniencies the good folks could afford us. As for the reſt we were obliged to make our beds of our ſaddles and great coats, together with a coverlet we brought with us. The Hottentots of either ſex, young and old, who were in the boor's ſervice, always choſe to ſleep in the chimney. This moſtly took up a whole gabel of the houſe, and at the ſame time had no other hearth than the floor, on which conſequently we all lay pigging together. An hoſt of fleas and other inconveniencies, to which we were by this means ſubjected, made us frequently rather chuſe to ſleep in the open air; in caſe the coldneſs of the air, high winds and rainy weather, did not make it more diſagreable to us. I thought the beſt way of furniſhing my readers with a general idea of the manner in which we were obliged to paſs moſt of our nights during our expedition, would be to to give them an account of my firſt night's lodging.

The next day being the 26th, we got up by day-break, in order to take our journey over *Hottentots Holland's Mountain*, in the cool of the morning. The way up it was very ſteep, ſtony, winding, and, in other reſpects, very

inconvenient. Directly to the right of the road there was a perpendicular precipice, down which, it is ſaid, that waggons and cattle together have ſometimes the misfortune to fall headlong, and are daſhed to pieces. It is ſaid too, that in order to drive up this and other mountains of the kind, even with the ſtrongeſt team of oxen, a man muſt not only have the knack, as it is called, and a perfect government of the beaſts, but muſt alſo at the ſame time make uſe of a whip like that of the African waggoners. Theſe whips are fifteen feet long, with a thong ſomewhat longer, and a laſh three feet in length, made of ſtout white leather. This (in a certain ſenſe) moſt powerful inſtrument in getting the waggon forward, the driver holds with both hands, and, ſitting on the ſeat of the carriage, can reach the fifth pair with it, and at the ſame time ſmack his whip, when neceſſary, and diſtribute his cuts and laſhes among the oxen without intermiſſion, never failing to touch them on the very ſpot he wiſhes, ſo that the very hairs come away with the whip. By this means he poſſeſſes ſuch an aſcendency over them, as to oblige them to join their ſtrength all at once, and pull the waggon out of deep pits, or lift it over large ſtones and precipices that lie in the road. But it requires a great nicety of attention, not to drive them too far at once, nor to reſt them too long at a time; as in the former caſe they grow faint, weary, and, in conſequence of this, reſtive; and in the latter caſe, they loſe the ſpirit to which they have been previouſly wrought up, and which is neceſſary for the getting them on; and for want of which it often happens, that the waggon cannot be got from the ſpot. On going up the ſteeper hills, there-

1775. July.

1775. July. therefore, the drivers are wont to let them breathe a little every half minute, minute, or two minutes, as occaſion requires: on the other hand, in deſcending, even when the road is not very ſteep, particularly with a load, it is to be feared, leſt the waggon ſhould get down before the oxen, or tumble upon them, as only the hindmoſt pair is put into the ſhafts, and are not able to hold back as much as is neceſſary: the waggon muſt therefore be *locked*, as they term it; this conſiſts in winding a chain that is faſtened to the fore part of the waggon, one or more times round ſome of the fellies of the hind wheel, and then, with a hook that hangs to the other end of the chain, hooking it into one of the links. Down ſtill ſteeper hills, as for inſtance, ſuch as that we were now aſcending, both the hind wheels are locked, and ſometimes one of the fore wheels into the bargain, eſpecially in rainy weather, when it is ſlippery. In default of a drag-chain, the wheel is laſhed faſt to the ſeat of the waggon, and in this manner the waggon is dragged down the hill; but in order that the loweſt fellies of the wheel that is to be locked may not be worn, together with the iron-work round it, a kind of ſledge carriage, hollowed out in the inſide, and called a *lockſhoe*, is fitted to it. This is a foot and a half in length, and made with hard wood; underneath it is generally ſhod with iron, and neareſt reſembles a trough, which is open behind for the wheel to run into. It is two or three inches deep in order to ſupport the wheel with its edges, and hinder it from ſlipping out; in the fore part of it there is a ſtout ſtrap, with which it is faſtened or ſtrung upon the back chain. I am not ignorant, that in the north we uſe

ice-

ice-hooks, or ſafety-hooks, to our ſledge carriages; but, at leaſt, as far I know of, we have no drag-chains to our waggons. This would be highly neceſſary in certain places, and particularly in the ſpring, and might be eaſily made. Beſides obviating the danger of the cattle running away with the team, this machine likewiſe prevents their being bruiſed in any other ways, or hurt by holding back, when they are going down hill. Under the general denomination of *mountain*, particularly about this ſpot, I mean, not only high rocky hills, but likewiſe comprehend under this name all the more conſiderable eminences (more or leſs rock) as well as the ridges compoſed of them. 1775. July.

But to return to the *Hottentots Holland's Mountain*, as it is called. It was as yet very bare of plants. However, I had the pleaſure of finding a ſuperb *protea* in full bloom. It was this that I have deſcribed and given a drawing of in the Swediſh Philoſophical Tranſactions for 1777, page 53, under the name of *Guſtavus's Scepter*. *Flora*, by conſecrating this beautiful ſpecies to ſo glorious and auguſt a name, perpetuates the memory of her improvement and augmentation (ſo honourable for our northern climate) by means of the protection, which the ſcience of botany has enjoyed under the great kings of the GUSTAVIAN race; and at the ſame time implies a wiſh, that under our moſt gracious king GUSTAVUS III. the Scepter may ſtill continue to flouriſh.

This *protea* is a ſhrub from two to four feet in height, which ſometimes grows up undivided as ſtrait as a rod, and at other times throws out two or three ſpiral branches, terminating in tufts of flowers of a ſilver colour. What is moſt

1775. July. moſt remarkable in this plant is, its producing two ſorts of leaves totally different from each other, viz. while the upper ones on the ſtalk are from one to two inches long only, wedge-ſhaped and undivided, the lower ones are ſeveral inches long, and divided into many parts in the form of branches.

The road on the north ſide of *Hottentots Holland's Mountain* was not near ſo ſteep, yet we were obliged at intervals to lock one of the wheels. All this part of the country, that lies on this or the north ſide of the above-mentioned mountain, is by the inhabitants commonly called *Agter de Berg*, or *Over de Berg*. By noon we came to *Palmite Rivier*, where it runs through a beautiful little plain. Here, according to our uſual cuſtom, we baited during the heat of the day. As not a ſingle bridge is to be found over any ſtream or river in all Africa, and ferry-boats are eſtabliſhed only at two places, we were obliged to croſs over at this part in water four feet in depth, which reached quite up to my ſaddle. Though the rivers in thoſe places, where they croſs the public roads, are generally not deep, yet this method of paſſing them is ſometimes dangerous as well as tedious; for after one or more days rain, eſpecially in winter, it often happens, that one is obliged to ſtay a week or a fortnight, and ſometimes longer, before the water is fallen enough for one to venture to paſs it; and that in places where, at other times, (particularly in ſummer) one may almoſt go over dry-ſhod; and though the water ſhould afterwards fall in ſome meaſure, one cannot nevertheleſs venture with any ſafety to go over as uſual, for fear that the flood ſhould have formed ſome inequa-

inequalities there, or elſe have made the bed deeper by waſhing away the earth. Some more deſperate and fool-hardy peaſants, who are impatient at waiting ſo long for the falling of the water, or who have ſo ſmall a ſtock of proviſion as not to be able to make any long ſtay, are ventureſome enough to ſwim their waggons over, ſo that the water will riſe above the middle of the body of the carriage: and though their wives, children, and the baggage they have with them, ſhould undergo a good ſouſing, it makes no great difference to them. The ſlave, or the Hottentot, whom, as they do not make uſe of reins, they are unavoidably obliged to employ for the purpoſe of leading the foremoſt pair of oxen through the moſt dangerous places, muſt in ſuch caſes ſwim with them in his hand; and a lucky thing it is for the maſter, if the whim does not take them to follow the ſtream, or turn about, or play any other tricks. Theſe animals, however, when they are well broke in, will at any time all ſtand ſtill together on their driver's gently calling to them *Ho*, *Ha*; and ſo in like manner each ox in particular will pay attention, and go to the right or to the left, merely upon hearing its own name pronounced with a *Hote* or a *Haar* added to it; and with this amuſing ox-language, and the names of the beaſts brought in occaſionally, not to mention the noiſy cracks of the whip, the traveller muſt lay his account in being continually entertained, particularly in ſuch parts of the road, in which this practice is more peculiarly neceſſary in order to get them on. Add to this, the nice attention requiſite in order to make uſe of the whip not only frequently, but at proper times and ſeaſons; and it follows, that the buſineſs of waggon-driving

1775. July.

1775. July. driving in Africa, is as difficult and tireſome an occupation, as this mode of travelling is noiſy, inconvenient, and dangerous.

Very late in the evening we arrived at our driver's farm, which was very pleaſantly ſituated on the other ſide of *Bott Rivier*. This river was beſet at ſmall intervals with pretty high mountains, the peaks and ridges of which delightfully varied the ſcene. In the declivities of ſome of them caverns and grottos were ſeen, which certainly did not exiſt from the beginning, but were produced by the viciſſitudes and changes to which all natural objects are ſubject. Even the hard and ſteep rocky precipices, which one would imagine to be doomed to everlaſting nakedneſs, were, on their black walls, teeming with iron-ore, adorned with ſeveral climbing plants, the branches and tendrils of which they gratefully in return with their ſharply-projecting angles, ſtretched out and ſupported. In the clefts of theſe declivities I obſerved the plants, which nature had produced on theſe elevated hot-beds, already in bloom, and which, in their pride, might bid defiance to all human approach. A few ſtones throw from this farm there was a mineral water of conſiderable ſtrength, which nobody in this quarter had had the ſenſe to make uſe of. The ſtones and rocks in ſeveral ſpots hereabouts contained a great deal of iron.

Along this river lay many peaſants houſes and farms, the produce of which conſiſted chiefly of ſheep and corn. The wine that was made here was a ſour waſh, which would not ſell in the town without being firſt converted into vinegar and brandy. The peaſants themſelves, however,

ever, drank it greedily juſt as it was. The cauſe of the inferior quality of this wine, as well as of moſt of that made at *Agter de Berg*, proceeds from the greater coldneſs of the ſoil; which again depends on the diſtance of this country from the ſea, and conſequently from the fertilizing vapours of that element; but chiefly upon the elevation of this diſtrict above the ſea's ſurface. After ſtaying a day at this place, we made a trip to the warm baths. I left my waggon here till I ſhould have occaſion for it, and went on horſeback, in company with another waggon that was going to the ſame place. In order to go by a nearer way, we did not take any beaten road, but made the beſt of our way forward over plains, hills, and dales. The whole of this extenſive tract was, by reaſon of the defect of water, left uncultivated and uninhabited. A great number of deer and other game had taken refuge here. I now, for the firſt time, had the pleaſure of ſeeing herds, conſiſting of the two largeſt ſorts of *antilopes* or *gazells*, which are called by the Dutch *hartbeeſts* and *bunteboks*; the former name, which ſignifies *hart-beaſt*, was probably given to the former of theſe creatures on account of ſome reſemblance they ſhewed in colour to the European harts; and the latter, which ſignifies *painted*, or rather *pied goats*, ſuits better with theſe latter animals, their orange-yellow or pale-brown poſteriors being marked with a number of white ſpots and ſtreaks. The *hartbeeſt* I have deſcribed in the Memoirs of the Swediſh Academy of Sciences for 1779, page 151, by the name of *antilope dorcas*: it is likewiſe given here in Vol. II. plate I. fig. 1. being frequently mentioned in the courſe of the following pages. The *buntebock*, ſomething leſs, but more corpulent in pro-

1775. July.

1775. July. portion than the *hartbeeſt*, is the *antilope ſcripta* of PALLAS, and the *guib* of BUFFON, page 305—327. plate XL. According to ADANSON, it is very common at Senegal. I will add, that the females of this ſpecies have no horns. The ſame day I likewiſe ſaw, for the firſt time, whole troops of wild *zebras*, called by the coloniſts *wilde paarden*, or wild horſes. They were ſeen in large herds, and appeared very beautiful in their ſtriped black and white livery. It is the ſkins of theſe that are generally ſold at our furriers ſhops by the abſurd name of *ſea-horſe* hides.

Oſtriches, or the birds whoſe feathers our luxury brings from the remoteſt plains of Africa, I likewiſe ſaw to-day in their wild ſtate, at the ſouthernmoſt promontory of this quarter of the globe. I ſometimes came within a couple of gunſhots of ſome of them, inſomuch that I took it into my head to purſue them, but always without ſucceſs. With their long legs and huge ſtrides, they ſcoured away as faſt again as the untutored horſe and hunter could follow. They ran always with their wings extended, probably by way of preſerving their balance; for they are not able in the leaſt to raiſe their heavy bodies from the ground. I have ſince been told, that it is impoſſible for any man, even when mounted on the beſt hunter, to catch them at firſt ſetting off, but that in a few minutes they will bound out of ſight. The hunter muſt, notwithſtanding, keep on his courſe, but at times ſpare his horſe, by keeping him from galloping too faſt, till ſuch time as he can ſee the oſtrich again from the top of ſome hill; the bird in the mean time having run itſelf down, and afterwards growing ſomewhat cool, and conſequently ſtiff in its joints, has much ado to eſcape; and never

never fails, at leaſt after the third courſe, either to be taken alive, or elſe to receive his death from the ſportſman's gun. 1775. July.

In the like manner I chaſed and ſhot at the antilopes before ſpoken of in vain; theſe animals having a peculiar cuſtom of ſtanding ſtill at intervals during their flight, to ſtare at their purſuers a little, and wait for their coming up. This property, however, is not, as ſome imagine, either peculiar to the genus of antilopes, or common to all the ſpecies of it; for I have ſeen *buffaloes* and *wild aſſes* (*quaggas*) ſometimes make a ſtand in the ſame manner: on the other hand, ſome of the ſmaller kinds of antilopes, as *ſteenboks*, *klip-ſpringers*, *riet-reebocks*, and *boſchboks*, run without ſtopping, till they are out of the hunter's ſight. The Cape *elks* (*antilope oryx*) of which I have likewiſe given a deſcription in the Swediſh Tranſactions, are ſaid, on account of the great demand there is for their fleſh and hides, to be already extirpated from this part of the country; and as ſoon as any others come from the inner diſtricts, they are ſhot directly, being in much greater requeſt, as well as eaſier to hunt, than the *hartbeeſts*. Towards evening we came out upon a road, which carried us by two farms, and at laſt, about duſk, to the *warm bath*. Juſt before we got thither, we had left a road on the left hand, which, we were told, led to *Roodezand*, *Roggeveld*, *Bokveld*, and *Sneeberg*. The ground we had gone over that day, was reckoned four hours on horſeback; and, as it appeared to me, was about four Swediſh, or twenty-three Engliſh miles. We had now been above ſeven hours driving at an even pace over this piece of road. The way of meaſuring ground at the Cape, which is computed

1775. July. by time, cannot be otherwiſe than uncertain and variable; too much ſo, indeed, to be collated with our method of reckoning by miles. An hour upon a hilly road, muſt neceſſarily be ſhorter than an hour upon a level one. The reader, therefore, muſt not expect a perfect geometrical accuracy in my map, it being laid down only from my own obſervations with a compaſs, and the accounts I got from others. In the mean time, however, it is the only one that exiſts, and may probably be of no ſmall aſſiſtance in the framing of others that may be made hereafter. In general, the *uur*, or an hour on the road, is reckoned as much as a man can ride on a round trot, or a common hand-gallop in that ſpace of time, and is conſidered as being equal to the diſtance which a man is able to drive a waggon with oxen in two hours; though even theſe on a plain level road, and with a lighter load than they generally draw, will go almoſt as faſt a trot, and in the ſame proportion for other paces, as one uſually rides on horſeback. Four ſuch hours with a horſe, or with eight oxen, are reckoned to make one *ſkoft*. This is as much as they uſually drive with a load in a day, or in the ſpace of twelve hours, as ſometimes they bait once on the road. The peaſants that live farther up in the country, and have a long way to travel, are provided with a ſpare ſet of oxen or two, which they make uſe of by turns, and in this manner are able to drive day and night, or two *ſkofts* (i. e. eight horſe-hours) in the twenty-four natural hours. Now as thoſe who live a good way up in the country take fourteen, and ſometimes twenty and odd days, beſides a day or two for reſting, to carry their goods in this manner to the Cape, and ſomewhat leſs time to return

return in, it may eaſily be conceived, that they do not ſpare the poor creatures in the leaſt: one may ſee them often enough driven puffing and blowing with their tongues hanging a good way out of their mouths; and one plainly perceives, that but little time is allowed them for reſting, and ſtill leſs for ſeeking their food: now and then, indeed, they are able to fill their bellies with graſs, ſhrubs, and water, but have ſcarcely time to chew the cud. It is from this cauſe likewiſe, that from having been, as it were, almoſt choked with fat, they grow quite lean on ſuch a journey as this; though, by the time that they take another journey next year to the Cape, they may poſſibly, eſpecially ſuch as during that period are not much worked, get into as good plight as before, on their uſual paſture, which they have in great abundance. 1775. July.

As I have juſt been treating of the manner of travelling at the Cape, I muſt here farther add, that throughout all this colony oxen are never put into a team, ſo as to draw with their horns, but with their ſhoulders only, one yoke being uſed for each pair of oxen, which in the mortiſes with which it is faſtened round their necks, has notches for putting on and taking off the head-harneſs. The yoke belonging to the hindmoſt pair is faſtened by its middle part to the pole of the waggon; and thoſe belonging to the reſt have a rope, ſtrap or chain, running through them, which by this means is ſtretched out equally between all the cattle. Perhaps this manner of harneſſing their oxen, which ſeems to leave them ſo much at liberty to move about, without giving them an opportunity of making uſe of the ſtrength they have in their horns, will account

1775. July.

account for ſuch long journies being made with oxen ſo expeditiouſly in Africa; and likewiſe on the other hand, for their being obliged to make uſe of ten or twelve beaſts to one waggon or plough. Mr. ARTHUR YOUNG, in his "*Tour through Ireland*," in the years 1776, 77, 78, has made mention of an experiment to this purpoſe, which has given riſe to this conjecture of mine, for which reaſon I thought it neceſſary to quote the paſſage here.

"Lord Shannon, upon going into tillage, found that the expence of horſes was ſo great, that it eat up all the profit of the farm, which made him determine to uſe bullocks; he did it in the common method of yokes and bows, but they performed ſo indifferently, and with ſuch manifeſt uneaſineſs, that he imported the French method of drawing by the horns; and in order to do this effectually, he wrote to a perſon at Bourdeaux to hire him a man who was practiſed in that method. Upon the correſpondent being applied to, he repreſented difficulties attending it, the man who was ſpoken to having been in Germany for the ſame purpoſe. Upon which Lord Shannon gave directions, that every thing ſhould be bought and ſent over which the labourer wiſhed to bring with him. Accordingly a bullock of the beſt ſort, that had been worked three years, was purchaſed; alſo a hay-cart, a plough, and all the tackling for harneſſing them by the horns.—In my preſence, his Lordſhip ordered the French harveſt-cart to be loaded half a mile from the ricks; it was done, one thouſand and twenty ſheafs were laid on it, and two oxen drew it without difficulty.

We

We then weighed forty ſheafs, the weight two hundred and fifty-one pounds, at which rate the one thouſand and twenty came to ſix thouſand three hundred and ſeventy-five pounds, or above three tons, which is a vaſt weight for two oxen to draw. I am very much in doubt, whether in yokes they would have ſtirred the cart ſo loaded." (Page 409, Vol. I.—See likewiſe page 380.) 1775. July.

SECT.

SECT. IV.

Reſidence at the Warm Bath.

1775. July. THE warm bath, which we now arrived at, is called *Hottentots Holland's Bath*, from the name of the diſtrict in which it is ſituated; for the ſame reaſon it was likewiſe frequently called the *Bath over* or *behind* the *mountain*, and ſometimes too *Yzer-Baad*, as this is ſuppoſed to contain more iron than any other bath in the colony. It is likewiſe looked upon to be better furniſhed with conveniencies than any of the others. A ſtone houſe has been built here by order of government for the accommodation of the company at the bath. This conſiſts of a hall, two large chambers, a kitchen, and a little chamber, all with earthen floors. The ſmall chamber is inhabited by the *poſt-maſter*, as he is called, or the overſeer of the bath, ſo that there are, properly ſpeaking, only the two large chambers for the gueſts, who ſometimes arrive in a greater number than can be lodged in that narrow ſpace. In this caſe they are obliged to diſpoſe of themſelves as well as they can in the hall, in the loft, or elſe in tents and tilt-waggons, which they bring with them for that purpoſe.

The

The ſtone building above-mentioned, is run up againſt the declivity of a hill, without any kind of ſewer or dyke; hence it comes to paſs, that the water making its way into one of the chambers, renders it very damp and unhealthy; and it is ſtill more ſo, when they are obliged to put ſeveral beds and ſick people together. By the liſt that the overſeer of the bath has kept there for ſeveral years paſt, I found, that from one hundred and fifty to two hundred perſons uſe the bath yearly. But at the cold and inconvenient ſeaſon when I was there, there were only eight people bathing, and even theſe were but ſcurvily entertained. The few miſerable benches, and the table that we found here, were the property of the old man at the bath, and accordingly we were obliged to hire them of him. 1775. July.

At the diſtance of about a hundred paces from the dwelling-houſe, is the bathing-houſe. This is a cottage, two ſides of which are for the greater part under ground, and into which the light enters only by a few ſmall peep-holes. The length of this cottage is from three and a half to four fathoms, and its breadth a fathom and a half. At one end of it there is a ciſtern or pit, a fathom and a half ſquare, and two feet deep. The warm water is brought a little way under ground from its ſource, till it comes out from above into one of the gables of the houſe, where it afterwards runs through an open channel one fathom in length, from which it comes pouring down into the ciſtern in a ſtream an inch thick. By this contrivance, indeed, the expence of ſtone and brick-work is ſaved, but then probably an opportunity is given to the moſt ſubtile and efficacious particles to fly off.

1775. July.

The method of bathing is, for the patient to ſit or lay himſelf down in the ciſtern, till the water is up to his chin. The water then feels quite warm without ſcalding, and a kind of ſugillation from the internal to the external parts of the body is obſerved. The velocity of the pulſe is increaſed, as well as that of the pulſation of the heart. In ſo ſhort a ſpace of time as eight or ten minutes, and ſometimes even before that period, a deliquium appears to be coming on. It is therefore by no means adviſeable to be alone, for fear of ſwooning in the bath, and being drowned. Such unfortunate accidents are ſaid ſometimes to have really happened. At length, when the patient gets out of the water, he lays himſelf at the other end of the room to ſweat in the clothes he has brought with him for this purpoſe. If he then drinks ſome of the warm water, he gets ſo much the eaſier into a ſweat. As ſoon as this is over, or at leaſt diminiſhed, the patient waſhes himſelf as quickly as poſſible in the bath, in order to be dry ſo much the ſooner, before he puts on his clothes. Some people bathe and ſweat in the manner here mentioned at two different times, one immediately after the other, and find no bad effects from it. The ciſtern may be emptied, by turning a cock between each perſon's bathing, if required.

Hardly a mile and a half from hence there is a farm, where the company at the bath ſometimes lodge; but find this rather inconvenient, on account of the diſtance. The patients bathe, as deſcribed above, moſtly once or twice a day, very ſeldom three times; at leaſt, ſuch as intend to purſue this method of cure for any length of time.

A few

A few paces from this bath there are two others, which are nothing more than pits into which the warm water flows, covered in by hovels made of hurdles. Of theſe, the one is cooler and the other warmer than that which I firſt deſcribed; both of them are made uſe of only by ſlaves and Hottentots. In this part of the country there are two other wells without any ſhelter, but they are not uſed, though one of them has the ſtrongeſt ſpring of any, and is neareſt to the main building. At the diſtance of about fifty paces from and below the warm wells or bathing-places, there lies in the dale I have deſcribed a well of cold water, very pure to the taſte. The contents and temperature of the warm bath I cannot very accurately determine, partly on account of my thermometer being not graduated high enough for this purpoſe, and partly by reaſon that I was in want of many neceſſary helps, as well with regard to drugs as veſſels; for the maſter of the bath's, brandy-glaſs excepted, I had nothing here fit for the purpoſe, but the two drinking-glaſſes I brought with me, the people here uſually drinking the water of the well out of ladles. 1775. July.

So that the only experiments that I had an opportunity of making are the following:

A *ſolution* of *ſugar* of *lead* ſeemed to precipitate a foul ſlimy matter.

A *ſolution* of *ſilver* tinged the water of an opal colour, and at length precipitated a little white powder to the bottom.

Oil of *tartar per deliquium*, precipitated ſcarcely any thing.

1775. July.

Litharge, *ſal ammoniac*, *lacmus*, and *ſyrup* of *violets*, each of them ſeparately digeſted with the water, exhibited no change in their colour.

Powder of *gall-apples* digeſted with the water, while it preſerved its natural warmth, produced a brown colour, as our mineral waters do in Sweden, and this colour was durable;

——————— digeſted with the water, after it had ſtood to cool in the glaſs, ſcarcely gave any tinge to it;

——————— digeſted with water boiled, ſcarcely tinged it in the leaſt.

Ochre had ſettled in great quantities in the ciſtern and conduits.

The *water ſhaken* in bottles with narrow necks, generated a great number of air-bubbles.

Lime-water did not produce any hepatic air, but formed ſeveral ſmall clouds in the warm water, which ſoon collected into one without falling to the bottom. It muſt be obſerved, however, that the lime-water I made uſe of for this purpoſe, was not ſufficiently to be depended upon. I was obliged to prepare ſome myſelf from lime that was ſomewhat ſlacked, and a quantity of water, which, for want of a better apparatus, I diſtilled by means of ſeveral tea-kettles joined together.

Silver that had lain long in the water, diſcovered no tokens of the preſence of ſulphur.

It is generally reported of this water, that it taſtes of brimſtone; but in fact, no ſuch mineral is to be diſcovered in it, either by the taſte or ſmell; the taſte predominant

nant in this water being very ſenſibly vitriolic, and not ſulphureous. Notwithſtanding this, the water is pretty eaſy of digeſtion, and does not ſit heavy on a tolerably good ſtomach. As here is hardly ever any opportunity of conſulting a phyſician, this bath is uſed without any other method or indication than what correſponds with the caprice, or ſuits the convenience of the patient; conſequently, without any regular order, without the leaſt attention to diet, or any diſtinction of diſorders, of which I ſhall give the following inſtance. A ſlave had ſo far got the better of an epidemical diſtemper, with which he had been afflicted, that nature was perfecting the cure by throwing out biles on the ſurface of his body; notwithſtanding which he was ſent from *Zwellendam*, by the lord lieutenant of that diſtrict, to the bath here, as being a never-failing remedy. In vain did I order him to refrain entirely from bathing, when the greateſt man in the place had commanded him to do it. A few hours from the time of the poor fellow's firſt bathing, delivered him from his biles and bondage at once. 1775. July.

The company at the wells were in general not at all nice with regard to the time of day for bathing, and did not heſitate to go into the bath directly after meals; and though this was ſometimes really done without any remarkable bad conſequences enſuing, yet it was much to be feared, that the food which the patient had juſt before taken, ſhould be too ſuddenly thrown into the maſs of blood. From all the accounts I could collect, it was not unuſual for rheumatiſms and contractions of the limbs to be entirely removed in three or four days, by the uſe of the warm

1775. July. warm bath; but in the gout it is by no means a peculiarly powerful remedy. It is ſometimes of uſe in eruptions and malignant ulcers, but at other times has not the leaſt effect in theſe diſorders. A girl who was now uſing the bath for the ſecond year for her leg that was violently ſwelled and affected with profound ulcers, and in the mean time had poulticed it with the bruiſed leaves of mallows and other plants, had obtained no relief; I therefore diſſuaded her from uſing either the bath or the leaves, as being of too irritating a nature, and ordered her to uſe a ſalve made of wax and honey, partly on account of its being eaſy to be procured, and partly becauſe I knew by experience, that it could do no harm, and might do good. By this remedy the ulcer was healed very ſuddenly beyond all expectation, and the ſwelling went down by degrees. A man bathed here for an old inveterate ulcer in his leg, without any effect; but it ſhould be obſerved by the bye, that he got drunk almoſt every day. A woman had a hard lump in one of her breaſts, bigger than a man's fiſt. As bathing alone ſeemed to be of no ſervice in this caſe, I made her rub the indurated tumour with a little mercurial ointment; by which means, in fact, one half of it diſappeared in the ſpace of two days; but the remainder was not in the leaſt acted upon, either by the ointment or the bath. This good woman was at that very time, without knowing it, in that ſituation, that a few months after bathing ſhe was brought to bed. The child, which was quite lively and hearty, had received no damage from the mother's bathing. A butcher was now uſing the bath for the third month, for an inveterate ulcer in his leg, but without

without any peculiar advantage; though I was acquainted with a magiſtrate, who at this place in a ſhort time got rid of a bad ulcer in his leg, for which he had long tried in vain every remedy that could be thought of. 1775. July.

A young Madagaſcar ſlave, who had an inveterate ulcer in his leg of three years ſtanding and two inches broad, was ſent to the warm bath under my care, on condition that I ſhould make uſe of him as my ſervant. He had before this been attended, and given over as incurable by a ſurgeon at the Cape. Being curious to examine a negro's fleſh, I had for ſome weeks before we ſet off undertaken to look after his ſores myſelf. Theſe in general diſcharged very little. The raw fleſh appeared exactly of the ſame colour with that of an European. After the proud-fleſh was got under, the ulcer began to heal, by throwing out freſh fibres in the ſame manner as ours do, with ſomething whitiſh on the ſide of the ſkin, which otherwiſe was dark-coloured. The proceſs, however, went on very ſlowly and tediouſly; but with the warm bath, the ſore increaſed both in width and depth. I let him go on bathing nevertheleſs, in hopes that the wound would heal of itſelf, after his body had been well cleanſed by a courſe of bathing; but in this, as I afterwards found, I was very much miſtaken. The ſlave himſelf informed me, that once before, when he was in a ſtate of freedom, and in his native country, he had had this ſame complaint come upon him; that the ſore had then, as well as at preſent, broke out of itſelf, but at that time was healed in a few days, by means of a certain bark bruiſed between two ſtones, and laid upon the part. He ſaid he knew the tree very

1775. July. very well, and had ſeen the bark of it uſed by many of his countrymen with equal ſucceſs; but that ſince his arrival in Africa, he had looked for it in vain.

The chriſtians who arm the natives of Madagaſcar againſt each other, in order, by bartering afterwards with the conquerors, to recruit their colonies with droves of wretched ſlaves, muſt here give me leave to remind them, if not ſwayed by the conſideration of the advantages which may accrue to mankind, yet at leaſt for the ſake of their own intereſts, a motive in other reſpects ſo powerful with them, in ſome meaſure to turn their thoughts, and allot a ſmall part of their gains, to the purpoſe of making uſeful reſearches. The Peruvian *bark*, *ſenega*, *ophiorhiza*, *ſarſaparilla*, *quaſſia*, with many other uſeful remedies, calculated for preſerving millions of our ſpecies, have not we learned them all from thoſe we call ſavages? and perhaps might learn ſtill more, if our tyranny had not already, I had almoſt ſaid, entirely extirpated them, and together with them the fruits of their uſeful experience. The operation of the bath, and the cures that are here performed by its means, depend, in my opinion, very little on the mineral that is contained in a ſtate of ſolution in the water; for to do any good in this way, it is forced out too ſpeedily, and by too near paſſages. The warmth itſelf, in the degree in which it exiſts here, hinders the iron from acting as a *tonic*; and likewiſe prevents any of the water, by which the body is ſurrounded, from being abſorbed into the veſſels, and diluting the humours, &c. as theſe latter evidently flow towards the ſurface of the body; ſo that the cures performed here, proceed from nothing elſe

than repeated mutations of the humours by ſweating, and therefore a more ſuitable diet and courſe of medicine than are here obſerved are of the utmoſt importance, to the end that the newly-generated fluids may be more healthy than thoſe that have been previouſly carried off by the pores of the ſkin. But if it be true, that the cures made by this bath chiefly depend on the operation of ſweating, in this caſe it has no peculiar advantage over domeſtic baths, beſides that of ſaving fuel. In Africa and Europe, as well as among the ſavages in America, it is by no means unknown, that the methods of cure by exciting perſpiration in different ways, have in certain caſes been of the greateſt ſervice; but perhaps, in many inſtances, more benefit would be found by making uſe of the natural baths at the Cape with a more moderate degree of warmth, which would allow of the water being abſorbed into the body; and likewiſe by uſing them with the addition of herbs: as, for example, of *bucku* (*dioſma*) and wild *dacka* (*phlomis leonurus*) which are known both by the coloniſts and the Hottentots to be as efficacious as they are common, and of the powerful effects of which in pains and contractions of the limbs, when uſed in the form of baths, I myſelf have ſeen inſtances. But finally, ſuppoſing the ſolutions of minerals in the warm ſprings to be poſſeſſed of the greateſt powers, either univerſally, or only in particular circumſtances, even then in default of natural baths, one may prepare ſomething ſimilar to them one's ſelf. Vide JOHI CAROLI SCHROTERI *Diſputatio ſub præſidio* FRID. HOFFMANI *de Balneorum artificialium, ex Scoriis Metallicis uſu Medico. Halæ Magdeburgi* 1772.

1775. July.

1775. July. Likewiſe *Die kunſt naturlichen Brunnen nachzumachen*, (the art of imitating natural mineral waters) by M. Charles le Roi. Likewiſe Profeſſor Bergman's *Opuſcula*, Vol. I.

In the mean while, without denying the advantages that may accrue to any country from poſſeſſing theſe warm ſprings, it would not be amiſs in this place to make ſome enquiries concerning their origin. It is well known, that heat, earthquakes, and even fire are produced, when water comes into contact with *ſtrata* of ſulphur mixed with iron. Subterraneous heat or fire produced by this or other cauſes, is the occaſion of the water exiſting in the bowels of the earth being forced upwards in the form of vapours. A collection of theſe impregnated with the ſubſtances which they may have diſſolved in their way, compoſe what we call mineral waters. So that it ſeems much to be feared, leſt in ſuch conſiderable diſtillations the water ſhould chance to boil over. And, indeed, experience ſhows, that, in this caſe, warm ſprings and volcanos for the moſt part enſue. To conclude, from the number of baths there is at the Cape, and the conſiderable degrees of warmth they are poſſeſſed of, it is probable, that there lies concealed in the bowels of the earth not a little of this burning and all-deſtroying element. What gives farther cauſe for this ſuſpicion, is a little rock or hill of ſtone, ſituated fifteen or twenty paces above the bathing-houſe. This conſiſts of a ſolid lava, in which there appear evident marks of its having been once in a fluid ſtate. It likewiſe perfectly reſembles a lava which I had found before in great abundance on the iſland of Aſcenſion. This lava too, is in like manner of a very dark colour and contains iron.

A lit-

1775. July.

A little piece of road is carried over this ſpot, and is diſtinguiſhable by a blackiſh duſt or powder, like charcoal duſt, which probably proceeds from the lava or iron ore cruſhed to pieces by the wheels of the waggons that paſs that way. But if any ſubterraneous heat or fire ſhould be ſtill concealed hereabouts to a conſiderable extent, may it not ſo far operate on the ſhell or external cruſt of the earth, that much of the humidity of the latter ſhall partly evaporate, and partly be dried up in the chinks and clefts which are formed here in its ſurface. What confirms me in this conjecture is, that though there falls a great deal of rain in this part of Africa, ſo that in the rainy ſeaſon the rivers almoſt overflow their banks, the greateſt part of them nevertheleſs are quite dried up in ſummer time. Here are no wells and very few ſprings, but abundance of arid plains covered with ſand and heath, of bare mountains, &c. All theſe contribute to give this country the aſpect of being the moſt thirſty and dry tract of land that I have yet ſeen upon the whole face of the globe. The warmth of the climate here is not ſufficient to account for ſo great a degree of aridity; but the ſuppoſition of its being occaſioned by a ſubterraneous heat appears to me by no means abſurd, as on the iſle of *Tanna*, though rendered ſo fertile in other reſpects by the aſhes of a burning volcano, I obſerved two tracts of land ſufficiently dry and arid, notwithſtanding that a ſmall ſpot only upon each of them was ſenſibly heated by the ſubterraneous fire. Near the *Hottentots Holland's Bath*, herbs and ſhrubs grow luxuriantly along the tepid ſtreams, which take their riſe in the warm ſprings, the roots and ſtems of ſome of theſe vegetables being even

1775. July. waſhed by the water, without ſuffering the leaſt inconvenience. It is at the foot of the *Zwarteberg* (or black mountain, as it is called) that the bath is ſituated. Beneath this range of mountains is extended a conſiderable plain, covered with ſmall hills and dales, which was ſhut in from the ſea by a naked and hideous range of mountains of granite. Theſe limited proſpects which are ſo common in Africa, could not but be very unpleaſant to me, who in Sweden was almoſt always uſed to ſee the horizon perpetually verdant with groves of firs and pine.

During my ſtay here, the ſpring, together with the month of Auguſt, made daily advances with her various beautiful bulbous plants, which afterwards, when the drought of ſummer came on, took their leave. Among theſe I now could number ſeveral different varieties of *iriſes*. The roots, or more properly the bulbs of theſe, it is common here to roaſt in the aſhes and eat: they are called *oenkjes*, and have nearly the ſame taſte with potatoes. The Hottentots, with more reflection than generally falls to the ſhare of ſavages, uſe the word *oenkjes* in the ſame ſenſe in which VIRGIL uſed that of *ariſtæ*, that is, for reckoning of time; always beginning the new year, whenever the *oenkjes* puſh out of the ground, and marking their age and other events by the number of times in which, in a certain period, this vegetable has made its appearance.

My courſe of bathing made me in general too languid to undertake any long excurſions, or to go a hunting, particularly up the neighbouring mountains. On the 12th, how-

however, a lame ſlave having gone up into the cliffs to gather wood and ſtumps of trees, and having at the ſame time taken with him ſeveral hounds, which I heard very buſy a hunting, I haſtened up thither with a ſmall gun, in hopes of meeting with a *ſteenbock*; but to my great aſtoniſhment found, that the hounds had driven the game up into a tree, and were laying cloſe ſiege to it round about the bottom. The ſlave, who likewiſe came hither with his burden, ſaid it was a tiger or a leopard; and added, that I muſt take care to be ſure of my mark, or otherwiſe it might leap on to my ſhoulders from the branches of the tree, by which it was pretty well ſheltered, and be revenged on me. As I recollected having heard that in *Bengal*, in order to provide in ſome meaſure againſt a caſe of this kind, they held a ſmall ſpear over their heads, I now got ready a large knife, at the ſame time that I gave fire with ſome large ſwan-ſhot, upon which I let a ball run down in haſte. As for the reſt, I thought I might very well depend on the hounds relieving me by taking him off. The ball miſſed, and the ſhot alone took place; however, the beaſt at length came tumbling down, and proved to be nothing more than a large wild cat. It was of a grey colour, and, for aught I could ſee, was exactly of the ſame ſpecies as our tame houſe cats; though, indeed, it weighed three times as much. I meaſured it with an Engliſh rule; it muſt therefore be obſerved, that the Engliſh inch is larger than the Swediſh, and that the ſize of the animal is conſequently given here according to the former, namely,

1775. July.

From

1775. July.

	Inches.
From the tip of the noſe to the head behind the ears	5
From the ear to the ſhoulder - - -	2 ¼
From the ſhoulder to the anus - -	14
So that the whole length of the cat was -	21 ¼
The tail - - - - - -	13
The feet from the belly meaſured,	
The fore feet - - - - -	12
The hind feet - - - -	13

So that the height of the cat was about a foot and a half.

The inteſtines were half as long again as the animal, tail and all, or about fifty inches. They were full of moles and rats.

A Hottentot *baſtard*, who had built a little cottage here near the bath, for himſelf, his wife, and his little daughter, looked upon the fleſh of wild cats, lions, tigers, and ſuch like beaſts of prey, as a medicine, and much wholeſomer than that of other animals. The greater part of the company at the wells were deſirous of preſerving the fat, which was thought to poſſeſs not only the virtue of healing ſores, but likewiſe to be ſerviceable in the gout; and the ſame notion was harboured concerning the fat of other wild beaſts. It is certain, that the fat of this wild cat had a very rank and penetrating ſmell, and on that account probably was preferable to other fat. Another kind of cat, as it is called, or the *roode-kat*, is in Africa univerſally ſuppoſed to poſſeſs a great medicinal power in its ſkin to cure lumbagos, pains in the joints, gout in the hands and feet, &c. if the hairy ſide be worn

on

on the part affected. I have likewiſe heard the ſame atteſted by thoſe who thought they had received benefit by it; but as this ſuppoſed ſpecific was ſold at a very high price, I was contented for my part, with examining the ſkin, by which I was convinced, that it is the ſame animal as Mr. PENNANT, in his *Synopſis* and *Hiſtory of Quadrupeds*, has deſcribed, and given a drawing of, by the name of the *Perſian Cat*; and M. BUFFON, Vol. IX. T. 24. by the name of the *Caracal*. The hair of this ſkin, it muſt be owned, is very fine and ſoft; but probably there are many other ſkins that, applied with an equal degree of faith, would have the ſame effects. The colour of the upper part of it is of a very light red, ſprinkled with grey; under the belly it is light-coloured; the upper part of the ears, which have tufts of hair on the tips of them, is dark brown, ſprinkled with grey. This animal is rather long in the body, and about two feet in height, with a peaked noſe. They have a third kind of cat in Africa, which, in its motions and attitudes, is like our common cat, and is called at the Cape the *tiger-kat*, and the *tiger boſch-kat*. From the two ſkins which I brought with me, and which I ſhall perhaps have occaſion to deſcribe more accurately, I cannot find but that the tiger-cat is the ſame animal as M. BUFFON calls the *ſerval*-cat. As to the animal to which M. VOSMAER gives the name of the *African civet-cat*, I much doubt if it be to be found at the Cape of Good Hope.

1775. July.

The *hyſtrix criſtata* of LINNÆUS, called by the coloniſts here *yzter-varken* (or *iron-hog*,) is the ſame animal as the Germans carry about for a ſhow in our country by the name of *porcupine*, and does much damage to the cabbages and garden-

1775. July. garden-ſtuff in the incloſures here. In the day-time it keeps in its holes under-ground, and at night it ſeeks for its food, which conſiſts of roots and leaves. The *calla Æthiopica* is the plant ſuppoſed to be moſt coveted by this animal, on which account likewiſe it is called the *yzter-varkens wortel.* This vegetable is notwithſtanding of ſo acrid a nature, that either the root or the leaf applied to the ſurface of the body occaſions bliſters. The hyſtrix is caught in the following manner. They ſteal by night ſoftly towards the place where the creature uſes to ſecrete itſelf, taking with them a dark lantern. The dogs now begin to give the alarm, and help to drive the animal from its ſubterraneous retreat, till at length the ſportſmen are able to get at it and knock it on the head. It often happens indeed, that the more eager and inexperienced dogs get ſore noſes and mouths, &c. in conſequence of being pricked by this creature's ſharp quills; but there is no foundation for the report, that it has the power of ſhooting forth theſe weapons from its body at pleaſure, and directing them againſt its enemies. It is perfectly well defended from dogs as well as other animals, while, like the *hedgehog*, it rolls its body into a heap, and ſets up its prickles or quills, many of which are a foot and a half long. I did not hear talk at the Cape of any *bezoar* being produced by this animal. The fleſh neareſt reſembles pork, a circumſtance which has undoubtedly procured it the name it bears. It is chiefly uſed as bacon, being ſmoked and dried up the chimney for that purpoſe, and is by no means ill-taſted; though prejudice hinders a great many of the inhabitants from eating it.

I found

1775. July.

I found here two new ſpecies of the genus of *tetrao*, one of which is called *partridge* and the other *pheaſant*; either ſort being nearly of the ſize of our partridges. They live in flocks, and are not hard to come at, eſpecially in the mornings and evenings; at which times chiefly they diſcover their abode by a ſhrill *kurring* noiſe by no means pleaſant in itſelf, yet not diſagreeable to hear; partly as it takes off a little from the wildneſs and deſolateneſs, with which the ſight of ſo many extenſive and untilled fields cannot fail to ſtrike the imagination; and partly, as particularly at break of day as well as at the ruddy opening of the morn, it prognoſticates the approach of the ſun to vivify all nature. Flocks of *keuvitts*, on the other hand, towards the duſk of the evening, ſcreamed out a diſagreeable ſound reſembling that of the name they bear. Theſe are a ſort of ſnipes, and are diſtinguiſhed in the Syſtema Naturæ by the name of the *ſcolopax capenſis*. *Knorrhane* is the name of a kind of *otis*, which has the art of concealing itſelf perfectly till one comes pretty near to it, when on a ſudden it ſoars aloft, and almoſt perpendicularly into the air, with a ſharp, haſty, and quavering ſcream, or the repetition of *korrh*, *korrh*, which is an alarm to the animals throughout the whole neighbourhood, diſcovering the approach of a ſportſman, or enemy of ſome ſort or other.

The *ſecretaries bird*, though it has been already brought alive to Europe, and a drawing of it, painted in its natural colours has been given by M. VOSMAER under the denomination of *ſagittarius*, is too remarkable among the feathered kind to be left unnoticed here. It was in theſe

1775. July. parts I firſt ſaw it in its wild ſtate. It is not a very ſhy bird, but when ſcared, begins at firſt to endeavour to ſave itſelf by hopping and ſcudding along very ſwiftly, and afterwards does it more effectually by flight. In external appearance it partly reſembles the eagle, and partly the crane, two birds certainly very unlike each other, and in my opinion ought to be referred to neither of theſe *genera*. The Hottentots give it a name moſt ſuitable to its nature, *viz.* as tranſlated into Dutch, *ſlangen-vraater* (or ſerpent-eater;) and, in fact, it is for the purpoſe of keeping within due bounds the very extenſive race of ſerpents in Africa, that nature has principally deſtined this bird. It is much larger than our crane, with legs two feet and a half long, and the body in proportion leſs than the crane's. Its beak, claws, ſtout thighs covered with long feathers, and ſhort neck, are like thoſe of the eagle and hawk kind. The head, neck, beak, the leſſer coverts of the wings, and the greater part of the tail, are of a grey leaden colour; the longer quills of which latter, a little way from the tips, are moreover marked with a black ſpot; but the two middle quills are longeſt of all, and are white at the tips; its breaſt is of a yellowiſh white (*ſordide albidum*;) the vent-feathers, wing-quills, thighs, claws, pupil, and the retroverted feathers under the eyes are black; its thighs are of a fleſh-colour, its eyes large and prominent, the iris of an orange-yellow, the *cere*, and the region of the eyes naked and yellow. A tuft or comb compoſed of about twelve feathers, with which, placed in two rows, this bird is adorned, lies down moſtly on the hind part of the neck.

This bird has a peculiar method of ſeizing upon ſerpents. When it approaches them, it always takes care to hold the point of one of its wings before it, in order to parry off their venomous bites; ſometimes it finds an opportunity of ſpurning and treading upon its antagoniſt, or elſe of taking it up on its pinions and throwing it into the air; when by this method of proceeding it has at length wearied out its adverſary, and rendered it almoſt ſenſeleſs, it then kills it and ſwallows it at leiſure, without danger. Though I have very frequently ſeen the *ſecretaries bird* both in its wild and tame ſtate, I have yet never had an opportunity of ſeeing this method it has of catching ſerpents; however, I can by no means harbour any doubt concerning it, after having had it confirmed to me by ſo many Hottentots as well as Chriſtians; and ſince this bird has been obſerved at the *menagerie* at the *Hague*, to amuſe and exerciſe itſelf in the ſame manner with a ſtraw. If, finally, this ſerpent-eater is to be referred to the *accipitres*, or the hawk-kind, the name of *falco ſerpentarius* appears to be the moſt proper to diſtinguiſh it by in the *Syſtema Naturæ*. It has even been remarked, that theſe birds, when tame, will not diſdain now and then to put up with a nice chicken. 1775. July.

I will not venture at preſent to try my reader's patience longer, with accounts of any more of the feathered inhabitants of Africa, at leaſt not of the ſmaller ſort; yet it may not be improper to mention by the bye, that they are of many different ſorts, and moſt of them unlike thoſe which are to be found in other parts of the world, and at the ſame time that many of them are yet unknown to naturaliſts.

1775. July. liſts. In general, they excel our European birds in the brilliancy of their plumage; but, on the other hand, with regard to what adds greater life to nature, and which is capable of charming us more, and operating more powerfully on our ſenſes, viz. the delightful warbling and ſong peculiar to the feathered race, there are very few of them that deſerve our notice in this point.

The manner in which I employed the remainder of my time, while I ſtaid at the warm bath, was in viſiting a rich farmer who was ſick, and lived about two miles and a half off. I had now better reaſon than ever to be pleaſed with the knowledge I had attained in the Æſculapian art, though my reward conſiſted in nothing more than a ſhoulder of mutton now and then, and a piece of veniſon, which ſometimes was pretty plentiful there; and that at every viſit they gave me a pitcher full of milk, which I took home with me on the pummel of my ſaddle. As this latter was never ſuffered to go out of the houſe for money, and the company at the wells were very irregularly ſerved with proviſions, and even theſe were ſcarce, it occaſioned me frequently to repeat my viſits to my patient, eſpecially as the copious evacuations by ſweat required plenty of nouriſhment to ſupply the place of what was thus diſſipated; an apophthegm, of which many of thoſe, who uſed the bath, were reminded by an excellent appetite. As from the ſame motive I was once obliged to go as far as Bott-rivier, in order to get in a ſtock of butcher's meat and garden-ſtuff, which I brought home with me on a led horſe, I had the ſatisfaction, in the extenſive tracts above-mentioned, which

are

are between the bath and this river, of ſeeing ſome of the dog kind in their wild ſtate. 1775. July.

Theſe wild dogs are ſome of the moſt pernicious beaſts of prey, particularly with reſpect to ſheep and goats, that either the African coloniſts or the Hottentot hoards are expoſed to. They are reported not to be content merely with ſatisfying their hunger, but even to deſtroy and wound every thing they meet with. They always herd together in companies, and wander about day and night after their prey. The noiſe they make in hunting is ſaid much to reſemble the yelping of our common hounds, only to be ſomething ſofter. It is aſſerted, that they even have the courage to try their ſtrength with larger dogs, as well tame as wild; and that they were once bold enough in their turns, to purſue a ſportſman, who was out after them on horſeback, but was unlucky enough to miſs fire. It has been obſerved, that they hunt with much ſagacity, acting perfectly in concert with each other; while at the ſame time each of them in particular does his beſt to overtake or meet the game, till at length it falls a prey to the pack. They are ſaid to be always as lean as ſkeletons, and conſequently ugly, and at the ſame time that they have ſeveral ſpots bare of hair. One ſort is ſaid to be larger, and at the ſame time of a reddiſh colour, and ſpotted black; the other leſs and browner. Thoſe that I then ſaw at the diſtance of two hundred paces, were probably of the larger kind, for they were two feet high, ſhort haired, and reddiſh. No one yet has tried to tame them; ſome of the country people, however, may have had opportunities of experiencing, how near theſe grim and fierce animals of prey may

1775. July. may be allied to the more civilized little dogs which ſo frequently engroſs the favour and attention of the fair ſex. It is poſſible, that there is yet another ſpecies of wilds dogs in Africa, as a peaſant of the name of POTTGIETER informed me, that in *Moſſel-bay* he had ſeen an animal of the ſize and ſhape of a common dog, but that it had larger ears, and was marked white under the belly, but was of a dark colour every where elſe. His companion had ſhot at it, but miſſed fire.

The *tiger-wolf* is a much more common beaſt of prey, and one that from the very beginning, as well as throughout the whole of my journey, occaſioned me ſo much anxiety and fear for the ſafety of my cattle, and conſequently for the happy concluſion of my expedition, that I cannot defer any longer the deſcription of ſo formidable an animal. By the coloniſts they are called *tiger-wolf*. This is that hitherto unknown animal, which Mr. PENNANT, in his Synopſis of Quadrupeds, page 162, N° 119, and Hiſtory of Quadrupeds, page 250, N° 149, has briefly deſcribed and given a drawing of, by the name of the ſpotted *hyæna*, a different ſpecies from the *canis hyæna* of LINNÆUS.

The night, or the duſk of the evening only, is the time in which theſe animals ſeek their prey, after which they are uſed to roam about both ſeparately and in flocks. But one of the moſt unfortunate properties of this creature is, that it cannot keep its own counſel. The language of it cannot eaſily be taken down upon paper; however, with a view to make this ſpecies of wolf better known than it has been hitherto, I ſhall obſerve, that it is by means of a ſound ſomething like the following, *aauae*, and ſometimes

ooao,

ooao, yelled out with a tone of deſpair, (at the interval of ſome minutes between each howl,) that nature obliges this, the moſt voracious animal in all Africa, to diſcover itſelf, juſt as it does the moſt venomous of all the American ſerpents, by the rattle in its tail, itſelf to warn every one to avoid its mortal bite. This ſame *rattle-ſnake* would ſeem, in conſequence of thus betraying its own deſigns, and of its great inactivity, (to be as it were nature's ſtep-child,) if, according to many credible accounts, it had not the wonderous property of charming its prey by fixing its eye upon it. The like is affirmed alſo of the *tiger-wolf*. This creature, it is true, is obliged to give information againſt itſelf; but on the other hand, is actually poſſeſſed of the peculiar gift of being enabled, in ſome meaſure, to imitate the cries of other animals; by which means this arch-deceiver is ſometimes lucky enough to beguile and attract calves, foals, lambs and other animals. As to the howlings of this creature, they are, in fact, as much the natural conſequences of hunger, as gaping is of a diſpoſition to ſleep; and as the flowing of the ſaliva, or the water coming into the mouth, is of the ſight of ſome delicacy, which excites the appetite. There muſt, indeed, be ſome phyſical cauſe for this. The very hollowneſs of the ſound, or ſome other quality of it which I cannot well deſcribe, induces me to conjecture, that it proceeds from the emptineſs of the ſtomach. In the mean while, that a diſpoſition to this yelling is abſolutely implanted in the animal by nature, I am apt to conclude from the inſtance of a young tiger-wolf that I ſaw at the Cape, which, though it had been brought up tame from a whelp by a Chineſe

1775. July.

reſident

1775. July. reſident there, and was then chained up, was ſaid nevertheleſs to be ſilent in the day time, but very frequently in the night (being then probably hungry) was heard to emit the yelling noiſe peculiar to its kind. Near ſome of the larger farms, where there is a great deal of cattle, this ravenous beaſt is to be found almoſt every night; and at the ſame time frequently from one hour to another betraying itſelf by its howlings, gives the dogs the alarm. The peaſants aſſured me, that the cunning of the wolves was ſo great, (adding, that the trick had now and then even ſucceeded with ſome of them) that a party of them, half flying and half defending themſelves, would decoy the whole pack of dogs to follow them to the diſtance of a gun-ſhot or two from the farm, with a view to give an opportunity to the reſt of the wolves to come out from their ambuſcade, and, without meeting with the leaſt reſiſtance, carry off booty ſufficient for themſelves and their fugitive brethren. As the tiger-wolf, though a much larger and ſtronger animal, does not venture without being driven to the utmoſt neceſſity, to meaſure its ſtrength with the common dog, this is certainly an evident proof of its cowardice. Neither does this ſame voracious beaſt dare openly to attack oxen, cows, horſes, or any of the larger animals, while they make the leaſt appearance as if they would defend themſelves, or even as long as they do not betray any ſigns of fear. On the other hand, it has art enough to ruſh in upon them ſuddenly and unexpectedly, at the ſame time ſetting up a horrid and ſtrange cry, ſo as to ſet them a running in conſequence of the fright, that it may afterwards keep cloſe to their heels with ſafety, till it has an oppor-

opportunity with one bite or ſtroke to rip up the belly of its prey, (even though it ſhould be ſo large an animal as a draught-ox) or elſe give it ſome dangerous bite, and ſo at one ſingle bout make itſelf maſter of its antagoniſt. On this account the peaſants are obliged to drive their cattle home every evening before it is dark, excepting the more conſiderable droves of draught-oxen, which they let roam about day and night to ſeek their food unattended, by reaſon that they are uſed both to the country and the artifices of the wolves, and can therefore the eaſier depend upon and defend each other. 1775. July.

Travellers, on the other hand, who are obliged to keep on in their journey, frequently ſuffer great loſſes by turning their cattle out at night; eſpecially of the young ones, which are eaſieſt ſcared. I, who had only one team of oxen, and thoſe, to my ſorrow, of that degenerate ſort as to be apt to ſtray and wander afar off, ſeldom ventured to let them graze in the night, however neceſſary it might otherwiſe be; for my botanizing ſeldom allowed me to travel on nights, as the peaſants do, and bait my cattle in the day-time: ſo that, as I could only travel in the mornings and evenings, the heat of the day was neither a proper nor a ſufficient time for baiting them. I had beſides not unfrequently the diſagreeable accident happen to me, that the leader of my team, whoſe duty it was to go to paſture with the cattle, often neglected his duty. By this means we waſted not only many hours, but even ſometimes a couple of days togéther, in anxious endeavours to recover our loſt cattle; and at the ſame time were obliged to go over hills and dales, on horſeback as well as on foot,

1775. July. to look after them. While I ſtaid at the warm bath, my ſaddle-horſe together with ſome others, was frightened one night by the wolves, ſo as to pull up by the roots the ſmall buſhes to which they were tied, and took to their heels; but by good luck, they were found again unhurt the following evening. They had perhaps diſengaged themſelves entirely from their faſtenings, or elſe taken heart, on having been obliged to ſtop at the ſteep declivity of a mountain, that encloſed a narrow dale, where they were found. It may be likewiſe, that the hyæna has courage only upon the open plains, in the ſame manner as our ordinary wolves; which, for fear of being taken by ſurprize, are ſaid not to venture to follow any one that takes refuge in the ſkirts of a wood. The imminent danger I had been in of loſing my ſaddle-horſe, induced me afterwards to be as cautious as poſſible againſt ſo diſagreeable and vigilant an enemy as the wolf. I had alſo the good fortune, throughout the whole of my journey, to eſcape paying any tax to this animal's voracity and cunning, excepting a trace belonging to the waggon, two yards long and two fingers thick, made of ſtrong thongs of undreſſed ox's hide plaited together; for one night a wolf came within-ſide of the door of my lodgings (at *Tiger-hoek*) where it hung up, and gnawing it in pieces, ate it up. The Hottentots themſelves have confeſſed to me, that it was ſtill within the memory of man, that the tiger-wolf was bold enough to ſteal upon them and moleſt them in their huts, particularly by carrying off their children. This, however, is now no longer the caſe; a circumſtance, perhaps, proceeding from the introduction of fire-arms into the country,

try, a circumſtance which, in theſe latter times, has cauſed this, as well as other wild beaſts, to ſtand in greater awe of man than it did formerly. I have heard the following ſtory of the tiger-wolf mentioned, as being related in a certain treatiſe on the Cape, of which I now cannot exactly remember the title. The tale is laughable enough, though perhaps not quite ſo probable. 1775. July.

" At a feaſt near the Cape one night, a trumpeter who had got his fill was carried out of doors, in order that he might cool himſelf, and get ſober again. The ſcent of him ſoon drew thither a tiger-wolf, which threw him on his back, and dragged him along with him as a corpſe, and conſequently a fair prize, up towards *Table-mountain*. During this, however, our drunken muſician waked, enough in his ſenſes to know the danger of his ſituation, and to ſound the alarm with his trumpet, which he carried faſtened to his ſide. The wild beaſt, as may eaſily be ſuppoſed, was not leſs frightened in his turn." Any other beſides a trumpeter would, in ſuch circumſtances, have undoubtedly been no better than wolf's meat.

In the mean while it is a certain truth, and well known to every body, that theſe wolves are to be found almoſt every dark night about the ſhambles at the Cape, where they devour the offals of bones, ſkin, &c. which are thrown out there in great quantities, and drag away with them what they cannot eat. The inhabitants repay theſe good offices of the hyæna with a free and unlimited privilege of acceſs and egreſs. The dogs too hereabouts, perfectly accuſtomed to their company, are ſaid never to throw any impediment in their way; ſo that the beaſt,

1775. July. entertained and fed in the very heart of the town, has been ſeldom known to do any miſchief there. It is likewiſe a well-known fact, that theſe wolves, in different parts of Africa, exhibit different degrees of courage; this, however, may perhaps proceed from their being of different ſpecies in different parts.

Yet in this very greedineſs of the *hyæna*, and its diſpoſition to conſume every thing it can get at, the provident œconomy of nature is abundantly evinced. The flowery fields at the Cape, would certainly ſoon become hideous and disfigured with carcaſes and ſkeletons, the relicks of the great quantity of game of all ſorts which graze and die there in ſucceſſion, were not the *tiger-wolf* manifeſtly ſubſervient to nature in the regulation of her police, by clearing her theatre from them; nay, I had almoſt ſaid, the wolf alone: for lions and tigers, for example, never eat bones, and are not very fond of carcaſes. Theſe are ſerviceable in another way. They make the other animals vigilant and attentive to the functions for which nature has deſigned them; and beſides anſwering ſeveral other intentions of providence, they ſerve, in conjunction with mankind, to keep in a juſt equilibrium the increaſe of the animal kingdom; ſo that it may not exceed the ſupplies afforded it by the vegetable part of the creation, and by this means prevent the neceſſary renewal of the latter by ſeeds, &c. and thus, by deſolating it and laying it waſte, in the end impoveriſh and deſtroy themſelves, and die moſt wretched victims to want and hunger; ſo that, notwithſtanding the immenſe quantities of game exiſting in this country, there are very ſeldom found any bones in the

the haunts they have left, and never after the tiger, lion, jackal, wild cat, and wild dog. Theſe latter animals, that they may not encumber and litter the ground which nature has ordained them to clear, never go out of their dens and caverns when they find themſelves ſick and diſabled; but there, oppreſſed with hunger and diſeaſe, await the tranſitory moment, when they muſt pay obedience to nature's laſt law. 1775. July.

On this ſubject it is worth while to obſerve, that the *tiger-wolf* is ſaid, beſides being a very great gormandizer, likewiſe to be capable of bearing hunger a conſiderable time; and if we alſo recollect its cowardly manner of attacking living animals, it will be evident, that this creature's voracity muſt neceſſarily ſerve to conſume ſuch as are worn out with age, or are ſickly or maimed, as well as the other remains and refuſe of the animal kingdom, and in like manner what may be redundant in it; but does not threaten any great deſtruction of the ſupplies neceſſary for the recruiting of this part of the creation.

Two other voracious animals of this kind are found in Africa, which are diſtinguiſhed by the names of *mountain-wolf* and *ſtrand-wolf*; but the people of the country were not able to give me any other marks to diſtinguiſh them by, than that the *mountain-wolf* is of a greyiſh caſt, but the *ſtrand-wolf* blackiſh with a grey head. In the meanwhile, what I have ſaid above concerning the tiger-wolf, as being the moſt common of the kind, may perhaps be in a great meaſure applicable to the two other ſpecies.

The one of theſe probably is the *canis hyæna*, *Syſt. Nat.* LINN. as I brought with me from the Cape a ſkin, which

1775. July. which ſeems to correſpond tolerably well with the deſcriptions we have of that animal. The teeth and feet were either loſt from off the ſkin, or elſe mutilated; however, to deſcribe it as accurately as I can, it was five feet in length and two in breadth, and the legs, to conclude from what was left, were above a foot long. The tail was fifteen inches long, and tolerably erect; from the tip of the noſe to the eyes it meaſured ſix inches, and from the eyes to the ears five; the ears were ſix inches long, a little rounded at the tip, but the exterior parts of them were moſtly bare. The noſe was peaked; the head covered with ſhort hair, and of an aſh-colour all over; while, on the other hand, the hair on the reſt of the body was thick, harſh, and rough; on the upper part of the back the hairs were above a foot long, eſpecially near the tail; on the tail itſelf they were ſix inches in length, while on the ſides and belly they were not above four or five.

The whiſkers were very ſtiff and harſh, ſome of them being thrice the thickneſs of thoſe on the breaſt, and five inches in length. A number of ſtiff and ſtrait hairs, three or four inches long, compoſed the eye-brows. The eyes were at the diſtance of two inches aſunder; the colour of the ſpace between them, as well as on the upper part of the back and tail, was dark brown, as likewiſe on the legs and thighs; but on the ſides and under the belly it was mouſe-black. It was with difficulty that ſome dark ſtripes could be traced, running from the back-bone down to the ſides.

So that Mr. PENNANT's deſcription of the *hyæna canina*, or the canis hyæna of LINNÆUS, correſponds tolerably well,

well, as to the ſize of the animal and the nature of the hair, with the ſkin I brought with me, and have juſt now deſcribed, the ſmall differences there may be in the colour being of no great importance: beſides, I have another very good reaſon for believing, that one ſpecies of the animal called *wolves* at the Cape, is the *hyæna canina*, ſo well deſcribed by Mr. PENNANT; and this is, that a farmer living near *Bott Rivier*, offered to lay me a conſiderable wager, that he could ſhew me *wolves* that were *hermaphrodites*. For this purpoſe he intended to lay a poiſoned bait for them, compoſed of an extract of an herb, which he bought of ſomebody that lived a great way up the country; however, I did not accept the wager, partly as I had not time to wait for the determination of it, and partly becauſe I was afraid of getting into ſome diſagreeable diſpute about the deciſion of it; as perhaps this animal, in like manner as I had ſeen before in the caſe of the *viverra genetta* and other creatures, might have a muſk-bag, or follicle, in that part, which might be miſtaken for the female organs of generation. I did not then recollect, that Mr. Pennant had remarked an aperture above the anus in the female of the *canis hyæna*; but that the tiger-wolf had nothing of the kind, I could obſerve in the female one that was kept alive at the Cape. It is this aperture, as I imagine, that in former times gave room for the aſſertion, that the hyæna was uſed to change its ſex. Perhaps, in like manner, it will be found, that our forefathers were not entirely without foundation in the accounts they gave (though they were certainly carried too far) of

1775. July.

1775. July. of the hyæna's power to imitate the human voice, and to charm the ſhepherds, ſo that they were not able to ſtir from the ſpot they were in.

I have already given an account of this creature's power to imitate other animals; all the country people, wherever I paſſed in the courſe of my journey, were agreed on this point. I myſelf, as well as my fellow-traveller, and my Hottentots, together with a boor and his whole family at *Gaurits Rivier*, heard a wolf imitate ſheep and lambs. That the noiſe came from the wolf we had reaſon to conclude, partly from our having heard it from the place where he diſcovered himſelf, both before and afterwards, by his uſual and peculiar howl; partly becauſe all the ſheep were near at hand, and had been all reckoned before they were folded; and indeed, partly becauſe the bleating was emitted in rather too ſharp a tone, and ſo little like the natural ſound, that even the dogs belonging to the farm were ſenſible of the trick, and ran out that way barking violently; but what kind of wolf this was, nobody could inform me with any certainty.

A little farther on I ſhall have occaſion more particularly to relate, how we were diſturbed in a deſert place by a great body of wolves, which, in conſequence of the infernal noiſe they made, might, in former times, eaſily have induced the ſuperſtitious ſhepherds to believe any conceit whatever, that the firſt emotions of their terror could inſpire.

In *Lange Kloof*, near *Gantze Craal Rivier*, I was ſhewed a little piece of ſkin, which was ſaid to be that of a wolf.

In

In its colour it came neareſt to that of our Swediſh wolves, but the hair was coarſer and harſher, and was, in my opinion, different from that of both the other ſorts of hyæna above-mentioned. The ſkin I have deſcribed as correſponding with the *canis hyæna*, I bought juſt before my departure from the Cape of the late lord lieutenant, or *landroſt* of *Zwellendam*; who told me, it had been preſented to him by a peaſant living in the northern part of his diſtrict. This ſame peaſant, he ſaid, pretended it was the ſkin of a very rare and uncommon animal. It might be, perhaps, that by this means he wiſhed to enhance the value of his preſent, though very poſſibly in a certain reſpect it was rare for him; for wolves are heard, I had almoſt ſaid, every night; are hardly ever ſhot, and very ſeldom caught, though for this purpoſe the country people build little houſes, in which they put ſtinking carcaſes by way of bait. The wolf creeping in here and treading on a ſpring, a hatch falls down immediately, and ſhuts him in. 1775. July.

I cannot help once more repeating it, as being ſomething peculiar, that the ſkin above deſcribed was covered with hairs, a great part of which were above a foot long. As in the warmeſt countries the animals are often found moſt deficient with reſpect to hair; and again as it is in the cold climates alone, eſpecially againſt the winter ſets in, that one ſees theſe creatures protected from the ſeverity of the ſeaſon by furs and long ſhaggy hair; and as nature does nothing without deſign, nothing without the wiſeſt intentions, the queſtion has ſuggeſted itſelf to me, what

1775. July. occaſion can the *hyæna canis* have, in ſo warm a climate as that he inhabits, for ſo hairy and warm a covering? This however may, perhaps, be extremely neceſſary in the cold caverns of rocks, and the ſubterraneous holes which are allotted to this beaſt of prey for his habitation. It ſeems to me likewiſe to be very ſerviceable in the cold, dark, and rainy nights, which are the principal times for this animal to hunt in. Times that moreover, are probably very critical for ſuch *gazells* and *antilopes* as are ſick and ſuperannuated. But may not this fur likewiſe ſerve to take off from the ſharpneſs of this animal's hunger? A good cover for a horſe in winter is, according to the uſual expreſſion, equal to half its food: now nature, whoſe riches and bounty we acknowledge in other particulars, does not ſhow a leſs careful proviſion in regard to the animal I am ſpeaking of. It is neceſſary that the animal kingdom ſhould be kept in due order and a juſt equilibrium; and ſhe makes uſe of certain animals for this purpoſe, and therefore has endued the hyæna with a wonderful degree of vigilance, with other means to anſwer theſe her intentions to their full extent; but being unwilling, and indeed too generous, perpetually to laviſh the more inoffenſive part of the animal creation to the utmoſt ſtretch of this creature's voracious appetite, ſhe hits upon other methods between whiles to aſſwage and damp it. In the ſame manner as to the other beaſts of prey, ſhe has given to the wolf likewiſe the faculty of ſleeping out the greateſt part of its life, by which means it eats the leſs; and this creature's warm fur, does not a little promote nature's intentions in this reſpect.

The

1775. July.

The lion, indeed, is now almoſt extirpated from this part of the country; though it ſometimes happens, that one or two of them come hither farther from the northwards. One of theſe animals was ſaid to have done much miſchief at about eleven miles diſtance from the bath, at the time that I was there.

CHAP. V.

Journey from the Warm Bath to Zwellendam.

1775. July. THE time was now come for me to quit the bath, in order to ſet out upon the long journey I had in view. Mr. IMMELMAN likewiſe now came to me from the Cape, to bear me company according to his promiſe. But, contrary to my expectation, there was ſomething ſtill wanting of the greateſt importance.

The peaſant, who had undertaken to equip me with what was neceſſary for my journey, had taken me in, not only by ſelling me a team of wretched oxen, but likewiſe in the driver he procured me. Though he had hired him for me at ſeven rixdollars per month, excluſive of his victuals and tobacco, the fellow knew ſtill leſs of the road than we did ourſelves. This ſame driver had likewiſe neglected his duty, in omitting to procure us a Hottentot to lead our oxen. I had every reaſon to think, that this omiſſion was made on purpoſe, in order that we might not penetrate far into the country; in which caſe he himſelf would have the fewer dangers and difficulties to undergo, and the wear and tear of my waggon would be the leſs; for I plainly perceived, that his principal, or the farmer whom I had commiſſioned

to

to agree with him for me, had buoyed himſelf up with the hopes, that he ſhould get my waggon dog cheap at my return. I therefore agreed with another, who was reckoned a ſteady and experienced man; but he, as ſoon as we imparted to him in confidence our intentions of viſiting the more diſtant parts of the country, not only begged to be off the bargain, but likewiſe ſincerely and from the bottom of his heart, adviſed us to ſtay at home. By this means we were quite put to our ſhifts, not knowing how to get an inch farther. Though we now would have gladly put up with the Lego-Hottentots only, we met with a refuſal likewiſe from them, on our ſending to a couple of *craals*, or communities, at the diſtance of eleven miles from us, in order to make a bargain with them. They excuſed themſelves on the account that a great many of their young men were juſt dead, and ſome of them were ſtill ſick. It ſeemed they were afflicted with a bilious fever, a diſorder which in general is rather uncommon at the Cape, and is always moſt fatal to ſlaves. But as it was now very rife, and ran very high among the coloniſts themſelves, they were univerſally alarmed, and my fellow traveller as much as any of them. I, for my part, being an European phyſician, and uſed to much more dangerous epidemics, was in no concern whatever, except on account of the mortification and ſhame I experienced at finding myſelf in danger of putting an end to my journey for want of a driver. Indeed, I now wiſhed within myſelf, and not without reaſon, to have it in my power to exchange one or two of the ſeven ſciences for the art of driving oxen. At length, however, the baſtard Hottentot, who lived near the bath in a hut made of hurdles, 1775. July.

1775. August. dles, and who by the bye was but a ſad fellow, finding his wife and child begin to recover from their putrid fever, undertook, in conſideration of ſome medicines he had had of me, but chiefly in conſideration of the hard money I paid him down upon the nail, to drive my waggon; but no farther than to *Zwellendam*, where Mr. IMMELMAN was in hopes of getting Hottentots eaſier. In the mean while, in default of ox-leaders, we were obliged, though on horſe-back, to condeſcend, by means of a long rope, ourſelves to perform this office, which in Africa is looked upon in the loweſt light imaginable. To give this diſagreeable affair a better colour, we gave ourſelves credit wherever we went for undertaking this piece of drudgery, as being the beſt method to get rid of the greateſt impediment in our journey, and as freeing us from the neceſſity of making low ſubmiſſions to our inferiors, and of being too troubleſome to others for their aſſiſtance. By this means, indeed, we made the good people cry us up for what bare neceſſity forced us to; but, for all that, we were neither better nor worſe than ox-leaders.

On the 26th of Auguſt we left the bath, and arrived in good time at *Steenbock-rivier*, where my patient lived who had paid me for my viſits with milk and meat, during my reſidence at the bath. He had for many years paſt uſed the bath himſelf for a violent ſwelling and eryſipelas in one of his legs, but was now already relieved by the uſe of iſſues, the leaves of elder, &c. on which account he ſold me the ſpirits I wanted to preſerve my animals in, at a very reaſonable rate, and at the ſame time perſuaded me to ſtay there that night; but to the great terror and diſ-

quietude

quietude of my fellow-traveller, he lodged us in the ſame room in which his ſon had lately lain ill of a putrid fever. He afterwards gave us a few proviſions for our journey, and would oblige us to borrow a porridge-pot of him, which I then conſidered as a troubleſome ſuperfluity, but afterwards found that by preſſing it upon us he had done us a peculiarly kind office. 1775. Auguſt.

On the 27th we ſet out again on our journey, and as the road was good and even all the way, and my Hottentot aſſured me that he could do very well without any leader, we let him go forward while we rode up to the farm near the road, where we were treated by the owner of it with a rare and delicate diſh; a ſort of ſparrow or finch (*loxia capenſis*) broiled: a bird that does much miſchief in the corn-fields, but with its black and yellow plumage makes a beautiful appearance. I have obſerved, that this little animal, at the approach of ſummer, always changed its yellow for a blood-red hue.

Our driver, indeed, had not much the ſtart of us; but though we puſhed very faſt after him, we were not able to overtake him before the evening came on; we began to fear we had gone out of our road, when at length we met with a drunken European, who was not aſhamed to offer himſelf to be my ſervant, after having acknowledged that, in company with my Hottentot, he had been getting drunk with the contents of my brandy-caſk. At length we overtook our Hottentot, who, not ſo drunk as his companion, denied the fact, though the mail of the lock belonging to the caſk above-mentioned, was actually broke off. Having taken off the oxen, and unſaddled our horſes at the farm called

1775. August. called *Gantze Craal*, I found that he had likewiſe filled ſeveral bottles, in order to treat himſelf and a couple of raſcals of his own kidney, a baſtard and a ſlave, who had come thither with a waggon.

As the miſchievous diſpoſition of the ſavages is carried even to madneſs, and becomes extremely dangerous when they are overloaded with liquor, I took the brandy from them; but they had already drank themſelves to ſuch a pitch of frenzy and boldneſs, as to give me to underſtand, that, in caſe they parted with their beloved brandy, they thought of nothing but revenge and murder. As we had ſeen a Chriſtian equally guilty with them, we thought we might and ought to bear with them till the next morning, with all the coolneſs and prudence, which the proſecution of our journey and the preſent poſture of our affairs required.

In the mean time I was obliged to ſleep all night long in my waggon to take care of my brandy, by which means I got freſh cold; for this ſame farm of *Gantze Craal*, lay on the other ſide of the river *Zonder End*. The next morning we forced our valiant pot-companions, who were now ſober, to aſk pardon; and at noon, having found a ſerpent, we put it alive into the caſk, in the preſence of every one. My comrade now told them, they might drink as much as they pleaſed without lett or hinderance, and added, with a careleſs air, that in that caſe he ſhould hope ſoon to have the pleaſure of ſeeing them burſt with poiſon, with other things to that purpoſe. Theſe conditions they did not venture to accept; but gave us plainly to perceive, that they envied the venomous creature the pleaſure of being drowned in

in ſo delicious an element. I now, however, ſecured my lock in the beſt manner I was able, that I might not loſe any more of my ſpirits, in which I wanted to preſerve animals of all ſorts. Since this, I have heard it reported of the Hottentots living a good way up in the country, that they are not afraid of the leaſt ill effects enſuing from ſwallowing the poiſon of ſerpents, even in an undiluted ſtate: but on the contrary, look upon it as a medicine, and a preſervative againſt the dangerous conſequences enſuing from the bite of theſe animals. How the uncultivated Hottentots ſhould arrive to the knowledge, that the poiſon of ſerpents may be ſwallowed without danger, it is not eaſy to conjecture, at leaſt not with a ſufficient degree of probability; but it appears to me moſt likely, that the Europeans and Aſiatics were firſt apprized of this fact, by ſuch as had in vain attempted to take away their own or others lives by means of the poiſon of ſerpents *. So that I had ſtill reaſon to fear, that the Hottentots would not be able to keep themſelves from this delicious liquor, though they knew that there was a venomous animal preſerved in it. I had long before this experienced ſomething of the kind at *Bott-rivier*, where a ſlave had intoxicated himſelf by drinking ſome ſpirits out of a little veſſel in which I kept a toad and the

1775. Auguſt.

* Noxia ſerpentum eſt *admiſto ſanguine* peſtis;
Morſu virus habent, & fatum dente mirantur:
Pocula morte carent. LUCAN. L. IX. v. 614—616.

So long ago at leaſt, as the times in which this poet wrote, has it been obſerved, that the poiſon of ſerpents has no effect, except it be mixed with the blood; and indeed, the *Pſylli* are irrefragable proofs, that this property of ſerpents has been known in Africa from time immemorial. They ſucked the poiſon out of the wounds of perſons bitten by theſe animals, and handled and careſſed them, as the modern Egyptians do at this preſent time, without being hurt by them in the leaſt:

——— Superincumbens pallentia vulnera lambit,
Ore venena trahens. Ibid. 933.

1775. August. fœtus of a *hyſtrix*. Neither could I preſerve my brandy from the depredations of my troubleſome viſitors, till having put ſeveral animals into it, and theſe being ſhaken to pieces by the jolting of the waggon, the moſt inebriating vapours of the brandy, by the aſſiſtance of the ſun ſhining upon them, were changed into effluvia that were highly diſguſting, in conſequence of the animal particles they contained.

Our patience ſeemed deſtined to be tried ſtill farther, in the beginning of our journey, by ſeveral trifling misfortunes; I was obliged to ſtay here two days to ſeek every where, though in vain, after one of the beſt cattle in my team. It was a bull, though in Africa theſe are very ſeldom broke in for drawing burdens. It is true they are very hardy, and not ſo apt to be ſcared by wild beaſts, but then they are likewiſe more unruly. Notwithſtanding this, they had ſold me two oxen ſo reſtive, that my Hottentots, any more than myſelf, could not take them out or put them into the waggon without the greateſt fear and caution. They were all too old and lean for a journey of the extent of that which we had undertaken, and every one of them had ſome peculiar fault beſides: in fine, I had got the refuſe of the peaſant's worſt oxen. Beſides, I was ſo far cheated in the bull, that having excited the jealouſy of ſome other bulls, he was butted out of the field by them; and as he had been hunted away over a river, was ſuppoſed to have taken his flight home; ſo that we could not help ſuſpecting, that the farmer had this in view when he ſold him to me. So liable are we to think ill of thoſe who have already deceived us. As I had no opportunity of purchaſing a tolerable beaſt in the room of that which I had loſt, I was obliged to drive from this place with only eight oxen; a circumſtance that fell heavy

heavy enough upon them; beſides this, the odd one ran looſe by the ſide of the others, and gave us a great deal of trouble. 1775. Auguſt.

On the 30th we arrived at *Tiger-hock*, where we put up. This is a farm which government holds in its own hands. On account of its great diſtance from the Cape, no advantage can accrue to the company from the vending of corn; but their moſt conſiderable income is timber, which is fetched from a wood on the other ſide of *rivier Zonder-end*, where the company keeps a party of wood-cutters, which is under the inſpection of a corporal, who is at the ſame time bailiff of this farm, and has better pay than any corporal in the garriſon. He is likewiſe to ſuperintend the graſs-land and dairy for the advantage of government, and to give an account of the profits.

The river *Zonder-end* was now ſwelled up to its banks, and difficult to paſs, for which reaſon I omitted paying a viſit to the wood that lies here; chiefly as the proper time for felling the trees was not yet come, and as I had beſides reſolved upon going to much larger foreſts, viz. *Groot Vaders Boſch*, and *Houtniquas*. On the banks of the river a *craal*, or community of Hottentots, to the amount of about thirty perſons, is ſaid to reſide, together with their herds. The chriſtians, in fact, would, it is ſuppoſed, have elbowed theſe likewiſe out of this ſituation, had not government found an intereſt in permitting them to be near its territories here.

The men belonging to this *craal*, for inſtance, were at this time ordered to the Cape with ſeveral of the company's waggons; for which ſervice, however, they received payment: ſo that I could not hope to have any of them for my own uſe. A Hottentot or two worked at the

1775. August.

farm, and their yearly wages, beſides their victuals and tobacco, were ſaid to conſiſt of a ewe or two with lamb, or a heifer with calf, or elſe the value of them in money. They are accuſtomed, however, chiefly to take cattle for their wages; but when they have got a little before-hand in the world, they go to houſe-keeping, and are too much at their eaſe to undertake any kind of ſervice whatſoever.

This, perhaps, is the beſt opportunity I can take to give a ſomewhat more accurate deſcription of this race of men; namely, the original inhabitants of the ſouthernmoſt part of Africa, who are known by the name of Hottentots.

With regard to their perſons, they are as tall as moſt Europeans; and as for their being in general more ſlender, this proceeds from their being more ſtinted and curtailed in their food, and likewiſe from their not uſing themſelves to hard labour. But that they have ſmall hands and feet compared with the other parts of their bodies, has been remarked by no one before, and may, perhaps, be looked upon as a characteriſtic mark of this nation.

The root of the noſe is moſtly very low, by which means the diſtance of the eyes from each other is greater than in Europeans. In like manner, the tip of the noſe is pretty flat. The iris is ſcarcely ever of a light colour, but has generally a dark brown caſt, ſometimes approaching to black.

Their ſkin is of a yellowiſh brown hue, which ſomething reſembles that of an European who has the jaundice in a high degree; at the ſame time, however, this colour is not in the leaſt obſervable in the whites of the eyes. One does not find ſuch thick lips among the *Hottentots* as among their neighbours the *Negroes*, the

Caffres, and the *Mozambiques*. In fine, their mouths are of a middling ſize, and almoſt always furniſhed with a ſet of the fineſt teeth that can be ſeen; and taken together with the reſt of their features, as well as their ſhape, carriage, and every motion; in ſhort, their *tout enſemble* indicates health and delight, or at leaſt an air of *ſans ſouci*. This careleſs mien, however, diſcovers marks at the ſame time both of alacrity and reſolution; qualities which the Hottentots, in fact, can ſhow upon occaſion. 1775. Auguſt.

The head would appear to be covered with a black, though not very cloſe, frizzled kind of wool, if the natural harſhneſs of it did not ſhow, that it was hair, if poſſible, more woolly than that of the negroes. If in other reſpects there ſhould, by great chance, be obſerved any traces of a beard, or of hair in any other parts of the body, ſuch as are ſeen on the Europeans, they are, however, very trifling, and generally of the ſame kind as that on the head.

Notwithſtanding the reſpect I bear to the more delicate part of my readers, the notoriety of the fact prevents me from paſſing over in this place thoſe parts of the body, which our more ſcrupulous, but leſs natural manners forbid me to deſcribe any other ways than by the means of circumlocution, Latin terms, or other uncouth, and to moſt readers, unintelligible denominations and expedients. But thoſe who affect this kind of reſerve muſt pardon me, if I cannot wrap up matters with the nicety their modeſty requires; as my duty obliges me to ſhow how much the world has been miſled, and the Hottentot nation been miſrepreſented; inaſmuch as the Hottentot women have been deſcribed, and believed to be, in reſpect to their ſexual parts, monſters by nature; and that the men were made ſuch by a bar-

1775. August.

a barbarous cuſtom. It has been thought, for example, that theſe latter were, at the age of ten years, by a kind of caſtration, deprived of one of thoſe organs, which nature gives to every male, as being abſolutely neceſſary for the propagation of his ſpecies; and that the former, or the women, have before their privy parts a natural veil or covering, a circumſtance unheard of in the females of any other part of the globe.

Deferring to a farther opportunity the arguments which are deducible from the abſurdity of the thing itſelf, and the little dependence to be had on the teſtimony of the relater, I ſhall only in this place preſent the reader with what I am in a condition to relate with abſolute certainty, being the reſult of the enquiries, which out of a due regard to truth, and in reſpect to the importance of the ſubject, I thought myſelf obliged to make.

The men are at preſent by no means monorchides, though, perhaps, the time has been when they were ſo; ſome other time, however, I ſhall make a ſtricter enquiry into the matter, and thus give my readers an opportunity of judging for themſelves.

The women have no parts uncommon to the reſt of their ſex; but the *clitoris* and *nymphæ*, particularly of thoſe who are paſt their youth, are in general pretty much elongated; a peculiarity which undoubtedly has got footing in this nation, in conſequence of the relaxation neceſſarily produced by the method they have of beſmearing their bodies, their ſlothfulneſs, and the warmth of the climate.

In order to finiſh the picture I have here given of the Hottentots, the next thing I have to deſcribe is their dreſs, and

and method of painting themſelves. This latter (if painting it may be called) conſiſts in beſmearing their bodies all over moſt copiouſly with fat, in which there is mixed up a little ſoot. This is never wiped off; on the contrary, I never ſaw them uſe any thing to clean their ſkins, excepting that when, in greaſing the wheels of their waggons, their hands were beſmeared with tar and pitch, they uſed to get it off very eaſily with cow-dung, at the ſame time rubbing their arms into the bargain up to the ſhoulders with this coſmetic: ſo that as the duſt and other filth, together with their ſooty ointment and the ſweat of their bodies, muſt neceſſarily, notwithſtanding it is continually wearing off, in ſome meaſure adhere to the ſkin, it contributes not a little to conceal the natural hue of the latter, and at the ſame time to change it from a bright umber-brown to a browniſh-yellow colour obſcured with filth and naſtineſs. 1775. Auguſt.

What has enabled me to determine the natural complexion of the Hottentots to be of an umber-yellow colour, was merely the ſcrupulous nicety of ſome few farmers wives, who made one or two of their Hottentot girls ſcower their ſkins, that they might not be too filthy to look after their children, or to do any other buſineſs that required cleanlineſs.

It is aſſerted by many of the coloniſts, that by this ſcowering and waſhing the Hottentots looks are not at all improved. They ſeem to think, that their natural yellow-brown hue was to the full as diſagreeable as that which is produced by their beſmearing themſelves; and that a beſmeared Hottentot looks leſs naked, as it were, and more complete,

1775. August. complete, than one in his natural ſtate; and that the ſkin of a Hottentot ungreaſed ſeems to exhibit ſome defect in dreſs, like ſhoes that want blacking, &c. Whether this fancy is moſt founded in cuſtom or in the nature of things, I ſhall leave to others to determine.

Beſides the pleaſure the Hottentots enjoy in beſmearing their bodies from head to foot, they likewiſe perfume them with a powder of herbs, with which they powder both their heads and bodies, rubbing it in all over them when they beſmear themſelves. The odour of it is at the ſame time rank and aromatic (*narcotico-ſeu papaverino ſpirans*) and ſeems to come neareſt to that of the poppy mixed with ſpices. The plants uſed for this purpoſe are various ſpecies of the *dioſma*, called by the Hottentots *bucku*, and conſidered by them as poſſeſſing great virtues in curing diſorders. Some of theſe ſpecies are very common round about the Cape; but one particular ſort, which I am told grows about *Goud's-rivier*, is ſaid to be ſo valuable, that no more than a thimble full of it is given in exchange for a lamb.

The Hottentots, with their ſkins dreſſed up with greaſe and ſoot, and *bucku*-powder, are by this means in a great meaſure defended from the influence of the air, and may in a manner reckon themſelves full dreſſed. In other reſpects, both men and women are wont to appear quite undreſſed; indeed, I may ſay naked, except a trifling covering, with which they always conceal certain parts of their bodies.

With the men this covering conſiſts of a bag or flap made of ſkin, hanging quite open, the hollow part of which

which ſeems deſigned to receive that which with us mo- 1775. Auguſt.
deſty requires to be concealed; but as this piece of fur-
niture is only faſtened by a ſmall part of its upper end
to a narrow belt (See Plate VII. fig. 6.) in other reſpects
hanging quite looſe, it is but a very imperfect conceal-
ment; and when the wearer is walking or otherwiſe in
motion, it is none at all. They call this purſe by the
Dutch name of *jackall*, the name of an animal of the fox
kind common in that country, as it is almoſt always pre-
pared of the ſkin of this creature, with the hairy ſide
turned outwards.

As another covering, which decency requires of the men, we ought perhaps to conſider the two leather ſtraps, which generally hang from the bottom of the chine of the back down upon the thighs; each of them being of the form of an *iſoſceles* triangle, with their points or upper ends faſtened on the belt juſt mentioned, and with their baſes, at fartheſt three fingers broad, hanging careleſsly down. Theſe ſtraps have very little dreſſing beſtowed upon them, ſo that they make ſomewhat of a rattling as the Hottentot runs along; and probably by fanning him, ſerve to produce an agreeable coolneſs. The only and real intention, however, of this part of their dreſs, is ſaid to be to cloſe a certain orifice when they ſit down. They are at that time, in like manner, brought forwards, each on its particular ſide, ſo as to cover and cloſe over the little flap above deſcribed; for, ſaid they to me, theſe parts ſhould by no means be uncovered when one ſits, eſpecially at meals. Nevertheleſs, I obſerved them ſometimes neglect this decent cuſtom.

1775. August.

Among the Hottentots, as well as in all probability among the reſt of mankind diſperſed over the whole globe, we muſt acknowledge the fair ſex to be the moſt modeſt; for the females of this nation, cover themſelves much more ſcrupulouſly than the men. They ſeldom content themſelves with one covering, but almoſt always have two, and very often three. Theſe are made of a prepared and well-greaſed ſkin, and are faſtened about their bodies with a thong, almoſt like the aprons of our ladies. The outermoſt is always the largeſt, meaſuring from about ſix inches to a foot over. This is likewiſe generally the fineſt and moſt ſhowy, and frequently adorned with glaſs beads ſtrung in different figures, in a manner that ſhows, even among the unpoliſhed Hottentots, the ſuperior talents and taſte of the fair ſex relative to dreſs and ornament, as well as their powers of invention and diſpoſition to ſet off their perſons to the beſt advantage.

The outermoſt apron, which is chiefly intended for ſhow and parade, reaches about half way down the thighs. The middle one is about a third, or one half leſs, and is ſaid by them to be neceſſary by way of reſerve, and as an additional entrenchment of modeſty, when their gala-garment is laid aſide. The third, or innermoſt, which is ſcarcely larger than one's hand, is ſaid to be uſeful at certain periods, which are much leſs troubleſome to the fair ſex here than in Europe. All theſe aprons, however, even to that which is decorated with beads, are not leſs beſmeared and greaſy than their bodies.

So that it was probably ſome of theſe aprons, particularly the innermoſt, which miſled the reverend jeſuit

TACKARD,

TACKARD, who, on his return to Europe, firſt propagated thoſe ſtories concerning the natural veils or excreſcences of the Hottentot women. Theſe females, moreover, are careful, as a matter of decency, to pull their aprons tight about them, ſo as to reach under their ſeat when they ſit down. 1775. Auguſt.

In other reſpects, the garment worn by the Hottentots for covering their bodies is a ſheep-ſkin, with the woolly ſide turned inwards; this pelliſſe, or a cloak made of ſome ſmaller fur, is tied forwards over the breaſt. When the weather is not cold, they let it hang looſe over their ſhoulders in a careleſs manner, when it reaches down to the calves of the legs, leaving the lower part of the breaſt, ſtomach, and fore part of the legs and thighs bare; but in rainy and cold weather they wrap it round them; ſo that the fore part of the body likewiſe, is in ſome meaſure covered with it as far as below the knees.

As one ſheep-ſkin alone is not ſufficient for this purpoſe, there is a piece ſewed on at the top on each ſide, (or to ſpeak more properly) faſtened on with a thong, ſinew or catgut. In warmer weather they wear this cloak ſometimes with the hairy ſide outwards, but in that caſe they oftener take it off entirely and carry it on their arms. In general, the Hottentots do not burden themſelves with a great many changes of theſe cloaks or *kroſſes*, (as they call them in broken Dutch) but are content with one, which ſerves them at the ſame time for clothing and bedding; and in this they lie on the bare ground, drawing themſelves up in a heap ſo cloſe, eſpecially when the wea-

1775. August. ther is cold, that this *kroſs* (as they call it) or *karoſs*, is quite ſufficient to cover them.

The cloak, or *karoſs*, which is uſed by the women for the ſame purpoſe, does not differ from thoſe uſed by the men in any other reſpect, than that the women have a long peak on their *karoſſes*, which they turn up, forming with it a hood or little pouch, with the hairy ſide inwards. In this they carry their little children, to which their mothers breaſts are now and then thrown over the ſhoulders, a practice that likewiſe prevails with ſome other nations.

The men in general wear no peculiar covering on their heads. I ſcarce remember to have ſeen above two, that had a cap made of a greaſed ſkin, the fur of which had been taken off in the preparation. Thoſe who live neareſt to the coloniſts, fancy the European hats, wearing them ſlouched all round, or elſe with one ſide turned up.

The women in like manner frequently go bare-headed. When they cover their heads, it is with a cap in the form of a ſhort truncated cone. It is made without any ſeam, of the ſegment of ſome animal's ſtomach, and is as black as ſoot mixed up with fat can make it. Theſe are frequently ſo prepared, as to look as if they were ſhaggy, and others again like velvet, and upon the whole make a tolerably handſome appearance. (See Plate IX.)

Over this cap they ſometimes wear another ornament, conſiſting of an oval wreath, or, if the reader pleaſes, a crown made of a buffaloe's hide, with the brown hair outwards. (See Plate VII. fig. 5.) This is about the breadth of

of four fingers in height, and ſurrounds the head ſo as to go a little way down upon the forehead, and the ſame depth into the neck behind, without covering the upper part of the cap above deſcribed. Both edges of this wreath, as well the lower one on which it reſts, as the upper one, are always ſmooth and even, and each of them ſet with a row of ſmall ſhells, of the *cyprea* kind, to the number of more than thirty, in a manner, that being placed quite cloſe to each other, their beautiful white enamel, together with their mouths, is turned outwards. Between theſe two rows of ſhells run one or two more in a parallel line, or elſe are waved or indented in various taſtes. It may eaſily be imagined, what a pretty effect theſe ſhells have, ſticking out of the brown fur of the buffaloe's ſkin, and at the ſame time, with what additional charms a greaſy Hottentot dame appears in a cap and wreath to the full as greaſy as herſelf. 1775. Auguſt.

The ears of the Hottentots are never adorned with any pendant or other ornament hanging from them, any more than the noſe, as they both are among other ſavages; this latter, however, is ſometimes by way of greater ſtate, marked with a black ſtreak of ſoot, or, more rarely indeed, with a large ſpot of red-lead; of which latter, on high days and holidays, they likewiſe put a little on their cheeks.

The necks of the men are bare, but thoſe of the women are decorated with what is, in their opinion, a great ornament. It conſiſts of a thong of undreſſed leather, upon which are ſtrung eight or ten ſhells. Theſe, which are about the ſize of beans, have a white ground, with large black ſpots of different ſizes; but as they are always made

uſe

1775. August.

uſe of in a burniſhed ſtate, I cannot ſay with any degree of certainty, whether they are of that ſort which is received in the *Syſtem of Nature* under the denomination of *nerita albicilla*, or *exuvia*. Appearing collectively in the form of a necklace, they certainly adorn the greaſy part they are hung upon, though perhaps not in proportion to the price at which they are obtained; for theſe ſhells are commonly ſold for not leſs than a ſheep a piece, as it is ſaid they are to be had no where elſe than on the moſt diſtant coaſt of Caffria. (See Plate VII. fig. 2.)

The lower part of the body is the principal place on which both ſexes, by more ſhowy ornaments, ſeemingly wiſh to fix each others attention. For though they very much fancy, and conſequently purchaſe the glaſs beads of Europe, eſpecially the blue and white ones of the ſize of a pea, yet the women rarely, and the men never, wear them about their neck; though both ſexes tie one or more rows of theſe beads round their middle, next the girdle to which the coverings or aprons above-mentioned are faſtened.

To conclude, another ornament in uſe with both ſexes, is rings on their arms and legs. Moſt of theſe rings are made of thick leather ſtraps, generally cut in a circular ſhape, which by being beat and held over the fire, are rendered tough enough to retain the curvature that is given them. It is theſe rings that have given riſe to the almoſt univerſally received notion, that the Hottentots wrap guts about their legs, in order to eat them occaſionally. The men wear from one to five or ſix of theſe rings on their arms, juſt above the wriſt, but ſeldom any on their legs.

1775. August.

The matrons of a higher rank frequently have a conſiderable number of them both on their arms and legs, eſpecially on the latter, ſo that they are covered with them from the feet up to their knees. (See Plate IX.) Theſe rings are of various thickneſſes, viz. ſometimes of that of a gooſe-quill, and ſometimes two or three times that ſize. Now and then they are made of pieces of leather, forming one entire ring, ſo that the arms and feet muſt be put through them when the wearer wiſhes to put them on. Upon the legs they are ſtrung on, ſmall and great, one with another, without any peculiar nicety; and are ſo much larger than the legs, as to ſhake off and get twiſted, when the wearer walks or is in motion.

It may eaſily be imagined, that theſe rings give the good Hottentot matrons a world of trouble, as well in the wear as in the preparation; and at the ſame time are not a little clumſy and ponderous, not to mention ſeveral other inconveniencies. But ſuch is the peculiar turn of mankind, that from the Hottentot, as unconſtrained as rude in his manners, to thoſe nations which carry the arts and ſciences to the higheſt degree of perfection, they are univerſally apt to fall into ſuch modes of dreſs, as are not only uſeleſs, but likewiſe in a great meaſure impriſon their bodies and limbs.

Rings of iron or copper, but eſpecially of braſs, of the ſize of a gooſe-quill, are conſidered as genteeler and more valuable than thoſe made of leather. They are, however, ſometimes worn along with theſe latter, to the number of ſix or eight at a time, particularly on the arms. The girls are not allowed to uſe any rings, till they are marriageable. A traveller, that was paſſing through the diſtrict of *Zwellendam*,

1775. August. *lendam*, endeavoured to aſſail the chaſtity of a Hottentot girl, about ſixteen or ſeventeen years of age, but in every other reſpect quite a woman: it is ſaid, however, that ſhe refuſed his preſents and offers, principally for this reaſon, that the old people in her *craal* had not yet inveſted her with the privilege of wearing rings. Whether this ſame law prevails in every *craal*, I cannot pretend to ſay; but it does not ſeem extremely probable to me, that the girls in every craal are ſo obedient to the laws.

The *Hottentots* ſeldom wear any ſhoes. Thoſe that are in uſe with the Hottentots hereabouts, as well as a great many more of their countrymen, are of the form repreſented in Plate VII. fig. 4. The ſame are worn likewiſe by moſt of the *African* peaſants, and, as I have ſince heard, by the *Eſthonians* and *Livonians*, and alſo by ſome Finlanders; ſo that I cannot ſay for certain, whether they are the invention of the Hottentots, or brought to them by the Dutch. The leather of which theſe ſhoes are made is undreſſed, with the hairy ſide outwards; and undergoes no other preparation, than that of being beat and moiſtened. If it be of a thick or ſtout ſort, as for example, of buffaloe's hide, it is beſides kept ſome hours in cow-dung, by which means it is rendered very ſoft and pliable. Afterwards ſome kind of greaſe is made uſe of for the ſame purpoſe. The ſhoes are then made of this leather in the following manner: they take a piece of leather of a rectangular form, ſomething longer and broader than the foot of the perſon for whom the ſhoes are intended. The two foremoſt corners are doubled up together, and ſewed down, ſo as to cover the forepart of the foot. This ſeam may be avoided, and the

the ſhoes may be made much neater at the toes, by fitting immediately over them a cap taken from the membrane in the knee joint of the hind leg of ſome animal. Now in order to make this piece of ſkin or leather riſe up to the height of an inch on both ſides of the foot, and cloſe it in neatly, it is pierced with holes at ſmall diſtances all round the edge, as far as the hind quarters, and through theſe holes is paſſed a thong, by which the rim is drawn up into gathers; farther, in order to make ſtrong hind-quarters, the back part of the piece of leather is doubled inwards, and then raiſed up and preſſed along the heel. The ends of the thong, or gathering-ſtring, are then threaded on both ſides through the upper edge of the hind-quarters to the height of about two inches; they are then carried forwards, in order to be drawn through two of the above-mentioned holes on the inſide of each rim. They are then tied over the inſtep, or, if it be thought neceſſary to tie the ſhoe ſtill faſter, they are carried croſſways over the inſtep, and ſo downwards under the thong, which comes out from the hind-quarters, then upwards again over the ankle, and even round the leg itſelf, if the wearer chuſes. 1775. Auguſt.

Shoes of this kind are certainly not without their advantages. They ſit as neat upon the foot as a ſtocking, and at the ſame time preſerve their form. They are eaſily kept ſoft and pliable, by conſtantly wearing them. Should they at any time grow rather hard above the edge, this is eaſily remedied by beating them and greaſing them a little. They are extremely light and cool, by reaſon that they do not cover ſo much of the foot as a common ſhoe does. They wear very well, as they are without any ſeam, and

1775. August. the ſoles, or rather bottoms of the ſhoes, are both tough and yielding. As ſhoes of the common tanned leather are burnt up, as it were, and are apt to ſlip and ſlide about in the ſcorching African ſands, and at the ſame time are eaſily torn in a ſtony and rocky ſoil, theſe field ſhoes, as they are called, made of almoſt raw leather, are much more durable. Theſe may be likewiſe had at a much inferior price, as the leather uſed in the making of them is almoſt entirely undreſſed; and a man can make himſelf a pair of them in the ſpace of an hour or two. Some advantage, eſpecially with regard to œconomy, would, in my opinion, accrue, if the uſe of theſe ſhoes was, in ſome meaſure, introduced amongſt us, particularly in ſummer time. To ſailors they would ſeem, as being very light, to be particularly uſeful. I have brought home with me a pair of them, that I wore in my expedition into the country, that they may ſerve for a model, in caſe any body ſhould be inclined to have a pair made by way of making a trial of them. Whatever is uſeful, whether it come from *Paris* or the country of the *Hottentots*, alike deſerves our attention and imitation.

The Hottentots who live in theſe parts, or within the boundaries of the Dutch colonies, ſeldom make uſe of any weapons. Here and there, indeed, a man will furniſh himſelf with a javelin, by way of defence againſt the wolves: this is called a *haſſagai*, and is delineated in Plate VIII. fig. 1 and 2, and will be deſcribed farther on, when we come to ſpeak of the more diſtant nations of the Hottentots.

Their habitations are as ſimple as their dreſs, and equally adapted to the wandering paſtoral life they lead in thoſe parts. In fact, they ſcarcely merit any other name than

that of huts; though, perhaps, as ſpacious and eligible as the tents and dwelling-places of the patriarchs, at leaſt they are ſufficient for the Hottentot's wants and deſires; who may therefore be conſidered as a happy man, in being able in this point likewiſe ſo eaſily to ſatisfy them. The great ſimplicity of them is, perhaps, the reaſon, why in a Hottentot's craal, or village, the huts are all built exactly alike; and that one meets there with a ſpecies of architecture, that does not a little contribute to keep envy from inſinuating itſelf under their roofs. The equality of fortune and happineſs in ſome meaſure enjoyed by theſe people, cannot but have a ſingular effect in preventing their breaſts from being diſturbed by this baneful paſſion. 1775. Auguſt.

Every hut is diſpoſed in the following manner. Some of them are of a circular, and others of an oblong ſhape, reſembling a round bee-hive or a vault. The ground-plot is from eighteen to twenty-four feet in diameter. The higheſt of them are ſo low, that even in the center of the arch, it is ſcarcely ever poſſible for a middle-ſized man to ſtand upright. But neither the lowneſs thereof, nor that of the door, which is but juſt three feet high, can perhaps be conſidered as any inconvenience to a Hottentot, who finds no difficulty in ſtooping and crawling on all fours, and who is at any time more inclined to lie down than ſtand.

The fire-place is in the middle of each hut, by which means the walls are not ſo much expoſed to danger from fire. From this ſituation of their fire-place, the Hottentots likewiſe have this additional advantage, that when they ſit

1775. August. or lie in a circle round the fire, the whole company equally enjoys the benefit of its warmth.

The door, low as it is, is the only place that lets in the day-light; and at the ſame time, the only outlet that is left for the ſmoke. The Hottentot, inured to it from his infancy, ſees it hover round him, without feeling the leaſt inconvenience ariſing from it to his eyes; while lying at the bottom of his hut in the midſt of the cloud rolled up like a hedgehog, and wrapped up ſnug in his ſheep-ſkin, he is now and then obliged to peep out from beneath it in order to ſtir the fire, or perhaps light his pipe, or elſe ſometimes to turn the ſteak he is broiling over the coals.

The materials for theſe huts are by no means difficult to be procured; and the manner of putting them together being both neat and inartificial, merits commendation in a Hottentot, and is very ſuitable to his character The frame of this arched roof, as I have deſcribed it above, is compoſed of ſlender rods or ſprays of trees. Theſe rods, being previouſly bent into a proper form, are laid, either whole or pieced, ſome parallel with each other, others croſſwiſe; they are then ſtrengthened, by binding others round them in a circular form with withies. Theſe withies, as well as the rods themſelves, are taken, as well as I can recollect, chiefly from the *cliffortia conoides*, which grows plentifully in this country near the rivers. Large mats are then placed very neatly over this lattice-work, ſo as perfectly to cover the whole. The aperture which is left for the door is cloſed, whenever there is occaſion for it, with a ſkin fitted to it, or a piece of matting. Theſe mats are made of a kind of cane or reed. Theſe reeds, being

being laid parallel to each other, are faſtened together with ſinews or catgut, or elſe ſome kind of packthread, ſuch as they have had an opportunity of getting from the Europeans. They have it, therefore, in their power, to make their mats as long as they chuſe, and at the ſame time as broad as the length of the ruſh will admit of, viz. from ſix to ten feet. This ſame kind of matting is now made uſe of likewiſe by the coloniſts, next to the tilts of their waggons, by way of preventing the ſail-cloth from being rubbed and worn by them, as well as of helping to keep out the rain. 1775. Auguſt.

When a Hottentot has a mind to take his houſe down and remove his dwelling, he lays all his mats, ſkins, and ſprays on the backs of his cattle, which to a ſtranger makes a monſtrous, unwieldy, and, indeed, ridiculous appearance.

The order or diſtribution of theſe huts in a craal or clan, is moſt frequently in the form of a circle with the doors inwards; by this means a kind of yard or court is formed, where the cattle is kept on nights. The milk, as ſoon as taken from the cow, is put to other milk which is curdled, and is kept in a leather ſack; of this the hairy ſide, being conſidered as the cleanlier, is turned inwards: ſo that the milk is never drank while it is ſweet. In certain northern diſtricts, ſuch as *Roggeveld*, or *Bokveld*, where the land is, as it is called, *carrow*, or dry and parched, the Hottentots, as well as the coloniſts, are ſhepherds.

There is another ſpecies of Hottentots, who have got the name of *boſhies-men*, from dwelling in woody or mountainous places. Theſe, particularly ſuch as live round

1775. August. round about *Camdebo* and *Sneeberg*, are ſworn enemies to the paſtoral life. Some of their maxims are, to live on hunting and plunder, and never to keep any animal alive for the ſpace of one night. By this means they render themſelves odious to the reſt of mankind, and are purſued and exterminated like the wild beaſts, whoſe manners they have aſſumed. Others of them again are kept alive, and made ſlaves of. Their weapons are poiſoned arrows, which, ſhot out of a ſmall bow, will fly to the diſtance of two hundred paces; and will hit a mark with a tolerable degree of certainty, at the diſtance of fifty, or even a hundred paces. From this diſtance they can by ſtealth, as it were, convey death to the game they hunt for food, as well as to their foes, and even to ſo large and tremendous a beaſt as the lion: this noble animal thus falling by a weapon which, perhaps, it deſpiſed, or even did not take notice of. The Hottentot, in the mean time, concealed and ſafe in his ambuſh, is abſolutely certain of the operation of his poiſon, which he always culls of the moſt virulent kind; and it is ſaid, he has only to wait a few minutes, in order to ſee the wild beaſt languiſh and die.

I mentioned that their bows were ſmall; they are, in fact, hardly a yard long, being at the ſame time ſcarcely of the thickneſs of an inch in the middle, and very much pointed at both ends. What kind of wood they are made of I cannot ſay, but it does not ſeem to be of a remarkably elaſtic nature. The ſtrings of the bows that I ſaw were made ſome of them of ſinews, others of a kind of hemp, or the inner bark of ſome vegetable, and moſt of them are made in a very ſlovenly manner; which ſhows, that theſe archers depend more on

on the poiſon of their weapons, than on any exactneſs in the formation of them, or any other perfection in them. One of theſe bows is delineated in Plate VIII. fig. 3. 1775. August.

Their arrows are a foot and a half long, and of the ſame thickneſs, as they appear in the drawings in Plate VIII. fig. 6, 7. They are made of a reed one foot in length, which, at the baſe, or the end that receives the bow-ſtring, has a notch of a proper ſize to fit it. Juſt above this notch there is a joint in the reed, about which ſtrings made of ſinews are wound, in order to ſtrengthen it. The other end of the reed is armed with a highly poliſhed bone, five or ſix inches long. At the diſtance of an inch or two from the tip of this bone, a piece of a quill is bound on very faſt with ſinews, in the ſame manner as may be ſeen in fig. 4 and 7. This is done, in order that the arrow ſhall not be eaſily drawn out of the fleſh; and thus there may be ſo much the longer time for the poiſon, which is ſpread on of a thick conſiſtence like that of an extract, to be diſſolved, and infect the wound.

It is not common, however, for an arrow to be headed in the manner above-mentioned, with a pointed bone only; this latter being uſually cut ſquare at the top, and a thin triangular bit of iron fixed into it, as may be ſeen in Plate VIII. fig. 4. where the upper part of the arrow is repreſented without any poiſon on it; for with this the binding is covered and beſmeared, the ſame being afterwards rubbed down level and ſmooth all round the ſhaft, that the arrow may pierce ſo much the deeper into the fleſh. As the bone before ſpoken of has no cavity whatever, I do not profeſs to know what animal it is taken from.

1775. August.

from. In the ſtate in which it is ſeen, as it makes part of the arrow, it is of a dark brown colour, full of ſmall grooves and ribs, and does not appear ever to have been as white as ivory; though, for one of the arrows which I brought with me, it would ſeem as if ivory had been really made uſe of. Hence we may conclude, that on ſuch arrows as are headed with iron, the bone is employed chiefly for giving this weapon a kind of weight and poiſe; and likewiſe, that theſe arrows coſt the Hottentots a great deal of labour.

Their quivers (vide Plate VIII. fig. 5.) are two feet long and four inches in diameter. If one may draw any concluſion from thoſe I have ſeen, and from two that I have brought home with me, they are made of a branch of a tree hollowed out; or, ſtill more probably, of the bark of one theſe branches taken off whole and entire, the bottom and cover to which are compoſed of leather. On the outſide it is bedaubed with an unctuous matter, that grows hard when dry. Both the quivers I brought with me, are lined about the aperture with a ſerpent's ſkin; and, as I was told, with the ſkin of the yellow ſerpent, which is conſidered as the moſt venomous of any in that country. Beſides a dozen of arrows, every quiver contains a ſlender hone of ſand-ſtone for whetting the iron head, and a bruſh for putting on the poiſon, together with a few wooden ſticks, differing in thickneſs, but all of the ſame length with the arrows. For what uſe theſe are deſigned, I am entirely ignorant. The poiſon is taken from ſeveral different kinds of ſerpents, the more venomous the better; whether their arrows are to be employed againſt their foes,

or

or are only deſigned for ſhooting game; for, as I have obſerved before, the Hottentots know very well, that taken internally it is quite harmleſs. 1775. Auguſt.

The dwellings of theſe foes to a paſtoral life are generally not more agreeable, than their maxims and manners. Like the wild beaſts, buſhes and clifts in rocks by turns ſerve them inſtead of houſes; and ſome of them are ſaid to be ſo far worſe than beaſts, that their ſoil has been found cloſe by their habitations. A great many of them are entirely naked, but ſuch as have been able to procure the ſkin of any ſort of animal, great or ſmall, cover their bodies with it from the ſhoulders downwards as far as it will reach, wearing it till it falls off their backs in rags. As ignorant of agriculture as apes and monkies, like them they are obliged to wander about over hills and dales after certain wild roots, berries, and plants (which they eat raw) in order to ſuſtain a life that this miſerable food would ſoon extinguiſh and deſtroy, were they uſed to better fare.

Their table, however, is ſometimes compoſed of ſeveral other diſhes, among which may be reckoned the larvæ of inſects, or thoſe kind of caterpillars from which butterflies are generated; and in like manner a ſort of white ants, (the *termes*) graſhoppers, ſnakes, and ſome ſorts of ſpiders. With all theſe changes of diet, the *Boſhies-man* is nevertheleſs frequently in want, and famiſhed to ſuch a degree, as to waſte almoſt to a ſhadow. It was with no ſmall aſtoniſhment, that I for the firſt time ſaw in *Lange Kloof* a lad belonging to this race of men, with his face, arms, legs and body ſo monſtrouſly ſmall and withered, that I could not have been induced to ſuppoſe but that he had

1775. August. been brought to that ſtate by the fever that was epidemic in thoſe parts, had I not ſeen him at the ſame time run like a lapwing. It required but a few weeks to bring one of theſe ſtarvelings to a thriving ſtate, and even to make him fat; their ſtomachs being ſtrong enough to digeſt the great quantity of food with which they are crammed, as they may rather be ſaid to bolt than eat; it ſometimes happens, indeed, that they cannot long retain what they have taken in; but this circumſtance, it is ſaid, does not hinder them from beginning again upon a new ſcore.

The capture of ſlaves from among this race of men is by no means difficult, and is effected in the following manner. Several farmers, that are in want of ſervants, join together, and take a journey to that part of the country where the *Boſhies-men* live. They themſelves, as well as their *Lego-Hottentots*, or elſe ſuch Boſhies-men as have been caught ſome time before, and have been trained up to fidelity in their ſervice, endeavour to ſpy out where the wild Boſhies-men have their haunts. This is beſt diſcovered by the ſmoke of their fires. They are found in ſocieties from ten to fifty and a hundred, reckoning great and ſmall together. Notwithſtanding this, the farmers will venture on a dark night to ſet upon them with ſix or eight people, which they contrive to do, by previouſly ſtationing themſelves at ſome diſtance round about the *craal*. They then give the alarm by firing a gun or two. By this means there is ſuch a conſternation ſpread over the whole body of theſe ſavages, that it is only the moſt bold and intelligent among them, that have the courage to break through the circle and ſteal off. Theſe the captors are glad

glad enough to get rid of at ſo eaſy a rate, being better pleaſed with thoſe that are ſtupid, timorous, and ſtruck with amazement, and who conſequently allow themſelves to be taken and carried into bondage. They are, however, at firſt, treated by gentle methods; that is, the victors intermix the faireſt promiſes with their threats, and endeavour, if poſſible, to ſhoot ſome of the larger kinds of game for their priſoners, ſuch as buffaloes, ſea-cows, and the like. Such agreeable baits, together with a little tobacco, ſoon induce them, continually cockered and feaſted as they are, to go with a tolerable degree of chearfulneſs to the coloniſt's place of abode. There this luxurious junketting upon meat and fat is exchanged for more moderate portions, conſiſting for the moſt part of butter-milk, frumenty, and haſty-pudding. This diet, nevertheleſs, makes the *Boſhiesman*, as I ſaid before, fat in a few weeks. However, he ſoon finds his good living embittered by the maundering and grumbling of his maſter and miſtreſs. The words *t'guzeri* and *t'gaunatſi*, which, perhaps, are beſt tranſlated by thoſe of *young ſorcerer* and *imp*, are expreſſions which he muſt frequently put up with, and ſometimes a few curſes and blows into the bargain; and this for neglect, remiſſneſs or idleneſs: which laſt failure, if it cannot be ſaid to be born with him, is however in a manner naturaliſed in him. So that, both by nature and cuſtom, deteſting all manner of labour, and now, from his greater corpulency, becoming ſtill more ſlothful, and having beſides been uſed to a wandering life, ſubject to no control, he moſt ſenſibly feels the want of his liberty. No wonder then, that he generally endeavours to regain it by making

1775. August.

1775. August. his eſcape: but what is really a ſubject for wonder is, that, when one of theſe poor devils runs away from his ſervice, or more properly bondage, he never takes with him any thing that does not belong to him.

This is an inſtance of moderation in the ſavages towards their tyrants, which is univerſally atteſted, and at the ſame time praiſed and admired by the coloniſts themſelves; which, however, I cannot eaſily reconcile with what I have learned of the human heart. Is it in conſequence of their fearing to meet with harder uſage in caſe they ſhould be retaken? Thus far, however, is certain, that none of this ſpecies of Hottentots are much given to violence or revenge. Free from many wants and deſires, that torment the reſt of mankind, they are little, if at all, addicted to thieving, if we except brandy, victuals, and tobacco. It is not improbable likewiſe, that the advantages accruing from a theft may be overlooked by them, when their thoughts are taken up with regaining their liberty, the greateſt of all treaſures. It is neceſſary to obſerve here, that ſome of the *Hottentots* or *Boſhies-men*, who are thus forced into the ſervice of the coloniſts, live in ſmall ſocieties peaceably and quietly, in deſert tracts, where the coloniſts cannot eaſily come at them, and are ſometimes in the poſſeſſion of a few cows. Theſe people probably originate from *Boſhies-men* who have run away from the coloniſts ſervice.

I muſt confeſs, that the Hottentots, who are in ſome huſbandmen's ſervice, are treated in the gentleſt manner, and, perhaps, even without ever having a harſh word given them, live very well with regard to proviſions, are well clad relatively to their condition in life, and are very comfortably

fortably lodged, in compariſon of what others are, in their own ſtraw cottages. The chief of their buſineſs, perhaps, conſiſts in tending a herd of cattle or flock of ſheep during the heat of the day, when they have an opportunity of getting into a gentle ſtate of intoxication by ſmoking tobacco; a ſtate which excites in them ſenſations of as agreeable a nature, as the frenzy produced by ſpirituous liquors and opium ſeems to afford to many others, who are never at eaſe but when they can procure themſelves this delicious pleaſure. And yet, though they may thus agreeably paſs away the otherwiſe tedious hours of their lives in ſmoking and ſleep, they nevertheleſs generally run away. The coloniſts wonder at this, as a procedure entirely devoid of reaſon; without perceiving that in ſo doing, they ſuppoſe the Hottentots not endued with a deſire, which has its immediate foundation in nature, and which is common to the human race, and even to moſt brute animals, viz. an earneſt longing after their birth-place, and families, and eſpecially after their liberty. 1775. Auguſt.

The ſlave buſineſs, that violent outrage to the natural rights of mankind, always in itſelf a crime, and which leads to all manner of miſdemeanours and wickedneſs, is exerciſed by the coloniſts with a cruelty towards the nation of *Boſhies-men*, which merits the abhorrence of every one; though I have been told, that they pique themſelves upon it: and not only is the capture of the Hottentots conſidered by them merely as a party of pleaſure, but in cold blood they deſtroy the bands which nature has knit between huſbands and their wives and children. Not content, for inſtance, with having torn an unhappy woman from the embraces of her

1775. August. her husband's, her only protection and comfort, they endeavour all they can, and that chiefly at night, to deprive her likewise of her infants; for it has been observed, that the mothers can seldom persuade themselves to flee from their tender offspring.

The amiable tenderness of the mother, which, perhaps, glows with a more lively flame in the breast of this poor heathen, than in those of her Christian tyrants, is the very circumstance laid hold on by their persecutors, in order to rivet the chains of this wretched female so much the faster. There are some mothers, however, that set themselves free, when they have lost all hopes of saving their children. After having made their escape, they sometimes keep secretly about the neighbourhood, in hopes of finding some opportunity of recovering their infants again: for oh! what grief to a mother, bred and born to taste the sweets of liberty, and now lately oppressed by the heavy chains of bondage, to reflect, that her offspring's life is only preserved, in order that it may be rendered miserable by an intolerable slavery. But, unhappy mothers! whilst involved in these painful reflections, they wander up and down, less in fear of the wild beasts than of the colonists, they, perhaps, in the end, fall a prey to some of these fierce animals, or not unfrequently perish with hunger: for as soon as they have eloped, men are set to lie in ambush for them at such places by the rivers sides, as it is supposed they must take in their way, and by this means they are often retaken. And, though they should reach their own homes in safety, they may even then very possibly happen to be whipped up by some peasant and carried into slavery.

1775. August.

Without doubt, the Boſhies-men have been a long while in a ſavage ſtate, and many of them are now brought into a ſtill more miſerable ſituation, ſince the Chriſtians have invaded their country, and purſue them with chains and fetters into their deſerts. In ſo ſavage a ſtate, they probably neither have, nor ever had, many manners or cuſtoms different from thoſe few I have already mentioned, or may deſcribe in the courſe of this work.

With reſpect to religion and language, the *Boſhies-men* agree in a great meaſure with the more civilized part of their nation, or the *Hottentots* properly ſo called. Theſe are not ſenſible of the exiſtence of any being, who is the origin and ruler of all things; for, on being queſtioned, they ſay they know nothing of the matter.

Some Hottentots, who ſpoke the Dutch language readily, and with whom, both in company and ſeparately, I converſed on this ſubject, always anſwered me to this effect; *We are poor ſtupid creatures, and have never heard, neither are we able to underſtand, any thing of the matter.* And, in fact, they ſoon let me perceive, that they are weary with puzzling their brains with topics of this kind. Several Dutch families, that had ſpoken the Hottentot language from their infancy, as well as their own, have given me to underſtand, that they had found the ſame degree of ignorance in the Boſhies-men; yet that, as both Boſhies-men and Hottentots have the firmeſt belief in the powers of magic, they ſeem conſequently by this to acknowledge ſome evil being of great might and power: but that they by no means on this account worſhip him, or indeed any other, although they ſeem to attribute to him all the evil that

1775. August. that happens; among which they reckon, without exception, all rain, cold and thunder. Many of the coloniſts have likewiſe aſſured me, that their *Boſhies-men* of either ſex, uſed in ſtormy weather to abuſe the thunder with the words, *t'guzeri* and *t'gaunazi*, and other reproachful expreſſions; and at the ſame time, in a furious manner, with their ſhoes or any thing elſe that was at hand, threaten and bid defiance to the flaſhes of lightning and peals of thunder that flaſhed and rolled over their heads. It would be in vain to try to make them ſenſible, that the vegetable creation, whence they, as well as the brute animals, were nouriſhed, would without rain wither and be entirely dried up: even the Hottentot I afterwards took into my ſervice at Zwellendam, perſiſted, in ſpite of all my objections, obſtinately in the opinion, that notwithſtanding this conſideration, rain was always an evil, and that it would be a happy circumſtance were it never to rain. A maxim of this kind from a race of men, in other reſpects really endued with ſome degree of ſenſe, and frequently with no ſmall ſhare of penetration and cunning, ought, methinks, to be conſidered as an indelible religious or ſuperſtitious notion entertained by them from their infancy, rather than as an idea taken up on due deliberation and conſequent conviction. At the ſame time, though they did not appear to be of a very chilly nature, they never ſhewed the leaſt ſigns of being diſpleaſed with the hotteſt days of ſummer.

The more ſimple of every race of Hottentots, or the common run of them, from which number very few deſerve to be excepted, have ſo firm a confidence in ſuch cheats

cheats of either ſex, as ſet up for magicians and conjurers, that they even ſometimes ſolicit theſe people to put a ſtop to the thunder and rain. With a view of obtaining conſideration, beſides being well paid, theſe pretended wizards are ready to undertake every thing: but if, for inſtance, it ſhould happen to continue to thunder or rain longer than they expected, and conſequently have promiſed, they plead in their excuſe, that another conjurer, who either has more ſkill, or is better paid than themſelves, throws obſtacles in their way by a kind of counter-magic. Many of theſe ſimple creatures believe, that almoſt all diſorders are brought on by means of magic, and are only to be cured by the ſame means. The wizards, on their parts, are not backward in cheriſhing this idea; but take care, notwithſtanding, in ſuch caſes to apply both external and internal remedies. Among the external may be reckoned, their ſometimes ordering their patient to lay on his face, when they ſet themſelves on his back, and pinch and cuff him about, and beat him all over, till at length they ſhew him a bone, larger or ſmaller juſt as it happens, which they aſſert had been conjured into him; but which they, by their great ſkill and dexterity, have extracted, either from his noſe, ears, or ſome other part of his body. It frequently happens, that the patient is relieved by an operation of this kind; and if he is not, he undergoes ſeveral of them. And then if he dies, his friends only lament, that he was bewitched beyond the power of any one to aſſiſt him. In all likelihood, the conjurer on theſe occaſions, by a dexterous ſleight of hand, deceives both the credulous patient and thoſe about him. A boor informed me, that when he was

1775. Auguſt.

1775. August.

a child, and among other play-things had the leg-bone of an ox, which he uſed as a cart, it appeared to him to his great aſtoniſhment, that it was ſucked out of a ſick perſon's back by one of theſe wizards; and, as far as he could truſt to his memory, he recollected that the patient got quite well after this operation. A wizard that was taken by a party of Hottentots to a lion-hunt, in order to exerciſe his magic power upon the lion, was ſoon torn in pieces by the animal. Several boors took occaſion from this incident to reproach the Hottentots with their credulous partiality towards theſe fellows; but they ſtill perſiſted in their ſentiments, being rather inclined to think, that ſome more powerful magician, a foe to the deceaſed, had brought this misfortune upon him. So that a conjurer among theſe people lays the more ſimple of them under a kind of contribution by his ſuperior cunning, juſt as ours do our country folk; but, on the other hand, more frequently runs the riſque of being ſuſpected of occaſioning the miſchief that happens.

A Caffre prince chanced in his old age to have ſore eyes, and could get no cure for them. He therefore ordered all thoſe that were ſkilled in magic to be put to death, whereever they were found; no doubt, on the ſame principle as Herod did the children in Bethlehem, thinking that in the number he might happen to hit on the man who had bewitched him. This prince is ſaid to have been living but a few years ago; his name was PALOO, which by moſt of the coloniſts was converted into *Pharaoh*. Of the princes who reigned over the different nations of Caffres, while I was in Africa, the moſt powerful was ſaid to be *Amahote* or *Tamus*.

Tamus. A chief among the Hottentots, called Captain RUYTER, of whom I ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak by and by, is alſo reported to have perſecuted and put to death ſome ſorcerers, whom he ſuſpected of having brought a diſeaſe on him by witchcraft. 1775. Auguſt.

Though the Hottentots are ſo ſuperſtitious, yet they are not, as far as I know, in the leaſt afraid of being in the dark. They ſeem, however, to have ſome idea of ſpirits, and a belief in a future ſtate, as they accoſt their friends as ſoon as they are dead with reproaches for leaving them ſo ſoon; at the ſame time, admoniſhing them henceforth to demean themſelves properly; by which they mean, that their deceaſed friends ſhould not come back again and haunt them, nor allow themſelves to be made uſe of by wizards, to bring any miſchief on thoſe that ſurvive them.

There is a genus of inſects (the *mantis*,) called by the coloniſts the *Hottentot's god*; but ſo far are they from worſhipping theſe inſects, that they have more than once catched ſome of them, and given them to me to ſtick needles through them, by way of preſerving them, as I did with other inſects. There is, however, a diminutive ſpecies of this genus of inſects, which ſome think it would be a crime, as well as very dangerous, to do any harm to; but this we have no more reaſon to look upon as a kind of religious worſhip, than we have to conſider in the ſame light, a certain ſuperſtitious notion prevalent among many of the more ſimple people in our own country, who imagine, that three ſins will be forgiven them, if they ſet a cock-chafer on its feet that has happened to have fallen upon its back.

1775. August.

The moon, according to KOLBE, receives a kind of adoration from the Hottentots. But the fact is, that they merely take the opportunity of her beams, and at the ſame time of the coolneſs of the night, to amuſe themſelves with dancing; and conſequently, have no more thoughts of worſhipping her than the chriſtian coloniſts, who are ſeen at the ſame time ſtrolling in great numbers about the ſtreets, and parading on the ſtone ſteps with which their houſes are uſually encircled.

That the artful conjurers themſelves are moſt of them without either ſuperſtition or religion of any kind, is highly probable. There are ſeemingly here likewiſe many other free-thinkers, among whom I cannot help reckoning a Hottentot from *Buffeljagts-rivier*, whom I ſome time after this period took into my ſervice as my ox-leader. He informed me, that a wizard came to his craal ſeveral different evenings, and ſetting himſelf down in one of their huts, told them, by way of divination, that the wolf was doing them a great deal of miſchief in their ſheep-folds (at the ſame time mentioning the particulars,) and would do them ſtill more, if they did not haſten to the relief of their flocks. The people of the craal accordingly ſallied forth, and found it was as the ſoothſayer had told them; in conſequence of which, they conceived the higheſt degree of reſpect for him, and rewarded him handſomely into the bargain. Some time after, however, they diſcovered, that their loſs was not occaſioned by the wolves, but by ſome neighbouring Hottentots, whom they, not without reaſon, ſuppoſed to have been in the plot with the ſoothſayer. What other general remarks I have to make

on

on the ſubject of the Hottentots and *Boſhies-men*, I ſhall defer at preſent, and return to the regular courſe of my journal. 1775. Auguſt.

On the 30th of Auguſt at *Tiger-hoek*, where I before obſerved we were juſt arrived, I was informed, that the doctrines of chriſtianty had been formerly preached there to the Hottentots, and received by them with great avidity and zeal. It was ſtill, as I was told, within the memory of ſeveral of the inhabitants, that one of the converts, an old female Hottentot, was living, and uſed to perform her devotions every morning on her bare knees, by the ſide of a ſpring ſituated near this ſpot. It was ſaid, ſhe had a German Bible, which ſhe often read and treated with the greateſt veneration; and that her behaviour throughout life was decent and quiet. My informers added, that the miſſionary who had converted her, had been baniſhed out of the country, for having illegally made himſelf a chief among the Hottentots in theſe parts, in order to enrich himſelf by their labour, and the preſents they made him of cattle. It was ſuppoſed, that he was ſo far guilty of what was alledged againſt him, inaſmuch as it both was then and is now prohibited, under divers penalties, for any one to buy, or otherwiſe acquire the poſſeſſion of any cattle belonging to the Hottentots. That this miſſionary's name was GEORGE SMID, and that he was a *Moravian* or *Herrnhuter*, I found on my return home in the *Budingiſche Samlung einiger in die Kirchen-Hiſtorie*, &c. (printed at Leipſic, 1742) wherein, art. 7. from page 78 to 126, there is ſome account of this affair, under the title

1775. August.

title of *Jungſtes Diarium des Bruders Georg Smid, zur probe des Wandels dieſes knechts des Herrn unter den Hottentotten* *.

This extract of the journal or letter above-mentioned, is carried from November 15th, 1739, to November 18th, 1740; and at that time dated from *Serjeant-rivier*, a ſmall branch of the *rivier Zonder-end*, or the river near which lived the converted Hottentot woman. In this letter we are informed, that the number of converts was thirty-two, and that the new chriſtians did not unfrequently neglect both their work and their hours of devotion in order to amuſe themſelves in a garden, which, in all probability was common.

At page 683 of this collection, there is inſerted another letter from this ſame SMID, dated the 15th of May, 1742; from which we learn, that he had by baptiſm augmented the congregation with five more ſiſters in Chriſt; as likewiſe, that he had lived there as miſſionary five years, and intended to ſtay there four years longer: ſo that there is no doubt, but that the Hottentots might be eaſily converted to the chriſtian faith: but it is much to be doubted, whether any body will ever trouble themſelves with the converſion of theſe plain honeſt people, unleſs it ſhould appear to have more connexion than it ſeems to have at preſent with political advantages.

Soon after we arrived at this farm, two Hottentot girls, from fourteen to ſeventeen years of age, made their appearance, well beſmeared, and, in their faſhion, very ſmart-

* The laſt Diary of brother GEORGE SMID, being a teſtimony of the carriage and conduct of this ſervant of the Lord among the Hottentots.

ly dreſſed. Without any great degree of vanity we could plainly perceive, that the viſit was made on our account; out of gratitude, therefore, as well as from a natural regard for the fair ſex, we addreſſed theſe (I am in doubt whether to call them beautiful or frightful) young ladies with all the handſome ſpeeches we thought would be moſt acceptable in ſuch circumſtances. At their requeſt we likewiſe preſented them with a fine piece of roll-tobacco, of which they cut off a little, filled their pipes with it, and ſmoked in a very elegant ſtyle. Our hoſt took that opportunity to let us know, that we ſhould pleaſe them much better with a little brandy than with all our compliments; we therefore brought a couple of glaſſes of it for each of them, and they ſtuck pretty cloſe to it, applying to it with great aſſiduity while they were ſmoking their pipes. We likewiſe had the pleaſure ſoon of ſeeing them grow a little lively, without venturing to drink a drop more, or allowing the leaſt freedom. At length they took their leave of us in a very diſcreet manner, and I was very much pleaſed to ſee ſo much modeſty and decency in girls belonging to ſo uncivilized a nation. But when they got out of doors, theſe mad-caps had the boldneſs to defy us to run after them and catch them. We ſoon gave over the chaſe, but as often as we turned back they came after us, and defied us again. At length the elder of them while ſhe was running, not only fell down, but even ſeemed to wait for us in that poſition. So unexpected a circumſtance gave us no ſmall concern, as it made us begin to ſuſpect the girl's virtue, till ſhe drew a large knife, and threatened to plunge it into our hearts, if we dared.

1775. Auguſt.

1775. August.

dared to approach any nearer. As the difference of circumſtances and opportunites has a great influence on the nature of things, and particularly with reſpect to the fair ſex, I thought it would be proper in this place to relate the whole affair juſt as it happened, without drawing any general concluſion from it. I am nevertheleſs convinced, that the Hottentots are more cold and moderate in their deſires of a certain nature than many other nations; qualities which are the natural conſequence of the dull, inactive, and I had almoſt ſaid, entirely liſtleſs diſpoſition, which is the leading characteriſtic of their minds; qualities which likewiſe are neceſſarily produced by the debilitating diet they uſe, and their extreme inactivity and ſloth; which carried to a certain point, increaſe, but in extremes deaden and benumb both the phyſical and moral ſenſations.

On the 31ſt, we here met with a middle-aged man, a coloniſt, who offered to drive my waggon for ſix rixdollars per month; but altered his mind as ſoon as we had told him, that he muſt be content to undergo the ſame inconveniencies and hazards as Mr. *Immelman* and I were, at all events, prepared to ſubject ourſelves to. The next day, therefore, we took our leave of this place, as much to ſeek as when we firſt arrived there. In our road we found a little *Hottentot's craal*, which, if I remember right, conſiſted of five huts, run up in the manner I have deſcribed above; but covered with ſuch miſerable old mats, that the owners ſeemed to be much more afraid of the trouble, trifling as that would have been, of making new, than of the inconveniencies attending the droppings of the

eaves in wet weather. The inhabitants of this craal conſiſted of about twenty people. They had run up a very wretched incloſure for their ſheep and cattle, which were then at graſs, and ſeemed to be very numerous. As I wiſhed to try if I could not hire a Hottentot or two into our ſervice, the oldeſt man in the craal preſented his ſon to me, a youth of nineteen or twenty years of age, ſaying, that he could be very well ſpared in the craal, in caſe I could perſuade him to follow me. Upon this I crept into the young man's hut, and found him lying under his cloak, in the way I have deſcribed above when ſpeaking of his countrymen in general, with his knees drawn up to his noſe, almoſt like a *fœtus in utero*. I ſpent a great deal of time to no purpoſe, in repreſenting to him the great advantages he would gain by going with us; ſuch as a cow with calf, knives, braſs tinder-boxes, glaſs beads, and other tempting articles; in ſhort, preſents to an uncommon value, all which I offered him as a premium for half a year's ſervice; but as I conſidered it equally baſe to deceive a poor Hottentot as any other perſon, I did not diſſemble to him, that our expedition would be of ſome duration: though, on the other hand, as the Hottentot nation is not abſolutely inſenſible to the pleaſures of the chace any more than to the calls of ambition, I at the ſame time repreſented to him, that an expedition of this ſort would of itſelf afford him no ſmall degree of pleaſure, and on his return would give him ſome conſequence in the eyes of his companions; but all was in vain. With as little ſucceſs did I endeavour to ſet before him the pleaſure he would have in ſmoking a better ſort of tobacco, a

1775. Auguſt.

1775. Auguſt.

quantity of which I had taken with me, and intended to beſtow it very plentifully on any one that ſhould accompany me in my journey. I likewiſe put him in mind, that he would not find ſo coſtly an article as tobacco, nor even victuals abound greatly, if he ſtaid at home.

Notwithſtanding all this, I found him abſolutely immoveable in ſoul as well as in body; excepting, indeed, that with regard to the latter, he now and then threw out a whiff of tobacco from the left ſide of his chops; and that two or three times, on my repeatedly requeſting him to let me know his mind on the ſubject, he at length, though not without ſome difficulty, prevailed on himſelf to open his mouth, and anſwer me with a ſhort but deciſive, *No!* The extreme indolence of the lad, his very cavalier reception of me, the clouds of ſmoke that filled his cabin and made my eyes ſmart moſt horribly, together with the ſwarms of fleas I obſerved in it, excited in me juſt at that time the greateſt indignation, as well as the utmoſt contempt for the Hottentot nation: though, when I afterwards came to conſider the matter more impartially, as the lad, from his habits as well as nature, could very eaſily make ſhift with a moderate quantity of food, and with this could and actually did enjoy what to him was a real ſubſtantial pleaſure, viz. his eaſe and tobacco, I could not well ſuppoſe that my offer would have any weight with him.

At laſt, however, I made him another propoſal of a different nature, which was, that he, for a very moderate premium, ſhould, for a few days only, help us to lead our oxen to *Zwellendam*, where I was in hopes of getting ſomebody in his room. To this he anſwered as quick as thought,

thought, *Ja*, *Baas*, (*Yes*, *Maſter*,) got up in an inſtant, and had nothing more to do than to hang his tobacco-pouch on his arm, in order to be quite ready for his journey. After this, he went ſtraight to my waggon, and with all the eaſe and alacrity imaginable, did every thing that was requiſite to it; ſo that he no longer appeared to be the ſame lazy fellow, with whom I had juſt before been bargaining. 1775. August.

The principal reaſon of this diſpoſition that prevails with moſt Hottentots is, perhaps, that their wants are extremely few; and conſequently, being without care or employment of any kind, they are inactive and idle. From this cauſe again, a famine or general want of the neceſſaries of life ariſing, will naturally ſtimulate their uſually half-ſtarved bodies into activity and vigorous motion, at leaſt, till their more preſſing wants are relieved. On the other hand, ſuch children of Hottentots, or Boſhies-men, as from their tender years have been in the ſervice of the coloniſts, and have been uſed to work, do not yield the palm of briſkneſs and agility to any other nation whatever. It appears to me, therefore, that one cannot accuſe any natural diſpoſition of theirs, as being a hindrance to their riſing from their preſent very barbarous and unpoliſhed ſtate to a much higher degree of civilization.

Though the father of the Hottentot I had juſt hired did not take the leaſt part in his ſon's reſolve, yet at their parting he ſhowed, that he poſſeſſed the affections of a father. In fact, they ſeemed to take a tender farewel of each other; on which occaſion, the old man repeatedly importuned us in the moſt friendly manner to uſe his ſon kindly.

1775. August. There blew from the ſea, which was at that time but a ſmall diſtance from us, a cold ſouth-eaſt wind, and my companion was ſeized with his old troubleſome cough and ſpitting of blood, which continued till we arrived at night at a farm called *Groote Vlakte* (the Great Plain.) But, as we had no proviſions with us, and the farm was inhabited merely by ſlaves, who had nothing but cold water and a little coarſe and doughy bread to entertain us with; and as beſides the ſpitting of blood was ſomewhat relieved by ſome ſaltpetre which I had taken with me, as well as by the faſt my companion had been obliged to keep, though ſore againſt his will, he did not chuſe to ſtay here longer than the following noon, but plucked up courage ſufficient to continue his route on horſeback as before. In the mean time we entered into chat with the principal ſlave, who informed us, that he had been ſeveral times bought and ſold: and that this laſt time, notwithſtanding his age, which was not leſs than fifty years, yet in conſideration of his well-known fidelity, and of the dependence that might be placed in him, he had been bought in at an auction for a bailiff by a niggardly farmer, who, on that account, had thought it worth his while to purchaſe him at ſo high a price as a hundred and ten rixdollars. Upon which, the poor fellow obſerved, that he had not fared better with his ſingular fidelity, than other ſlaves who were remarkable for their great ſtrength of body; ſince he had found his burthen of care and reſponſibility increaſed upon him in the ſame degree, as theſe latter experienced the augmentation of their loads. Indeed, the lot and reward of both were like thoſe of old worn-out horſes, viz. to be neglected and ſtarved

ſtarved in their old age, in caſe they did not before that period ſink into the grave under the preſſure of their bondage. I then informed him, that ſlavery was not tolerated in my country; and it ſeemed to give him great pleaſure in the midſt of his misfortunes to think, that in ſome part of the world, however, the natural rights of mankind were held more ſacred than they were in thoſe colonies. 1775. September.

The ſtate of the weather for the month of Auguſt was as follows. The 1ſt and 2d days cloudy, on the 7th and 8th violent rains and north-eaſterly winds. On the 9th mizzling rain. On the 21ſt, 23d, and 29th it rained with the wind at ſouth-eaſt. All the other days of this month were fair with ſun-ſhine.

I had, as I mentioned before, loſt in my way to the bath the ſmall thermometer, according to the ſcale of which the degrees have been hitherto given. So that ſubſequent to this period it was from another thermometer of Fahrenheit's, procured for me by Mr. IMMELMAN from the Cape, that my obſervations were made, which I ſhall continue to give in the ſame manner as I began at page 112. On the 22d and 23d the thermometer was at 56—24th therm. 53—29th therm. 56—30th therm. 52—31ſt therm. 48. This month ſeemed to correſpond neareſt with the month of May in our northern climates.

On the 1ſt of September we paſſed by two farms in *Heſſaquas Kloof*, or vale, through which our road lay. As Kolbe makes mention of a nation of Hottentots by the name of *Heſſaquas*, they probably dwelt formerly in this vale. From hence the road took us to the *Breede-rivier*, (as it is called) where there was a ferry-boat, in which we were put

1775. September. put over with our ſaddle-horſes and waggon, but the oxen were made to ſwim acroſs.

Notwithſtanding that the river was at this time very wide and deep, yet during part of the ſummer its waters are ſaid to fall ſo prodigiouſly, that one may both ride and drive over it with eaſe. Directly on the other ſide of this river there was a farm, where we took up our night's lodging.

On the 2d we continued our journey till we came to *Zwellendam*. This place, which I have marked in the map with the letters O V C interwoven with each other, or the Dutch company's mark, is the reſidence of a *landroſt*, as he is called, who is the governor of the whole eaſtern tract of the African colonies. Here was a large handſome edifice built for him, and two other leſſer ones for two of his aſſiſtants or chief officers.

The *droſt* gave us a good reception, and a bed at night. He likewiſe procured us two Hottentots from a neighbouring craal, to aſſiſt us in our journey. So that my two firſt were diſmiſſed our ſervice according to our previous agreement; though the youth, who had made ſuch a great difficulty of accompanying me, was now very loth to part with me. The *landroſt* perceiving that I had got but indifferent oxen in my waggon, offered me a whole team of much better: but, though I was told that I might have them on credit, I would not venture to deal any more in oxen, eſpecially as my former bargain had turned out ſo bad. Beſides, being but a ſtranger, I was more afraid of a uſurer than of any of the wild beaſts in Africa; neither did I think that it would now anſwer to the expence, as this

this year had already ſet in as if it would be the drieſt in the memory of man. Otherwiſe, had I been able to afford another team of oxen, I ſhould doubtleſs have made a much longer journey, as well as more advantageous for natural hiſtory. 1775. September.

The people at this place pretended to have obſerved, that the wind, when it blew from the ſouth-eaſt at the Cape, was always northerly with them; and that, when it had ceaſed raining at the Cape, they had ſtill ſlight ſhowers at Zwellendam. They likewiſe informed me, that a very fatal diſtemper prevailed there every winter among the horſes, but that it never made its appearance at *Slangenrivier* and *Potteberg*, although both theſe places lie not far from Zwellendam, as may be ſeen in my map. It was ſuppoſed, that the ſalt-water which the horſes were obliged to drink at both theſe places, was what preſerved them. It is probable, however, that the ſea-winds purify the air in thoſe parts; and, on the contrary, that the northerly wind which comes to Zwellendam from the interior part of the country, brings with it vapours very noxious to the health of the horſes; eſpecially as it was obſerved, that ſuch horſes as were kept up in the ſtable, were hardly ever ſeized with the diſtemper. The nature of the diſorder was ſuch, that a horſe would die almoſt inſtantaneouſly; ſometimes without any viſible ſymptom preceding it, and ſometimes after a tumor had appeared on the cheſt or groin.

It was here that I ſaw for the firſt time in my life one of thoſe animals called *quaggas* by the Hottentots and coloniſts. It is a ſpecies of wild horſe, very like the *zebra*; the difference conſiſting in this, that the quagga has ſhorter

1775. September. ears, and that it has no ſtripes on its fore legs, loins, or any of its hind parts.

This partial reſemblance has been the occaſion of Mr. EDWARDS's delineating the *quagga* with the title of the *female zebra*. But in that very work both the quaggas and zebras are ſpecies totally different the one from the other, keeping in very different tracts of country, and thoſe frequently very diſtant from each other. The females of each ſpecies are marked like their reſpective males, excepting that the colour is ſomewhat more lively and definite in theſe latter.

That the zebras diſcover ſome trifling variations from each other with reſpect to their ſtreaks, particularly down the legs, may be perceived by comparing the different ſkins of this animal; which, as I have remarked above, are ſold by the furriers under the denomination of *ſea-horſe* ſkins. I have never had an opportunity of comparing together the ſkins of quaggas, but have very little doubt that there is likewiſe ſome trifling difference between them.

A full grown fœtus of a quagga, which I brought with me from the Cape, and keep ſtuffed with ſtraw in the cabinet of natural hiſtory belonging to the Royal Academy of Sciences, ſeems to have livelier colours than I have obſerved in the adult animal. The length of this fœtus, from the ears to the tail is thirty-one inches, and its height about the loins twenty-two inches. The quagga I ſaw here, having been caught when it was very young, was become ſo tame, that it came to us to be careſſed. It was ſaid never to be frightened by the hyæna, but, on the contrary,

contrary, that it would purſue this fierce animal, whenever this latter made its appearance in thoſe parts; ſo that it was a moſt certain guard for the horſes, with which it was turned out to graſs at night. 1775. September.

That theſe quaggas might be broken in for the ſaddle or harneſs, I have not the leaſt doubt; as juſt before my departure for Europe, I ſaw one driven through the ſtreets in a team with five horſes: but with the zebra nobody has yet made any fair trial in this particular. I was told, indeed, that a wealthy burgher near the Cape, brought up and tamed ſome of them with this view; and likewiſe, that once he was abſurd enough to take it into his head to harneſs them all to his chaiſe, though they were not in the leaſt accuſtomed either to the harneſs or yoke. The conſequence was, that they directly ran back into the ſtable with the carriage and their maſter in it with ſuch prodigious fury, as to deprive him and every one elſe of all deſire to make any farther trials of this kind. There can be no doubt, however, but that quaggas or zebras, properly tamed and broke in, would, in many reſpects, be of greater ſervice to the coloniſts than horſes: as, in the firſt place, they are more eaſily procured here; and next, being uſed to the harſh dry paſture, which chiefly abounds in Africa, they ſeem to be intended by nature for this country; while, on the other hand, horſes are univerſally very nice in their food. I believe I have already remarked, that both horſes and oxen in this country are in general weaker than ours; of which the dry paſtures abounding in it, were in all probability the principal cauſe. The quagga that I ſaw here at this time, was in ſuch good condition, and

1775. September. ſo plump about the back and loins, as, I believe, in that point, not to be equalled by any horſe; and though both quaggas and zebras have ſmall feet, yet at the ſame time their hoofs are hard, and, perhaps, like aſſes, they are more ſure-footed than horſes. I cannot deny, that with good horſes the people here are uſed to hunt down the zebras with eaſe: but who knows, whether both zebras and quaggas would not become quicker in their paces by frequent riding and exerciſe. Had the coloniſts tamed them and uſed them inſtead of horſes, in all probability they would have been in no danger of loſing them, either by the wolves or the epidemic diſorder, to which the horſes here are ſubject.

Here was a vineyard planted for the uſe of the family, and it was the firſt I had ſeen ſince I left the bath. The wine produced by it did not come up to that at the Cape; which chiefly proceeded from the ſituation of the vineyard, and perhaps, likewiſe, in ſome meaſure, from its not being properly looked after.

On the 3d we continued our journey till we came to *Riet Valley*. This was the laſt farm to the eaſtward belonging to government, and was ſituated at a ſhort diſtance only from *Zwellendam*. A corporal, as he is ſtyled, had the inſpection of this farm, and likewiſe ſuperintended divers wood-cutters who worked in the neighbouring wood (called *Groot Vaders Boſch*) on the company's account. The people that had the care of the farm at Riet Valley were opulent and well-bred, and in a moſt hoſpitable manner abſolutely obliged us to paſs a couple of days with them; at the ſame time endeavouring to render themſelves both

both agreeable and uſeful to us by the information they gave us, as well as by the aſſiſtance they afforded us in our reſearches; ſo much, indeed, that they even taught us, and made us practiſe ſpeaking the Hottentot language. 1775. September.

This is certainly, with reſpect to the pronunciation, the moſt difficult and ſingular language in the univerſe. Almoſt every word is pronounced with a ſmack or clacking of the tongue againſt the roof of the mouth. Words of many ſyllables are accompanied with two clacks; but what cannot but render this language ſtill more difficult for ſtrangers, is, that theſe clacks are ſaid to be performed, according to different circumſtances, in three different ways, viz. more or leſs forward or backward on the palate. This diſtinction, however, I had not from the Hottentots themſelves, who were, perhaps, too ignorant to go ſo deep into the matter. For my part, I own that my ears were not nice enough to attend to ſuch minute differences. I muſt likewiſe confeſs, that I did not take pains ſufficient to get this point cleared up to me. Nevertheleſs I diſcovered, as ſoon as I got to *Houtniquas*, that another dialect was ſpoken there, and that it differed from the former in the more or leſs clacking uſed in the words. But it was ſufficient for me to learn, in the courſe of my journey, partly for pleaſure, and partly for uſe, ſome common words and phraſes in the Hottentot language. Some of theſe I have given at the end of this journal. The ſmacks, or clacking with the tongue, I imagined it would be moſt convenient to denote by a t' with an apoſtrophe over it.

The *Chineſe*, or *Sneſe Hottentots*, ſo called from their complexion, which is yellower than that of the other Hot-

1775. September. tentot nations, and therefore more like the *Chineſe*, are likewiſe in their dialect very diſtinct from them. There is, however, ſo great a reſemblance between them all, that they can in ſome meaſure underſtand each other. With a view to their mutual compariſon, I have likewiſe added a ſample of ſome of the words of this language, and likewiſe of that of the Caffres, which is not clogged with that clacking of the palate, as the Hottentot language is.

Notwithſtanding this noiſe againſt the roof of the mouth, this laſt mentioned language does not ſound ill, when the ear is ſomewhat accuſtomed to it; as the Hottentots pronounce it with as much eaſe and facility, as other nations do their reſpective languages. Farther up the country, where they have no other ſervants than Hottentots, the children of the Chriſtians frequently learn the Hottentot language more eaſily, and before they do the Dutch. The ſame thing happens with regard to the *Malay* tongue in thoſe places, where they make uſe of ſlaves, and eſpecially of nurſes, of that nation. So that, probably, all languages are almoſt equally eaſy for children: and, if we may form a concluſion from what we have juſt advanced, the tendereſt age of childhood might be advantageouſly employed in learning ſeveral languages. At the Cape I have heard very young children ſpeak two or three different languages with equal readineſs and facility.

At this place, beſides learning the Hottentot's language, I had an opportunity of informing myſelf, for the firſt time, concerning the progreſs of this people in muſic. One of their inſtruments is a bow, like a ſpringe-bow, a foot in length, with a fine ſtring of thread, to the end of which there

there is fixed in the ſame line a cloven quill half an inch long. The inſtrument is played on in the following manner: the muſician, applying his mouth to the quill, draws in his breath very hard, ſo as to put it into a quivering motion, which produces a grating ſound. This inſtrument is called a *t'Goerra*, a name which ſeems to be applicable enough to it, as tolerably well correſponding with the ſound of the inſtrument. 1775. September.

T'Guthe is the name of another inſtrument, which, probably, was firſt made in imitation of our violin. It conſiſts merely of a piece of board with three or four ſtrings ſcrewed on to it, on which they ſcrape with a bow.

T'Koi t'koi is a ſort of drum, compoſed of a ſkin ſtretched over a calibaſh, or hollow block. The muſic is juſt what might be expected from ſuch an inſtrument. As I was fortunate enough not to be often in the way of hearing their ſtrains, and am beſides no cognoſcente, I have not been able to note them down, if, indeed, they can be expreſſed in notes. Their vocal muſic conſiſts in ſinging a few notes, without annexing any words to them, or, at leaſt, words that have any meaning. Theſe remarks chiefly affect the Hottentots in this part of the country; for I much doubt, whether the Boſhies-men have either *t'guthes* or *t'goerras* among them.

It is ſo uſual to find in poems and romances the ſhepherds and ſhepherdeſſes playing on their pipes, that my readers, no doubt, will expect to find the Hottentots who lead a paſtoral life, employed in the ſame delightful occupation; and, indeed, ſo far it is true, that both the men and women have their pipes, but then they only uſe them for

1775. September.

for ſmoking. This inſtrument, which has far greater charms for them than all the muſic in the world, certainly merits a deſcription, which we ſhall therefore attempt in this place.

The tobacco-pipes which are made uſe of in theſe parts, and, indeed, every where among the Hottentots (properly ſo called) are ſhaped pretty nearly like ours, being compoſed of a miſerable wooden bowl, and a ſtem of equally coarſe workmanſhip. Of the Boſhies-men's pipes, as being ſufficiently remarkable, I have given a drawing in Plate VII. where in fig. 3. is repreſented an elk's horn from a foot and a half to two feet in length, in the aperture of which, about two inches in diameter, (ſee fig. 3. a.) the Boſhies-man contrives to ſqueeze the whole of his mouth in ſuch a manner, that none of the ſmoke can eſcape or be loſt, but paſſes entire, in a column proportioned to the ſize of the horn, into his throat, ſome part of it coming out again through his noſtrils. To make amends for this, however, five or ſix gulps content him; a fit of coughing, hawking, and rattling in his throat enſues, which he, probably, conſiders as a very deſirable conſequence. He then hands this delicious horn to his next neighbour, that he may, in like manner, have the pleaſure of fumigating his lungs; and in this way the horn circulates among them, women as well as men, juſt as the pipe does in Sweden, among a company of old women ſitting under the chimney in alms-houſes. One of the Boſhies-men, whom I afterwards took into my ſervice, when I paſſed through the deſert in my way to *Bruntjes Hoogte*, once ſwallowed the ſmoke of his tobacco-horn with ſuch avidity,

avidity, that I saw him fall down in a swoon in consequence of it. At fig. 3. the reader may see the stem of the pipe fixed at right angles on the side of the horn; and the bowl, which is sometimes made of wood, and sometimes of some loose pebble dug out of the ground, fastened on to the top of the stem. 1775. September.

I have likewise seen goat's horns employed for this purpose; but the preference is given to the elk's horns on account of their sharp points; they being so handy for the Hottentot to stick into the ground close by his side, so that not a particle of the tobacco can be lost. One of these tobacco-horns I have brought home with me, and keep it in the collection of the Academy of Sciences; though, having been for the use of a little Hottentot woman, it is smaller and neater than usual, being but thirteen inches in length; and the aperture at its base, to which the mouth is applied, an inch and a half across.

Their tobacco-pouches are made of the skin of a lamb, or of one of the smaller sort of antilopes entire, with the hairy side turned outwards; so that in this pouch the Hottentot has at the same time room enough for his pipe, tinder-box, and the rest of his implements for kindling a fire.

Beside the accurate information I received at this place on the subject of the Hottentot's music, language, and method of smoking, I had, the evening after my arrival there, an opportunity of seeing their card-playing. By this absurd name, the colonists have distinguished the following peculiar game among these people, which was played in this manner. Both my Hottentots, together with two others,

1775. September. others, made a *partie quarrée*, ſitting on their hams, as is uſual with other unpoliſhed nations. The chimney, the part of the room conſtantly preferred by a Hottentot to any other, was likewiſe in this caſe the place they choſe to occupy for playing this game; and the aſh-hole might not unaptly be conſidered as their card-table, as it did not unfrequently happen, that in the midſt of their ardour for the ſport, they ſtruck their hands into the middle of it, and raiſed the aſhes into clouds of duſt that floated all over the room, and almoſt blinded one. Now, as this ſport ſeemed to conſiſt in an inceſſant motion of the arms upwards, downwards, and acroſs each other's arms, without ever ſeeming (at leaſt on purpoſe) to touch one another, it appears to me, that the intention of this ſport is to open the cheſt, as it were, whilſt ſitting, by way of ſuccedaneum for dancing. It is probable, however, that with all this they obſerve certain rules, and in certain circumſtances, mutually get the advantage over each other; as each of them at times would hold a little peg between his fore-finger and thumb, at which they would burſt out into laughter, and, on being aſked the reaſon, ſaid, that they loſt and won by turns, yet without playing for any thing. One of the party, however, grew weary in two hours time, and laid himſelf down to ſleep; while the others kept on with the ſport from evening till break of day, during the whole time continually and inceſſantly pronouncing, or rather ſinging, the following words, *hei pruah prhanka*, *hei ptruah t'hei*, *hei pruah ha*. Of theſe words they did not themſelves know the meaning; and all the information they could give me on the ſubject was, that they had learned

learned them, together with the game, of ſome of their companions, who had been to pay a viſit to the Indians a great way to the northward. Probably their *hei ptrua prhanka*, has no more meaning in it than the *fal lal der'al* of the Europeans. I had before ſeen this game played a little at the Cape Town, by ſome Boſhies-man boys that a butcher had brought home with him from *Schneeuwberg*, and I at this time gave orders for it to be played, on purpoſe to ſatisfy my curioſity. 1775. September.

1775. September.

CHAP. VI.

Journey from Zwellendam to Muſcle Bay.

ON the morning of the 5th we took leave of our hoſpitable friends, and arrived at a farm on the other branch of Buffeljagts rivier. A little way from the farm there was a grove, from whence we heard the cries of a herd of monkies. Our hoſt told us, that they ſet up this alarm, in order to give notice to each other of the approach of tigers, which are wont to purſue them up into the trees; when the only means theſe nimble little animals have of eſcaping, is to jump on to the ſlender twigs and branches of the tree that are moſt diſtant from the trunk, where the tigers dare not follow them. Mr. IMMELMAN, therefore, and myſelf, repaired to the place with our guns, with a view to partake, in ſome meaſure, of the ſport. We were, however, out of luck, having only got a tranſient glimpſe of the monkies; we could very plainly diſcern, however, that they were of a coal-black colour, and about the ſize of an ordinary cat; ſo that, in all likelihood, they form a peculiar ſpecies not yet known. It is ſaid, that there are ſome of theſe animals in *Groot Vaders-boſch* and *Houtniquas*; though I did not ſee any there. What with our

our ſport, and what with botanizing, we ſtaid ſo long here, that we could go no farther that day. 1775. September.

On the 6th in the morning we ordered matters ſo *à-propos*, that we arrived at dinner-time at the houſe of a wealthy farmer, who was a captain in the militia, compoſed of his fellow peaſants, or (as they are called) burghers. All ſuch peaſants as live in Roodezand, and the whole of that tract of country that lies to the eaſtward, are under the juriſdiction of Zwellendam, and are obliged, at a certain time of the year, to appear before the landroſt, and perform their exerciſe. This falls very heavy on ſuch as live at a great diſtance, ſome of them dwelling, perhaps, five hundred miles off; on which account likewiſe, they frequently pretend impediments, or elſe ſubmit to pay the fine at once. A ſtill larger corps, compoſed of the inhabitants of *Camdebo*, *Schneeuwberg*, *Bockeveld*, *Roggeveld*, *Anamaqua*, and the other places in that part of the country, are drawn up every year at *Stellenboſch*, where the landroſt, or lord lieutenant of theſe diſtricts has his reſidence. The burgeſſy at the Cape, and the peaſants from Tigerberg are drawn up in the town itſelf. In the vicinity of this farm the *Tradaus-mountains* ſtretch away to the eaſt, and upon one part of them is ſituated *Groot Vaders-boſch*. In the evening we lay at the farm called *Kroſs-rivier* juſt by the ſide of the wood, in order to be near at hand for the purpoſe of botanizing.

This wood contained a great number of beautiful tall trees, the major part of which, however, being out of bloom, it could not be aſcertained what ſpecies they were of. Moſt of thoſe which I examined were entirely un-

1775. September. known to the botaniſts, and, probably, great part of the remainder are under the ſame predicament. It is, therefore, to be wiſhed, that a botaniſt had an opportunity of remaining in this place the whole year throughout.

Beams, planks for flooring, and timber for the conſtruction of waggons are fetched from hence both by the farmers and by government. Many ſorts of ſhrubs and buſhes in ſome places, particularly by the ſide of the wood, fill up the interſtices between the larger trees, and render the foreſt impervious. Among theſe, ſeveral ſorts of prickly *aſparaguſes* deſerve to be remarked, as well as a new ſpecies of *callophyllum*; which, from its catching, like the thorn-buſh, faſt hold of the traveller with its hooked prickles, and keeping him from purſuing his journey, is commonly called here *wakt een betje*, or *wait a bit*.

On the 10th, in our way from hence, we had the misfortune to wander aſtray on horſeback till a good while after midnight. Being but lightly clad, we were almoſt frozen to death, when we arrived at a farm near *Slangenrivier*; where, however, we had like to have waited in the open air till the morning, as the miſtreſs of the houſe, who was left at home with her female ſlave only, did not much care (without taking a long time to conſider of the matter) to give houſe-room to travellers ſo totally unknown to her as we were. Indeed, it was only by the barking of the dogs, that we had been enabled to diſcover this farm in the dark. The next morning we had the pleaſure to ſee, that our Hottentots were arrived with the waggon at the diſtance of a couple of gun-ſhots from the farm, and were taking the oxen out of the team on a plain

plain near a croſs road. They gave us to underſtand, that they had got thither ſome time after us, by a different by-road. The country round about was extremely dry and arid, and ſcarcely a vernal bloſſom was to be ſeen. The reaſon of this was, the univerſal want of rain, which was every where complained of that ſpring. At this place there had been no rain for ſeveral days before; and yet the trees in *Groot Vaders-boſch* had, as foreſts uſually do, attracted vapour from the clouds, and rain ſufficient to water them. 1775. September.

This day I had no ſmall pleaſure in ſeeing, for the firſt time, ſome Hottentots riding their oxen. They rode pretty hard over hills and dales; and my hoſteſs told me, that if I was there when they came back, I ſhould ſee them galloping neck or nothing; as they were then going to drink out ſeveral wagers at a neighbour's of her's, a farmer, who, ſhe ſaid, had ſo little conſcience, as for the ſake of a very trifling gain, to lead the poor pagans, by means of his brandy, into riot, intemperance, and exceſſes of all kinds. She moreover gave the Hottentots the character of uſing the brute creation, and particularly the oxen they rode, very cruelly. Beſide this inſtance, I have ſeen ſeveral others, which confirmed this remark of her's; but am apt to believe it applies beſt to ſuch of them as have, in a great meaſure, departed from their original ſimplicity, in conſequence of their intercourſe with the Chriſtians.

Theſe ſaddle-oxen muſt be tamed and broke in while they are calves. For this purpoſe, a hole is bored through the griſtle of the noſe, large enough to hold a wooden pin, to both ends of which the rope is faſtened, that ſerves by

1775. September. by way of bit and bridle to guide the animal with. The ſaddle conſiſts of a ſheep-ſkin folded up together, and faſtened by a rope round the fore part of the ox's body. Theſe oxen are by the coloniſts called *pack-oxen*, they being alſo uſed for carrying packs and burthens: the name is likewiſe very ſuitable to them on another account, which is, that the Hottentots very frequently ride, ſeveral of them together, upon one ox. There is an order of government, which ordains that no Hottentot ſhall be in poſſeſſion of a horſe; in conſequence of which, it is ſaid, that a Hottentot, who was very fond of hunting, trained one of his pack-oxen to run with ſuch ſpeed, as to be able to hunt elks with it, and abſolutely run them down. In general, the way that the Hottentots have of eluding this prohibition, is to paſs their horſes off for borrowed, which in fact they have bought at a high price, or got in the way of barter, or elſe to pretend to have them for ſale on ſome Chriſtian's account. Another law of government prohibits all Chriſtians, under pain of being whipped and branded, to buy, or otherwiſe to acquire the poſſeſſion of, any animal belonging to a Hottentot. The reaſon of this is, that government having uſe for theſe animals itſelf, chuſes to have the benefit of this kind of traffic: the Hottentots, for a bottle of brandy and a roll of tobacco a foot or two long, with about a quarter of a rixdollar's worth of ſmall copper beads, generally ſelling a ſpare ox, worth at leaſt five or ſix rixdollars. What makes them content with ſo low a price is, that the factor for government (who is generally the corporal in *Riet Valley*) is their only chapman; and beſides gives them to underſtand,

ſtand, that this traffic is a kind of tax, which is laid every third year on the Hottentot nation. The irreſiſtible attractions of brandy, likewiſe, do not a little contribute on this occaſion, to induce the obſtinate and headſtrong Hottentot to part with his property. 1775. September.

About noon we went to pay a viſit to a community of Hottentots aſſembled on this ſpot, who received us very friendly, and invited us to drink ſome of their *ſack-milk*; which, I believe, nobody could have taſted, that had not been as thirſty, and at the ſame time as curious, as we. We ſaw then our greaſy, though, perhaps, not for that the leſs happy, hoſteſs, open a leathern bag, that would hold about ſix gallons, and which was made of an undreſſed calf's-ſkin taken off entire, with the hairy ſide turned inwards, in the manner I mentioned above on another occaſion, and at the ſame time lade ſome milk out of it with a wooden ladle, the only one they had, and which, though it was what we drank out of, the dirtieſt kitchen-wench in Sweden would have been perfectly aſhamed of. But we were told, that ſweet milk was unwholeſome, and that therefore they always mixed it with the clouted milk in the leathern bag. They likewiſe aſſured us, that all this milk, thus mixed every day with freſh, to ſupply the place of what had been uſed, might be kept for many weeks as good as ever, without their having the leaſt occaſion to give themſelves the trouble of looking after it, or cleaning the bag in which it was kept. The taſte of it reſembled that of a ſyllabub. By way of acknowledgment, we gave our hoſts a roll of tobacco about ſix inches long,

1775. September. long, which they ſeemed to conſider as a very magnificent preſent.

A few gun ſhots from hence was ſeen an uncommonly large hut of a conic form. We were told, that in it there lived the Hottentot-Captain RUNDGANGER. I then aſked my hoſt, whether he belonged to the Captain's company, or was under his command? To which he anſwered, with a ſly ſarcaſtic ſmile, that the command of a Hottentot Captain extended no farther than to his wife and children; and that, in fact, he might with equal propriety be called Major, or what elſe you pleaſe. Captain, ſays he, is merely an empty title, formerly beſtowed by the regency at the Cape on ſome princes and patriarchs of the Hottentots, and particularly on ſuch, as had diſtinguiſhed themſelves by their fidelity to their allies, by betraying their countrymen, or by ſome remarkable ſervice. They have likewiſe had a Dutch ſurname, together with a commander's ſtaff, beſtowed upon them; and both theſe, like letters patent of nobility, have afterwards deſcended in the way of inheritance to their ſons. On the other hand, it is required of the Captain, that he ſhall be a ſpy on the other Hottentots; and when ſearch is made after a deſerter, he is inveſted by the regency at the Cape with the chief authority, and conſequently trouble, throughout the whole of the buſineſs.

On the receipt of this information, which ſince has been confirmed to me by ſeveral others, we haſtened hence, in order to pay our reſpects to a man of ſo ancient and princely a family as RUNDGANGER. The patriarch was at that time ſitting

ſitting and baſking himſelf before the door of his tent, and in this poſture waited till we came up to him, in order to receive us. He was ſomewhat above forty years of age, and of ſuch an *embonpoint*, as I never ſaw before nor ſince in one of his nation. This was in all probability occaſioned by his great ſuperiority of wealth in the article of cattle, by which means he could live better than another, and at the ſame time lead a more indolent life, void of care and anxiety. By means of a little tobacco, and other trifling civilities, ſhewn *à-propos* to this illuſtrious family, we in a manner gained his confidence. He could not forbear (though with ſome degree of caution and in gentle terms) making complaints of the Dutch, as unjuſt invaders of the Hottentots territories. For want of ſtrength and power, (he ſaid) theſe latter were now no longer in a condition to withſtand their encroachments; almoſt every day ſome Hottentot or other being obliged to remove with his cattle, whenever the paſture he was in poſſeſſion of, happened to ſuit a coloniſt. The Hottentot Captains had, indeed, formerly, been left undiſturbed in their poſſeſſions; but now they had likewiſe elbowed him, though a Captain, out of a more eligible ſituation; and even began to grudge him the meagre and parched fields he was in poſſeſſion of nearer the ſea-ſhore; notwithſtanding that they were extremely dangerous for ſheep and cattle, both on account of the unhealthineſs of the ſituation, and its being expoſed to the incurſions of wild beaſts. He likewiſe complained of his own countrymen, that now they could ſeldom agree among themſelves, and were all particularly envious of him; ſo that he could not venture to ſell a ſupernumerary

1775. September.

1775. September. ox to a farmer, for fear left his own people and kindred ſhould tell tales of him to the landroſt of Zwellendam. I had before this heard it ſaid, that, among the Hottentots, the youngeſt ſon was the principal, and, I had almoſt ſaid, the ſole heir. Captain RUNDGANGER actually confirmed to me the reality of this very peculiar law, informing me, that all his cattle, together with his title of Captain and his ſtaff, would, after his death, fall to the ſhare of his youngeſt ſon. As I was curious to ſee the enſign of his authority, or rather of his vaſſalage, I mean his Captain's ſtaff, he ſhewed me the cane he had in his hand, which was a ſhort and very plain Indian (or, as it is generally called, Spaniſh) bamboo, with a very indifferent copper head three inches long, which cane he was bound always to carry about him. I have mentioned before, that RUNDGANGER's hut ſeemed of an unuſual ſize; in fact, it was three or four times larger than common, and ſo roomy as to allow of a bedchamber and wardrobe being parted off from it by means of mats. With reſpect to the building, it was compoſed of poles, placed ſo as to meet in a point at top, and afterwards covered with ſtraw, ſo that altogether it had the ſhape of a cone. It is probable, that the title of Captain, hereditary in the RUNDGANGER family, had in ſome meaſure given them the idea of thus building their huts in a more poliſhed and civilized ſtyle than the reſt of their countrymen; and I think it cannot be denied, but that a certain degree of ambition is abſolutely requiſite in the Hottentot people, in order to convert their *craals* into more poliſhed and laborious communities; in like manner as this ſame paſſion, on the other hand, may be carried

ried to such a height in civilized nations, as to make them degenerate again into their pristine inactivity and sloth, and produce all the evils naturally consequent on such an alteration of manners. 1775. September.

Henceforward it would be too tedious and prolix, and indeed unnecessary, to give an account of every day separately, just as I wrote it down in my journal: as by that means, remarks not dissimilar to the preceding might chance to occur very frequently. From what has been already described, it will perhaps easily be imagined, that our expedition consisted for the greater part of daily vexations, anxiety, and difficulties, very moderate pleasures, and trifling discoveries, the relation of which would by no means interest the generality of readers. I shall therefore make separate mention of certain days only, throwing all together in a promiscuous manner, such occurrences as happened on the rest.

We continued our route, passing over *Duyvenhoeks-rivier*, and taking the upper road through *Kafferkuyls-rivier*, and so on through *Gaurit-rivier*. From thence through a green vale, called *Honing-klip* (Honey-rock;) from this place to and from *Mossel-bay*, then over *Klein* and *Groot Brak-riviers* into *Houtniquas* land, as far as is indicated by the dots on the map.

Perhaps it may not be absolutely without use to remark in this place, that at Duyvenhoeks-rivier we first saw the *dorn boom*, or tree called *mimosa nilotica*, which produces the *gum arabic*. The river just mentioned is deep, and has rather a strong current. Professor Thunberg (it is said)

1775. September. in riding over it, miſſed the ſhalloweſt part, and was in danger of being drowned.

Drooge and *Natte* (dry and wet) *riviers* were now both dried up. *Kafferkuyls-* or *Palmit-rivier*, was ſtill tolerably broad at the upper ford, and overgrown with palmites. The water, indeed, was dried up in moſt places; but, on the other hand, our oxen were obliged to drag the waggon through a maſs of mud, that reached up to their bellies; and we ſhould certainly, with our ordinary equipment, have ſtuck faſt in it, if a farmer had not lent us his *baſtard* ſlave to drive the waggon over. This fellow had ſuch an incomparable knack of whipping the oxen up without intermiſſion, that they had not the leaſt opportunity to flinch from the buſineſs.

Falſe-rivier is an inſignificant ſtream; but the great quantity of butter-milk, which the farmer dwelling on its banks threw out here by pail-fulls, made a ſtream of ſome importance, notwithſtanding that five or ſix large dogs had previouſly drank their ſwill of it, not to mention what had been conſumed in the family. The farmer at this place was one of the greater farmers called graziers, whoſe whole income depended on grazing cattle. The milk was collected together from the milkings of two, three, or more days, and kept in a tub till they had an opportunity of churning it; which they uſually did every other or every third day, at leaſt part of it, in a veſſel that would contain between one and two hogſheads. The churn-ſtaff was raiſed and wrought by no leſs than two, and ſometimes four people, in the ſame way as the handle of a common pump.

1775. September.

In this colony the people are neither notable enough, nor indeed is it much worth their while, to preſs out all the butter, which might be ſeparated from their milk, as they do with us; on which account, likewiſe, I always found their butter-milk greaſy and rank in compariſon with ours.

Hardly any body here troubles himſelf with fatting hogs, and this is the reaſon that they are ſo laviſh of their butter-milk. Thoſe farmers who have a tolerable ſhare of paſture ground and cattle, make from one thouſand eight hundred to three thouſand five hundred pounds of butter in a year. This quantity is carried to the Cape in one or two journies, and is ſold at the rate of from three to ſix ſtivers a pound.

The towns-people, that buy up this butter, ſell the greater part of it again to the ſhips, at a profit of from twenty to one hundred per cent. The more wealthy farmers derive this farther advantage from their grazing farms, that every other, or every third year, they can diſpoſe of eight or ten oxen, ſome to the butchers, others to the people that carry wood between the town and ſhore, and others again to other farmers that live nearer to the Cape; and having leſs room for grazing cattle, and a readier vent for their wine and meal, get their livelihoods entirely by cultivating the earth. Theſe graziers, likewiſe, derive an income more or leſs conſiderable from the ſale of weathers. A number of theſe, from twenty to one hundred, they diſpoſe of yearly, at the rate of from ſix ſchellings to a dollar the head, Dutch money. With all this, the vender needs not to ſtir out of his own houſe; as the butcher's men go about, buying them up, and afterwards drive them in flocks conſiſting

1775. September. ſifting of ſeveral hundreds, and ſometimes even thouſands, to the ſlaughter-houſes at the Cape, about the times when the fleets are chiefly expected. A great number of the peaſants in this country are termed grazing farmers or graziers, the chief, and ſometimes the whole of their income, depending on their breeding of ſheep. One of theſe graziers will, perhaps, be maſter of one, two, or even three thouſand ſheep at a time. This is no unuſual circumſtance, particularly in the very dry parched plains in this country; ſuch as *Camdebo*, *Rogge-* and *Bokke-velden*, (fields or plains) the great *Carrows*, &c. all which, taken together, and including ſeveral ſmaller tracts of land, are, from their qualities, diſtinguiſhed by the coloniſts by the name of *Carrow-veld*.

It may be proper here to give a more accurate deſcription of theſe tracts of land, as well as of thoſe called by the coloniſts *Zuur* and *Zoet*. The *Carrow-veld*, taken in its moſt extenſive ſignification, is horridly parched up and arid. In theſe parts, during the whole ſummer, or the warmer part of the year, there hardly falls a drop of rain. The ground is as dry and bare of graſs as a high road; and the ſhrubs on it are, to all appearance at leaſt, dried up, and in a languiſhing ſtate. The earth, which at moſt times bears an arid meagre appearance, and at this time particularly, is, in the manner juſt mentioned, diveſted of all its lively verdure, looks naked, and being withal full of clefts and chinks in different places, ſeems quite languiſhing with drought and thirſt. High and cold mountains of granite, frequently to all appearance rich in iron ore, ſurround theſe lands on all ſides. Here the ſun

ſcorches

ſcorches the traveller up with its reflected rays, and the ground almoſt burns him through the ſoles of his ſhoes. In a ſhort time totally relaxed, enervated and weak, he finds himſelf bathed in ſweat, and at the ſame time as thirſty as the objects by which he is ſurrounded; whilſt he is ſatiated even to diſguſt with viewing the deſolateneſs of the vegetable kingdom, and the reflections which ſuch a ſight tends to inſpire. In winter, or the colder ſeaſon, on the other hand, there falls on the *Carrow-veld* a great quantity of rain, while the thunder daily and even hourly rolls with loud tremendous peals in the ſurrounding mountains. The clouds, which during this are collected almoſt inſtantaneouſly, fall down again in heavy ſhowers, that deluge both the hills and the plains. The earth, by this means refreſhed, quickly receives the ſeeds and roots committed to its care, and particularly the ſucculent plants, which in a peculiar manner delight in this kind of ſoil. Upon this they ſoon become verdant, and throw out their tender bloſſoms, clothing the ground in the very depth of winter with a ſummer garb, in all the ſplendor of magnificence and beauty. 1775. September.

The ſucculent plants with which Flora at this time thus decks herſelf, while ſhe ſeems to deviate from the regular order of the ſeaſons, are chiefly the following: ſeveral ſorts of *meſembryanthemums*, which grow in cluſters, with white, red, blue, but moſtly yellow flowers; *craſſulas* with red flowers; beſides various ſpecies of *cotyledons*, *ſtapelias*, and *euphorbias*.

All theſe, nay, the very tops of the euphorbias are eaten by the ſheep, which even grow extremely fat upon them; but,

1775. September. but, as in ſummer they have nothing elſe to ſuſtain themſelves with, they content themſelves with browzing on the ſhrubs and buſhes; and notwithſtanding this, do not by any means fare ill. The larger kinds of cattle cannot make ſo good a ſhift with mere ſhrubs, but are obliged to ſeek for reeds and other green vegetables in the rivers; for which reaſon, where the inhabitants of the *Carrow* live in ſuch low ſituations, they remove in the ſummer up to the ridges of mountains and hills, where they find the uſual ſummer climate, with rain at intervals, plenty of graſs, and cool refreſhing breezes. In the winter, it is ſaid both to hail and ſnow on divers of the mountains; on which account the coloniſts leave them at that time, in order to enjoy in the *Carrow*, or lower ſituations, the benefit of a mild winter, accompanied with rain and a delightful verdure, as I have deſcribed it above. Allured by the ſame advantages, the wild harts or *gazells* likewiſe come down into the plains, and are followed by the beaſts of prey. To the different ſorts of corn the *Carrow* climate is ſo far unfavourable, that in caſe they are ſowed in the winter or the rainy ſeaſon, they are (as I have been informed by the inhabitants, who have made many attempts of the kind) apt to be rotted by the too great abundance of water; and if put into the ground in ſummer, they cannot ſpring up on account of the great drought. Notwithſtanding all theſe natural diſadvantages, however, to the honour of the forecaſt and diligence of man in a ſtate of civilization be it ſpoken, one very frequently ſees, even in the parched and dry *Carrow* plains, fields of corn, kitchen-gardens, and vineyards, verdant and flouriſhing in the higheſt degree;

gree; while the wild plants around them die, or languiſh with drought. This remarkable appearance proceeds from the water being brought down at pleaſure from the neareſt mountains, and carried all over their fields and plantations. 1775. September.

What are termed by the coloniſts the *Zuur-velden*, or *Sour-fields*, are ſuch as lie ſomewhat higher and cooler than the ſhore, and thus are better ſupplied with rain than the other plains; which, however, abound more in graſs. The different ſorts of graſs here are likewiſe perennial, and coarſer than thoſe of the former; at the ſame time that their blades have a hairy roughneſs in them, and are broader. The cattle in theſe tracts of country are ſomewhat given to chew unwholeſome ſubſtances, ſuch as thongs of leather, chalk, and bones; and are even accuſtomed, in failure of every thing elſe of the kind, to gnaw each others horns. This circumſtance, which ſeems to denote an acid in the ſtomach of the cattle, may, probably, have given occaſion to the appellation beſtowed on theſe plains. Some of the Caffre plains are ſaid likewiſe to poſſeſs this acid quality in ſo high a degree, as to occaſion the cattle at night, when ſhut up in their ſtalls, to gnaw each other's horns, by which means their horns have the appearance of carved work; a circumſtance which ought, therefore, by no means to be aſcribed, as it has been, to the manual operations of the Caffre herdſmen, or to the effects of imagination only.

To conclude, with reſpect to the *Zuur-velden*, it is remarked by the coloniſts, that there is leſs milk in proportion, but more as well as better butter than in the *Zoet-*

1775. September. *velden*, though in theſe latter places the cattle get fatter. By the *Sweet-fields* (*Zoet-velden*) are meant ſuch places as do not correſpond to the deſcriptions given above of the *Zuur* and *Carrow-veld*. Such ſpots as are low, rather ſandy, and lie near the ſhore, are given as inſtances of the *Zoet* plains; as the *Zuur* again are Honing-klip, Houtniquas-land, and the greater part of Lange-kloof and Caffreland.

For the purpoſe of feeding ſheep, the *Carrow* is conſidered as the beſt land, and the *Zuur-velden* the leaſt, if at all, fit. For cattle it has been found to anſwer better, when they could be removed off and on from one of theſe kinds of land to the other. The conſtant and unequivocal experience of the coloniſts, with regard to this point, agrees with the reſult of the practice of the Hottentots; though this, in fact, has its origin almoſt entirely in prejudice; for as ſoon as any of them, or of their cattle, fall ſick and die, or any other misfortune happens to, or even only threatens them, they immediately remove their ſtation. This, perhaps, is one of the principal cauſes that the cattle of the Hottentots, in ſome meaſure, keep up to their original ſtandard; whilſt, on the contrary, thoſe of the chriſtians degenerate to a ſmaller race; and that chiefly in thoſe parts which lie nearer to the Cape, and therefore have been longer inhabited and cultivated.

It has likewiſe been remarked, beyond a ſhadow of doubt, that ſuch places as before abounded in graſs, and were very fertile in corn and the produce of the kitchen-garden, are now fallen off conſiderably; ſo that it is feared, that they muſt in a ſhort time be given up. The *rhinoceros-*

ceros-buſh (a ſpecies of *ſtoebe*) a dry ſhrub, which is otherwiſe uſed to thrive on barren tracts of land, now begins to encroach more and more on ſuch places as have been thoroughly cleared and cultivated. When I aſked the country people the reaſon of this, they would lay the blame on their ſins. Their conſciences, probably, informed them, that there was great reaſon for ſo doing. One of their ſins which moſt merited this puniſhment, as having contributed moſt to the evil, might, in this caſe, be reckoned their want of knowing how to dreſs properly the ſoil they occupied, and to manage it to the beſt advantage. As the grounds that are newly broken up are, in every country, and in all parts of the world, more fertile than they can be expected to be after ſome time, it is no wonder, that the lands in Africa at preſent require more dreſſing and manuring than the coloniſts think proper to beſtow on them; but which is abſolutely neceſſary, in order to keep them up in that degree of heart and ſtrength which they have before, during a period of many ages, had time to acquire. 1775. September.

In direct contradiction to the cuſtom and example of the original inhabitants the Hottentots, the coloniſts turn their cattle out conſtantly into the ſame fields, and that too in a much greater quantity than uſed to graze there in the time of the Hottentots; as they keep not only a number ſufficient for their own uſe, but likewiſe enough to ſupply the more plentiful tables of the numerous inhabitants of Cape Town, as well as for the victualling of the ſhips in their paſſage to and from the Eaſt-Indies with freſh, and even with ſalted proviſions. In conſequence of the fields be-

1775. September.

ing thus continually grazed off, and the great increaſe of the cattle feeding on them, the graſſes and herbs which theſe animals moſt covet are prevented continually more and more from thriving and taking root; while, on the contrary, the *rhinoceros*-buſh, which the cattle always paſs by and leave untouched, is ſuffered to take root free and unmoleſted, and encroach on the place of others: ſo that this ought to appear the leſs ſtrange to the coloniſts, as this puniſhment for their ſins (as they call the *rhinoceros*-buſh,) together with ſeveral other dry barren ſhrubs and buſhes, is found in greater abundance than any where elſe near their farms, the place where the cattle are chiefly uſed to feed. Notwithſtanding theſe inconveniencies, the coloniſts remain immoveable in their ſtone houſes; while, on the contrary, the Hottentots (and this was the caſe in former times) on the leaſt panic remove their huts and cattle to another place, ſo that the graſs is no where eaten off too cloſe. Together with this diminution of paſturage, there is another circumſtance which contributes not a little to the degeneracy of the breed; this is, that the calves, on account of the great quantity of butter made, (which never was the caſe with the Hottentots) are reared up with leſs milk than formerly. In the mean time, if they go on in this manner, the preſage of the country people may chance to prove true, viz. that many ſpots that are now inhabited and cultivated, muſt be relinquiſhed and ſuffered to lie waſte. But it may likewiſe happen, that time and reſt may at length reſtore to the ſoil the heart and ſtrength, which the coloniſts have deprived it of; and that the graſs and herbage may, in their

their turn, have an opportunity of extruding the ſhrubs and buſhes, after having received the protection of the ſhelter and ſhade of theſe latter; and after having, by undergoing a kind of putrefaction, made themſelves a ſoil more fertile and better adapted to their nature. It is alſo not improbable, that the game, finding more ſecurity from the ſportſmen here than formerly, may reſort hither in great numbers: and it is well known, that in feeding they make a more equal diviſion between the graſs and buſhes than the ordinary cattle do; nay, it may happen, that the gazell's dung and other accidental circumſtances, which people here have neglected to make trial of, may come to extirpate the *rhinoceros*-buſh in its turn. The animals which occur only in Africa are, in my opinion, as much deſigned for the plants peculiar to this climate, as the plants are for the animals. The *rein-deer*, for inſtance, an animal deſtined by nature for the climate of Lapland, and for the moſs with which it is covered, by botaniſts called *lichen rangiferus*, is in that place domeſticated with the greateſt advantage; where, however, cattle would thrive very ill. The *elk*, another of nature's kind preſents to our climate, was formerly conſidered as a fit ſubject for the chace only, (which, in fact, was the chief employment of moſt nations, and even of the moſt ſavage) till our more conſiderate countrymen and truly zealous patriots, the Barons ALSTROEMMER, by propoſing premiums and by other methods, endeavoured to make this ſtately, ſtrong, and ſwift-footed animal likewiſe domeſtic, and thereby more ſerviceable to the country it inhabits. Induced by theſe examples, the African coloniſts ought to take it into ſerious conſideration, 1775. September.

1775. September. conſideration, whether by extirpating the game, they are not in reality laying waſte their country, and rendering it a deſert.

It is ſaid, that a farmer once attempted to deſtroy and extirpate all the rhinoceros-buſhes on his lands by fire, but that they afterwards grew up again more vigorous than ever; ſo that, as well with reſpect to the effects of the induſtry of man as to the more immediate operations of nature, it is not at all unlikely, that future ages may ſee this part of Africa entirely changed and different from what it is at preſent.

Gaurits-rivier is likewiſe called *Goud's-rivier*, probably, from the reſemblance in ſound between theſe two words; or elſe from the latter word being more eaſy to pronounce, and not with any reference to *gold*, to which it might otherwiſe ſeem to allude. This river, which, farther to the northward, is likewiſe called *Olifant's-rivier*, is one of the moſt conſiderable in this part of Africa: and though it was at that time in a great meaſure dried up, there was yet a ſtrong current, and it was dangerous to ford over, as it was not only very broad and pretty deep at the fording-place, but made a particular bend there; ſo that we ſhould have been badly off, if we had not fortunately happened to have been told of it in good time.

The banks of the river were extremely high and quite perpendicular, excepting juſt at the place where the paſſage was. The water ſometimes ſwells ſo ſuddenly and unexpectedly as to come unawares upon travellers, even while they are paſſing over it, and either drown them or carry them out to ſea. A peaſant, who ſome time before

fore made a halt at night near the ford of this river, had, by an unexpected flooding, been washed away and lost, with his wife and children, and the waggon in which they were sleeping. 1775. September.

The reason of these sudden floods is partly the hasty melting of the snow on the various high mountains which lie to the northwards, and partly the falling of heavy rains in the extensive *Carrow*-field, lying to the north of this spot; in which plain *Oliphants* or *Gaurits-rivier*, by means of divers small branches, has its source, as is partly shewn in the map.

Going from *Gaurits-rivier*, and afterwards from *Honing-klip*, which is a narrow vale, we kept to the right, in order to get to *Mossel-bay*, and so over the *Brak* rivers to the Houtniquas forests; we having been particularly advised not to go as yet to *Lange-kloof*, as, on account of a great drought and deficiency of rain then subsisting in those parts, our cattle would run the risk of being famished.

The *Brak* rivers have got this appellation from the quality of their waters, which are brackish or saltish, in consequence of the sea coming up into them, and occasioning in the cattle which are not used to them a troublesome diarrhœa. Of this circumstance I was ignorant, and consequently my oxen were attacked with this complaint; by which they were so much debilitated, that I was obliged to leave my waggon on a hill, till a peasant in *Houtniquas* drove thither with a team of his oxen to bring it off.

Just below the farm that lies to the westward of little *Brak-rivier*, and is called *Geelbeks-valley*, there is a tract of about two-thirds of an acre of land, which is always bare of

1775. September. plants, and in part covered with a hoar froſt. This was miſtaken by the coloniſts for ſaltpetre, but was, in fact, nothing more than fine ſea-ſalt. When this kind of hoar froſt appeared in greater abundance than common, the neighbouring inhabitants looked on it as a certain ſign of an impending fall of weather.

I viſited *Moſſel-bay* on horſeback. This harbour, though it lies rather open to the eaſterly winds, and is not reſorted to by ſhips, except in caſes of extreme neceſſity, might, however, in many reſpects prove very uſeful, were it better known.

On a ſtone hereabouts is engraved an inſcription as follows: Captain SWENFINGER, of the Daniſh ſhip the *Kron-Prinſeſs*, 1752. The inhabitants informed us, that the ſhip here alluded to had been driven in there by a ſtorm and run aground; and that ſome of the ſailors having ſwam aſhore and got a couple of lines, by means of them a ſtout rope had been ſtretched from the ſhip's maſt to the ſhore; upon this, which thus had a ſloping direction given to it, a large metal ring was hung, to which every one of the crew ſeparately was tied faſt, and ſlid on ſhore one after the other, when the ring was immediately brought back again to the ſhip by means of a line. When the ſtorm was over, part of the lading was ſaved, and taken to the Cape in waggons. The country people who lived neareſt the ſpot aſſured me, that ſhips would frequently manœuvre at the mouth of the harbour, as though they were in ſearch of the port, but could not rightly tell where to look for it; one in particular, was ſaid to have fired ſeveral guns as ſignals of diſtreſs, before ſhe ventured in. The reaſon

reaſon of this was ſuppoſed to be, that the place is eaſily miſtaken, as from the charts people are induced to look for an iſland here; which, however, is, in fact, nothing more than a low inconſiderable rock, which at flood lies for the greater part under water, and muſt neceſſarily appear to the ſhips that are running into it as if it was joined to the land; and indeed, it was partly this circumſtance that was the occaſion of Captain SWENFINGER's misfortune: and it is ſaid, that on the whole coaſt between *Falſe-bay* and *Moſſel-bay* there is no anchorage to be found. In fact, it ſeems as if government wiſhed to keep navigators in ſome degree in the dark with reſpect to *Moſſel-bay*, as a ſtore-houſe with a flag-ſtaff, which the captain of a Daniſh veſſel had erected there, was deſtroyed immediately after his departure from the place; and at the ſame time, all buildings prohibited within ſight of the harbour. This conduct is certainly not founded on the ſoundeſt policy; for a more accurate knowledge of *Moſſel-bay*, may be the future means of ſaving ſome veſſel, which may by ſtreſs of weather be forced to run into it. Being convinced of this from divers conſiderations, and no one having given any deſcription (at leaſt in print) of this harbour, I think it my duty, till farther information is given on this ſubject, to communicate the reſult of my obſervations, however imperfect, upon it. There was not a boat to be found in the bay, therefore I cannot give the ſoundings. By means of the compaſs I had brought with me I marked out the ſhore here, having inveſtigated it, partly on foot and partly on horſeback, as far as is indicated by the dots in the map. The Danes who ran aground here aſſured the in- 1775. September.

1775. September. habitants, that there was a good ſandy bottom for anchorage; and that the ſmall bend or inlet to the ſouth-weſt, had depth of water ſufficient to contain a ſhip.

For the purpoſe of getting acquainted with the harbour, ſuppoſing the reader to have acquired a previous knowledge of the latitude, and to have compared it with the ſmall portion that I have pricked out on my map, it may likewiſe be of uſe to him to be informed, that the north, or north-weſt ſhore, is without any rocks or ſtones, being compoſed of verdant hills covered with ſhrubs and buſhes, excepting juſt at each of the ſpots, where *Heerte* and *Kleine Brak* rivers empty themſelves; the ſand thereabouts having been raiſed up to ſome height by the ſea-wind, ſo as to have encroached on the verdure of the proſpect. The ſouth-weſt ſhore, on the contrary, is very ſtony and mountainous; though juſt at the water-ſide it is low, one place excepted, which, at a very ſmall diſtance from the water, appears with a rock-head, as it is called, or a rocky hill, flat on the top, which at the ſea-ſide is perpendicular.

It is, probably, not difficult to land here with boats in fair weather; but at this time, the bay was greatly agitated by a wind from the ſea; and the height of the water, which continued even in the afternoon, prevented us from catching oyſters, which, we were informed, might otherwiſe have been met with at this place. Watering muſt be very a tedious and laborious buſineſs, as things are ſituated here at preſent; for there is only one very inconſiderable rill of freſh water here, which runs down into the above-mentioned inlet, where the anchoring-place is; but at the diſtance

diſtance of a few ſtones throw from the ſtrand, is the well-ſpring itſelf, of ſuch a width and depth, as to give one reaſon to ſuppoſe, that one might fill with eaſe a couple of hogſheads at a time with freſh, clear, and well-taſted water. By properly purifying this water, and making a conduit for it, there might poſſibly be ſtill an alteration made for the better. Indeed, I know many inſtances, where by digging a tolerably deep pit near a ſhore, particularly if it were ſandy, freſh water has been abſorbed into the pit and filled it. This likewiſe renders credible an account that I heard from ſome peaſants in *Houtniquas*, that being on a hunting party near the mouth of *Brak-rivier*, and finding themſelves extremely thirſty, it came into their heads to make an experiment, and ſtick a reed to the depth of a foot and a half into the ſand near the level of the ſea, when, contrary to their expectation, in a ſhort time they were enabled to ſuck up through their reed a quantity of freſh and well-taſted water. 1775. September.

CHAP. VII.

Journey through the Houtniquas.

1775. September. *HOUTNIQUAS Land*, which is a woody tract of country, is ſuppoſed to commence to the eaſtward of *Groote Brak-rivier*, and to extend to *Keurebooms-rivier*, which empties itſelf into *Algoa-bay*. To the northward this diſtrict is entirely ſeparated from *Lange Kloof*, by a long and very high range of mountains, extending from eaſt to weſt. Along the ſide of theſe mountains runs a wood, to the trees, herbs, and general properties of which, the deſcription I gave of *Groot Vaders' Boſch* is equally applicable.

On the weſtern ſide of *Keerom-rivier*, or the hither ſide of *Houtniquas*, between the wood juſt ſpoken of and the ſea-ſhore, there are extenſive plains of indifferent graſs. There are likewiſe in the vales near the ſhore, ſome woody tracts of land and ſtreams of freſh water; ſo that two farmers have lately made a new ſettlement here, who will find no difficulty in getting their livelihood, in the ſame manner as the other farmers do, who have ſet themſelves down in the upper and more extenſive ſide of the foreſt, by felling of timber, and at the ſame time they may ſow corn

corn and rear cattle ſufficient to anſwer the demands of their families. The tract of country lying between *Keerom* and *Keurebooms-riviers*, makes the internal part of Houtniquas, and is ſaid to be almoſt entirely covered with woods. This part I had no opportunity to viſit, and therefore was obliged to be contented with putting down on the map the farms and rivers as well as I could conceive them from an account, which, however, was not very accurate or diſtinct, given me by a farmer, who had travelled a good deal in that diſtrict. 1775. September.

Keerom-rivier (or Turnabout-river) in which the ſmaller branches *Zwart-rivier* and *Trakudiku* meet, has obtained its name from the circumſtance of the perſon who firſt travelled this way, having been obliged to turn back at this river, on account of the denſe and almoſt impenetrable foreſts that grew every where by the ſide of it.

Keurebooms-rivier is perhaps ſo called, after a tree of the ſame name (the *ſophora capenſis*, LINN.) On this kind of tree there is found a great quantity of gum, reſembling that of the cherry-tree, but not ſo adheſive. I have hardly ever ſeen a tree of this kind any where elſe, excepting a few at *Bay Falſo* and in *Conſtantia* diſtrict.

Algoa-bay is ſaid not to have been once viſited by the ſhips, ſince Houtniquas has been inhabited and cultivated. It was thought, however, that the harbour was very fit for uſe, and convenient both for wooding and watering, of both which articles there is a great abundance. It is pretty much expoſed to the ſea-winds; though, on the other hand, the winds do not blow with ſuch violence here as at the Cape. I could get no farther oral information with reſpect

1775. September.

respect to this harbour; but a description of the coast that I have met with, says, that the western creek lies in lat. 33 deg. 55 min. and that from the outermost point a reef extends about a mile out; and that in the place, where the bay bends in two leagues to the west, ships may lie at anchor in good ground, well sheltered from the north-east, north-west, and south winds. There is, however, in this same description an erroneous observation, viz. that no other than brackish or salt-water is to be got at *Mossel-bay*.

Algoa-bay, which I have briefly mentioned above, I have been obliged to be content with laying down in my map, merely in consequence of some hints given by M. ADOLPHUS BURTZ, captain of a Swedish East-Indiaman, on the authority of some old chart. The description of the coast before referred to, moreover mentions, that Algoa-bay is a deep inlet, where there is abundance of wood and fresh water; and also that in sailing into it, one finds from twenty-four to ten fathom of water, with a reef extending a league into the sea; which, however, if there be occasion for it, may be avoided, by running round to the north of it.

Inasmuch as the bays above-mentioned (setting aside another in *Krakekamma*) seem very well adapted for use, at least for that of small craft, the shipping and navigation between them and the Cape ought to be very considerable.

However extensive the colony is, yet it cannot be considered at present in any other light than that of a proportionably large but weakly consumptive body, in which the circulation of trade is very slow and sluggish; as between the more distant members and the heart, or the internal

provinces and the *Cape*, there is only once a year a circulation of commodities, by means of the ordinary waggons; but if this body, thus half ſtifled as it were, had air given to it, by opening all the harbours, trade, manufactures, and agriculture would doubtleſs have new life infuſed into them. A farmer, for inſtance, has a hundred hours * hard driving to get his timber from *Moſſel-bay* to the *Cape*, and a ſtill longer and more laborious journey from *Houtniquas*. The ſeventy or eighty rixdollars he can get for a load of it, drawn by ten oxen, (including the felling of it and bringing it in) hardly pay him for his time and trouble; but at the ſame time his commodity comes to the townsmen at the Cape dear enough at that price; as a ſpar about twenty feet in length and one in diameter, comes to five rixdollars, and ſo in proportion for boards and planks. From hence it may eaſily be imagined, that building is extremely expenſive at the Cape; and that conſequently many people muſt ſet themſelves down content without thoſe conveniencies of life, for which, however, the country has ſufficient materials. The farmer muſt, therefore, neceſſarily buy again, at ſo much a dearer rate, his own timber, wrought up into caſks, waggons, and other neceſſary articles of joinery work; as he is obliged to carry them all the way by land to and from the Cape, merely to have the iron work put on them, ſuppoſing that in other reſpects he is able, or has proper tools for making them at home. The company itſelf, therefore, is likewiſe forced to allot ſeveral public buildings at the Cape for ſtore-houſes,

1775. September.

* For an explanation of this word ſee page 132.

and

1775. September.

and to have the greater part of their timber brought from *Batavia*, and ſome of it directly from Europe; in which latter place, as is well known, it muſt be paid for in ſpecie; by which means the nation ſuffers a great loſs, inaſmuch as the colony actually has within itſelf at *Sitſicamma* a thick impervious foreſt, from whence the beſt kinds of trees, many of them indeed very rare in Europe, ought to be, and in fact might with eaſe, and to the great advantage of the company, be fetched for ſale. By a navigation eſtabliſhed between the above-mentioned ports, not only would the tranſportation of timber be facilitated, but likewiſe all other articles produced in the country. The farmers, who, for inſtance, might put their corn and butter on board of barges in *Krakekamma-bay*, would by that means avoid a journey of four hundred *uurs* over land (including both going and returning) which generally takes them up ſeveral weeks. Every peaſant for ſuch a journey as this has two or three Hottentots, one to lead the oxen, and either one or two to drive the ſpare team; beſides which, his wife often goes with him, either for the purpoſe of having her children baptized at the Cape, or elſe for fear of being attacked by the Hottentots in her huſband's abſence. Thus, taking it at the loweſt, and reckoning only three perſons and twenty oxen for thirty days, it ſtands a great many farmers in ninety days work of themſelves and men, and ſix hundred of their cattle, in order to make one turn with their butter to market, and ſo in proportion for ſuch as are leſs diſtant. Hence it is evident, that many thouſand days work are unneceſſarily loſt and thrown away every year in leading to the Cape, which, by means of the navigation

vigation I ſpeak of, might be much more profitably beſtowed on the orchards and the vineyards, the corn fields and the paſtures. Induſtry, trade, and wealth, would in that caſe flow of themſelves, as it were, into their now deſert harbours, and convert them into marts, and, perhaps, ſtaple towns. 1775. September.

Flax is ſaid not to thrive well in this climate; but hemp, which is cultivated both by the Hottentots and the coloniſts merely for the purpoſe of repleniſhing the pipes of the former with it inſtead of tobacco, I have ſeen ſucceed very well, and in a vigorous ſtate; conſequently, were there any induſtry in this part of the world, the people in the country, as well as thoſe in the town, might work it up into ſheeting, ſacking, ſail-cloth, cordage, and other articles, to their own evident advantage and that of the company; or, in one word, with a great ſaving to the whole nation.

Manufactories of every kind might likewiſe be eſtabliſhed at theſe harbours and other ſuitable places: for inſtance, for the purpoſe of working up the wool of the country, (which is now quite thrown away,) at leaſt into coarſe cloth and ſtockings; theſe being at preſent bought at a very dear rate by the company, for the uſe of its ſlaves and the garriſon.

The towns-people, indeed, and farmers of the colony, get the woollen goods they want at a rather cheaper rate from the ſhips belonging to foreigners; but likewiſe by that means, pay in a manner a heavier tax to the foreigner than to the company; which, however, might get a ſum equal and even ſuperior to this, if it bought up the wool

1775. September. of the country's produce on its own account, and, after manufacturing it, ſold the goods ſo manufactured at a reaſonable price. I did not find more than one farmer who knew how to turn his wool to any account. This was a German, who taught his wife and female ſlaves to ſpin it, and make tolerable good ſtockings of it. On the other hand, I have ſeen many of the farmers, that lived at a great diſtance from the town, go without ſtockings and out at the elbows, though at the ſame time they were in poſſeſſion of ſeveral hundred ſheep. This proceeded as much from the dearneſs of wool, as from their diſtance from the town; and it is for the ſame reaſon, that the yeomen in ſome places here and there in *Roggeveld*, let their children run about juſt like the Hottentots, with nothing but a ſheep-ſkin hanging over their ſhoulders, and without a rag of linen on their backs.

For want of artizans and mechanics, many of the more diſtant farmers are obliged to make and mend their own ſhoes and clothes, as well as they can, themſelves; and make ſhift with a few cracked veſſels of earthen-ware, which they have been ſo lucky as to bring all the way home from the Cape, without farther damage, for the uſe of their houſhold.

There is not a ſhadow of doubt, but that the colony is able to maintain all the artizans and manufacturers it has occaſion for. The tracts of country neareſt to the Cape have, on account of the greater vent they have for their commodities, not only been able to cultivate wine and corn ſufficient for their own uſe and that of the town, but likewiſe in ſuch quantities, as to ſend a great deal to Europe and

and the Iſle de France. In the ſame proportion might the culture of the lands be increaſed round about the harbours above-mentioned, or other marts properly ſituated for the purpoſe. Thouſands of plots of land, which, on account of the long way it is from them to the Cape, are now left in their original ſtate, would by this means produce as much corn and wine, as would be ſufficient to exchange with the wares of the artificers and trades-people in the town. Beſides this, the advantages ariſing from the grazing of cattle would rather increaſe than diminiſh, if the ſtraw and paſturage were managed better for the advantage of the cattle, than they are at preſent. 1775. September.

As, agreeable to the ſcheme propoſed above, many of the journies now made to the Cape might be avoided, a great many oxen might be diſpenſed with, which are now kept merely for this purpoſe; and in their ſtead milch cows might be kept to increaſe the quantity of milk, butter and cheeſe, in order to anſwer the conſumption of an increaſed number of people.

With regard to the threſhing of corn and manuring the land, operations which at preſent are either ill-performed, or elſe entirely neglected, there is much to be noticed, with a view to prevent that deterioration of the arable land and paſturage, which is obſerved to take place in ſuch ſpots as have been cultivated for any length of time. The planting of olive and mulberry-trees, together with the importation and proper management of ſilk-worms, would probably, likewiſe, be uſeful acquiſitions to the colonies, ſerving to augment its population, as it would indubitably be a peculiar advantage to the company to find the people,

1775. September. who bear the burden of all the taxes paid by the colonies, by means of theſe and other inſtitutions, more flouriſhing and wealthy, and at the ſame time exceedingly multiplied for the defence of the country. By theſe methods the company would in time be able, in ſome meaſure, to collect from the Cape that force, both military and naval, which is ſo highly neceſſary for the defence of its more opulent ſettlements in the Eaſt-Indies; and which at preſent, in a manner utterly diſgraceful to the Dutch Eaſt-India company and to human nature, is recruited by the mean low wiles and artifices of crimps and kidnappers in Holland, which I ſhall expatiate upon hereafter.

Divers private perſons, againſt whoſe intereſts it will ſeem at firſt to militate, that the navigation from the bays which I have juſt been recommending, ſhould take place, will, probably, find many ſpecious reaſons to urge againſt it; but theſe will be eaſily overthrown by ſuch as know the nature of affairs in this country, and are patriotically inclined towards the company. It is to be feared, indeed, that many who have had the direction and government of the colony, have either not underſtood, or elſe have not troubled their heads with any thing that did not reſpect their own emolument; or elſe have thought that prudence required, that the coloniſts ſhould be oppreſſed and kept in poverty, in order to prevent them from revolting. But it is neceſſary only to know the colony a little better than they do, in order to diſcover, in the moſt clear and evident manner, that their great foreſight and caution would, in this caſe, be carried too far. Moreover, the beſt and ſoundeſt principles of policy teach us, that

that it is not their wealth and ſtrength, but an invidious and oppreſſive government, that can induce the coloniſts to think of revolting, in hopes of a change for the better. Let the members compoſing a ſtate be wealthy, and they will make uſe of all their ſtrength and power to maintain the authority and conſequence of a government on which their own entirely depends. By conſequence, the ſtrength and power of coloniſts is dangerous only for tyrants and external enemies; while, on the other hand, their weakneſs peculiarly tends to the advantage of the latter. But enough has been ſaid upon this ſubject, and it is fit that I ſhould return to my account of *Houtniquas* land. 1775. September.

The animals to be found there are elephants, lions, tigers, tiger-cats, wolves or hyænas, black monkies, a kind of badger, buffaloes, hart-beeſts, boſch-boks, gnometies, grys-boks, and hares.

The *elephants* are now, by being ſhot at continually, in a great meaſure expelled from *Houtniquas*, and have taken refuge on the other ſide of *Keurebooms-rivier*, in the woody, and almoſt entirely unexplored country of *Sitſikamma*.

The *lions* are extirpated from Houtniquas, at leaſt, they now make no conſtant abode there; and thoſe that now and then go thither from Sitſikamma, or from the other ſide of *Lange Kloofs* mountains, are ſoon diſcovered and ſhot.

The *tigers*, or more properly *leopards*, (for they ſeem rather to belong to that ſpecies) are not ſo eaſily extirpated, as their lurking-places in the foreſts are hardly to be found. In theſe parts, indeed, one ſeldom hears of their having the

1775. September.

the courage to attack mankind; though one cannot reckon one's ſelf abſolutely ſafe from their depredations.

Neither *wolves* nor *black monkies* are very common here. I have already told the reader what I know concerning theſe animals.

The ſort of *badger* to which I allude, is called by the inhabitants *berg-varken*, or mountain-pig. Theſe animals are ſaid to be found likewiſe nearer the Cape, and have a long, extremely harſh, and ſomewhat blackiſh coat. I was told, that they are about a foot and a half high, and have their holes and hiding-places underneath ſtones, and particularly on the tops of mountains, from whence they never peep out but of nights. I had not the good fortune to ſee any of them. This animal muſt not be confounded with the *aard-varken*, or earth-pig, which, probably, is a ſpecies of *manis* (the *lezard ecailleux* of BUFFON,) and which is ſaid to be found in conſiderable numbers in the diſtrict of *Zwartland*.

There have been, in all likelihood here, formerly *hartbeeſts*, as *Hartbeeſt-drift*, a ſmall ſtream in this part of the country, has its name from thoſe animals.

The *boſch-bock* (or wood-goat) Plate VI. Vol. II. is a ſpecies of antilope or gazel, which has been hitherto unknown to all the cultivators of natural hiſtory, whether ancient or modern, till I deſcribed it in the Memoirs of the Swediſh Academy for the year 1780, quarter 3d, by the name of *antilope* ſylvatica. This animal has obtained the name it goes by, in conſequence of its being the only one among the gazels in Africa, which may be properly ſaid to live in the woods and groves; excepting, however, Mr. Pennant's

nant's *antilope royal*; unleſs, indeed, this little animal be the ſame with the *gnometie* of the coloniſts, or belong to the gazel genus. 1775. September.

Groot Vader-boſch and *Houtniquas-boſch*, were the only foreſts in which I ſaw and gave chace to the boſch-bok. In other places, whether nearer to or farther from the Cape, it is hardly to be found, if not ſomewhere in *Sitſikamma*. It would, perhaps, be not diſagreeable to zoologiſts, to find in this place a deſcription of this rare ſpecies of *gazel*; and though I had no opportunity to make a drawing of it, otherwiſe than from a couple of theſe creatures ſkins, and from the obſervations I could make on it while it was running by me; yet I am apt to believe, that it may be pretty well depended on, and that, at leaſt, it will be ſufficient to aſſiſt the zoologiſts in their ſyſtematic reſearches.

With reſpect to its ſize, the boſch-bok is ſomewhat above two feet and a half high. From ſeeing it run, and from what I can conclude from the ſkins, it appears to me, that the body of this animal, when compared with the whole height of it, or with the length of its legs, is ſomewhat more bulky than that of the other kinds of gazel.

The meaſure of the dreſſed ſkin, from which both the deſcription and drawing are chiefly taken, was as follows: The horns ten inches and a half long; their diſtance from each other at the baſe one inch; the diſtance between the tips as well as the middlemoſt parts of them three inches and a half; the ears were half the length of the horns, or five inches; the breadth of the forehead from eye to eye three inches; from the eyes to the horns one inch;

from

1775. September. from the horns to the noſe ſix inches and a half; from the horns to the rump four feet; from the top of the back to the hoofs thirty-three inches; from the bending of the knees to the hoofs one foot; the hoofs themſelves about an inch. The dreſſed ſkin of a *fœtus*, of which I took the meaſure, was about two feet in length. A pair of boſch-bok's horns, which I brought home with me, are ten inches long, and the baſe of each five inches wide. But on the ſkull of an animal of this ſpecies, brought home by Profeſſor THUNBERG, the horns were thirteen inches long. From the dimenſions of theſe parts, a concluſion may be drawn with reſpect to thoſe of the remainder, as well as with reſpect to the ſize of the animal in general.

This ſpecies of gazel is monogamous, or keeps in pairs. The female is, according to all accounts, diſtinguiſhed from the other ſex in having no horns, in the loins being of a lighter colour, and in not having in theſe parts the long hairs, and eſpecially the white ones, which we are about to mention in the deſcription of the male.

The horns of this are black, in ſome meaſure triangular, and at the ſame time wreathed, ſo that both the ſides and angles have ſomewhat of a ſpiral turn. At bottom they are rather rough, in conſequence of a ſet of almoſt innumerable wavy rings; which, however, are not elevated much above the ſurface. At top they are conical and ſharp-pointed, and in that part as ſmooth as though they had been poliſhed. In a pair I brought with me, the extreme points or tips are light-coloured and tranſparent. As to the poſition of the horns, they are almoſt in the

ſame

ſame line or horizontal plane with the forehead, inclining a little forwards, and at the ſame time, by means of the twiſt they make, receding from each other towards the middle, and making with this part a little bend backwards, ſo that the tips point ſomewhat forwards. The three angles or ridges, that ſeparate the three ſides juſt mentioned, form a ſpiral in the following manner: 1775. September.

The foremoſt is very much rounded and cylindrical, beginning inwards, and proceeding more and more forwards, till, coming ſideways and a little outwards, it diſappears in, and is confounded with the ſmooth conical tip. The ſecond is a little raiſed, and moſtly rounded off in the external part; but internally forms, as it were, a furrow, in conjunction with the foremoſt. This latter angle or ridge, moreover, goes off at firſt ſtrait forwards from the forehead; and afterwards running ſideways, outwards and backwards, at length joins the above-mentioned conical tip directly at the back part. The third angle has a ſharper edge, which, beginning externally and at the back part, towards the middle of the horn, runs backwards and inwards, and afterwards terminates inwards and ſomewhat forwards, in the ſmooth tip like the others.

The teeth of this animal are like thoſe of other gazels. It has no fore teeth or *inciſores* except in the lower jaw, where it has eight. Theſe are broader than the other teeth, being ſmall at the roots, and broad and ſquared off at the top. Of the middle ones, which look towards each other, the interior ſides are perpendicular; but the exterior ones oblique, and all the reſt have a proportional inclination, at the ſame time decreaſing in ſize; ſo that the outermoſt, both to the right and the left, are the ſmalleſt.

1775. September.

There is no *porus cariferus* in this, as there is in other gazels. The hairs on the head are very ſhort and fine; afterwards they become more rough and rugged, reſembling goats hair more than that of gazels or harts. Forwards on the neck, breaſt, ſides, and belly, they are an inch and a half or two inches long. On the ridge of the neck, and ſo on all along that of the back, they are three or four inches in length, ſo as to form a kind of mane there, terminating in a tail about a finger's breadth long. On the hind part of the thighs and buttocks likewiſe, the hairs are eight inches long; the legs and feet are ſlender, and covered with ſhort hairs; the fetlock-joints are ſmall; the noſe and under-lip are decorated with black whiſkers about an inch long.

The predominant colour in this animal is dark-brown, which occupies the principal part of the ſides, the back, the upper part of the tail, the upper part of the cheſt and fore ribs, and the fore part of the belly. A ſtill darker brown, bordering upon black, is diſcoverable on the outſide of the ſhoulders, and ſome part of the fore ribs. The fore part of the noſe, from the eyes to the muzzle, is of a ſoot-colour. The ears are likewiſe as black as ſoot on the outſide, but on the inſide grey; and both outwards and inwards, covered with hairs ſtill ſhorter than thoſe on the head; excepting half the fore part of the lower edge, where the hairs are white and half an inch long.

The edges of the upper lip are white, as well as the whole of the lower lip and mandible, behind which the white colour terminates in a point towards the top of the wind-pipe. On each cheek-bone there are two large round

round white ſpots, one an inch beneath and behind the eye, the other an inch below and ſomewhat forwarder than the former. A ſtill larger round white ſpot, two inches broad, is diſcoverable on the fore part of the neck, ſomewhat below the top of the wind-pipe. Nine inches below this, juſt above the fore ribs, there is another white ſpot, meaſuring ſix inches acroſs, and an inch and a half in height. This, in the ſkin of the fœtus I ſpoke of, was ſomewhat hollowed out, and thus reſembled a new moon; but in this ſkin, the upper round ſpot, juſt deſcribed as being on the fore part of the neck, was not to be ſeen. The fur of this creature is, moreover, white between its fore legs, and ſomewhat on the ſides of the ſhoulders. The fore legs, from the knees to the paſterns, are likewiſe white on the inſide; and where it borders upon the brown part, inclines to a dirty yellow. On the outſide of the fore legs, near the knees, there is a long oval white ſpot; and on the ſame ſide, juſt above the paſtern-joint, there is a little cinnamon-coloured ſpot. 1775. September.

The hind legs, on the inſide, from the paſterns to a little way above the bending of the knees, are marked with a white ſtreak narrower than thoſe on the fore legs. The paſterns of the hind legs are ſpotted with white on the fore parts, exactly like thoſe of the fore legs. The back part of the belly or the groin is white. Divers ſmall white ſpots, from nine to twelve in all, are ſeen on each of the haunches and on the ſides near them. A narrow line of long white hairs extends from the neck all along the back and tail, in the midſt of the long brown hairs which I have deſcribed above. From the chine of the back to the

1775. September.

ſides run five white parallel ſtreaks, which, though they are not diſcoverable but by a cloſe inſpection, it was certainly proper to mention, in caſe ſome individual ſhould be met with, on which theſe marks might be more diſtinct, and in conſequence of which ſome people might be induced to take it for a diſtinct ſpecies.

It is generally ſaid, that goats are bad gardeners; and this in a certain degree is true of this *wood-goat*, or, as it is called, *boſch-bok*. At *Groot Vaders-boſch*, the people complained much of the miſchief done by this creature in the vineyards and kitchen-gardens there. It likewiſe ſhewed a great deal of craft and artifice in avoiding the ſnares and traps ſet for it, as well as the ambuſcades of the ſportſmen. I myſelf ſat up a whole night in a vineyard on the watch for this animal, without getting the leaſt glimpſe of it; though it had, according to all appearance, paid us a viſit incog. and made off undiſcovered.

As the *boſch-bok* runs but ſlowly, it ſometimes happens, that he is caught with dogs. When he ſees there is no other reſource, he puts himſelf in a poſture of defence; and when he is going to butt, kneels down. The coloniſts are not very fond of hunting him in this manner, as the beaſt, on this occaſion, generally ſells his life at a very dear rate, by goring and killing ſome of their beſt and moſt ſpirited hounds.

This creature's horns, which are its chief defence, ſometimes alſo prove its bane, by being entangled in the buſhes and ſmall branches of trees, which thus ſtop the beaſt in its flight. In ſome meaſure to avoid this, it carries its noſe horizontally and ſtrait forward while it runs; ſo that its

its horns lie, as it were, directly on its neck: notwithſtanding which, their horns are generally worn away a little on the fore part, and thus acquire ſome degree of poliſh. In fine, this ſpecies of goat is ſwifter in woodlands than the dogs, which likewiſe ſooner loſe ſcent of him there. 1775. September.

The female, which is without horns, and on that account runs about in the foreſts more free and unimpeded, does not ſuffer herſelf ſo eaſily to be hunted out of the woods, having there, as well as on the plains, a more certain defence againſt the dogs in her legs, than the male has in his horns, eſpecially as ſhe is not ſo bulky and heavy as the male. Her breaſt is ſaid to be very plump and fleſhy, but the fleſh in general is not very tender; in that point reſembling that of the *bunte-bok*, or *guib* of BUFFON, Tom. XII. tab. 40.

By the wreathing of their horns, the form of their bodies and white ſpots, it ſhould ſeem moreover, that there was ſome diſtant affinity between theſe two ſorts of gazels; but by no means great enough, for them to be merely varieties of the ſame ſpecies. Beſides the difference in their colour and ſpots, which is too remarkable for them to be conſidered as one and the ſame animal, (not to mention the length of the *boſch-bok's* horns in proportion to its body,) I have never ſeen the *bunte-boks* live otherwiſe than in large herds on the plains, and theſe were at leaſt half as high again as the *boſch-bok*, or of the ſame ſize with the *hartbeeſt*.

The cry of this animal, as I have ſeveral times, eſpecially in the evenings, heard it in *Houtniquas*, ſomewhat reſembled the interrupted, ſhort, low, and rather hoarſe growling

1775. September.

growling of a dog. Yet, as I was informed by ſeveral people that the cries of the Cape *tigers*, or rather *leopards*, pretty much reſembled this, I am uncertain whether the noiſe I heard always proceeded from the *boſch-bok*. Without doubt, it appears ſomething extraordinary, that the cries of the *tiger* and a *gazel* ſhould be like each other; but, perhaps, the tiger may have the gift of being able to imitate boſch-boks, in order to lead them aſtray; juſt as the *hyæna* has the power to imitate, for a ſimilar purpoſe, all kinds of animals. Nay, there is likewiſe ſome reſemblance between the cries of a *lion* and that of an *oſtrich*; though between theſe animals there is much leſs affinity: and, indeed, there is no foundation for any conjectures concerning the cauſe of this ſimilitude.

The *gnometie*, called alſo the *erwetie*, is a little animal of the hart or gazel kind, of the ſize of a hare, and is, perhaps, the *cervus Guineenſis* of LINNÆUS, the *antilope royal* of PENNANT, and the *chevrotain de Guinée* of BUFFON. I have frequently perceived the traces and other marks of this diminutive creature, but had not the good fortune actually to ſee more than one of them; and that only in a haſty manner, as it was bounding about in a grove at *Sitſicamma*.

Of *hares* there are at leaſt two different ſorts in *Houtniquas*, and in the other parts of Africa. The one is almoſt the ſame with our common hare; but of the other I find it difficult to pronounce, whether it be abſolutely the ſame with the *lepus Capenſis*, *Syſt. Nat. cauda longitudine capitis*, *pedibus rubris*, or not. The feet excepted, the characteriſtic marks are the ſame; for the feet and body of this

were of the ſame colour as our common hares are in ſummer *, and the tail was almoſt of an equal length with the hare, as mentioned in the *Syſtema Naturæ*. I found it moreover broad at the baſe, and diminiſhing by degrees, ſo as to terminate in a point. Underneath and on the ſides, the tail was as white as chalk, but above there was extended along it a ſtripe as black as a coal. This deſcription I drew up from a young leveret of this ſpecies, which was brought to the Cape alive, and was the only one that I have ever ſeen. 1775. September.

The *buffalos* (vide Plate II. Vol. II.) were of a ſort entirely different from all hitherto known by this name, which is ſufficiently manifeſt from the deſcription I have already inſerted in the Memoirs of the Swediſh Academy for the year 1779. It is true, I had no opportunity in *Houtniquas*, either to ſee or ſhoot any of them; but I frequently met with the freſh traces of them. Such dangerous neighbours made it rather unſafe to botanize here; for though the buffalos do not abſolutely go in ſearch of mankind or the brute creation on purpoſe to do them miſchief, except they are previouſly irritated, nevertheleſs, their perverſe diſpoſition and great ſtrength of body render them extremely dangerous, when one meets them in the narrow paths, called buffalo-roads, where the wood on each ſide is frequently ſo thick ſet, as not to allow one to make way either to right or left. In a journey that Dr. THUNBERG, ſome years before, took into *Houtniquas*, one of his company had very imprudently tied two of his horſes together, one behind the other, and drove them before

* In the colder climates of Europe, the common hare is white in winter.

him

1775. September. him on a narrow path. The owner of them had juſt time (and that was all) to ſave himſelf, while a buffalo meeting them gored the horſes to death, and trampled them into the duſt. But it will be more appoſite to our purpoſe, to give the hiſtory and deſcription of this beaſt farther on in the order of the time, when I became better acquainted with it. I likewiſe once ſaw a *tiger-wood-cat* and a *grys-bok*, and ſhall, perhaps, find a better opportunity to make farther mention of theſe alſo.

Of the feathered tribe I found in *Houtniquas* a new ſpecies of *tantalus*, called by the coloniſts *hagedaſh*, and alſo *hadelde*. This latter name has, in ſome meaſure, the ſame ſound as the bird's note; the bird itſelf, which was ſaid to be confined to this province, I have found likewiſe in great numbers about *Zwart-kops-rivier*. This ſame bird is called by the Hottentots *'ta 'kai 'kene*, a name which, if rightly pronounced with three ſmacks of the tongue againſt the roof of the mouth, a ſtranger will find more difficulty in uttering than the bird's own language. It lives chiefly on bulbs and roots, which with its crooked bill, it is ſaid to dig up out of the plains with great eaſe and readineſs. There it is ſhy and difficult to come at. In the evenings I always ſaw them upon ſome tree in the woods at rooſt, and in this ſituation, one morning at ſun-riſe, I had the good fortune to ſhoot one of them.

The bill of this bird was five inches long, black at the tip and lower nib, at the upper nib red. The neck was of an aſh-colour: the back the ſame, and at the ſame time had a caſt of green with a little yellow. The wings were dark beneath, and above of a blue colour inclining to black; the leſſer

leſſer coverts of a violet-colour. The tail, which was wedge-ſhaped, was about twice the length of the bill, and the body was ſomewhat larger than that of a hen. The thighs were of an aſh-colour. The feet and legs, as well as the membrane between the claws, was blackiſh; in other reſpects, this bird had all the characteriſtic marks which belong to the *tantalus*. The coloniſts aſſured me, that it was a ſign of rain, when theſe birds aſſembled in great flocks, and flew againſt the wind. 1775. September.

The ſtate of the weather in *Houtniquas* was ſaid to be as follows. In March and April it rains here moſt; and, on the contrary, in the months of May, June, and July, (which about the Cape and elſewhere are the winter months, and are attended with copious rains) it is here quite dry, though frequently rather cool and bleak. The north-weſt wind at this time prevails here, as well as at the Cape; ſometimes the wind veers about to the north, and brings with it the warmth of ſummer; a change which frequently occaſions the milch-cows in Houtniquas to grow ſtiff in the joints. I was aſſured, that it never rained when this north wind prevailed, probably on account of the chain of mountains, which extends from eaſt to weſt, proving a barrier to keep the clouds on the other ſide; or elſe by virtue of their attraction, detaining theſe condenſed vapours on their ſummits. I went through the wood directly acroſs it, with the intention of aſcending the mountain, whence I might have a view of *Lange Kloof*; but found the foot of the mountain every where ſo thick over-run with high and ſtiff perennial graſſes and buſhes, as to be abſolutely impenetrable.

1775. September.

Houtniquas and *Lange Kloof*, however, communicate with each other in one place, by means of a very bad road over a mountain lower than the reſt, near Trakudiku. I did not go quite on to this place, but ſaw from *Zwarte-rivier* the ſmoke of a chimney near *Trakudiku*, and from the information I thus acquired, gave this river in ſome meaſure its true ſituation in my map.

The badneſs of the road, and the want of a proper guide, together with the enfeebled ſtate of my oxen, more particularly prevented me from going from this place to viſit *Algoa-bay*, which, however, I wiſhed much to do. Beſides, we could not venture to quit our waggons and make the trip to that bay alone on horſeback; as almoſt the whole province was involved in riot and drunkenneſs, by means of a hogſhead of brandy that had been carried thither; and my Hottentots, likewiſe, by the ſame means, had been thrown into a ſtate of licentiouſneſs and confuſion. There being no ſtills in thoſe parts, a peaſant there had wrote to the Cape for a quantity of the above-mentioned liquor, in order to turn a penny by retailing it out; but had in the mean while unfortunately drunk it himſelf by the wholeſale, ſo as to be night and day in the higheſt degree intoxicated with it: and, indeed, in his fury, would have ſhot my companion dead on the ſpot, had I not been luckily near at hand to prevent him. In another place, where our landlord, in other reſpects a worthy man, and of a very gentle diſpoſition, had made a purchaſe of ſome of this ſame brandy, he turned his wife, with a child in arms, and ſeveral other children ſomewhat older, out of doors in the middle of the night. The laws of hoſpitality, and perhaps an apprehenſion

sion of meeting with some resistance, had, however, so much weight with him, that my companion and I were left in peace and quietness. In another place hereabouts, a peasant had been basking in the sun and drinking, in company with a parcel of Hottentots, who, when he had got his fill, was not only well flogged by this Pagan crew, but was upbraided by them for having been used to sleep with his housekeeper, a Hottentot's widow, who was supposed besides to be in another way nearly related to him. I myself saw this man with a terrible wound on his head, of which, however, he was ashamed to tell the cause. I likewise had the pleasure of seeing his mistress, dizened out with brass and leathern rings on her arms and legs, and with beads about her waist and neck. She was clad in the usual manner with a sheep-skin *pelisse*, and a well-greased raw leathern apron, was well besmeared with soot besides grease, and could boast of as broad and flat a nose as any Hottentot lady whatever. With all these perfections, however, she seemed to me to be rather a cure for love, than an incentive to that passion: notwithstanding this, it is not uncommon for the white people here (particularly men who are more licentious in their manners than the other sex) to be criminal in this point. That the Hottentot women are complying in this particular, does not only contradict their general character of indifference in matters of love, but also that zeal, which I have attributed to them, in the performance of their duties towards their own nation.

1775. September.

Their diet, which, when they are in the service of the Christians, is more plentiful and of a more strengthening

1775. September.

quality, and, perhaps, the incitement of the example of theſe latter, may have its effect in making ſome alteration in the nature of theſe females. Add to this, that out of the ſociety of their nation, they do not feel themſelves bound to obſerve that rigid virtue and ſimplicity of manners, which they otherwiſe would, any more than the religion of the Chriſtians; neither can it indeed be required, that ſuch a one ſhould always be proof againſt flattery, promiſes, preſents, and, perhaps, the threats, which a maſter, of whom ſhe ſtands in awe, may think fit to employ, in order to ſatisfy his unruly deſires. The pledges of love, proceeding from ſuch a union, have hair almoſt, if not quite, as woolly and frizzled as the genuine Hottentots; but their complexion and features, partake more or leſs of both the father and mother. They are likewiſe, as it appears to me, more bulky and luſty than the Hottentots are in general; they are better reſpected too, and at the ſame time more confided in, and more to be depended upon, but at the ſame time prouder and more conceited than the others. Neither theſe, nor any other illegitimate children, are ever baptized, or, indeed, enquired after by the Chriſtian miniſters at the Cape, except in caſe that any one ſhould preſent himſelf as the father, and make a point of the child's being baptized, and thus give the infant the right of inheritance.

I ſaw two brothers in the vicinity of *Hottentots Holland's Bath*, the iſſue of a Chriſtian man and of a baſtard negreſs of the ſecond or third generation. One of the ſons, at this time about thirty years of age, ſeemed not to be ſlighted in the

the company of the Chriſtian farmers, though, at that time, he had not been baptized. The other, who was the elder brother, in order to get married and ſettled in life, as he then was, had been obliged to uſe all his influence, and probably even bribes, to get admitted into the pale of the church by baptiſm. For my part, I cannot comprehend the reaſon why the divines of the reformed church at the Cape are ſo ſparing of a ſacrament, which others, particularly the Papiſts, have endeavoured to force, as it were, upon the heathens with fire and ſword, and all manner of cruelties. The cloth does not, as far as I know, receive any benefit from the chriſtening of children at the Cape, at leaſt no particular benefit from the baptizing of illegitimate children; ſuch conduct, therefore, cannot fairly be aſcribed to any retroſpect to ſelf-intereſt, nor indeed to abſolute remiſſneſs and neglect; a diſpoſition which would but ill ſuit with that ſpirit of charity and univerſal benevolence, ſo peculiarly enforced by the doctrines of Chriſtianity. Farther, if the clergy at the Cape think by this means to diminiſh the number of unlawful connections with the heathen women, they will find that this ſtroke of policy will not anſwer their purpoſe: indeed, the letting ſuch numbers of infants born of Chriſtian parents ſuffer in their ſpiritual intereſts, is a ſtrangely cruel method of preventing ſin. It is true, a great many of the whites have ſo much pride, as to hinder, as far as lies in their power, the blacks or their offſpring from mixing with their blood: but it appears to me, that Chriſtian humility ought to operate ſo far with the clergy, as to prevent them from being aſhamed

1775. September.

1775. September. aſhamed to ſee their black fellow-creature walking cheek by jowl with them on the road to heaven.

This puts me in mind of an event, which I had before ſeen mentioned ſomewhere (and, if I remember right, in the *Hiſtoire Philoſophique Politique*) as having happened not a long while ago in *Batavia*. I enquired, therefore, concerning the truth of it, of thoſe that had lived at that place, and found ſeveral agreeing in the following account.

" There was a citizen in *Batavia*, who had often importuned the miniſters of his church to baptize his illegitimate child, but had always found them inflexible. " Well and good! ſays the man to them at laſt, it ſeems as if you alone wiſhed to ſhut the door of heaven, the keys of which you imagine you have in your poſſeſſion: but the Mahometan prieſts of the Malays, are not ſo churliſh and niggardly of ſalvation as you are; they having already promiſed me to incorporate my ſon this very day into their church, and make him a true Muſſulman: for ſome kind of religion I am determined my child ſhall be of, as I hold that, in a well-regulated ſociety, no man ought to be without a religion." The Chriſtian prieſts, however, no ſooner ſaw that preparations were made for circumciſion, than they haſtened, by adminiſtering the ſacrament of baptiſm, to deprive the Mahometan church of a ſoul, which they had juſt before rejected as illegitimate. And ſince that time, they are ſaid to be leſs backward in opening the doors of heaven to baſtards."

Here follows another inſtance of the depravity of taſte in the white people in this colony, with regard to love matters. I paid

paid a visit to a European, who had settled in Houtniquas. He was a good lively handsome fellow, about the middle age, and, I believe, of good extraction. He had served under several different potentates in Europe, and had shewed them all a fair pair of heels. He gave me the history of a great many singular adventures of his, but the most singular of them all, in my opinion, I was eye-witness to myself. This was, that he had married two years before an ugly sooty Mulatto, the daughter of a Negress. She had been the mistress of another farmer who was dead, and by whom she had a couple of bastards. These I saw at that time likewise in the house, grown up and unbaptized. But what seemed to me the most singular circumstance in the whole affair was, that this must have been absolutely a love-match; for though he had got a few cattle with his dingy spouse, yet the house, which he likewise had with her, was certainly not a palace. It was, in fact, a miserable cottage, though pleasantly enough situated in the skirts of a forest. The walls were made of reeds tied together, and supported by a few upright chumps of wood, interspersed with some rough boards, such as are generally used for fences. This structure was plaistered over with a thin and ragged covering of clay. There were but two rooms in it, and poverty seemed to have taken full possession of them both. In the inner room, the man's wife lay ill of a putrid fever. The outer apartment, which was the common bed-chamber for all the rest of the family that were in health, I can best describe. It was somewhat more than two yards in breadth,

1775. September.

1775. September. and about ſix long, with a peep-hole at one end of it, and a ſmall broken window at the other; not to ſpeak of ſeveral other apertures, which occaſioned a draught of air that delivered my friend and me from all apprehenſions of danger from the contagion of the putrid fever, but at the ſame time prevented us from keeping a candle alight for any length of time. The rain, which had wetted us to the ſkin when out of doors, now followed us into the houſe, dropping from the eaves; a ſign that the roof could not boaſt of any great ſuperiority over the walls. Our bed was on the damp loam-floor; a piece of ſail-cloth, the relicks of an old waggon-tilt, ſerved us and our landlord himſelf both for bed and bed-clothes; as for pillows, there were none but what we brought with us, which conſiſted merely of our dripping-wet ſaddles. We ſhall now drop the ſubject of the amorous intercourſe of the white people with the blacks, in order to give, in a few words, a general idea of the houſes in *Houtniquas*, that poſterity may from hence be able to judge of the future increaſe of the colony.

There was only one wooden houſe on the borders of this foreſt, and this was long and ſpacious, with but one room in it, and built with logs cleft down the middle. Another was like that juſt deſcribed, compoſed of ſtraw and clay, but not quite ſo tranſparent; this belonged to a young beginner. A third that we ſaw was likewiſe of clay, but well-built, roomy, and neatly furniſhed; being the property of a clever, induſtrious, well-behaved man, DIRK YVES by name, who had likewiſe built himſelf a mill,

mill, and ſeveral other conveniencies. The reſt were all of clay or mud, and were partitioned out into two rooms, in the ſame manner as I have in general deſcribed the coloniſts houſes at the beginning of this journal. 1775. September.

It was ſaid to be at that time, not above twenty years ſince *Houtniquas* was firſt known, and twelve years ſince it began to be inhabited by the coloniſts, who did not repair thither in any conſiderable numbers till of late years.

I mentioned, that the confuſion and diſturbance occaſioned by the introduction of the hogſhead of brandy, had reached even to my Hottentots; and that on this account I was obliged, much againſt my will in other reſpects, to make haſte with them from theſe parts. My companion had been imprudent enough, at their earneſt requeſt, to indulge them with a ſup or two of this precious liquor; the conſequence of which was, that they became furious, and broke out into the moſt abuſive language, becauſe they could not have any more of it. At length, we were forced to try what blows would operate upon them; which had this effect, that the next night, by way of revenge, they took to their heels and ran away. We, on our parts, rode to one of the two *Hottentot craals* that were at the hither end of *Houtniquas*, in order to ſearch for them. In the firſt they were not to be found, neither did the people chuſe to give us any explicit information concerning them; but when we came to the other, and began to climb over the fence, or the place where they kept their cattle, they let all their dogs out at once upon us. We directly put ourſelves in a poſture of defence, as if we were going

1775. September. to ſhoot both the dogs and their maſters. This occaſioned the Hottentots to call their dogs off, which obeyed immediately. We then went into their houſes without delay or moleſtation, ſome of which were built of ſtraw in a ſquare form, with ſhelving roofs, like the cottages of the ſlaves. In one of theſe cottages, on a little bench, we found our Hottentots faſt aſleep. We contented ourſelves with gently reproaching them on the ſcore of their miſconduct; but at the ſame time, with an air of authority, commanded them to return to their duty. They, on their ſide, without anſwering us or offering to gainſay us in the leaſt, followed us as quietly as if they had been our priſoners. They took leave of their countrymen and countrywomen by ſhaking hands with each other, in the Dutch faſhion, though without bowing; at the ſame time with great cordiality, and a deal of talk on both ſides. The women ſeemed as if they wanted to keep them, and I do not doubt but that the fellows would have been eaſily prevailed on, if our guns had been out of the way. Indeed, with reſpect to my Hottentots, I was as much afraid of the temptations of the women as of the intoxicating quality of the brandy; and therefore made ſo much the more haſte to get away from this place, which otherwiſe might for many years have afforded employment to the attentive reſearches and obſervations of a botaniſt.

Our departure took place in the beginning of October; but before I go on any farther with my journal, I will ſet down the ſtate of the weather for the month of September juſt elapſed.

The

1775. September.

The rainy days were the 8th, 9th, 16th, 20th, 21ſt, 24th, 25th, 29th; and the laſt of theſe days was remarkable for ſouth-eaſt winds and rain. The thermometer was for the moſt part early in the morning between 49 and 50, in the middle of the day between 76 and 80, and in the evening at ſun-ſet between 50 and 60.

CHAP. VIII.

Journey through Lange Dal.

1775. October. ON the 9th day of October we departed from Houtniquas, returning over the great and little *Brak* rivers to *Geelbek-rivier*, from whence to *Hagel-craal* and *Artaquas-kloof*, whither we went the next day: there were two roads. The one, which was better cleared and more beaten, though farther to the weſt of the laſt-mentioned river, we ſent our waggon by; and took the other road, though it was hilly, ourſelves, being adviſed ſo to do, as it was a nearer way on horſeback. By a trifling neglect, one often loſes a great deal; and we, by loitering a little on the road, were diſappointed of our night's lodging, being overtaken by the darkneſs and rain; ſo that, although we were near the farm whither we were going, and heard the barking of their dogs, and the crowing of their cocks, we were not able to hit upon the ſpot. After many fruitleſs attempts, and getting into the roads that led to the paſtures, and other by-ways that took us into thickets, and directly againſt the ſteep parts of mountains, we at laſt thought we had hit upon the right road, when we found in our way a river deeper than any we had hitherto, in our

our bewildered ſituation, ventured to croſs. It is true, we were not afraid of being ſouſed a little by going through the water, as the rain had made us almoſt as wet as we well could be; but neither of us choſe to be the firſt to venture over, for fear of there being ſome hole or oozy part in our way. I therefore drove before us over the river, on the *forlorn hope*, as it were, an old horſe that I led in hand along with me. No ſooner had he got over than he ſet off full gallop, and freed himſelf in an inſtant from the confinement in which we had kept him the whole day; while we, wet, cold, and hungry (having eaten nothing all day long but a ſlight breakfaſt) were obliged, after ſeveral more unſucceſsful attempts, to paſs the night in the open air, expoſed to the wind and rain. That we might not ſo eaſily be attacked unawares by tigers, we got away from the river and vale, which was full of buſhes, on to the mountain, and there took the ſaddles off our horſes near a buſh that ſtood quite ſeparate and alone. Hard-by was a precipice, which we fortunately perceived time enough to be able to be upon our guard againſt it. Having tied our horſes halters round their fore legs, a method very common in Africa, we then let them feed on the other ſide, with a view, that if any lion ſhould come upon us, he might firſt find employment with them; and at the ſame time, that if a wolf ſhould make its appearance, the horſes ſhould not run off. The reaſon of this precaution will appear by referring to page 160. 1775. October.

In the night, when we felt ourſelves almoſt ſtiff with cold, we wandered up and down, and frequently fell down on the top of the mountain, which was greaſy and ſlippery,

1775. October. pery, in conſequence of the rain. With regard to our ſituation in other reſpects, it was difficult to ſay, whether it gave us more comfort or vexation to hear, as we frequently did, the farmer's cocks crow. As ſoon as ever the day began to dawn, at about five o'clock, we ſaddled our horſes without delay, and eaſily found our way to the farm called *Hagel-craal*, which was only at the diſtance of a few gun-ſhots from us. DIRK MARCUS, the maſter of it, a hearty old fellow, as ſoon as we accoſted him, began to praiſe us highly for induſtrious young men who were up before him; but afterwards, when he was made acquainted with the difficulties we had undergone, he heartily pitied us, though he could not help at the ſame time ſeriouſly chiding us for not being accuſtomed to ſmoke; as in that caſe we might, at a juncture when it was moſt wanted, have had about us the means of making a fire, as well as of appeaſing our hunger, and paſſing away the tedious hours with a pipe. After this, he gave us an account of a great many adventures he had met with in his excurſions into the interior part of the country, where he had acquired a tolerable competency by ſhooting elephants. The information and advice he gave us were both uſeful and agreeable.

This worthy man ſent his people after the led horſe, which I mentioned as having run away from me; and when we took our departure, which was on the 13th, at ten o'clock in the morning, he lent us ſeveral ſtout oxen to help to draw our waggon over the very hilly dale called *Artaquas-kloof*. At ſix we arrived at *Paarde-craal*, a ſmall river ſo called, where we reſted till the next morning,

morning, or the 14th. By noon we reached *Zaffraan-craal*, at which place the long and tireſome vale of *Artaquas* ends. Here, according to previous agreement, we turned the oxen we had borrowed looſe, which went home of themſelves the ſame way we had brought them. The vale juſt mentioned, is reckoned among the diſtricts which are cold and ſour in the higheſt degree, and at the ſame time is conſidered as unfit to be inhabited. Here there is ſaid to grow a herb, called by the coloniſts p— graſs, and which, as far as one may truſt to their deſcription of it, is, probably, a ſpecies of *euphorbia*. This is ſaid to be frequently eaten by young cattle brought from other countries, which thereby get a dyſury, or ſtoppage of urine, that often proves mortal. In the urine as well as the urethra of theſe animals, a ſubſtance reſembling little lumps of cheeſe has been obſerved. The only means by which they have ſometimes been ſo fortunate as to ſave the life of an animal attacked with this diſeaſe, has been by hunting and driving it about for ſome time without intermiſſion, in order to attenuate, concoct, and expel the coagulated matter. 1775. October.

In time of war or inteſtine commotion, a paſs ſo narrow as *Artaquas-kloof*, muſt neceſſarily be of great importance, as a key to the whole tract of country lying to the eaſtward. In *Lange-kloof*, likewiſe, and *Kromme-rivier*, many impediments might be laid in the way of an army that was marching that way. The tract of land round about *Zaffraan-craal* ſtrait on to *Lange-kloof*, is of the kind I have deſcribed above under the denomination of *Carrow*.

In the houſe at *Zaffraan-craal* we ſuffered an inconvenience, which is ſaid to be very common in the *Carrows*.

1775. October. This was the common houſe-fly in ſuch prodigious quantities, as almoſt entirely to cover the walls and ceiling. In fact, they did not ceaſe for a moment to moleſt us, by ſwarming and buzzing about in our eyes, ears, noſes, and mouths, ſo that it was not poſſible for us to keep in the houſe for any time together: notwithſtanding which, an old ſlave, who at that time lived there quite alone, was obliged to ſleep in the midſt of this neſt of flies every night. In other tracts of this country moleſted by flies, I ſaw theſe troubleſome inſects taken very dexterouſly in the following manner. All over the ceiling are hung up bunches of herbs, on which the flies are fond of ſettling; a perſon then takes a linen net or bag of ſome depth fixed to a long handle, and putting it round every bunch, ſhakes it about, ſo that the flies fall down to the bottom of the bag; where, after ſeveral applications of it in this manner, they are killed by the pint or quart at a time, by dipping the bag into ſcalding-hot water. In certain parts of the *Carrow*, where the flies abound moſt, it is ſaid, that there is a buſh which exſudes a humour ſomewhat of the nature and conſiſtence of tar. This, by its adheſive quality, detains the flies, which are very fond of ſettling on the plant, and by this means deſtroys them. There is another ſhrub frequently found in the *Carrow*, which grows here likewiſe, and is called *Canna-boſch*; whence the whole tract of country hereabouts bears the name of *Canna's*, and not *Canaan*'s *Land*, as Mr. MASON has called it in the *Philoſophical Tranſactions*. In fact, from the extreme drought that prevails here, inſtead of the Land of *Promiſe*, Mr. MASON would have done better to have called it

it the Land of *Affliction*. A road between *Artaquas* and *Lange-kloof*, inclining more to the ſouthward than that by which we went, paſſes over a high and ſteep mountain, which, from the circumſtance above-mentioned, is called *Canna's-hoogte*, or Canna's-heights. 1775. October.

Having examined this ſame Canna-ſhrub I found, that in ſtrict propriety, it formed a new ſpecies of *ſalſola*; for which reaſon, in my manuſcript deſcriptions of plants, I have called it *Salſola caffra, foliis minutis ſubrotundis, carnoſis, concavis, imbricatis*. The leaves have a bitter ſalt taſte, and burned together with the whole ſhrub, produce very ſtrong aſhes, excellently well adapted for the purpoſe of making ſoap; for which reaſon, particular attention is paid by the *Carrow* farmers to the culture of this plant. In the parts of the flower, the *Canna*-ſhrub ſo far differs from the generical character of the *ſalſola* in the ſixth edition of the *Genera Plantarum*, inaſmuch as this ſpecies has a little obſolete *ſtyle*, with two or three brown *ſtigmas*. The remaining parts of its character were, *Stam. fil. breviſſ. Antheræ cordatæ, Calyx perianth. perſiſtens, Capſula* 5 *valvis*, 1 *locularis*, and *Semen* 1 *cochleatum*, as in the *ſalſola*, or rather reſembling a watch-ſpring coiled up.

It was curious to ſee how the only ſlave that was then at Zaffraan-craal, and who had the abſolute management of the farm, how ſkilfully, I ſay, with the aſſiſtance of two Hottentots who dwelt not far from the place, he had brought the water in rills and channels down to the fields of wheat (of which the ears at that time were peeping forth,) as well as to the garden; and had made dams at theſe places, ſo that they might be overflowed and water-

1775. October.

ed whenever it was requiſite, by which means they appeared clad with a delightful verdure. In every other part the earth was as much parched up, and as dry as the high road; on which account, having ſet out upon our journey at night, for the ſake of taking the benefit of the coolneſs of the air, we were ſoon obliged to turn back and ſtay till morning, as we were not able to diſtinguiſh the road from the other parts of the fields and commons.

The next morning we continued our route, and after paſſing over *Moraſs-rivier*, came to *Canna*-river, by others called *Kleindorn-rivier*, where we baited. All the verdure our oxen and horſes could find here conſiſted only in a ſmall quantity of a reed (*arundo phragmites*) ſtill left in the above-mentioned river, the greater part of it having been previouſly conſumed by the cattle belonging to former travellers. It happened, however, that we ſtaid longer than we ought to have done in a place that was eaten ſo bare, in order to regale ourſelves with a meal of our own cooking, compoſed of a kind of a partridge that I had juſt ſhot, as for the laſt three days we had had nothing to ſatisfy the cravings of our appetites but our Hottentot's coarſe ammunition-bread and a little tea. It fell to my lot to pluck the bird, and Mr. IMMELMAN undertook to dreſs it; and, indeed, he ſhewed himſelf a perfect maſter in the art, ſtewing it in a *quantum ſufficit* of water, and a little *ſheep's-tail* fat, which our Hottentots had got at *Zaffraan-craal* for their own eating; ſo that it would be no eaſy matter to deſcribe the highly agreeable ſenſations conveyed by this delicate diſh to the organs both of taſte and ſmell.

But,

1775. October.

But, as ill-luck would have it, we had neither of us remembered to draw the fowl, till in order to divide it equally between us, we cut it in two; when the ſauce, which we juſt before had found delicious in the higheſt degree, became quite nauſeous. The Hottentots laughed heartily at our omiſſion, and ſtill more at our delicacy, and at the ſame time licked it up every drop.

The delay occaſioned by this meal cauſed us to be overtaken by darkneſs, before we could reach the next farm; in conſequence of which, we got into a labyrinth of buſhes and briars for want of being able to ſee the road. We were therefore obliged to ſtop, and prepare to ſuffer hunger and thirſt, together with our beaſts, till the next morning, and be almoſt frozen to death into the bargain; for though it had been reeking hot the preceding day, the night was nevertheleſs extremely cold. About midnight, however, the moon ſhone, and enabled us once more to find the road, when we ſoon came to a farm near *Kleine Dorn-rivier*, called *Zandplaat*.

It was not without the greateſt aſtoniſhment, that we beheld the next morning the conſiderable number and unparalleled fatneſs of the ſheep here, when we compared them with the horrid drought and aridity of the land. In this part of the country, when they are going to kill a ſheep, they always look out for the leaneſt in the whole flock, as the reſt are intolerably fat. The tail alone of one of theſe ſheep (which is thick and of a triangular ſhape, being from a foot to a foot and a half in length, and ſometimes above ſix inches thick near the rump) will weigh from eight to twelve pounds; and moſtly conſiſts of a delicate

1775. October. kind of fat, which by ſome people is eaten with bread inſtead of butter, and is uſed for dreſſing victuals with, and ſometimes even for making candles.

Here, as being produced in the *Carrow* and in a warm diſtrict, the wine is ſaid to be good; but I can form no judgment of it myſelf, as the farmer had already ſold or conſumed all he had made. On the other hand, in *Lange Kloof*, as being a *four* diſtrict, not a drop of wine can be made.

Some Hottentot wives had got their huts built near this farm; and a Hottentot lad, who was, in fact, in the ſervice of the farmer, had at that time lain for ſeveral days in their quarters, afflicted with a bad diſorder, which ſeemed to have a great affinity with the putrid fever epidemic here, and conſequently would not bear bleeding. I was forced, however, to undertake this operation, in order to reſcue the lad from the clutches of his maſter, who had an unlimited confidence in veneſection, and had already whetted his knife on purpoſe to perform it. The patient, who either could not or elſe would not give any account of the ſtate in which he found himſelf, had, previous to the operation, a ſmall pulſe; and during it was taken with a univerſal tremor, upon which, after his arm was bound up again, ſupervened convulſive twitchings. So that, in fact, we left our patient in a much weaker condition than we found him in, though I had been very ſparing in taking blood from him. My hoſt, nevertheleſs, was very well ſatisfied, and would not be perſuaded but that the tremor was going off; at the ſame time he bade his wife give me for my trouble the beſt of every thing they had in the houſe.

houſe. In the ſpace of about half an hour, however, they came and told us, that the poor lad was at the point of death. I cannot deny, but that I reproached myſelf internally, with having been in a manner the inſtrument of his death; I did not however omit, in order as it were to diſburthen my conſcience, to reproach my hoſt bitterly, as having been the principal cauſe of ſending the ſoul of a Hottentot into eternity. But the good man ſeemed ſo much troubled, and took it ſo to heart, that I was actually going to comfort him, when he at laſt broke ſilence with a deep ſigh, and anſwered me with ſome warmth, ſaying, The devil a bit did he care for the Hottentot or his ſoul either, ſo that he could but get another ox-leader in his ſtead, as he muſt ſoon drive to the Cape to diſpoſe of his butter. 1775. October.

In the mean time we went to ſee the ceremonies practiſed with the corpſe. In fact, they conſiſt in this; the Hottentots ſhake, jolt, pummel and cuff their dying countrymen, as well as ſuch as are juſt dead; at the ſame time ſhrieking and hollowing in their ears, and caſting a world of reproaches on them for dying. Neither do they forget beſides to endeavour, by fair words and promiſes, to perſuade them not to leave this world; as if it depended on a man in the agonies of death, to die or not, juſt as he pleaſed. I now ſaw this ceremony performed to a hair on the youth I had let blood, by two Hottentot old women. Indeed, I was afraid, that by their perſeverance in this pious work, they would quite ſuffocate the ſmall ſpark of life which, at leaſt juſt after our arrival, was perceived in him; but, on the contrary, the patient came a little to himſelf, ſo that it appeared, as if by their ſhaking and jolting, they had

1775. October.

had put the languid circulation, and conſequently the vital powers into proper motion again. My hoſt and I, however, on our ſides, did not neglect to get ſome brandy as ſoon as poſſible, in order to moiſten his lips and noſe with it. I afterwards heard here, on my return from my tour, that this ſwoon came on the youth in conſequence of their having let him run out of the houſe during the frenzy produced by the fever; as likewiſe, that low and fatigued as he was at that time, yet in the ſpace of ten or twelve days he had grown quite ſtout and hearty, inſomuch, that he had run away from his maſter during the journey to the Cape, in which I mentioned that my hoſt intended to make uſe of him as ox-leader.

There was an *otter* extremely well ſtuffed, which I now keep in the cabinet of curioſities belonging to the Academy of Sciences, but which being a rarity in thoſe parts, my landlord intended as a preſent for the governor, and had kept it hid up in a private place for that purpoſe: he now, however, gave it to me by way of recompence for bleeding the lad, ſo thankful was the ſimple boor, and ſo much charmed with this operation. This otter ſeemed to be of the ſame ſpecies with our European otter, and to differ from it only in ſize, and in being of a lighter colour. The length of the body, meaſuring from the noſe to the root of the tail, is two feet and a half, and the whole length of the tail rather more than eighteen inches. This animal, in all probability, lives chiefly on a kind of round crabfiſh and frogs; as in the freſh water of all the African rivers, that I have laid down in my map, two ſorts of fiſh only, that I know of, are to be found, (and theſe too in a very

trifling quantity) viz. a very ſmall kind of *gilt-head*, the ſpecies of which I have forgot to deſcribe, and the *cyprinus gonorynchus*, about the ſize of an ordinary herring. 1775. October.

On the 17th we went from the arid Carrow diſtrict into *Lange Kloof*, (or the long dale) which commences at *Brak-rivier*. By way of reinforcing my team, I was obliged to buy another pair of oxen here, at eight rixdollars a head. The farmer's wife, who ſeemed to be the chief manager here, warranted them to be without fault or blemiſh. As one of them, however, when we drove from hence, was ſoon found to be rather lame in one of the hind legs, we began to harbour ſome ſuſpicions of the fair vender's honeſty. Her neighbours at leaſt aſſured us, that with reſpect to the dependence that was to be placed on her word, the ox might have been lame of all four legs, without our having any reaſon to blame any thing but our own credulity. We were likewiſe over-reached with regard to a horſe that we left here, by this ſame hoſteſs of ours and her huſband. Shortly after this they removed to the Cape, with a view to go into the commercial line there. They were nevertheleſs at this time, hoſpitable to the fulleſt extent of the word; at the ſame time, eating themſelves with an appetite that aſtoniſhed us. As hoſpitality is commonly practiſed, and, indeed, is a leading feature in the character of the country people here, ſo it appears to me from ſeveral circumſtances, that deceit in their dealings is likewiſe very prevalent in the colony; and by no means conſidered in ſo low and deſpicable a light, as it is with us, or as it really deſerves to be.

In

1775. October.

In the neighbourhood of *Brak-rivier*, as well as in other places in *Lange Kloof*, they made great complaints concerning the p— grafs mentioned above, as growing in *Artaquas Kloof*; though nobody could, with any degree of certainty, point out any particular herb as coming under that denomination.

In this part of the country I was conſulted by a married woman, who, through ignorance, as well as impatience, had pulled away piece-meal her uterus, which was in a prolapſed ſtate, without any bad conſequences enſuing.

Near the ſource of *Keurebooms-rivier* there was a farm, from which, by a troubleſome foot-path, one might go in a day to *Algoa-bay* in *Houtniquas*. *Pott-rivier* is likewiſe called *Chamika*, a name, which, as there was no room for it in the map, I thought it was proper to mention here for the ſake of future travellers. As Mr. IMMELMAN and I being on horſeback, had rode to a good diſtance before the waggon, we loſt our way, it being then very dark; we had the good luck, however, at length, to come up to a farm, not far from the laſt-mentioned river. We found the farm inhabited only by ſome Hottentots, who were left there by a coloniſt in order to look after it. They were ſo croſs-grained, as not to anſwer either in Dutch or Portugueſe Mr. IMMELMAN's enquiries about the road, although he promiſed to give them ſomething to drink, and though, as we were afterwards aſſured, they perfectly underſtood both theſe languages; but, to make amends, they jabbered a great deal to us in their own, of which, however, we could not comprehend a ſyllable. I do not know whether

whether this behaviour proceeded from a wicked diſpoſition, the foundation of which is to be ſought for in the general depravity, as it is called, of human nature; or whether it might not rather be conſidered, as a well-founded grudge harboured in the breaſts of theſe people againſt the Chriſtian coloniſts. We ſince heard of many inſtances, in which the ſame thing had happened elſewhere to other Chriſtians, who, by way of putting a trick on theſe poor fellows, pretended to be ignorant of the Hottentot language; and by this means heard unſuſpected the anſwers of the Hottentots, conſiſting in mere impertinence and ſcoffing jeſts, which they threw out againſt the Chriſtans with the higheſt glee, and, as they thought, with impunity, till the latter pulled off the maſk in order to avenge themſelves. 1775. October.

As we could get no information from theſe Hottentots, we endeavoured to find the way again ourſelves, as well as we could: but juſt as I imagined I had hit upon it, and as I was riding acroſs the river juſt mentioned, my horſe ſank all at once in the ooze quite up to the ſaddle. I immediately threw myſelf off on the bank; but we found it a difficult matter to drag my horſe out of this quagmire; and afterwards were obliged, together with our waggon, that came up afterwards, to wait for the dawn of the following day (the 22d) before we could find the right fording-place, when we proceeded to the river *Kukoi*, or, as it is pronounced, *t'Ku-t'koi*.

This name, which ſignifies head or maſter, has probably been beſtowed upon this river, as being the firſt branch, or rather the ſource of the great river of *t'Cam-t'Naſi*, which again runs into that of *tC'amtour*. The farm at

1775. October. *Kukoi* river is called *Avanture*. From the mountains thereabouts we ſaw the ſea, without being able to get the leaſt glimpſe of the foreſts of *Houtniquas*, on account of other mountains ſituated between. Neither had any one tried to go down from hence into Houtniquas.

We ſtaid in *Lange Kloof* till the 31ſt, or laſt day of this month incluſively.

At *Apies-rivier* I ſaw an old *Boſhies-man* with his wife, who, I was informed by farmer *P. Verejra*, had, a few months before, reigned over above a hundred Boſhiesmen; but they were now tranſlated by the farmer from that princely, or rather patriarchal dignity, to that of being ſhepherds to a few hundreds of ſheep. With regard to other matters, he gave them the higheſt commendations, as being quite different from the Hottentots in general, alert and exact in their buſineſs, and likewiſe as being well contented with their lot, and ſuiting their inclinations to their fortunes. It is poſſible, indeed, that this ancient couple, in conſequence of their good ſenſe and experience, might actually find a greater and more ſubſtantial bliſs in being placed at the head of a flock of ſheep, than when they were on their throne ſurrounded by their ſubjects. I will even admit the farmer's aſſertion, that his ſheep throve better under the care of theſe illuſtrious and conſequently more enlightened perſonages; yet ſtill it is a deed that cries to heaven for vengeance, to bereave a whole community of its head and governor, for the ſake of ſome advantage and utility accruing thereby to a flock of ſheep, the property of a vile peaſant!—We ſaw, moreover, as we rode along, (eſpecially in *Lange Kloof*) numbers of fugitive Hottentots

tentots of both ſexes, who were now no longer purſued, partly on account of their age and infirmities, and partly becauſe it was not worth any coloniſt's while to lay hold on them, as they would be liable to be demanded back by their former maſters. One of theſe that I paſſed on the road, a very old man, died (as I was told) the day after of weakneſs and fatigue. Moſt of theſe fugitives carried a thick ſtout ſtaff, generally headed with a heavy gritſtone of two pounds weight or more, rounded off, and with a hole bored through the middle of it, in order to increaſe the force of the ſtick for the purpoſe of digging up roots and bulbs out of the ground; and at the ſame time for piercing the hard clay hillocks, which are formed to the height of three or four feet, by a kind of ants, (*termes*) a ſpecies of inſect of which the Boſhies-men's food in a great meaſure conſiſts. It gave me no ſmall pain, to ſee the poor old fugitives frequently waſting the remains of their ſtrength on theſe hardened hillocks in vain, ſome other animal, that feeds on ants, having worked its way into them, and conſumed all their proviſion before hand. 1775. October.

I was at a place in *Lange Kloof*, where ſeveral Hottentot fugitives came to beg tobacco of our hoſts. They acknowledged, that they had come over the mountains from *Houtniquas*, where they had, indeed, had a very good maſter; but ſaid, that they choſe to go home to their own country: and, indeed, ſince the death of one of their companions, were more particularly obliged to remove from thence.

At *Krakkeel-rivier* the ground was very ſtony, and there were a great many heaps of pebble-ſtones, three or four feet in height, that had lain there time out of mind; ſo that no conjectures

1775. October. could be formed, to what end or on what occaſion they had been laid up together.

In a vale near this ſpot I ſaw ſeveral large pits, with a ſharp ſtake placed in the middle, intended as ſnares to catch the larger ſort of game. I and my horſe were very near being caught in one of them ourſelves.

In the mountains near *Klippen-drift* lives, it is ſaid, a race of Hottentots, which, from the place of their abode, are called Mountain-Hottentots. Theſe are, without doubt, the ſame kind of Boſhies-men, that ſteal and make their prey of cattle, and, in other reſpects, live on game and the natural produce of the fields, as I have deſcribed above. The farmers hereabouts, on that account, did not dare to let their cattle feed at any diſtance from their farms.

At *Zwarte Kloof*, a farm between *Krakkeel* and *Wagenbooms-rivier*, they ſhewed me a Hottentot girl, about ten years old, who, though born and brought up in their ſervice, had got, as they ſaid, even at that tender age, the Hottentot way of eloping. She had run away for a fortnight together, and in all this time had lived on nothing but the wild produce of the fields and woods; and yet had kept up her fleſh, and returned home plump and in good condition. On her return, ſhe gave an account of herſelf to the following purport. That ſhe had wandered to a great diſtance, and once at the ſight of a huge beaſt, (which, on her giving a farther deſcription of it, was ſuppoſed to have been a lion) ſhe was ſo terribly frightened, that ſhe immediately made the beſt of her way home.

About *Wagenbooms-rivier* there is found, according to all accounts, a lizard as black as a coal, about a foot in length,

length, which we ſuppoſed to be very venomous, as the Hottentots teſtified the greateſt dread of them. This creature is ſaid, however, to be very rare. The heaps of ſtones lying near this ſame river, are the peculiar abode of great numbers of thoſe little animals which are deſcribed by M. PALLAS, by the name of *cavia Capenſis* *, and by the coloniſts are called *daſſes*, or badgers. Theſe creatures, which have ſome affinity with the ordinary marmots, and are about the ſame ſize, are eaten by many people, who look on them as a delicacy. They are likewiſe eaſily made extremely tame, and are found in many other places in the African mountains. The little *Daſſen* iſlands on the weſtern coaſt of Africa, take their name from them. 1775. October.

On thoſe places in the mountains, where theſe creatures dwell, there is found a ſubſtance called here *Daſſen-piſs*. It reſembles petrolæum, or rock-oil, and by many, that have ſeen it, is actually conſidered as ſuch. It is likewiſe uſed by ſome people for medical purpoſes, and by them is ſuppoſed to have greater powers than is conſiſtent with any degree of probability. Finding that this ſubſtance did not ſtand the ſame proofs as petrolæum, and at the ſame time that it was found only in places frequented by the *daſſes*, I had ſufficient reaſon to conclude that it proceeded from this animal, and that it is moſt probably the menſtrual excretion of the creature; as obſervations made on a tame female of this ſpecies, have given room for ſuch a ſuſpicion; and as beſides the daſs's excrements are often found in this ſubſtance, and ſeldom any where elſe.

* This animal is of the ſame genus with the Guinea-pig, or *cavia cobaya*.

The

1775. October. The river of *Three Fountains*, (*Drie Fonteins*) the laſt in Lange Kloof, is the origin of ſome great river in Sitſicamma.

The temperature of the air for this month of October, approached as nearly as poſſible to that of the preceding month, or September. The rainy days were the 9th, 10th, 19th, 20th, 22d, 23d, 26th, 27th, and 28th.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Journey from Lange Dal to Sitſicamma, and from thence to Sea-cow River.

ON the 1ſt of November we ſet out for *Kromme-rivier*, or the Crooked-river, ſo called from the circumſtance of its running with many turnings and windings through a very narrow dale. This river was very full of ooze, and in other reſpects was inconvenient to us, as we had to croſs it eight times before we got to *Eſſen-boſch*, which was the following day, or the 2d of November. 1775. November.

The name of *Eſſen-boſch* is given to a kind of woody tract along *Eſſen-rivier*, which, as well as the wood, has taken its name from the eſſe or aſh-tree. This tree makes an entirely new genus, and is deſcribed by me in the Tranſactions of the Royal Academy of Sciences, by the name of *Ekebergia Capenſis*, in compliment to SIR CHARLES GUSTAVUS EKEBERG, Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences, and Knight of the Order of Vaſa, who was the occaſion of my making this voyage; and who, by his zeal for natural hiſtory, and the great pains he has been at in promoting it, is highly deſerving of this diſtinction.

The

1775. November. The tract of country round about this place is conſidered as *ſour*. A farmer had lately choſen this ſpot to cultivate and live in. For the preſent, a hut compoſed of leaves and ſtraw was all the houſe he had. Here I found and made a deſcription of many trees and ſhrubs, which I had not ſeen before. Here were likewiſe, in greater numbers than elſewhere, inſects of that peculiar genus firſt deſcribed by Profeſſor THUNBERG, by the name of *pneumora*, in the Swediſh Tranſactions, Vol. XXXVI. p. 254. This ſpecies, to which likewiſe muſt be referred the Gr. *papillos*. FABR. is compoſed of 1. pn. *immac.* (gryll. *unicol.* LINN:) 2. pn. *macul.* (gr. *variolos*. LINN. and FABR.) 3. pn. ſex *gutt.* (gr. *inan*. FABR.) They are from two to three inches long, and their abdomen, one ſingle ſmall gut excepted, is found empty, and at the ſame time quite pellucid, and likewiſe blown up and diſtended; on which account they are called *blaazops* by the coloniſts, and are ſaid to live on nothing but wind. In the day time they are moſtly ſilent, but in the places haunted by them, one ſometimes of an evening hears the noiſe of them from all ſides, which is tremulous and tolerably loud. They are eaſily allured by any ſtrong light in the dark, and then are eaſieſt caught; but very rarely appear at that time. A perſon aſſured me, they might eaſily be brought out of their-hiding places by a noiſe, or by talking to them, as it were, and going to meet them; but when he made the experiment in my preſence it failed.

On the 3d we baited at the next farm, which was on the other ſide of *Diep-rivier*. Several Hottentots of the Boſhiesman race, who were in the farmer's ſervice, had their huts

near the farm. Theſe huts were made of ſtraw, but were now, for the greater part, covered beſides with large ſlips of elephant's fleſh, which was cut out zig-zag faſhion in ſtrings or ſlips of the thickneſs of two, three, and four fingers breadth, and hung together to the length of ſeveral fathoms. Some of theſe were wound round the huts, while others were ſtretched from one hut to the other for the ſake of drying them. At this time the men, women, and children here had no other employment than that of ſleeping, ſmoking, and eating elephant's fleſh. And though I had eaten dog's fleſh in the South-Sea, yet the looks and flavour of the preſent entertainment, were ſufficient to take from me all curioſity and deſire of taſting that of the elephant. Beſides, at this time it was not freſh, but had been dried for ſome days in the ſun; ſo that had I taſted of it, my opinion could not by any means have been depended on; and I ſhould have drawn upon myſelf the contempt of the coloniſts into the bargain, who look upon it almoſt as horrible an action to eat the fleſh of an elephant as that of a man; as the elephant, according to them, is a very intelligent animal, which, when it is wounded and finds that it cannot eſcape from its enemies, in a manner weeps; ſo that the tears run down its cheeks, juſt as with the human ſpecies when in ſorrow and affliction. I was deſirous of riding out upon the plains where the elephants had been ſhot, in order to ſee the ſkeletons of them; but I was aſſured, that all their bones had been already dragged off the premiſes by the wolves.

1775. November.

1775. November.

This which they were now feaſting upon they ſuppoſed to be a young male, as the tuſks were rather of the ſmalleſt, being no more than three feet long, and its largeſt grinders not above four inches in breadth; while the grinder of an elephant which I got from ſome other elephant-hunters at the Cape, and now preſerve in the cabinet of the Royal Academy of Sciences, is nine inches broad, and weighs four pounds and a half; though it bears evident marks of having been the fartheſt tooth in the jaw, and of not being grown to its full ſize, having been encloſed in the gum to about two-thirds of its breadth. The diſtance from the root to the top of the tooth, or its elevation above the ſocket, ſeems to have been three inches. The ears of the elephant ſhot at this place, were reported to have reached from the ſhoulders of a middle-ſized Hottentot down to the ground. One of the fore legs, which had been brought to the farm, lay there as yet undiſſected. The hide was not near ſo compact and cloſe as thoſe of the rhinoceros and hippopotamus, but the texture of it ſeemed to be compoſed of larger tubes and blood-veſſels; at the ſame time that the external ſurface of it was more uneven, wrinkled, and knotty, and therefore cannot be uſed for making whips, as are the hides of the animals juſt mentioned. The foot was almoſt round, meaſuring very little more acroſs than the leg, which was hardly one foot in diameter. The toes ſhould be always five in number, but the hoofs vary in that reſpect, according to the obſervation of M. BUFFON, Tom. XI. p. 68. In this ſpecimen I found only four, the largeſt of which ſeemed to have been on the outſide of the foot, and the ſmalleſt

ſmalleſt were but one inch each in diameter. The ſkin under the foot, did not ſeem to be thicker or of a firmer texture than that of the other parts of the body. 1775. November.

It was ſuppoſed, that the elephant which was ſhot here, had been driven away from its herd by ſome other males ſtronger than itſelf out of *Sitſicamma*, in the thick foreſts of which the elephants may find an aſylum; or, to ſpeak more properly, be fortified againſt the attacks of their enemies: for as to *Lange Kloof*, and other places which the Chriſtians had begun to inhabit, theſe animals were obliged immediately to retire from them. The chace of the elephant here mentioned was, according to the account given by the hunters themſelves, (a couple of farmers) carried on in the following manner.

On the very evening on which they ſaw this huge animal, they immediately reſolved to purſue it on horſeback; though they were ſo far from being ſkilful and practiſed elephant-hunters, that they never before ſet eyes upon one of theſe animals. This probably, however, according to their deſcription, was not leſs than eleven or twelve feet high; while, on the other hand, the largeſt of this ſpecies are ſaid to reach to the height of fifteen or ſixteen feet *. Their horſes, though as much unuſed as their riders to the ſight of this coloſſal animal, yet did not flinch in the leaſt. The animal, likewiſe, did not ſeem to trouble him-

* If this be the caſe, the Aſiatic elephants are much inferior to the African in point of ſize: as Mr. WOLF, who was nineteen years in Ceylon, where theſe animals are largeſt, and who had opportunities of getting the beſt information concerning them, ſpeaks of twelve feet, or ſix German ells, as being a great height, and mentions an elephant of twelve feet and an inch in height, as a great curioſity. Vide WOLF's Voyage to Ceylon, juſt publiſhed.

1775. November. ſelf about them, till they came within ſixty or ſeventy paces of him; when one of them at that inſtant, after the uſual manner of the Cape huntſmen, jumped off his horſe, and, ſecuring the bridle, fell upon one knee, and with his left hand fixing his ramrod, upon which he reſted his piece, into the ground, took his aim and fired on the elephant, which then had got about forty or fifty paces farther off: for in this country, when they hunt the larger kind of animals, they generally chooſe to take the opportunity of ſhooting at the diſtance of one hundred and fifty paces; partly becauſe they load their pieces in ſuch a manner, that the ball, in their opinion, has the greateſt effect at that diſtance; and partly at this diſtance, they can get time to mount their horſes again, and make off, before the wounded animal can come up to them to take his revenge. Our ſportſman had ſcarcely got into the ſaddle, and turned his horſe's head round, before he found that the elephant was at his heels. Juſt at that inſtant the creature had ſet up a ſharp ſhrill cry, which he thought he felt pierce to the very marrow of his bones; and which cauſed his horſe likewiſe to make ſeveral haſty leaps, and afterwards ſet off galloping with an incredible ſwiftneſs. In the mean while the huntſman had the preſence of mind to ride his horſe up an aſcent, knowing that elephants and other large animals are ſlow and unwieldly going up hill, in proportion to their weight, but the contrary in going down hill. On this account he galloped off with the greateſt ſecurity, and at the ſame time his companion had the more leiſure to advance to one ſide of the elephant, where he thought he could eaſieſt direct his ſhot at the heart and

larger

larger arteries belonging to the lungs of the animal. This, however, did not hit any dangerous part, as the horſe was unruly and pulled at the bridle, which the man had hung over his right arm, at the time that, in the ſame manner as the former, he had jumped off his horſe and fired his piece. The elephant, which now turned upon this latter, was ſoon tired of purſuing him, as he had an opportunity of riding from it up a ſtill ſteeper hill than his companion. Afterwards the two hunters found it anſwer better to hold each other's horſes, ſo that they ſhould not get away, while each of the ſportſmen fired their pieces by turns. The elephant, even after the third ball, ſtill threatened vengeance; but the fourth entirely cooled his courage: however, he did not abſolutely drop till he had received the eighth. Several experienced hunters of elephants have nevertheleſs aſſured me, that one ſingle ball is ſufficient to bring an elephant to the ground, but for this purpoſe it is neceſſary, 1775. November.

1ſt, That the bore of the piece be large enough to admit of a ball weighing about three, or leaſt above two ounces.

2dly, That the piece be well ſtocked, which will enable it to bear a higher charge; for it muſt be obſerved, that the farmers, for the purpoſe of hunting the elephant, ſea-cow, rhinoceros, and even the buffalo, generally chuſe and pay a good price for the old-faſhioned Swediſh and Daniſh muſkets, which at preſent, on account of their great weight and clumſineſs, are no longer in uſe; but they generally put a ſtronger ſtock to them than they had before, in order that they may bear a charge ſo much the higher

1775. November. higher without recoiling. It is in conſequence of the weight of the piece, that the ſportſman hardly ever offers to fire off his gun, without reſting on his ramrod in the manner before mentioned. Still leſs does any one venture to diſcharge his piece, while ſitting on his horſe, as both the horſe and its maſter have uſually a tremor upon them in conſequence of hard riding.

3dly, It is requiſite for the ſhooting of elephants, that the ball be compoſed of about one part of tin, and two parts of lead; for a ball made of lead alone is always quite, or, at leaſt, in ſome meaſure flattened, againſt the thick and very tough hides of the larger kind of animals, and by this means miſſes its intended effect, as I have myſelf ſeen in the caſe of the rhinoceros. Again, if there be too great a mixture of tin in the ball, this will be too light and brittle into the bargain; ſo that, as I have likewiſe found by experience, it will fly aſunder in the ſeam, when it hits againſt the boney parts of the body of any large beaſt. Several people have aſſured me, that with muſkets of this kind highly charged, and tin balls, they could make a hole through a plough-ſhare of a tolerable thickneſs. Indeed I never ſaw this done, but do not look upon it as incredible; as when I ſeemed to doubt of the fact, ſeveral people offered to lay me a wager of it. On the other hand, I was the more inclined to believe it, as I knew that with a mere leaden piſtol bullet, a perſon has ſometimes ſhot through a breaſt-plate. I have heard many ſportſmen mention it, as a fact well known among their fraternity, that when they have got an opportunity of firing with the larger kind of fire-arms among a herd of zebras and quaggas

that

that have ſtood cloſe together, the ball, when it did not hit upon any of the boney parts of them, has paſſed through four or five of theſe animals at a time. 1775. November.

4thly, It is neceſſary above all things to hit the elephant on the heart, or ſomewhere near it, where it is a great chance but that the ball meets with ſome large blood-veſſel, by which means the animal ſoon bleeds to death. It is therefore the more requiſite to have a large piece, as the wound made by a ſmall ball, may eaſily happen to be cloſed up with fat or clots of blood; not to mention the elaſticity of the hide and muſcular fibres, which in the elephant, rhinoceros, and many other large animals, is proportionally greater than in the ſmaller kind of game; and in conſequence of which, the wound made by the ſhot is the eaſier contracted and diminiſhed.

A man famous for ſhooting of elephants, told me, indeed, that the beſt way to come at the heart of this animal, was to level the piece at that part of its ſide, which is generally in contact with the tips of its ears; but to judge from the beautiful drawing of this creature in M. BUFFON's work, the ears ſeem too ſhort for the directions given me by my informer to be of any uſe; except, indeed, that the African elephants ſhould have ſomewhat longer ears than that of M. BUFFON; or that the ears in the large and very old animals, are proportionably much more lengthened, than in the young one repreſented in the work above-mentioned.

It muſt have been from experience, that the huntſmen at the Cape have learned not to take aim at the elephant's head, as the brain is too ſmall to be eaſily hit, and is

1775. November.

moreover well defended by a thick and hard cranium. This likewiſe correſponds with what is previouſly known with regard to this animal; but from what has been ſaid above, it is evident, that two or three hundred people could not poſſibly have any trouble in ſhooting one elephant, (a fact which however is related by M. BUFFON, page 11, from BOSMAN's Voyage to *Guinea*, page 254,) unleſs the fire-arms, as well as the ſportſmen, are miſerable indeed: much leſs does it require a whole army, as the former author ſuppoſes it does, to attack a herd of elephants. In fact, this, in Africa, is often attempted by a ſingle huntſman, when provided with a fleet horſe uſed to hunting, and who at the ſame time finds the elephants on the plains before him. In ſo doing, he hardly runs any greater riſk than when he has only one of theſe animals to attack. In this caſe, the youngeſt elephants are wont to fly firſt; but one or two of the old ones, who have the ſtrongeſt teeth, and are the very identical animals the ſportſmen wiſh to have to do with, ſometimes, perhaps, will run after him; but as they are ſoon weary and turn back again, the ſportſman turns upon them again, and always finds an opportunity of ſhooting ſome of them. When one of theſe beaſts is hit only upon the hip, it is generally ſaid, that he has received earneſt of the huntſman, as he is rendered lame by it, and in conſequence of this may expect from them a more dangerous wound before he can be able to get off. The larger the elephant's teeth are, and the older the animals are themſelves, the heavier and ſlower likewiſe they are ſaid to be, and find it more difficult to eſcape. When the ſun has ſhone extremely hot, they have

have been generally found very weak and weary, ſo that ſome people have ventured forth on foot to ſhoot them. Some Hottentots, who are trained up to ſhooting, and often carried out by the farmers for this purpoſe, are particularly daring in this point; as they are ſwifter in running, and at the ſame time, not without reaſon, ſuppoſe that they have a leſs ſuſpicious appearance than the white people in the eyes of the elephants and other animals; and, on account of the rank odour they have, (ſomewhat like that of game) which proceeds from their ſkin-cloaks, their greaſe, and their bucku powder, are leſs liable to be diſcovered by the ſcent. 1775. November.

When the elephant finds himſelf wounded, he is ſaid not to offer to defend himſelf from his enemies, and ſometimes not even to fly from them, but to ſtand ſtill to cool himſelf, and ſprinkle himſelf with the water, which he now and then keeps in reſerve in his proboſcis. Whenever he comes to a piece of water, and finds himſelf warm, he ſucks up ſome of it, in order to ſprinkle himſelf with it. It is already well known to naturaliſts, that the elephant's haunts are generally near the rivers; neither are they ignorant of the care and regularity with which, in Aſia, thoſe that are rendered tame, are taken to water in order to be waſhed: ſo that it did not ſeem at all incredible to me, that the elephants ſhould ſometimes be found, as I am informed they often are, in the dry torrid fields of Africa, quite faint and dying with thirſt. One perſon aſſured me, that in a marſhy place, or, more properly ſpeaking, a place full of land-ſprings, (*fontein grund*) he had obſerved pretty diſtinct traces of elephants having lain there. All the accounts I could collect,

1775. November. agreed in this, that theſe animals, when hunted, endeavoured, with the greateſt care, to avoid muddy rivers, probably that they might not ſtick faſt in the ooze; while, on the other hand, they induſtriouſly ſought out the larger rivers, over which they ſwam with great eaſe. For notwithſtanding that the elephant, from his feet, and the poſition of his limbs, does not ſeem to be adapted for ſwimming when he is out of his depth in the water, his body and head being entirely ſunk under the ſurface, yet he is in leſs danger of being drowned than other land animals, as he carries his long trunk raiſed above the ſurface of the water in order to breathe, and can ſteer his courſe in it by means of this appendage; which at the ſame time forms his noſe or organ of ſmell, and is endued with a great olfactory power. It has conſequently been obſerved, that when ſeveral elephants have ſwam over a river at the ſame time, they have all found the way very well; and have been able at the ſame time to avoid running foul of each other, though their heads and eyes have been all the while under water.

It is merely for the ſake of the teeth that the elephants are hunted by the coloniſts, though at the ſame time they contrive to preſerve the fleſh for their ſervants, viz. their ſlaves and Hottentots. And as the larger elephants teeth weigh from one hundred to one hundred and fifty Dutch pounds, which may be diſpoſed of to government for as many gilders, ſo that a man may ſometimes earn three hundred gilders at one ſhot, it is no wonder that the hunters of elephants are often ſo extremely ventureſome. A peaſant (now dead) who had hunted a large elephant over the mouth of *Zondags-rivier*, where it is very deep

and

and broad, was bold enough to purſue it with his horſe, and got over very ſafe, though he carried with him his heavy gun on his ſhoulder, and could not ſwim himſelf. It was ſaid, however, that he got nothing by this bold and daring action, as the elephant took refuge in a cloſe thorny thicket, where the hunter neither could nor dared to creep after it. 1775. November.

It is only on the plains that they can ſucceed in attacking the elephants; in the woods, where the attack cannot be made otherwiſe than on foot, the chace is always more dangerous. The hunter muſt take great care to get on the lee ſide of the animal, or againſt the wind; for if by means of the wind he once gets ſcent of the hunter, he ruſhes directly on him, endeavouring to kill him, eſpecially if (as frequently is the caſe) he has ever been hunted before; and thus has had an opportunity of knowing, from experience, how dangerous and bold theſe markſmen are. More than one of theſe daring men have, by this means, been brought into the greateſt danger. DIRK MARCUS, the man I mentioned before as living at *Hagelcraal*, gave me an account of one of his adventures of the chaſe as follows:

"Once on a time in my youth, ſaid he, when from a hill covered with buſhes near a wood, I was endeavouring to ſteal upon an elephant to the leeward of me, on a ſudden I heard from the lee ſide, a frightful cry or noiſe; and though at that time I was one of the boldeſt of elephant-hunters in the whole country, I cannot deny, but that I was in a terrible taking, inſomuch that I believe the hair ſtood quite an end on my head. At the ſame time it

1775. November. appeared to me, as though I had had ſeveral pails of cold water thrown over me, without my being able to ſtir from the ſpot, before I ſaw this huge creature ſo near me, that he was almoſt on the point of laying hold on me with his trunk. At that inſtant I fortunately had the preſence of mind to take to my feet, and, to my great amazement, found myſelf ſo ſwift, that I thought I ſcarcely touched the ground: the beaſt, however, was in the mean time pretty cloſe at my heels; but having at laſt got to the wood, and crept away from him between the trees, the elephant could not eaſily follow me. With reſpect to the place I was in at firſt, I am certain that the animal could not ſee me, and conſequently that he firſt found me out by the ſcent. It may be thought, indeed, that, out of revenge at leaſt, I ought to have fired my piece at this ſaucy intruder; but, in fact, he came upon me ſo unexpectedly, that in my firſt fright I did not think of it; and afterwards, my life depended upon every ſtep I took; and at laſt I was too much out of breath to attempt any thing of that kind, being in fact very glad to get off ſo well as I did. Beſides I doubt much, whether a ball lodged in the cheſt, would have gone through the pleura into the heart; the ſureſt method is, to fire the ball in between the ribs, quite ſlanting through the lungs or cheſt."

Another of theſe buſh-fighting gentry, CLAAS VOLK by name, according to all accounts, was not ſo fortunate. Being once upon a plain under the ſhelter of a few ſcambling thorn-trees, (*mimoſa Nilotica*) he thought he ſhould be able to ſteal upon an elephant that was near the ſpot; but was diſcovered, purſued, and overtaken by the animal, which

which laid hold of him with his trunk, and beat him to death. This, however, is the only inſtance in the memory of man, of any of theſe hunters having met with a misfortune in the exerciſe of their profeſſion; excepting another peaſant of the name of RULOPH CHAMPHER, in whoſe ſide an elephant made a deep hole with its toe, as (without ſeeing the man) it was lifting up its foot in order to ſtep over him. I examined the ſcar left after this wound, and found a deep depreſſion of four of the ribs, which were ſtill fractured, and of which the man complained a good deal upon any change of weather. This misfortune had happened to him many years before, near *Zwart-kops-rivier*, where, with two of his companions, he lay ſleeping in the open air, by a fire that was almoſt burnt out. Theſe, very luckily for them, awoke a little before the arrival of the elephant, and crept away among the buſhes; but the ſaddle-horſes belonging to all the three, which, indeed, were tied to a tree, had their backs broke in ſeveral places. The elephants, which were four or five in number, were paſſing on their way very leiſurely, at the time when they did this miſchief. 1775. November.

From what has been already related, it follows evidently, that the elephant-hunt, ſo circumſtantially deſcribed by M. DE LA CAILLE, in his *Journal Hiſtorique du Voyage fait au Cap de B. Eſperance*, p. 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, as being undertaken by the coloniſts with lances, can be nothing elſe but a ſtory, with which ſomebody impoſed upon the good abbé's credulity; and which, when I was at the Cape, ſeveral people that knew a little more of the matter, were graceleſs enough to make a jeſt of. Neither is there much

1775. November. much more probability in the account given by this author, of a misfortune that happened to an elephant-hunter in this country. The ſtory runs thus: Once on a time three brothers, natives of Europe, who had already made a handſome fortune by following this profeſſion, had, each of them being on horſeback and armed with a lance, attacked an elephant by turns; which, however, at length, laid hold on one of the horſes that had ſtumbled, and threw him, together with his rider, up into the air, a hundred paces from him; then taking up the latter, ran him through the body with one of his large tuſks; upon which the animal held him up with exultation, as it were, thus impaled and ſhrieking in a horrid manner, to the two other horſemen, his unhappy brothers. It is not extremely probable, that an elephant could throw a horſe a hundred paces from him, any more than that a man ſhould be able to cry out and ſhriek, when he was pierced through, and ſpitted on the thick tooth of an elephant. But in the abbé's defence it muſt be remembered, that this ingenious aſtronomer did not intend to print any hiſtorical account of the Cape; the ſhort remarks he made upon this ſubject, being not publiſhed till after his death.

The elephant's manner of copulating is a point hitherto much conteſted; for, notwithſtanding the great number there are of them in India, many of which are apt to be in rutt in ſo high a degree as to run mad in conſequence of it, ſtill nobody has ever been able to make them copulate. Several authors have explained the matter in this way; that the elephants were too modeſt to ſuffer any human creature to be witneſs of their union, (a circumſtance

ſtance which theſe animals have always reaſon to be apprehenſive of,) though the male and female are both ſhut up together in the ſame dark ſtable. Others again have gone ſo far as to aſſert, that the elephants are ſo ſhy, as not to ſuffer any of their own kind to be preſent at their copulation. And many have endeavoured to explain the continence of theſe animals in their domeſticated ſtate, from the conſideration of their magnanimity and pride, ſuppoſing them to have too much ſenſe, as well as greatneſs of ſoul, to wiſh to multiply their race, and thus debaſe it by bringing it into the world in a ſtate of bondage to mankind. But ſince we know, that elephants, previous to this, ſuffer themſelves to be brought to obey by compulſion, and, indeed, to a greater degree of ſubjection than almoſt any other animal, it ſhould ſeem that we cannot, with any reaſon, beſtow our approbation on this latter opinion. 1775. November.

In all probability, therefore, this repugnance in a point to which nature, on the other ſide, viſibly encourages all her creatures, proceeds from the peculiar make of the elephant, rendering it partly unfit for the performance of theſe rites; an impediment which nature, perhaps, found it neceſſary to ſet up againſt the too great increaſe of theſe gigantic animals; as, were it otherwiſe, by deſolating and laying waſte the whole extent of the warmer climates, they would bring on the deſtruction of their own ſpecies. Moreover, as nature does not operate without means, may not the continence of the elephant, whether implanted in it by nature, or whether it be the mere conſequence of its form, or other accidental circumſtances, may not, I ſay,

this

1775. November.

this continence be the means employed by nature for the promotion of the growth and ſtrength of this animal, which are ſo conſiderably beyond thoſe of any other? Elephants (excepting ſome males, which, being either too old or too young to contend with their ſtronger rivals, are hunted away by them) always keep in herds; ſo that while ſome few are, perhaps, prevented from copulating in the early part of life, and conſequently from being enervated, it is, probably, as I ſaid before, the peculiar formation of their bodies which, after all, proves the greateſt obſtacle in this point; for the parts of generation in both ſexes are placed about the middle, juſt under the belly, and thoſe of the male are very ſhort in proportion to its body. From this peculiarity in their formation moſt authors have, without ſufficient foundation concluded, that the females are capable of admitting the embraces of the male in no other manner than lying on their backs. Nay, although no one has ever been able to ſay, that he had been an eye-witneſs to this, yet that great naturaliſt, M. BUFFON, Tom. XI. p. 63, looks upon it as ſo incontrovertible a point, that he aſſures us, he ſhould not once have doubted of it, even if the travellers DE FEYNES, TAVERNIERS, and BUSSYS did not accord with him, which, however, they do in this particular. He therefore objects likewiſe againſt Ariſtotle, and that with ſo much the greater reaſon, as this author deſcribes their copulation as differing in no other way from that of other quadrupeds, than merely in the female's lowering her loins on this occaſion. Nevertheleſs, in order to determine this ſingular queſtion with more certainty, I let ſlip no opportunity of interrogating

on the ſubject every elephant-hunter I ſaw. To this query they all agreed in replying, that with reſpect to the above-mentioned argument, they were moſt inclined to approve of the common opinion, if they had not been differently informed by two of their companions, JACOB KOK and MARCUS POTGIETER, who had actually ſeen elephants copulate. I met, however, only with the former of theſe hunters, who told me, he had likewiſe himſelf been of opinion, that the female was obliged to lie on her back on this occaſion; till at length, being out along with POTGIETER hunting of elephants, he had occaſion to think otherwiſe. On a certain ſpot they came to, they could reckon about eight elephants, which, on account of the ſmall ſize of their tuſks, they took for females, excepting two large ones; which, making ſeveral circles round one of theſe that they took for females, (the only one, perhaps, in rut) frequently, in all probability, by way of careſſing her, ſtruck her with their trunks, till at length ſhe threw herſelf down upon her knees, and keeping the ſpine of her back in a ſtiff and extended poſition, brought her hind feet quite cloſe to her fore feet, or ſomewhat beyond them; ſo that ſhe almoſt, as it were, ſtood upon her head. In this forced poſture they ſaw her wait a long while together for the careſſes of the males, who, in fact, likewiſe endeavoured to perform the matrimonial rites, but from jealouſy hindered each other, whenever either of them began to mount. After two hours had thus elapſed, the patience of our hunters began to tire; and the rather, becauſe, on account of the uneven and ſtoney nature of the ground, which, however, had

1775. November.

1775. November. no wood upon it, and of a river being between them, they could not dare to advance and fire at theſe animals. I will not diſſemble, that though I have not the leaſt occaſion to doubt the veracity of my informer, and though what he told me is by no means impoſſible, I yet find great difficulty in this matter. But on the other hand, the ſame may be ſaid of M. DE BUFFON's, or the common opinion; firſt, as they have not been able to confirm it by the teſtimony of any eye-witneſs, nor even by any inſtance of this kind in other quadrupeds properly ſo called; that is, in ſuch animals as have ſome degree of affinity with elephants; ſecondly, as the female's lying on her back can hardly be more convenient for the male, eſpecially as the vagina, according to what I am told, goes from the fore part backwards; thirdly, it is beſides well known, that the older elephants, on account of the unwieldineſs of their bodies, chiefly ſtand when they ſleep, in order to avoid the trouble and difficulty of lying down and getting up again. TAVERNIER, indeed, in his third volume, informs us, that the tame females when in rut make themſelves a kind of bed, and lay themſelves in it on their backs, at the ſame time inviting the male elephant by a peculiar cry, &c. but as the author did not ſee this himſelf, and that beſides it is entirely contrary to the modeſty and diſlike to copulation for which the female elephants have always been remarked, I cannot do otherwiſe than leave M. TAVERNIER's relation and different opinions touching the ſubject, to the teſt of future experience *.

With

* Compare with the foregoing account that given by WOLF with reſpect to this ſubject, in a book juſt publiſhed, called "The Life and Adventures of John Chriſtopher

With regard to the time that the female elephants go with young, I could get no information; but that their cubs ſuck with their trunks, is confirmed by the obſervations of many. The female elephants have, moreover, been ſeen followed by two or three cubs at a time, though of very different ſizes, viz. from three to eight or nine feet high; but the largeſt of them, which conſequently was almoſt full grown, was, nevertheleſs, to the great aſtoniſhment of the huntſman, ſuckled by the mother. And when it ſo happens, as is not unfrequently the caſe, that by a female being ſhot, an infant-cub has been deprived of its mother, and at the ſame time been ſeparated from the other elephants, it has endeavoured to aſſociate with the hunters and their horſes, in the place of its deceaſed mother, and followed them wherever they went. With regard to this, ſeveral farmers aſſured me, that they could get ſome milch-cows from the Hottentots in the way of barter, or take ſome from home along with them, to rear the elephant's cubs with, in caſe they had any tolerable encouragement given them by the governor: but, perhaps, in defect of milch-cows, which, in fact, are rather difficult to be had there, they may bring up the young elephants with gruel or porridge, or elſe with decoctions, or other 1775. November.

pher Wolf, with his Voyage to Ceylon." This author pretends to have had as much experience in regard to elephants, as the generality of jockies in England with reſpect to horſes; and poſitively aſſerts, that the female lies on her back on this occaſion, at the ſame time giving a circumſtantial deſcription of the whole proceſs. In the Additions to the Hiſtory of the Elephants which M. DE BUFFON has given in his Supplement, Tom. III. (ed. in 4to) and Tom. VI. p. 165, (ed. in 12mo) a M. BLES deſcribes the copulation of the elephants in Ceylon, in the ſame manner as farmer KOK does here.

1775. November. preparations of thoſe herbs which it has been remarked, that the elephants principally chuſe to feed on.

According to the accounts of authors, and to what I could learn both from the Hottentots and coloniſts, elephants have no ſcrotum; but their young ſucklings might probably, nevertheleſs, undergo a certain operation, and thus might be domeſticated to greater advantage than thoſe that are now uſed in India; for by means of this operation, as well as by habit, they would infallibly be leſs nice in their food, leſs riotous and unruly, more hardy, and not in the leaſt ſubject to the fury that ſometimes ſeizes them in the rutting ſeaſon. But though food ſeems more difficult to be got for elephants in India, than it poſſibly could be at the Cape, yet I doubt whether it would be worth while for many private people in that colony to keep them; but it certainly would be very proper for government to endeavour to tame ſome of theſe animals, and uſe them in its ſervice. In India an elephant has an hundred pounds of rice-groats ~~it~~ daily, raw and boiled, and mixed up with butter and ſugar; beſides, this they give it arrack and piſang, (vid. BUFFON, p. 43;) but as this animal in its ſavage ſtate gets neither butter nor arrack, this, perhaps, is to the full as unneceſſary as to have it ſerved out of golden veſſels, and be waited on by noblemen, as is done in Pegu. M. DE BUFFON, p. 143, ſuppoſes the conſumption of proviſion by a wild elephant to amount to 150 pounds of graſs and roots daily; and in the *Memoires pour ſervir a l'Hiſt. des Animaux* we find, that in the laſt century, an elephant in the menagerie at Verſailles, was reckoned to be very ſufficiently fed with 80 pounds of bread,

bread, two buckets of ſoup, and twelve bottles of wine every day. This elephant died in its 17th year, but would, perhaps, have lived longer, if it had not not been fed quite ſo plentifully; as otherwiſe the age of an elephant is reckoned 150, 200, and even 300 years, or more. Perhaps a young one brought up at the Cape, would be contented with diſtiller's waſh, grains, cabbage, and other vegetables, together with parboiled barley, malt, or wheat. Wine being not very wholeſome for them, might be very well diſpenſed with; but as by promiſing it liquors, this animal may be made to exert itſelf to a greater degree than uſual, it might not be amiſs to give it a few bottles of wine now and then. However, as wine in this colony is at a very low price, the expence with regard to this article is likewiſe tolerable: nevertheleſs, it cannot be denied, but that even at the Cape it muſt be difficult to find ſo large an animal as this in proviſion; but, on the other hand, it muſt be remembered, what great advantages may be gained by keeping them; for beſides that the elephant is extremely docile, ſenſible, and obedient, its ſtrength is very conſiderable. It is ſaid to be able with its trunk, to lift two hundred weight on to its ſhoulders from the ground without the leaſt difficulty, and to carry goods to the amount of three thouſand two hundred weight with eaſe and pleaſure. It is likewiſe able to pull up trees by the roots with its tuſks, and break the branches off with its ſnout (vid. BUFFON, l. c. p. 41, 42;) nay, with this ſingular inſtrument it can untie knots with great readineſs, open locks, and take up the ſmalleſt piece of money from the ground.

1775. November.

" But

1775. November.

" But to give an idea (ſays M. de BUFFON) of the ſervice this animal is capable of doing, it is ſufficient to mention, that all the caſks, ſacks, and packs which are ſent from one place to another in the Indies, are conveyed by elephants; that they are capable of carrying burthens on their backs, necks, tuſks, and even in their mouths, by means of a rope, one end of which is given to them, and which they hold between their teeth; that being endued with as much intelligence as ſtrength, they take care not to break nor do any damage to the parcels entruſted to their care; that they take them from off the beach into the boats without ſuffering them to be wet, laying them down gently, and adjuſting them in their proper places; that when they have put them into the place where they were ordered, they try with their trunks, whether they ſtand ſafe or not; and if a caſk is in danger of rolling, they will go and get ſtones of their own accord to ſet againſt it."

So that it is no wonder, that an animal of ſuch great utility ſells in India for nine, or ten, nay, even as high as thirty-ſix thouſand livres (vid. l. c. p. 43.) Theſe animals would be found particularly ſerviceable in bringing timber from *Houtniquas* and *Groot Vaders-boſch*, and in tranſporting goods between the CAPE and BAY-FALSO; eſpecially as, according to BUFFON, p. 42. they can with great eaſe perform a journey of fifteen or twenty leagues a day, and twice as much if you puſh them on. They make as much way in their walk as a horſe does in his uſual trot, and in running as a horſe does in a gallop, (l. c.) When in ſome places they are diſturbed by the hunters at the

Cape, and find no woods there to ſhelter them, they do not ſtop before they get ſeveral days journey from the ſpot where they were. As the elephants in this colony are now become more wary, withdrawing into *Sitſicamma* and other woody tracts of country where they are difficult to get at, or far up the country on the north ſide of *Viſchrivier* and into *Caffer-land*, people have lately been leſs inclined to hunting them than they were for ſeveral years back; eſpecially as they are obliged to ſell all the ivory to the company, which pays by the pound leſs by one half for the ſmall tuſks than what it does for the large ones: for which reaſon, the peaſants frequently ſmuggle the ſmall tuſks to the Cape in their butter-tubs, with a view to get ſomewhat better payment for them from the private merchants. Many years back, when the elephants were to be found near the Cape, nine or ten people (ſeveral of whom were living when I was there) particularly diſtinguiſhed themſelves by their ſucceſs in ſhooting theſe animals, though not without undergoing ſome danger and hunger, and the greateſt difficulties for many months together; after which, on the other hand, they would in an equal, or perhaps much ſhorter period of time, as freely and prodigally ſpend what they had earned in theſe expeditions, which might be from an hundred to three hundred rixdollars a man. The conſequence of this was, that a conſiderable number of elephants have been extirpated: nevertheleſs, it is agreed on all hands, that this is a mere nothing in compariſon of the number of thoſe that eſcape; as ſometimes one ſees them in flocks to the amount of ſeveral hundreds or even thouſands, though, perhaps, one is not able to ſhoot

1775. November.

1775. November. ſhoot above one of them: ſo that they, probably, herd together in infinitely greater numbers about the more remote and unfrequented rivers in the other parts of Africa, where, perhaps, they do not only find an aſylum, but even exerciſe dominion over mankind; while the people that inhabit thoſe parts are without the knowledge of gunpowder, an article of ſuch various utility, the invention of which people are ſo univerſally of accord to find fault with, the great uſe of which, however, in the conſervation and civilization of our ſpecies (though I have never heard acknowledged by any one) it does not appear to me difficult to perceive; a great many Negroes, for want of powder and fire-arms, being obliged to make their dwellings under-ground, merely on account of the elephants; by which, however, they have often the mortification of ſeeing their plantations deſtroyed.

The Hottentots that I took into my ſervice near *Zondagsrivier*, told me, that in a hunting party, ſome of their acquaintance had got an elephant's cub for their ſhare, which followed them to their *craal*, where they had killed it, and feaſted on its fleſh. The mother, who probably had at length traced it out by the ſcent, went at night, when it was dark, to the craal, and, by way of revenge, deſtroyed and turned every thing ſhe found topſy turvy.

Both Negroes and Hottentots lay ſnares for theſe animals by means of pits which they make, covering them over neatly afterwards, in places where the elephants are uſed to paſs, but the quantity caught by this method is very inconſiderable. I have alſo been told, that the Hottentots are ſometimes adventurous enough to throw poiſoned darts at

an

an elephant, after which they muſt have the patience to follow the animal ſeveral days by the ſcent, before the poiſon is capable of ſpreading over its huge body, and of cauſing it to fall. 1775. November.

The Negroes, who, according to certain private information I have received, mutually buy and ſell the tail of the elephant at the price of its weight in gold (or, according to M. DE BUFFON, p. 63,) exchange it in the way of barter for two or three ſlaves, induced by ſome ſuperſtitious notion, have the boldneſs to cut it off from the body of the living animal. The Hottentots, however, ſet no more value upon it than they do upon the tails of the buffalo or other animals, which they carry in their girdles, as tokens of their dexterity and ſucceſs in hunting.

I brought the tail of an elephant home with me. The ſkin of it being ſtripped from the tail itſelf a foot, is two inches broad, and about the thickneſs of a thin ox's hide. Probably on the body of the animal, when alive, this tail was ſcarcely thicker than a man's thumb.

From the tip of it, and near it to about a foot higher up, on the outſide, grow ſome ſtiff ſmooth hairs, of a gloſſy black colour, and fourteen or fifteen inches long, in all to the number of about one hundred and eighty, of the thickneſs of middling packthread or iron wire. Theſe hairs are not hollow, but of a horny nature throughout their whole ſubſtance; a great many of them, however, are tough, and will bear to be doubled or tied in knots without breaking, and can ſcarcely be ſnapped aſunder by the ſtrength of a man, and would therefore be uſeful for making beards to fiſhing-hooks; though ſome of them,

1775. November. on the other hand, are very brittle. The greater part are rather flat than round, and many of them very uneven and a little twiſted, while ſome are thicker towards the point. Perhaps theſe hairs are not to be found upon every elephant, but only upon the large and old ones; as ſeveral of my acquaintance, who have ſeen theſe animals in the menageries of Peterſburgh and Paris, could not recollect having obſerved theſe hairs, juſt as I have been deſcribing them, and ſhewed to them at the time.

Foſſil elephants teeth, perhaps, are ſeldom to be had at the Cape; probably from their not having dug deep any where thereabouts, and from the Hottentots having long ſince catched up and carried away ſuch as, after the death of any elephant, may have been to be found near the ſurface, and likewiſe from the Caffres being accuſtomed to make bracelets of ſuch as they can procure. Seafaring men, however, who have viſited the eaſtern coaſt of Africa, have informed me, that they have ivory there either for barter or for ſale, in a much greater quantity than it is probable the barbarous inhabitants could themſelves procure by hunting. This likewiſe accords with what I think I remember to have read in ſome old writers of voyages. A farmer told me, that when he lived in the diſtrict of *Cango* in this colony, he had found ſome elephants teeth, not in the leaſt damaged, three feet under ground, which he imagined had been buried there in former times by the Hottentots as a treaſure. It is likewiſe poſſible, that they might have been buried by degrees, and in proceſs of time by the winds raiſing the ſand and duſt near them, and afterwards were farther covered over by the mould produced by

by decayed trees and vegetables. As likewiſe people at the Cape are very little uſed to pry into the bowels of the earth, there perhaps ſtill lie buried, from the like cauſes, in ſeveral ſpots thereabouts, a hundred times this quantity of elephants teeth. It has, however, much more puzzled the philoſophers with their ſyſtems and conjectures to explain, how elephants teeth and bones, as well as the remains of the rhinoceros, ſhould get to the cold latitude of Siberia, where, by the name of relicks of the *Mammouth*, (an imaginary ſubterraneous animal,) they are dug up in greater quantities than any where elſe. 1775. November.

In the mean while, till this matter is cleared up, as after the whole is mere conjecture; M. DE BUFFON, for inſtance, (ſee his *Supplement*, of late refuted with great ſolidity by M. MARIVETZ, *Phyſique du Monde*, Tom. I.) modifying the earth according to his own fancy, and, after having previouſly brought it to a ſwelling heat, ſuppoſing it firſt began to cool at Siberia and near the pole, at which time the creation of elephants, &c. took place; others again drowning it in a deluge, in order to have an opportunity of carrying thither by the torrent the rhinoceros and elephant from the warmer climates of Aſia: I, for my part, could wiſh, that theſe great men with their ſyſtems, would allow them quietly to take their own courſe, and to get to Siberia on their feet. No eaſier method at leaſt, none more natural, nor more conſiſtent with the conſtant practice of other migrating animals can poſſibly be thought of. Who is not, for inſtance, acquainted with the pertinacious migrations from time to time of the *lemings* (*mus lemmus*,) where they muſt in the end be frozen and famiſhed to death, in

1775. November. caſe they chance to eſcape in the mean time, being made a prey to ravenous animals, or being drowned in croſſing rivers.

The *mus migratorius ſeu accedula* of M. PALLAS, is another inſtance of this diſpoſition in animals to migrate. Of the migration of antilopes, eſpecially of the *ſpring-boks*, downwards to the *Cape of Good Hope*, I ſhall have occaſion to make mention farther on. The more conſiderable peregrinations of locuſts, indeed, will, perhaps, be of no avail, as examples in the caſes of quadrupeds; but thoſe produced above are ſufficient to make it probable, that elephants likewiſe are ſubject to migrations, either from ſome motive equally unknown with that of the lemings, or for certain reaſons which offer, as it were, of themſelves to our conjectures: for inſtance, a conſiderable increaſe in the number of theſe animals, their want of food, the inconveniencies attending an unuſually dry and hot ſeaſon, their being moleſted by mankind, or affrighted by the eruptions of volcanos and earthquakes in their native ſoil.

I put the too great increaſe of the elephants in the firſt place, on account of the almoſt incredible number one ſees at the *Cape of Good Hope*, as well as the many centuries this animal is ſaid to live. If moreover we aſſume the hypotheſis, that the ſouth-eaſt part of Aſia, which is at preſent inhabited by a numerous and prolific race of men, viz. the Chineſe, had been as favourable to the increaſe of elephants, more eſpecially in the firſt ages of the world, which are ſuppoſed to have been the moſt fertile in all the productions of nature; it will naturally follow, that the numbers of theſe animals would, ſome time or other,

other, have received ſo great an augmentation, that the ſcarcity of food, and the mutual conflicts between different herds of elephants, muſt have obliged ſome of them to ſeek their ſubſiſtence elſewhere. 1775. November.

Dry and hot ſummers would naturally have increaſed this deficiency of food for elephants, and accelerated their removal; and at the ſame time, for the ſake of coolneſs, determined their courſe towards the north, and finally to Siberia. I am very ready to believe with natural philoſophers, that this latter country was formerly not ſo cold as it is at preſent; but cannot ſuppoſe it to have been by any means warm enough to harbour elephants, excepting indeed in ſummer time, as it is well known, that our Lapland ſummers, though ſhort, are yet extremely warm.

Swarms of elephants having thus, for one or more cauſes, left their native habitations, and by degrees, or, perhaps, by a haſty and ſudden removal, having arrived at a great diſtance from it, in more ſevere climates, and been there overtaken by a cold autumn or winter, it would be no wonder, if they had got out of their latitude, and ſpread themſelves ſtill farther into Siberia and the neighbouring countries; and there having periſhed, have been buried at greater or leſs depths by earthquakes, by the falling in of ſteep mountains, and by rivers changing their courſe, and at length have left to inquiſitive poſterity evident monuments of their migrations.

A journey of about twenty-five or thirty degrees, or about one thouſand one hundred and forty miles, between China and Siberia, cannot be looked upon as long for elephants,

1775. November. phants, as I have already obſerved at p. 334, that theſe animals can with eaſe travel to the extent of a degree, or twenty leagues in a day, or ſometimes twice as much: and, indeed, according to *L'Afrique de* MARMOL, Tom. I. p. 58, when they are put to it, they will make, in the ſpace of one day, ſix days journey.

By the account I have given of the elephants at the Cape, I find that I have been induced to dwell with ſome prolixity on the hiſtory of this animal. I would therefore wiſh, in order to make it the more complete, to quote from different naturaliſts and writers of travels ſome remarkable paſſages, which tend greatly to illuſtrate the underſtanding and diſpoſition of the elephant.

" In India they were once employed in launching of ſhips. One was directed to force a very large veſſel into the water; the work proved ſuperior to his ſtrength; his maſter, with a ſarcaſtic tone, bid the keeper take away this lazy beaſt, and bring another in his ſtead; the poor animal inſtantly repeated his efforts, fractured his ſcull, and died on the ſpot." (PENNANT'S *Hiſt. of Quad.* p. 155, from LUDOLPH. *Com. in Hiſt. Æthiop.*)

" In *Delli* an elephant, paſſing along the ſtreets, put his trunk into a taylor's ſhop, where ſeveral people were at work; one of them pricked the end of it with his needle. The beaſt paſſed on, but in the next dirty puddle filled his trunk with water, returned to the ſhop, and ſpurting every drop among the people who had offended him, ſpoilt their work." (PENN. *l. c.* from HAMILTON'S Hiſtory of the EAST-INDIES.)

" An

1775. November.

"An elephant in *Adſmeer*, which often paſſed through the bazar or market, as he went by a certain herb-woman, always received from her a mouthful of greens. At length he was ſeized with one of his periodical fits of rage, broke from his fetters, and running through the market, put the crowd to flight; and among others this woman, who in haſte forgot a little child ſhe had brought with her. The animal, recollecting the ſpot where his benefactreſs was wont to ſit, took up the infant gently in his trunk, and placed it in ſafety on a ſtall before a neighbouring houſe." (PENN. from TERRY'S *Voyage*.)

"Another in *Dekan* not having received the arrack it had been promiſed by its *cornac* or governor, by way of revenge killed him. The cornac's wife, who was an eye-witneſs to this, took her two children and flung them before the elephant, ſaying, Now you have deſtroyed their father, you may as well put an end to their lives and mine. It inſtantly ſtopped, relented, took the greateſt of the children, placed him on its neck, adopted him for its cornac, and never afterwards would permit any body elſe to mount it." (BUFFON, Tom. XI. p. 77, from the Marquis DE MONTMIRAIL.

If the elephant is of a revengeful diſpoſition, it is likewiſe equally remarkable for gratitude. A ſoldier at Pondicherry, who was accuſtomed, whenever he received the portion that came to his ſhare, to carry a certain quantity of it to one of theſe animals, having one day drank rather too freely, and finding himſelf purſued by the guards, who were going to take him to priſon, took refuge under the elephant's body and fell aſleep. In vain did the

1775. November. guard try to force him from this aſylum, as the elephant protected him with his trunk. The next morning the ſoldier, recovering from his drunken fit, ſhuddered with horror to find himſelf ſtretched under the belly of this huge animal. The elephant, which, without doubt, perceived the man's embarraſſment, careſſed him with his trunk, in order to inſpire him with courage, and make him underſtand, that he might now depart in ſafety. (BUFFON, p. 78.)

A painter was deſirous of drawing the elephant which was kept in the menagerie at Verſailles in an uncommon attitude, which was that of holding his trunk raiſed up in the air with his mouth open. The painter's boy, in order to keep the animal in this poſture, threw fruit into his mouth; but as the lad frequently deceived him, and made an offer only of throwing him the fruit, he grew angry; and, as if he had known, that the painter's intention of drawing him was the cauſe of the affront that was offered him, inſtead of revenging himſelf on the lad, he turned his reſentment on the maſter, and taking up a quantity of water in his trunk, threw it on the paper on which the painter was drawing, and ſpoiled it. (*Mem. pour ſervir a l'Hiſt. des Animaux, par Meſſieurs de l'Acad. des Sciences*, Part III.)

On the 4th we came to *Leeuwen-boſch*, a little wood ſo called, on a river of the ſame name, from the circumſtance of its having been formerly in a peculiar manner inhabited by lions. At this time there lived here a ſlave of each ſex, for the purpoſe of tending a few cattle belonging to a farmer, and of preſerving the corn-fields from the in-

roads

roads of the gazels. The ſlave's hut compoſed the whole of the buildings on the premiſes, beſides an open ſhed, under which we took our night's lodging. 1775. November.

On the 5th we entered into *Sitſicamma*, where we viſited the three firſt farmers that lay in our road. As in this province there were various unknown plants, and no naturaliſt had been there before us, we ſtaid there till the 12th, when we took our departure, and ſet off for *Zeekoe*, or *Sea-cow-river*; and finally, from the 15th to the concluſion of the month, took up our lodging in a farm ſituated at the lower or ſouthern ferry-place of this river.

On the eaſtern ſide of *Leeuwen-boſch* the country may be ſaid to be a champain or open country, the long range of hills, by the ſide of which we had travelled all the way from the Cape, terminated here, or elſe running on to the north. This tract of land ſeems to come under the character I have given of the *Sweet* graſs-fields and plains towards the ſhore. The ſame may be ſaid of the hither part of *Sitſicamma*, which, eſpecially near the ſhore, was extremely low and ſandy.

The *myrica cerifera* is likewiſe to be found here, as well as at the *Duyven*, or Doves, as they are called at the Cape. The greeniſh wax-like and tallowy ſubſtance, with which at a certain time of the year the berries are covered, and which is probably formed by inſects, being uſed by the inhabitants for making candles, which burn rather better than thoſe prepared from tallow.

On the plains I ſaw numerous herds of the *antilope dorcas*, (or *hartbeeſt*, vide Plate I. Vol. II.) and likewiſe ſaw the *gnometie*, or little gazel, I ſpoke of at p. 279.

1775. November.

The interior part of *Sitſicamma* is ſaid to conſiſt of an impenetrable foreſt. Two Hottentots, who wiſhed to penetrate through it from the *Houtniquas* ſide, are ſaid to have been obliged, after having made a fruitleſs attempt during ten or twelve days, to turn back again, happy to have reached home in ſafety. They perceived a great number of elephants, with ſeveral broad beaten tracks made by theſe animals, but which extended only from north to ſouth, ſo as to terminate and loſe themſelves in thick woods either near the ſhore, or at the range of mountains which ſeparates *Sitſicamma* from *Houtniquas*. Buffaloes are likewiſe found there in great numbers.

Kromme-rivier itſelf at its mouth, or where it empties itſelf into the ſea, is very broad and deep; ſo that ſhips might lie at anchor in it very commodiouſly, if the ſea-breezes and the ſurge, which, probably, are every day varying the ſhape of this coaſt, had not blocked up the mouth of it.

Zeekoe-rivier, which in ſeveral places had been deep enough to harbour a great number of thoſe large animals called *ſea-cows*, (*hippopotamus amphibius*, Plate IV. Vol. II.) from which it derives its name, we now found ſo much choaked up with ſand near the ſea-ſide, that we could go over it dry-ſhod.

In *Kromme-rivier*, the farmer that lived on the ſpot had brought thoſe animals to be ſo familiar, that I ſaw them ſwimming up and down the river in broad day-light, and often ſtick their noſtrils up out of the water, in order to blow themſelves or take breath.

On the heights near the upper farm on *Zeekoe-rivier* grew the *bread-tree* (*brood-boom*) of the Hottentots, diſcovered

vered by Profeſſor THUNBERG, and of which he has given a deſcription and drawing by the name of *Cycas Caffra*, in the *Nova Acta Reg. Soc. Scient. Upſ.* Vol. II. p. 283. Tab. V. The pith or marrow (medulla) which abounds in the trunk of this little palm, is collected and tied up in dreſſed calf or ſheep-ſkins, and then buried in the earth for the ſpace of ſeveral weeks, till it becomes ſufficiently mellow and tender to be kneaded up with water into a paſte, of which they afterwards make ſmall loaves or cakes, and bake them under the aſhes. (For a fuller deſcription of this vide l. c.) Other Hottentots, not quite ſo nice, nor endued with patience enough to wait this tedious method of preparing it, are ſaid to dry and roaſt the marrow, and afterwards make a kind of brown frumenty of it. This *cycas* grows likewiſe near the *Drie Fonteins* in *Lange-kloof*. 1775. November.

In all *Sitſicamma* there were but eight farms. Among other rare and curious vegetables, it is ſaid there is a kind of fig-tree in the woods here, which is of a lofty gigantic growth, with undivided leaves; and the fruit of it is as good, if not better, than that produced from thoſe which are cultivated in our gardens.

At *Slangen-rivier*, two years before my arrival in theſe parts, a ſhip is ſaid to have ſent a boat aſhore, the crew of which filled ſeveral caſks with water; and afterwards, going directly on board the ſhips, ſet ſail before any of the coloniſts could come up to ſpeak with them. Having had an opportunity of taking obſervations on, and of laying down on my map a long tract of the coaſt between *Sitſicamma* and *Zondags-rivier*, and being obliged to beſtow names on two remarkable points projecting from it, I

1775. November. thought proper to name them after two experienced Swediſh navigators, who at the ſame time have deſerved the approbation of the public by the charts they have given of the African coaſt, I mean the Captains EKEBERG and BURTZ. The former has given the world a good chart and deſcription of *Table* and *Falſe-bays*. The other in his later voyages has added to the obſervations made by the former gentleman upon theſe places, and has extremely well laid down the coaſt between *Moſſel-bay* and the *Cape*; during the period that, being on his return from China in the Swediſh Eaſt-Indiaman, the *Stockholm Slott*, he had the misfortune to be detained for a conſiderable length of time by contrary winds, in conſequence of his ſhip's having loſt her rudder. Captain BURTZ likewiſe kindly communicated to me the views of the country as they are ſeen from the ſea, which are placed at the top of my map.

The little iſland which I have placed near POINT EKEBERG I have, in fact, never ſeen myſelf, but thought it right, at all events, to lay down on that ſpot, as Captain BURTZ was induced by an old Portugueſe chart, that gives a tolerable idea of the coaſt, to conclude, that the bay called in it *Bay-conſtant*, where there is a little iſland near the point, is the ſame inlet that I have laid down near *Kromme-rivier*; ſo that, being on ſhore, I poſſibly might not be ſituated ſo as to ſee the iſland diſtinct from the continent.

Here it is likewiſe neceſſary to remark, that all the maps and charts of the eaſtern coaſt of Africa hitherto known, are faulty in making the extent of it to the eaſtward much leſs than it really is, and than I found it to be in my journey over land. I am likewiſe ſenſible, that many

many navigators have, in the courſe of their voyages, taken notice of the ſame error; and among them Captain Cook, at the time when, being on his return from his firſt voyage round the globe in the *Endeavour*, he fell in with this coaſt unawares. Moreover, during our ſtay near *Sea-cow-river*, a ſhip was ſeen one evening under full ſail making directly for the ſhore, and did not tack about till ſhe was almoſt too near. I afterwards learnt at the Cape, that this was a Dutch veſſel; and that from the chart ſhe carried with her, ſhe had not expected to come upon the coaſt nearly ſo ſoon, nor had ſhe perceived it till juſt before ſhe had tacked about. My hoſt, who, while the veſſel was hovering about the coaſt, had rode along with me to a part of the ſhore higher than the reſt, could diſtinguiſh the ſhip's crew from thence; but it ſeems that none of them ſaw us, probably on account of ſome miſt or exhalation proceeding from the land. 1775. November.

I remember to have read ſomewhere in an Engliſh Magazine an account of the Doddington, an Engliſh Eaſt-Indiaman, having ſuffered ſhipwreck on an iſland or rock ſituated in 33 ½ deg. or, more probably, 32 ½ S. lat. near the eaſtern coaſt of Africa. This account mentions, that two perſons rowed in a ſkiff from the wreck to the continent, where, as ſoon as they arrived, which was towards the evening, wearied out with hard labour, they turned the boat topſy turvy, and crept under it in order to go to reſt; notwithſtanding which they were in great danger from the wild beaſts, (probably the *hyænas* or *tiger-wolves*) which endeavoured to ſqueeze themſelves in under the boat in order to get at them. The next morning they met with the

1775. November. the wild inhabitants of the country, (in all likelihood the *Boſhies-men*) who took from them a brace of piſtols and their clothes; though after a little conſideration, and on the ſailors earneſtly entreating them on their knees, they ſuffered them to keep their boat and oars, and return to their diſaſtrous iſland, as to an aſylum; whence they at length, together with ſome more of the crew, proceeded in a bark made out of the wreck to the northward, and came to a nation that abounded in cattle and elephants teeth, (probably the Caffres) where they were very kindly received, &c. On recollecting myſelf, and comparing this account with one I had from the coloniſts, it appears to me that this ſhip was wrecked right before the mouth of *Zondags-rivier*; as about twenty or thirty years ago, a ſmoke was ſeen proceeding from the iſland ſituated there. A farmer of the name of VEREIRA, who at that time was a hunting of elephants in this diſtrict, had bought of the Hottentots a piſtol and a piece of red cloth, which they ſaid they had got of ſome people who had come to them from ſea. The coloniſts likewiſe informed me, that a year after this event, a dogger was ſent from the Cape, at the requeſt of the Engliſh Eaſt-India company, in order to ſearch for the above-mentioned iſlands, and the goods that were left there; but that the captain came back, as they thought on purpoſe, without executing his commiſſion. It perhaps would ſtill pay for the labour to build a boat at *Zondags-rivier*, with a view to ſearch for theſe ſmall iſlands; but in order for people coming from the ſea to find them, it would be neceſſary that ſomebody ſhould have previouſly obſerved the true latitude on the continent directly oppoſite

site to them; after which, by making signals by fires, the same place might easily be discovered. I often saw the above-mentioned islands from *Point Padron* in the harbour of *Krakekamma*. 1775. November.

The farm near *Sea-cow-river*, where we took up our head quarters from the 15th to the 30th, belonged to an honest old coloniſt, by nation, if I remember right, a Hessian. He was a sensible, active, ingenious man, and consequently had got his farm into the best order; upon which he had built many more tenements, than we had seen on any farm we had hitherto visited in the whole course of our journey. The main body of the house alone consisted of six rooms. He had a great number of Hottentot servants, as well as cattle; but had laid the foundation of his fortune by hunting elephants. Having been a great traveller himself in his youth, he wished to render us every service that lay in his power; offering to assist us with a good Hottentot guide, who was at the same time an excellent shot, as soon as he heard that we intended to expose ourselves to all the dangers and hardships that might arise in the course of an expedition of one hundred leagues, between that place and *Bruntjes Hoogte*, for the sake of botanizing and hunting. But, unluckily for us, the corn-harvest was now approaching, it beginning on the 23d of this month; besides which, many of his Hottentot labourers were laid up with a bilious fever.

I was therefore obliged to wait till the harvest was over, and to forward it with all the assistance my Hottentots could give. In the mean time he delegated to me the province of attending and curing the sick, and that with the greater confi-

1775. November. confidence, as I had juſt before made two female Malabar ſlaves belonging to a neighbour of his, find their legs again, who, out of mere idleneſs, had kept their beds for ſeveral days under pretence of illneſs. Three ſlaves of the ſame nation, likewiſe belonging to this neighbour of his, alſo recovered by my aſſiſtance from a bilious fever; one of them, who had but juſt before fallen ill, was cured by a ſtrong decoction of tobacco, the only emetic I juſt then had at hand. She bore, however, ſeveral tea-cups full of this diſguſting liquor before it operated. The other two, who had lain above twelve days, at laſt got over the diſorder by an alteration in their diet; but two other ſlaves, who were likewiſe Malabars, had juſt before died here of the ſame fever. A violent bleeding at the noſe was ſaid to have ſupervened a ſhort time before death, and immediately after it the gall guſhed out in great quantities through their noſtrils; a circumſtance, to which the aſſiſtants, very injudiciouſly keeping the freſh air from them with the greateſt care, by covering them up with the bed-clothes and ſhutting the doors quite cloſe, did not a little contribute.

With the Chriſtians the diſorder was at the height on the third day, but with the ſlaves and Hottentots on the fifth or ſeventh.

I obſerved that the Hottentots complained much of a pain in their heads and necks, and ſometimes in their ſhoulders. This pain vaniſhed and moved downwards into their arms and legs, (ſo that they were not able to ſtand) as ſoon as the diſorder changed for the better, which moſtly happened after the adminiſtration of emetics. In a Chriſtian girl the criſis came on with violent pains in the feet.

The

The pulſe was, it muſt be owned, tolerably high; thoſe that tried veneſection, however, obtained no relief from it, and were, notwithſtanding, troubled with a bleeding at the noſe in the courſe of the diſorder. The whites of the eyes remained yellow a long while, excepting in ſuch as had vomited ſufficiently, and by that means a metaſtaſis of the pains was made from the neck to the legs and feet. The ſick Hottentots belonging to my laſt hoſt JACOB KOK, who had been juſt captured, and, by paſſing into his ſervice, had made too ſudden a tranſition from their ſavage manner of living, bore very dangerous doſes before they could be made to vomit. For this purpoſe, beſides the tobacco, I made uſe of *vinum emeticum, ſeu aqua benedicta rulandi*, which I prepared according to the Diſpenſary of the London college for 1762, viz. two ounces of *croc. antim. lot.* in a bottle of common Cape wine. 1775. November.

Though ſixty drops of this was ſufficient to cauſe a pretty violent vomiting in a Hottentot girl of fifteen years of age, brought up from her infancy among the Chriſtians, and likewiſe in ſeveral adults, that made uſe of it at the Cape, yet four ounces had not the leaſt effect on three Hottentot girls of about the ſame age, whom I had under my care all at one time; I was obliged, therefore, to force them to ſwallow pieces of ſhag tobacco in ſubſtance, and to drink ſeveral baſons of the tobacco decoction, before I could bring them to vomit.

To two ſlender and diminutive youths, who were newly captured, I gave, by degrees, ſeveral ſpoonfuls of the *aqua benedicta* above-mentioned, till each of them had taken about two ounces of it, after which it began to operate. A youth of about twenty years of age, who had been very

1775. November. lately caught, took eleven grains of *gummi gutta*, but did not ſeem to feel the leaſt effect from it; upon which I gave him, as well as to an old Hottentot newly captured, forty and above years of age, (both of them lean and ſlender) ſeveral tea-cups full of the *aqua benedicta*, which was now very thick and full of ſediment, taking care at the ſame time to ſhake up all the crocus of antimony from the bottom of the bottle. At firſt I trembled myſelf for the conſequences which might enſue from ſuch large doſes, but found that they had very little effect, till I let the patient ſwallow, all at once, a foot at leaſt in ſubſtance of tobacco cut in pieces, and drink ſeveral large baſons full of a ſtrong infuſion of tobacco, and at the ſame time ſwallow down the tobacco of which the infuſion was made. Nay, I was obliged into the bargain, to empty Mr. IMMELMAN's ſnuff-box into the throat of the younger of them, in order to encourage the vomiting: the operation was for all that very moderate in this caſe; otherwiſe, the more bile the patients vomited, the ſooner they got well, viz. in the ſpace of about two or three days.

A fat bouncing Hottentot woman, who had been ſeveral years with the Chriſtians, either feigned or fancied herſelf ſick. I have great reaſon to believe, that ſhe pretended to be ſo, in order to have the pleaſure of ſwallowing the pieces of tobacco, and the tobacco decoction, which I ſo liberally diſtributed on this occaſion. Here it muſt be obſerved, that I placed the ſick in the ſhade near the front door, and adminiſtered the medicines myſelf, in order to be able to judge the better of their operation; but muſt confeſs, that I was amazed to find theſe people's ſtomachs require ſuch large doſes of ſo bitter and ſtrong a poiſon, as is tobacco.

Though,

Though, in fact, it is to the full as aſtoniſhing, to ſee the coloniſts, particularly ſuch of them as have been bred in India, eat greedily of ſo pungent and fiery a ſubſtance as raw capſicum, juſt as if it was a piece of bread or a ſweet-meat. As a preſervative for the health, I made every body in the family take a ſpoonful of vinegar, with freſh rue, faſting; after which, nobody was attacked with the diſorder. 1775. November.

On the 29th, the Hottentots in the neighbourhood aſked the permiſſion of their maſters to have a ball and dance, in compliment to my Hottentots, who had rendered them the eſſential ſervice of aſſiſting them in getting in their corn, and were now ſhortly going away. Their requeſt was granted, and as ſoon as the moon began to ſhine, the ball was opened al freſco. About twenty perſons of both ſexes joined in this dance, which was kept up till paſt midnight with the greateſt ſpirit; and, indeed, I may ſay, without the leaſt intermiſſion. The ball, however, did not finiſh with this; but they went afterwards under cover, and, ſitting all round in a ring, kept ſwinging the upper part of their bodies backwards and forwards with a ſlow and even motion, ſinging all the while in a dull monotonous manner. A dreſſed ſkin was ſtretched over a kettle, on which they drummed with their fingers, in uniſon with the voice.

The Hottentot woman, who had made or fancied herſelf ſick, in order to get ſome of the tobacco decoction, ſeemed to be the principal perſon that had the direction of the dancing, as well as the muſic, vocal and inſtrumental. Should the reader wiſh for a more particular deſcription of this dance, I can ſay little elſe concerning it, than that

1775. November. it is not to be deſcribed, at leaſt not in all its different figures and movements. Neither, indeed, do I conceive, that it was confined to any particular rules; the chief intention ſeeming to be, to put the body into motion: for which purpoſe, every body hopped and jumped about both by themſelves, and occaſionally with each other; and doubtleſs with the ſame intentions they wreathed, twined, and twiſted their bodies into every droll and uncommon attitude their fancy led them to. Though, perhaps, a Hottentot might be induced to form the ſame opinion of our moſt faſhionable dances. In the mean time it is poſſible, that the Hottentot dance I have been endeavouring to give ſome idea of, was not totally without art in its kind, as my Hottentots from *Buffeljagts-rivier* ſaid they had never ſeen ſuch a one before, and that they were not capable of joining in it. Our hoſt and hoſteſs, who likewiſe looked on for a time, pointed out to me, however, two of their country dances; one was called the baboon-dance, in which they imitated baboons or apes: this, as well as the others, was diſtinguiſhed by a thouſand grimaces, the performers now and then, moreover, going upon all fours. The other was called the bee-dance, in imitation of a ſwarm of bees. In this every performer now appeared to make a buzzing noiſe. In this manner the ball continued till day-break, when the greater part of the dancers were obliged to return to their daily labours.

I likewiſe at this time ſaw an inſtance of the polygamy practiſed by the Hottentots, a practice, however, which is ſaid to be very rare among them. An old Hottentot had married two wives, and ſeemed in a manner very proud of the

the poſſeſſion of them, as doing credit to his manhood. I was informed, however, that the ladies very often quarrelled, and not unfrequently came to blows; and that when their ſpouſe went to part them, they uſed both with one accord to fall upon him, and wreak their vengeance upon his hair.—In theſe times, when the Hottentots for the greater part are ſlaves, it is not to be wondered at, that their manners are ſubject to changes. In the mean while I could not get any intelligence to be depended upon, how far polygamy had been formerly more or leſs practiſed. The marriage ceremonies among the Boſhies-men, are ſaid to be no other than ſuch as are inevitably neceſſary and agreeable to nature, viz. the agreement of the parties and conſummation. 1775. November.

My hoſt and hoſteſs, who twenty years before had lived nearer to the Cape, viz. at *Groot Vaders Boſch*, told me they believed the report, that a maſter of the ceremonies performed the matrimonial rites, by the immediate conſperſion of the bride and bridegroom with his own water, was not without foundation; but that this was practiſed only within their craals, and never in the preſence of any of the coloniſts. My Hottentots, whom I frequently queſtioned upon this ſubject, choſe neither to confeſs the fact, nor abſolutely to deny it, ſo that probably this uſage is ſtill retained in ſome craals.

That the funeral ceremonies are alike with every different tribe of Hottentots, we are well aſſured, as likewiſe that they are conducted in the following manner. The deceaſed is thruſt either naked or with his cloak on, into ſome hole in the earth, or ſubterraneous paſſage, where they generally

1775. November. rally become a prey to ſome wild beaſt. However, they uſually ſtuff a large bundle of bruſh-wood, or buſhes, into the aperture of this hole or paſſage.

I was very aſſiduous in my enquiries, in how far it was true, that the Hottentots ſecluded from ſociety ſuch as were old and helpleſs. The only perſon that could give me any inſtance of this cuſtom being practiſed, was my hoſt. In his younger days, being out a hunting in *Krakekamma*, in company with one VANDER WAT, with whom I was likewiſe acquainted, they obſerved in the extenſive deſert plains of that diſtrict, a little narrow ſlip encloſed with buſhes and brambles. Their curioſity being excited, they rode up to it, and found within it an old blind female Hottentot, who, at firſt, as ſoon as ſhe heard the Chriſtians coming, endeavoured to crawl away and hide herſelf; but afterwards made her appearance, though with a very ſour aſpect: ſhe confeſſed, however, that ſhe had been left to her fate by the inhabitants of her clan. But neither did ſhe deſire nor receive any aſſiſtance from theſe Chriſtians, nor, indeed, had they made any enquiries whether this was done with or againſt her conſent.

Calling afterwards at the craal ſhe belonged to, all the information they got there was, that the old woman had actually been left there in that manner by them. With reſpect to any conveniencies ſhe might have about her, they could perceive nothing, but a trough which contained a little water.

Another cuſtom, no leſs horrid, which has hitherto been remarked by no one, but which I had fully confirmed to me, is, that the Hottentots are accuſtomed to inter, in caſe of

the mother's death, children at the breaſt alive. That very year, and on the very ſpot, where I then dwelt, juſt before my arrival, there had been the following inſtance of it: 1775. November.

A Hottentot woman at this farm had died of the epidemic fever. The other Hottentots, who did not imagine that they ſhould be able, neither did they chuſe to rear the female infant ſhe had left behind her, had already wrapt it in a ſheep-ſkin alive, in order to bury it, together with its deceaſed mother; when they were prevented from accompliſhing their purpoſe, by ſome of the farmers in the neighbourhood. The child, however, died ſoon after of convulſions. My hoſteſs, who at this time was rather in years, informed me, that about ſixteen or ſeventeen years before, ſhe had lighted upon a Hottentot infant in the diſtrict of *Zwellendam*, which was bundled up in ſkins in the manner above-mentioned, and tied faſt to a buſh, near where the child's mother had been newly buried. The infant had ſo much life left, as to be in a condition to be recovered. It was afterwards brought up by Mrs. Kok's parents, but died at the age of eight or nine years. From ſeveral inſtances of this kind related to me by others it follows, that children are never interred alive, or expoſed, but when their neareſt relatives, who are their natural guardians, are dead: ſo that I think we may conclude from this, that even ſuperannuated people are never expoſed, but in caſe of their having no children nor near relations to take care of them: and as theſe caſes may occur but ſeldom, it is not to be wondered at if this practice ſhould come to be leſs in vogue, and if conſequently

we

1775. November. we ſhould not ſo often hear of it. In the mean time, whatſoever it be that has given riſe to this cuſtom, yet we that have the happineſs of being in a more civilized ſtate, have certainly not without reaſon accuſed the Hottentots of inhumanity on this occaſion. Still, however, they deſerve rather to be pitied, than to be reviled and loaded with reproaches on this account; for on reflecting a little, we ſhould, perhaps, find, that too many perſons, even in our boaſted civilized ſocieties, are left almoſt deſtitute and unaſſiſted; or, perhaps, are entirely abandoned to their dreadful fate. Indeed I fear, that if we were fairly and ſtrictly to compare the failings and crimes of the Hottentots with thoſe of civilized nations, the iſſue would turn out very little to the honour of either, and ſtill leſs to that of the latter. And in fact, if we impartially conſider the conduct of mankind in a general view, we ſhall not, perhaps, find great reaſon to flatter it: neither, indeed, would this be the way eſſentially to ſerve our fellow-creatures, as ſelf-love and flattery, it is allowed on all hands, renders us dangerous enemies to ourſelves; and the caſe is juſt the ſame with regard to mankind in general.

On the 30th, or the day after the ball, we prepared for our departure. Our hoſt, who had hitherto entertained us in a remarkably hoſpitable manner, was even more than commonly careful to provide us with every thing that he thought we ſhould want on our journey. With this view, he lent me a couple of good ſerviceable draught-oxen, in the place of two of mine; one of which could not be made uſe of, on account of its having been bit by a ſerpent, nor the other by reaſon of its being in a very bad

bad condition. He likewiſe, as I mentioned before, complimented us with his beſt Hottentot, whoſe name was PLATTJE, and whom he had always taken with him himſelf, in ſeveral hunting parties he had made up the country, to carry his arms for him, and aſſiſt in killing the game. 1775. November.

Our hoſteſs, who was very well apprized that we ſhould not often find a table ready ſpread for us in a deſert of an hundred *uurs* in length, and that game did not always abound there, made up an excellent viaticum for us, conſiſting of a box full of biſcuits, ten pounds of butter, and a large wether cut in pieces and ſalted in its own ſkin; which, after being taken off, was tied up again at each end with the meat in it, ſo as to ſerve for a ſack. The reſt of our proviſion conſiſted of two loaves of coarſe bread, together with a bag of flour for my Hottentots, who at this time were three in number.

During our abode here we found a vaſt number of inſects, and many ſpecies which we had not ſeen before. Among all theſe, what moſt excited my admiration was a *termes*. On a warm day, about the concluſion of the month, (I forgot to ſet down preciſely the day) there came out of the earth in ſeveral places thouſands of white inſects, in ſhape ſomewhat reſembling ants. Some of theſe were about half an inch long, and had each of them four wings, with which they ſoon began to fly about, and ſwarm round each other in the air like ephemeræ, though they were not obſerved to copulate. When caught, their wings came off remarkably eaſily, eſpecially if they were not taken the greateſt care of. Their bodies were milk-white, and extremely ſoft, ſo that one could eaſily ſqueeze a white liquor out of them. During this,

1775. November. I likewiſe ſaw thouſands of ſmaller inſects or ants, but without wings, making their way out of the holes the former had juſt made in the earth. Theſe ſeemed very eaſily enraged, and were apt to bite; the heads were likewiſe larger in proportion, and their jaws were more pointed and ſharper than thoſe of the former. I collected a ſufficient quantity of both ſorts, in order to preſent them to my entomological friends, and particularly the largeſt of them to Baron DE GEER, who has adopted them, in Tom. VII. of his Memoirs, p. 47. Plate XXXVIII. Fig. 1—4. by the name *termes Capenſe*. This illuſtrious author has the greater reaſon to call them by the name of termes, as he himſelf, as well as Mr. FRISH, has diſcovered a termes with the rudiments of wings.

It was at the diſtance of a mile and a half from the farm, on rather a woody ſpot, that I diſcovered the *termes Capenſe*, and obſerved them piercing the ground in ſeveral places, and with great impatience making their way through the ſurface. As I was at that time taken up in attending my Hottentot patients, the greater part of theſe animals diſappeared by the next morning, when I got back to the place of their transformation; ſo that I could make no farther obſervation on the œconomy of theſe inſects, which, in all probability, is highly wonderful. Neither can I ſay with any certainty, whether this *termes Capenſis* be the ſame ſpecies with the white ants, (as they are called) which build and inhabit thoſe dark-grey hillocks of earth from three to four feet high, which I mentioned before, that the fugitive Boſhies-men in *Lange-kloof* frequently explored to no manner of purpoſe: for ſeveral times, when I had an

opportunity, or gave myſelf time to break into them, (and that not without ſome trouble) in order to examine them, I had the mortification to find the birds fled. But in the ant-hills or clumps of earth of about a foot high, which I explored on the mountains in *Falſe-bay*, I found a grey-coloured kind of termes, or, as it is there called, piſmire, ſomewhat different from the white unwinged ones deſcribed above: but this was loſt in my collection while I was abſent on my voyage round the world, ſo that I cannot with any preciſion determine to what ſpecies it belonged. The ſame diſagreeable accident happened to me with reſpect to another very diminutive ſpecies of termes, or white ant, which I got a ſight of twice in the road between *Boſhies-mans-rivier* and *Viſch-rivier*. This *termes* was not greater than our *termes pulſatorium*, or death-watch; and, as well as I can remember, was very like the white ant of the Eaſt-Indies, or the *termes fatale*. Contrary to all expectation, theſe made their way out of the hard ground, coming to be our gueſts in conſiderable numbers, whenever we happened to ſet our butter-tub, or any thing fat or greaſy belonging to our provender-cheſt on the ground. 1775. November.

The winged ants firſt-mentioned (*termes Capenſe*) my hoſt had ſeen in a much greater quantity; he likewiſe informed me, that the *Boſhies-men* and other Hottentots, who were obliged to ſeek their own food themſelves, ſoon grew fat and in good condition by eating theſe inſects. For this purpoſe, they were ſaid ſometimes to boil them in their earthen veſſels, in the manner they uſually did graſhoppers; and at other times to eat them raw, as I at that moment ſaw my hoſt's Hottentots do with reſpect to ſome few which

1775. November. flew, or rather were driven by the wind into their maſter's grounds; where the people being then buſy in getting in their corn, neither could, nor, indeed, as they had plenty of other food, did they need to ſpend their time in catching theſe inſects. As my hoſt's only ſon likewiſe taſted one of theſe winged ants, I was induced to follow his example. It ſeemed to me merely to feel cold in the mouth, without any particular taſte; though with greens it would, probably, make as good a diſh as ſeago, or crabs, thoſe ſcorpion-like inſects, which we have accuſtomed ourſelves to eat in Europe. In one part of *Carniolia* near the Danube, where they are uſed to collect *ephemeræ* by the cart-load for the purpoſe of manuring their land, an inſect-eating race like the Hottentots would, doubtleſs, make as good a feaſt upon them, as they do in Africa upon ants and locuſts. Whether the moſt miſchievous ſpecies of *termes*, the *termes fatale*, Syſt. Nat. or, as they are called, the white ants of the Eaſt and Weſt-Indies, whether theſe naturally inhabit the Cape, I cannot determine with any degree of certainty; though it has been often aſſerted, that the white ants ſometimes come thither with the Eaſt-India ſhips, and neſtle themſelves in there for ſome time. Mr. IMMELMAN's parents told me, that a brick floor, laid upon the bare earth in the lower part of the houſe, ſunk all at once to the extent of about four feet ſquare and two feet deep: and it was found, that this unexpected mine proceeded from ſome white ants, which had made their neſts beneath the flooring, and from thence likewiſe had begun to form avenues to the pantry. However, they deſtroyed at once the whole colony of theſe unwelcome gueſts, by pouring

pouring boiling water upon them. Otherwiſe people are wont, according to the accounts I have received from thoſe who have been in the Eaſt-Indies, to drive away theſe inſects with petrolæum, and other ſtrong-ſcented oils. Rotten fiſh, which are ſaid to be as bad as poiſon to piſmires, would likewiſe, probably, clear the houſes of the *termes*. Though, perhaps, the ſtrongeſt poiſon for theſe inſects is arſenic; as a ſmall pinch of it only ſtrewed in any place in the vicinity of them will, according to M. CHANVELON, in his *Voyage to Martinico*, kill many millions of them in a few hours. 1775. November.

The damages cauſed by the white ants, as they are called, (which, however, perhaps, conſiſt of many different ſpecies) may be pretty well gueſſed at from what has been ſaid already. It, however, deſerves likewiſe to be mentioned, that merchandize to an infinite amount are deſtroyed yearly both in the Eaſt and Weſt-Indies by theſe vermin. In the ſpace of a few hours they are able to eat into a cheſt, and, as it were, cut to pieces all the linen, ſilk, clothes, and books in it; on which account, people in theſe countries are obliged to have their trunks and merchandize ſlung upon ropes. It is likewiſe, perhaps, capable of multiplying its ſpecies more than any other inſect; for Profeſſor LINNÆUS very kindly ſhewed me a female, which he had juſt before received from the Eaſt-Indies, and which was an inch and a half long, and of an extreme bulk, and conſequently capable of laying millions of eggs.

Though I could not learn whether the more noxious ſpecies of white ants are natives of the Cape or not, yet it is very well known, that Africa, at leaſt that part of it near

1775. November.

near Senegal, is peſtered with them. In ſo ſhort a ſpace of time as between the evening and midnight, they have been known to form a vault or covered way of earth or clay, which they have gone in queſt of and prepared themſelves, as other obſervers have remarked. This arched way reached from the floor of M. ADANSON's chamber to the head of his bed, (ſee his *Voyage au Senegal.*) They moreover not only began to cut his ſheet and mattreſs in pieces, but even had the impudence to fall foul on M. ADANSON himſelf. A Hottentot with a good appetite, would here have had a fair opportunity of putting in execution the *lex talionis* *.

The locuſts, likewiſe, ſometimes afford a high treat to the more unpoliſhed and remote hordes of the Hottentots; when, as ſometimes happens, after an interval of eight, ten, fifteen, or twenty years, they make their appearance in incredible numbers. At theſe times they come from the north, migrating to the ſouthward, and do not ſuffer themſelves to be impeded by any obſtacles, but fly boldly on, and are drowned in the ſea whenever they come to it. The females of this race of inſects, which are moſt apt to migrate, and are chiefly eaten, are ſaid not to be able to fly; partly by reaſon of the ſhortneſs of their wings, and partly on account of their being heavy and diſtended with eggs; and ſhortly after they have laid theſe in the ſand they are ſaid to die. It is particularly of theſe that the Hottentots are ſaid to make a brown coffee-coloured ſoup, which, at the ſame time, acquires from the eggs a

* In Vol. LXXI. of the Phil. Tranſ. may be ſeen a more circumſtantial and complete account of theſe inſects, by Mr. Smeathman.

fat

fat and greaſy appearance. Several different people agreed in giving me this account, and at the ſame time informed me, that the Hottentots were highly rejoiced at the arrival of theſe locuſts, though they are ſure to deſtroy every bit of verdure on the ground: but the Hottentots make themſelves ample amends for this loſs, by falling foul on the animals themſelves, eating them in ſuch quantities as, in the ſpace of a few days, to get viſibly fatter and in better condition than before. My hoſt in particular informed me, that being one locuſt-year on a hunting expedition on the other ſide of *Viſch*-river, the Hottentots in thoſe parts explained the abundance of theſe inſects as proceeding from ſome great *maſter conjuror* a good way to the northward, having removed a ſtone from the mouth of a certain deep pit, out of which he had let looſe theſe animals, in order to be food for them. The intentions of nature, however, in the production of locuſts, is hardly anſwered, by their ſometimes ſerving to fatten a few Hottentots. But I over-ran too haſtily the very extenſive tracts compoſing the ſouthern promontory of this quarter of the globe, to be able to point out with any degree of certainty, any other uſes accruing from the migration of the locuſts thither in ſuch great numbers. I will venture, however, to throw out a conjecture, which, at leaſt, can do no harm; namely, that according to all accounts, wherever the ſwarms of locuſts alight, the vegetables are ſometimes entirely conſumed and deſtroyed, appearing as if they had been burnt up by fire. Perhaps, the uſe of theſe creatures is the ſame with that of fire, which latter is applied by the coloniſts and Hottentots to the purpoſe of clearing their

1775. November.

1775. November. their fields from weeds. The ground is, indeed, by this means, in both caſes, ſtripped quite bare; but merely in order that it may ſhortly afterwards appear in a much more beautiful dreſs, being, in this caſe, decked with many kinds of annual graſſes, herbs, and ſuperb lilies, which had been choaked up before by ſhrubs and perennial plants. Theſe laſt, moreover, which, throughout the whole of the preceding year, were hard, dry, withered, and half dead, of a pale yellow colour, harſh, and unfit for fodder, have now an opportunity of ſpringing up again, ſo as to produce with their young ſhoots and leaves, paſtures adorned with a delightful verdure for the uſe of the cattle and game.

The weather in this month was warmer than in any of the preceding, eſpecially towards the concluſion of it, when we quitted *Lange-kloof*, and *Kromme-rivier*, and came to the plains by the ſea-ſide.

The thermometer generally roſe at about eight o'clock in the morning from 65 to 70 in the ſhade, and in the ſhade at noon it was ſometimes as high as 80.

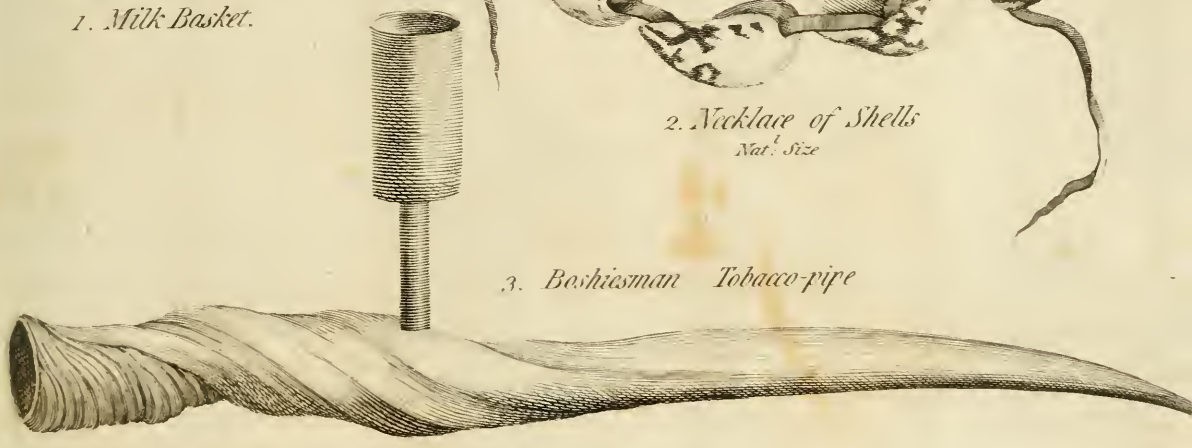
The rainy days were the 11th, 16th, 17th, 18th, 19th, and 26th; ſometimes with a ſouth-eaſt, and at other times with a ſouth-weſterly wind. On the remaining days, which were fine and free from rain, the north-weſt and weſt winds almoſt always prevailed.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

Hottentot Ornaments &c.

1. Milk Basket.

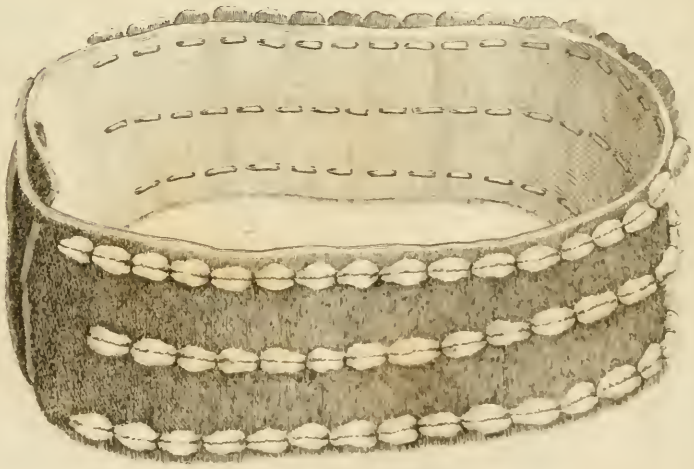
2. Necklace of Shells
Nat.l Size



3. Boshiesman Tobacco-pipe

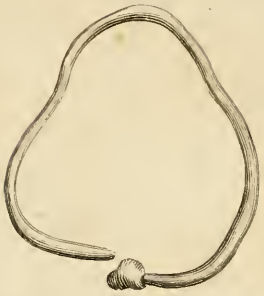
4. Field Shoe.

6 Mans Belt.



5. Woman's head Ornament.

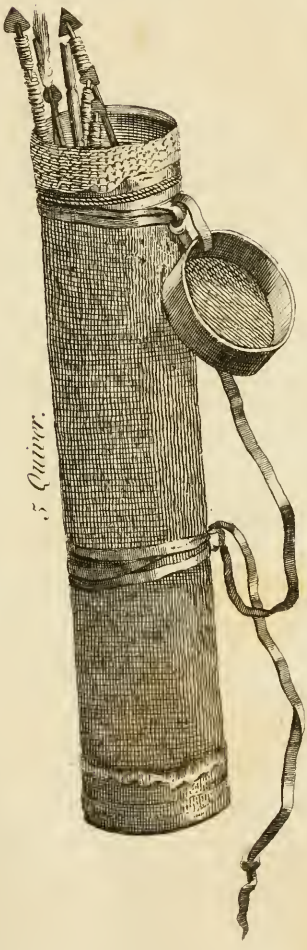
Arms &c. of the Hottentots.



Metallic Ear-rings

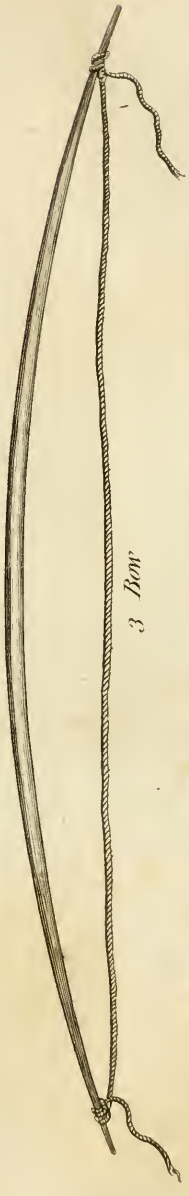
7 Arrow head

6. Bottom of the Arrow



5 Quiver.

4 Head of the Arrow. nat. size.



3 Bow

2 Hassagai

A

VOYAGE

TO THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE,

TOWARDS THE

ANTARCTIC POLAR CIRCLE,

AND

ROUND THE WORLD:

BUT CHIEFLY INTO THE

COUNTRY OF THE HOTTENTOTS AND CAFFRES,

FROM THE YEAR 1772, TO 1776.

BY ANDREW SPARRMAN, M.D.

PROFESSOR OF PHYSIC AT STOCKHOLM, FELLOW OF THE ROYAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES IN SWEDEN, AND INSPECTOR OF ITS CABINET OF NATURAL HISTORY.

TRANSLATED FROM THE SWEDISH ORIGINAL.

WITH PLATES.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR G. G. J. AND J. ROBINSON, PATER-NOSTER-ROW.

M DCC LXXXV.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. X.

JOURNEY FROM SEA-COW-RIVER TO LITTLE SUNDAY-RIVER.

Set out on their journey. Camtours-river. Deſcription of the Hottentot Capt. Kies, who is treated ſans ceremonie by the author's Hottentot Plattje. A farmer's account of the great drought, and of a hoard of Caffres he had met with on the road. Galgeboſch. No water to be had. Van Staade's river. Are viſited by ſome Gonaquas Hottentots. Deſcription of the perſons, dreſs, &c. of theſe people. Throw their javelins at a mark. Not remarkable for dexterity in this point. A grain called holcus ſorgum yields an inebriating liquor. Their waggon in danger of being blown into the air, from their having inadvertently ſet fire to the graſs. Carouſal of hunters. The ſalt-pans. Deſcription of the cimex paradoxus, or leaf-inſect. Mr. Immelman ſpits blood. Is in danger of being toſſed by buffaloes. Guinea-hens. Appearance of the banks of Sunday-river. Hire ſeveral Boſhies-men to attend them in their expedition. Give chaſe to an uncommon ſpecies of wood-ſwine. Deſcription of theſe animals. Hottentot or baſtard Caffres. Their dance and ſong. Voluptuous practices of the youths of both ſexes during dancing. Envenomed wound. Curious milk-baſkets. Method of milking. Circumciſion practiſed by theſe people. Concluſion of the milking by ſinging and dancing. The author turns conjuror. Baſtard-Caffre conjuror well paid. Fox-tails for warm weather. Buffalo-lice, p. 37.

CHAP. XI.

JOURNEY FROM LITTLE SUNDAYS-RIVER TO BOSHIES-MANS-RIVER.

Concerto of lions. Their roaring deſcribed. Preparations made againſt an attack from theſe beaſts. Animals fear the lion by inſtinct, and perceive him at a diſtance, even when he does not roar. Lions few in

number, compared with other animals. Not ſo bold ſince the Dutch have introduced the uſe of fire-arms into that part of Africa. Do not immediately kill a man, except in caſe of reſiſtance. Neither do they attack any animal openly, except irritated or very hungry. Meaſure the length of their leap, when they have miſſed their prey by leaping over it or ſhort of it. Lurk chiefly near rivers. Scared away by the noiſe made with an ox-whip. Singular eſcape of a Hottentot from a lion. Lion frequently betrays marks of cowardice. Inſtance of a lion being ſhot with its prey lying under it untouched. In general content with wounding its prey, if it be a human creature. The cauſe of this inveſtigated. Ludicrous ſituation of a farmer purſued by a lion. Great ſtrength of this animal. Not ſtrong enough, however, to overpower the buffalo, without having recourſe to art. Artful expedient of one for carrying off a buffalo. Inſtance of a buffalo's keeping five lions at bay. Lion eaſily torn in pieces by a dozen farmer's dogs. Horſes fond of hunting lions and other fierce animals. The chaſe of the lion deſcribed. Coloniſts hunt them with great eagerneſs. Not hard to kill with guns. Its hide tender and penetrable. Their principal Hottentot markſman ſhoots a buffalo. Deſcription of the buffalo. Its ears by the Hottentots ſuppoſed to be torn by evil ſpirits. A treacherous and cruel animal. Fond of lying down in the water, or wallowing in the mire. Buffalo-calf. The calves might be brought up tame. The fleſh good eating. Cannot be ſhot with balls of lead alone. The game wantonly deſtroyed in great abundance by ſome ſportſmen. Gluttony of the Hottentots. Amuſe themſelves with cracking jeſts on their maſters, in their own language. Smoke cow-dung in default of tobacco. Idle in the higheſt degree, and difficult to govern, p. 73.

CHAP. XII.

Journey from Boshies-mans-river to Quammedacka.

Sneezing-wood in Niez-hout-kloof. The honorary degree of doctor conferred on the author in his abſence. Butterfly-hunter in danger of being impaled like the inſects he had caught. A buffalo-hunt. Naſtineſs of the Hottentots. Paint their cheeks black when they go a courting. Amorous combat between two tiger-cats. Oſtrich-chicks. Rank water. Ridiculous neatneſs of a Dutchman. Deſcription of the ſpring-bok. Leaps very high, and expands the white liſt on its back, when purſued. Very ſwift. Quammedacka well. Look out there for the two-horned rhinoceros. Kolbe never ſaw this animal in reality. The

The author's cruelty to ſome birds dying with thirſt. Alarmed all night long by a lion. The raw root of a ſpecies of purſlain very good eating, as is that of the da-t'kai. Hottentots ſhoot two rhinoceroſes. The manner in which they informed the author of it. The deſcription and anatomy of the rhinoceros. The author and his friend in great danger from one. Meet a herd of elk-antilopes, and afterwards with a party of coloniſts, p. 117.

CHAP. XIII.

Journey from Quammedacka to Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte.

Hunt a couple of lions. Oſtriches neſt. The male oſtrich aſſiſts the female in the act of incubation. This bird's feathers made uſe of for chaſing away the flies. Eggs uſed for pan-cakes, &c. but not equal to thoſe of hens in goodneſs. Oſtriches do not hide their eggs when purſued. Buffon criticiſed on this ſubject, as well as with reſpect to his account of this bird's ſkin. Its cry like the lion's roar. Alluded to by the prophet Micah. The young have no cry. Oſtrichs become very tame. Might be brought to bear burdens. Chiefly found in the carrow countries. Hunting the buffalo. Ludicrous ſcene of the Hottentots loaded with the fleſh. Diſmal ſituation of the author, when benighted, at a diſtance from his waggon, in a ſtorm. Deſcription of the gnu. Its claſſification. The gnu met with here very vicious. Manner of keeping Chriſtmas-eve in the deſert. Meet with ſome coloniſts. Ludicrous deſcription of the dreſs and figure of the two travellers. Hippopotamus's ſkulls. The author indiſpoſed. He and his party begin to want bread. Convulſive motions in the muſcles of a dead hart-beeſt, p. 139.

CHAP. XIV.

Residence at Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte.

Arrival at Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte. Cattle out of doors all winter. Cold in theſe parts. Ravages committed by the Boſhies-men here. Havock made among them by the coloniſts. Sneſe-Hottentots. Their complexion and temper. Geographical obſervations on the country they inhabit. The Tambuki ſilver mines. Diſquiſition concerning the unicorn. The country of the Caffres. Their government and wars.

The

The maſſacre of Heuppenaer and his party in this country. King Ruyter's craal. Ruyter's hiſtory, tyrannical behaviour and wars. Compariſon between the reſpective modes of fighting of the Hottentots and Caffres. Slaves of the Chriſtians more warlike than either, and much eſteemed by the Caffres. Deſcription of Camdebo. Roads from thence to the Cape. Plan formed for extending the journey. It proves abortive on many accounts. Delightful ſituation and fertility of Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte. Happy lives of the farmers there. The foot made by them an index to the road. Commodious poſture of ſitting. Extreme moderation in furniture and dreſs. Their virtues. Friendly propoſal from a female. New cure for the gout. Advantages of the medical art to mankind. Worms univerſally miſtaken here for pulmonary complaints. The gnu. The viverra criſtata, or grey jackal, onkjes- and common jackal. Deſcription of the ratel. Its manner of plundering bees neſts. Very difficult to kill. The zerda, or animal anonyme of Buffon. Bruce's miſtake concerning it rectified. Deſcription of the honey-guide. Miſtake in the Philoſ. Tranſ. rectified. The jerboa Capenſis. The bleeſmoll, or mus Capenſis. The zand-moll, or mus Caffer, reſembles the rhinoceros. The talpa Aſiatica, or variable mole, more properly the ſorex aureus, deſcribed. Anſwer to Dr. Pallas's query. The gazels of this country deſcribed. The hartbeeſt and elk-antilope, the fat of this latter very fine. They migrate to the ſouthward in great droughts. Chaſe of an elk-antilope. The beaſt ſweats blood. Dangers of the chaſe in this country. The author's horſe falls with him. The koedoe, or coudou. Pleaſant miſtake of Buffon concerning the name. The Cape-chamois, or gemſe-bok, ſomewhat reſembles the elk of Kolbe. The blaauw-bok, bunte-bok, and gnu. The ree-bok, riet-ree-bok, vlak-ſteen-bok, ſteen-bok, duyker-bok and klip-ſpringer. A baboon hunt—the dogs ſhew more malice againſt this animal than againſt any other. Strictures on Buffon's opinion concerning the neceſſity of a meat-diet for man. Deſcription of the camelopardalis. Defence of Haſſelquiſt againſt Buffon. Pleaſant opinion of the latter concerning the horns of oxen. Buffon convicted of ſetting the horns on the wrong head, p. 248.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

JOURNEY FROM AGTER BRUNTJES-HOOGTE TO THE TWO VISCH-RIVERS, AND RESIDENCE AT THOSE PLACES.

Departure from Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte. Beauty in a desert. Shoot a tiger. Instance of a tiger got the better of by a slave. Unwelcome visit from a large party of Caffres. Preparations for their reception. The conference. Their method of slaughtering their meat. Heaps of stones, probably antique monuments. Kok's-craal. Amazing swiftness of the Hottentots. Blockade of the sea-cows in their pits. Great danger from one of them. Cry of this animal described. A sea-cow shot by one of the party in his sleep. Her calf carried off and slaughtered. Description of it. The hippopotamus lives entirely on herbs and grass. Is sometimes seen in the sea, but cannot drink the salt water. Copulation, size, and method of catching these animals. Not slow in their pace. Medical virtues of their skulls. Anatomy of the calf. Leaches of a new species about its anus. Disquisition on its different names. Proposals for catching and keeping these animals alive. The waggon in danger of being overturned by a rhinoceros in its flight. A rhinoceros hunt. A Hottentot coward becomes bold from sensibility. The fine scent of the Hottentots accounted for. Two of the Hottentots in the author's train shoot a rhinoceros a sleep. Hottentot bribe. Instance of their peculiar turn of mind. Love in a desert. Drowsiness the effect of love. Recipe for that passion. Billet-doux of a forester, p. 300.

CHAP. XVI.

JOURNEY BACK TO THE CAPE.

Rhinoceros hunt. Dangerous ride in the dark. Diabolical yell of a pack of hyænas. Congé of a Hottentot. Plettenberg's colony. Artifice of a hippopotamus to breathe in the water. Another of a coloniſt to cheat the government. The golden age restored among the Gunjeman Hottentots. The riches of a female Gunjeman. Simplicity of their diet. Zwartkops-river. Boldness of three young lions. Damaquas Hottentots. The sea-cows go to sea with the tide. The company scared by a buffalo, and lost in a wood. The travellers return to their old host, J. Kok. Inconvenience of feather beds. Red wine and oysters. Scorched

ſerpents. The bulla achatina. A country in flames. Wagenboom-river. The author loſes his way on horſeback in a dreadful ſtorm of thunder and lightning. Method of converting grapes into raiſins. Famine ariſing from the drought. Reviſit Artaquas-kloof. The author's collections hurt by the waggon's overturning there. Valſche-rivier. Great ſcarcity of ploughſhares in Africa, and of wrought iron in general. A battle royal between a Hottentot and his wife. A receipt to promote union in the married ſtate. The imaginary gold-mine. The aloe plant diſcovered by a Negro ſlave. Method of preparing the gum from it. The geitje, a highly venomous lizard. Dreadful conſequences of its bite. Cured by a ſlave. Conjectures on its origin. Deſcription of this animal. Syſtematical deſcription of the lacerta Capenſis. A very large ſpecies of lizard, and very difficult to kill. Deſcription of a ſingular anonymous quadruped. A farmer murdered by his ſlaves. Surprizing eſcape of his ſon. Cruelty of the coloniſts to their ſlaves, and horrid puniſhments inflicted on them. Public executions only ſerve to irritate the reſt. Different diſpoſitions of the ſlaves of different nations. Peculiar turn of mind of the Buguneſe. The author returns by the way of Roode-zand. A lake newly diſcovered at Sneeuwberg. Brandy made from a ſpecies of cactus. Arrival at the Cape, p. 350.

A VOYAGE

A

VOYAGE

TO THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

CHAP. X.

JOURNEY FROM SEA-COW-RIVER TO LITTLE SUNDAY-RIVER.

ON the 1st day of December we set off on our journey eastward from *Zee-koe-rivier*, and the next morning from *Cabeljauuw-rivier*, which was the last place we came to that was inhabited by christians. At noon we reached *Camtours-rivier*, where we baited. 1775. December.

Here a Hottentot captain, or rather a patriarch, exercised dominion over about half a hundred people, but was still in his way a sovereign. He was a little old man, of the name of KIES. I should at first sight have been easily tempted to consider him as reigning merely over women,

1775. December. as at that time the company, in which we found him ſmoking his pipe conſiſted only of females; for the men (excepting ſome few who lay ill of a putrid fever) were all out, ſome of them to hunt a lion, which had lately committed ravages among their cattle; and the others, it was ſaid, were gone to a great diſtance, in order to gather a certain ſucculent plant, which they made uſe of for chewing, either for the ſake of paſſing the time away, or on account of its being of a pleaſant taſte, and having the property of aſſuaging their hunger. Captain KIES, therefore, abſolutely denied our requeſt; which was, that he would let us have ſome of his Hottentots by way of guides, who might likewiſe be a neceſſary aſſiſtance to us, and reinforcement of our company in the journey we were going to make through the wilderneſs.

In the meanwhile, I could not help being rather aſhamed of the rude behaviour of my third Hottentot or markſman, PLATTJE; for though I had hitherto never ſeen him at all blunt in his behaviour, but had remarked, on the contrary, that he had always addreſſed theſe Hottentot patriarchs with ſome kind of reſpect, I now obſerved, that immediately on our coming into the preſence of a perſon of ſuch great authority, without the leaſt bow or ceremony of any kind, he went uninvited and ſat himſelf down by the ſide of him, at the ſame time filling his pipe out of the other's pouch, and calling about him for milk to drink. This behaviour, nevertheleſs, did not ſeem to be at all taken ill; on the contrary, they immediately brought him a cup of bagged milk. I obſerved at this time, as well as on my return hither, that KIES like Captain RUNDGANGER, of whom

whom I made mention at page 240, of Volume I. always had his captain's ſtaff in his hand or elſe cloſe by him; and this ſtaff, was every way as plain and ſimple as RUNDGANGER'S: but though KIES was much better circumſtanced with regard both to the number of his people and of his cattle, yet he as good as dwelt with his court and the reſt of his ſubjects in the open air; his palace conſiſting only of a few poles ſet up ſlanting in the earth with a ragged mat thrown over them, which of courſe admitted the wind in ſeveral places, and let in the rain in wet weather. This ſhed, thus open on three ſides, and in a great meaſure at the top, was, however, uſeful enough at that time of the year, and in that warm climate. The winter, or more properly ſpeaking, the rainy ſeaſon, would, probably, oblige them to provide themſelves with a better dwelling. 1775. December.

That ſame day we continued our journey, making towards *Loory-rivier*, where we took up our abode at night. Here we met with a farmer, who in his ox-waggon had followed the courſe of *Zondags-rivier* all the way from *Camdebo*; a country of that kind which I have deſcribed at page 246 of Volume I. under the denomination of *Carrow*. He informed us, that this year, in which the drought was unuſually great in all parts, it was remarkably ſo there, as ſcarcely a drop of rain had fallen there in the ſpace of eight months; but juſt as he was leaving thoſe parts, he had had ſeveral ſhowers along the courſe of that river.

He, therefore, diſſuaded us from taking that road, as it was, for the greater part of it, entirely unbeaten, arid, and rugged; and likewiſe, becauſe both water and game were

1775. December. extremely ſcarce there. In conſequence of this latter circumſtance, as his proviſions were almoſt entirely ſpent, he was juſt going to knock one of his draught-oxen on the head, by way of procuring food for himſelf and his ſuite, when two hartbeeſts by great good-luck came up directly to the waggon, in order to take a view of it, one of which he immediately ſhot.

This ſame peaſant had unexpectedly met on this road with about an hundred wandering Caffres. Their patriarch or chief, had propoſed to ſleep the firſt night along with the farmer in his waggon, who, on the other hand, ſhould ſleep with him in his tent the night following. This the farmer not conſenting to, the Caffre patriarch was ſo far from taking it ill, that, on the contrary, he had killed an ox, and preſented the farmer and his ſuite with ſome fine pieces of beef. The boor likewiſe informed me, that the Caffre cattle were uncommonly fat and in good condition; at which he was the more ſurprized, as they were not turned out till noon, and driven home very early. He, moreover, obſerved, that the Caffres fondled and talked to their cattle a good deal as they ſtood in the craal; doubtleſs, in the ſame manner as the Arabians do to their horſes; which not a little contributes to making them thrive and rendering them briſk and lively, and at the ſame time more intelligent and tractable.

On the 3d we baited at noon near *Galge-boſch*, a little wood which was much frequented by lions, and ſtill more by buffaloes. I was conſequently more than ever in pain for my cattle, as, though there was very good paſturage on the ſpot, they had ſtolen away from it, and were miſſing

missing for several hours. In the mean time, we were apprehensive, that they had been scared away from the place by lions; but the fact was, that being very thirsty, they had strayed into a dale towards a pit full of very muddy water, where they were found. My Hottentots were of opinion, that cattle would find out water by the scent at a very great distance. I have heard some colonists say, that they suspected the same of the Hottentots, as they can find water upon occasion better than any colonists; but this cannot proceed from any thing else than the Hottentots greater assiduity in this point, and being more accustomed to wander about the fields, by which means they have acquired a particular skill in tracing out this necessary article of life from certain peculiarities of situation, and various other circumstances. 1775. December.

Indeed, we could get nothing fit to drink ourselves; and it was late at night before, thirsty as we were, we got to a land-spring; which, to our great vexation, we found dried up; so that there were only here and there in the mire a print of the buffaloes feet deeper than ordinary, in which we observed a little moisture. We therefore dug deeper holes with our hands, and waited with all the patience we were masters of, till the water was collected in them, and could be taken out by means of small basons. But besides that it was as thick as hasty-pudding, it had acquired so rank a taste from the buffaloes that had laid and wallowed in it, that even the Hottentots made wry faces at it; and our horses began to blow and snort at the strong buffalo-scent which affected their nostrils, even before they tasted the water. Our thirst, however, obliged

us

1775. December. us frequently to ſip a little of it juſt as it was; for when it was made into coffee or tea, it was ſtill more intolerable. To ſearch about elſewhere at this time when it was dark, was not only impoſſible but dangerous, on account of the lions. At break of day we diſcovered ſome traces which led us to the fountain-head of this land-ſpring, which had been cloſed up by the trampling of the buffaloes feet; we, therefore, made haſte to dig it open again, when we found ſome more tolerable water to quench our thirſt, which was actually inſupportable. We frequently made uſe of ſugar-candy as a tolerably good palliative for our thirſt, during our travels in this hot and ſcorching climate; but this did not relieve us for any long time together. At 9 o'clock in the evening the thermometer was at 64, and the next day, being the 4th, at day-break, a good deal of dew having fallen, I found it 10 degrees lower.

We now purſued our journey, taking the lower road by *Van Staades-rivier*, which at that time was brackiſh and rather deep. For want of proper precaution in our Hottentots, our oxen turned back before they got half way over the river, and at the ſame time were thrown into confuſion and diſorder; ſo that it was a difficult matter, to ſave both them and the waggon from ſinking. When we had got to the other ſide, and were baiting our cattle, we were viſited by eighteen *Gonaquas*-Hottentots, from a craal which was juſt in the neigbourhood

This nation conſiſted of about two hundred people, who were all graziers, and at that time dwelt there in two ſeparate villages. They are certainly a mixture of Hottentots and Caffres, as their language had an affinity with

with that of both theſe nations; but in their utterance, which was like that of human beings, in the *natural* blackneſs of their complexions, in the great ſtrength and robuſtneſs of their limbs, and laſtly in the height of their ſtature, they bore a greater reſemblance to the Caffres, ſeveral of whom they likewiſe had at that time among them. The cloaks of the *Gonaquas* are likewiſe made of dreſſed cow-hides, like thoſe of the Caffres. Theſe cloaks are very ſupple; a quality that proceeds partly from being rubbed a good deal, which I myſelf ſaw performed with ſtones on the inſide of them; and partly from the great quantity of greaſe, which, being mixed up with buckupowder, is rubbed into them. Both ſexes are adorned with, and ſet a great value upon, braſs rings, which they wear on their arms and legs, as well as braſs plates of different ſizes and figures, which are faſtened in their hair and ears. 1775. December.

With reſpect to beads, which, ſpeaking of in a general way, they call *ſintela*, the ſmall red ones are much more coveted than the reſt; theſe are called *lenkitenka*, (See the ſpecimen of the Caffre's language, which I have annexed at the concluſion of this journal.) The genuine Caffres had, in this point, exactly the ſame taſte; but many of them had got ivory rings, of the thickneſs and breadth of about half an inch, and of ſuch a ſize as to be ſtrung upon the arms above the elbows. Theſe, however, are worn only by the men; for which reaſon a Caffre, who had ſold me his bracelets, ſeemed extremely diſtreſſed, ſaying, that he was now naked about the arms like a woman. Beſides that both the Caffres and Gonaquas are very importunate

1775. December. tunate beggars, they are likewiſe exceedingly unreaſonable in their dealings, as when they make their payments, they are very apt to aſk for a handſome preſent into the bargain.

Both the Gonaquas and Caffres differ from other Hottentots in this particular, that they make uſe of circumciſion. This operation is performed on youths of different ages, as they are accuſtomed to wait till they can perform it on ſeveral at a time.

The Gonaquas women make uſe of almoſt the ſame kind of apron or veil as the Hottentot females do. The men are much more naked and leſs covered about this part than the males among the Hottentots, inaſmuch as they cover with a little cap, or caſe, made of the ſkin of an animal, the extremities only of what modeſty ſhould teach them to conceal entirely. This ſocket, reſembling the extremity of the thumb of a glove, is ſometimes faſtened with a ſmall thong, or the ſinew of an animal, to ſome ſtrings of beads or leathern belts, which they wear for ornament's ſake round their waiſts. Some individuals are ſeen with lions or buffaloes tails hanging on theſe ſame belts, as trophies of their courage in having killed theſe beaſts.

By reaſon of the nakedneſs of theſe people, of which I have juſt been giving a deſcription, it may be thought that they have as little modeſty as covering: but the fact is, that very few of them could be induced, even by preſents, to take off their little caſes, in conſequence of my wiſh to be perfectly convinced that they were circumciſed. Indeed, I have been told by a farmer, that in Cafferland one does not unfrequently ſee even grown up girls without any covering

vering whatſoever; and that in certain dances, it conſtitutes part of the ſolemnity for the youths of both ſexes to make ſuch oblations to love in the preſence of every one, as by the laws of decency and of civilized nations, are conſidered as ſacred to the married ſtate alone. 1775. December.

The Caffres ſeemed to me to reſemble very much in appearance the *Moſambique* ſlaves, whom I had ſeen at the Cape; and, perhaps, theſe nations border upon each other; the former being probably deſcended from the latter, or the latter from the former.

The Gonaquas Hottentots, who at this time paid their reſpects to me, came chiefly with an intent to beg tobacco. They were all of them armed with one or more of the javelins, which they call *haſſagais*, (vide Plate II. Vol. I. Fig. 1, 2.) as well as with ſhort ſticks, to which they gave the name of *kirris*. With one of theſe I ſaw a lad very nearly hit a ſparrow-hawk in its flight. But they took ſo bad an aim, when they threw their javelins, that, though they tried very often, they could not hit a handkerchief which I had ſet up between two ſticks, at the diſtance of twenty paces, by way of mark for them, and at the ſame time as a prize for him that ſhould hit it. This want of dexterity, certainly proceeded from their having neglected to practiſe, as they lived too far from the Boſhies-men Hottentots, and Caffres, and too near to the Chriſtians, to be able to exerciſe any hoſtilities againſt the former, or to dare to do it againſt the latter. In the mean time they were very buſy in examining narrowly each others javelins, and in feeling for their proper balance. They threw them, however, with a great deal of force; and, as I have been told by ſeveral

1775. December. people, are able to pierce a man or a gazel through the body at the diſtance of twenty paces. I then ſhot at a ſheet of paper with a fowling-piece, and as they appeared to be very much amazed at the holes that were made, and at the ſame time to be very deſirous of keeping the paper, they took it without any ceremony, but ſhortly after offered to give it me again for a morſel of tobacco.

The *Gonaquas* Hottentots moreover were graziers, and in ſome ſort tillers of the ground, as the Caffre nation is likewiſe ſaid to be. The kind of corn which they ſow, is the *holcus ſorghum*, which is likewiſe uſed in the ſouth of Europe, and known to yield abundantly. The coloniſts call it *Caffer-corn*. The ſtalks ſhoot up to the height of a man, and as thick as a ruſh. They terminate in a pedicle or branchy ear, a foot and a half long, with ſeeds of about the ſame ſize as thoſe of rice; two or three of theſe ears generally yield three quarters of a pint of corn. The time of ſowing this ſeed, is ſaid to be in Auguſt or September. But in the beginning of November, while I yet remained in *Sitſicamma*, I ſaw it already fit for cutting, at a farmer's who ſet little ſtore by it, giving it only to his cattle. The *Caffres* uſe to bruiſe this corn between ſtones, and make it into loaves, which they bake under the embers.

They moſtly, however, uſe to ferment it with a certain root and water, till it produces a kind of inebriating liquor. They generally conſume their whole ſtock, which, however, is not conſiderable, immediately in the autumn. The Caffre prince PALOO, whom the coloniſts called king PHARAOH,

RAOH, is ſaid to have killed himſelf with drinking this liquor. 1775. December.

On ſeveral accounts we haſtened our departure from hence. Our courſe was now to the north, over plain level fields, for the greater part covered with a dry arid graſs to the height of about two feet. Our guide took us firſt to a well of lukewarm water, and afterwards at night to another pool of water, at the bottom of a river that was dried up. Both places were very acceptable to us as well as to our cattle, though the water was none of the beſt. Near this latter ſpot we took up our night's lodging.

It was not without difficulty, that we could collect wood enough round about the neighbourhood to boil our tea-kettle; and after all, we ran a great riſk of having an end put to our whole expedition by a fire. A Hottentot, in looking for ſomething with a piece of lighted wood, happened to ſet the dry graſs on fire, which ſpread in it almoſt as if it had been oakum; ſo that had we not been very quick in ſtopping the progreſs of the flames, and moreover mutually aſſiſted each other, we ſhould ſoon have ſeen the whole diſtrict in one continued flame, and our waggon would have been entirely demoliſhed in the conflagration, and blown up into the air; for there was not only a good deal of coom about it, but it alſo contained many inflammable matters; ſuch as the ſail-cloth tilt, dried herbs and paper, a caſk full of ſpirits, and about twenty pounds weight of gunpowder. The wind blew hard from the ſouth-weſt, the thermometer at eleven at night being 66, and the next day about dawn at 64, when we ſaddled our horſes and put our oxen to the waggon. At nine we

1775. December. got to little *Zwart-kops* river, and ſet off from thence about four in the afternoon, and at ſix o'clock arrived at great *Zwart-kops* river.

On the road we had ſeen large herds of the wild aſſes, called *quaggas*, and of *hart-beeſts*; as likewiſe, for the firſt time, ſix female buffaloes, with two young ones. Theſe came from the ſea-ſide, from whence our guide ſuppoſed they had been forced to make their retreat thus at noon, either on account of the lions or of flies.

We had not yet been able to get within reach of any game, ſo that our ſalted wether had hitherto been our only reſource. This, in its ſkin bag, had already acquired a pretty ſtrong haut gout, in conſequence of the warmth of the weather. Mr. IMMELMAN, who was nice in his eating, and not uſed to put up with ſalted meat, eſpecially when it was rather tainted, had, from our firſt ſetting out, it being now the fifth day, ſuffered much from hunger. For our ſmall ſtock of bread would not at this time afford us above two biſcuits a man per diem, each biſcuit weighing about an ounce and a half.

At this *Zwart-kops* river, where we were now arrived, and intended to paſs the night, we found two farmers had got in before us, who were come thither in order to get ſalt and hunt. Indeed, they had already ſhot ſeveral heads of game, which they had hung up in large ſlips and ſhreds on the buſhes, waggons, and fences, in order to dry it in the ſun, in the ſame manner as the Hottentots did the elephant's fleſh near *Diep-rivier*, as I mentioned before, Volume I. page 313. From this fleſh there was diffuſed round about the ſpot not only a crude and rank ſmell, but likewiſe a putrid

putrid ſtench from ſuch parts of it as had arrived at the ſtate of putrefaction; and the farmers wives and children, together with the Hottentots who had accompanied them, with a view to aſſiſt them as well as for their own pleaſure, were employed in feaſting upon it, and ſleeping, and ſcaring away a number of birds of prey, which hovered round about them and over their heads, in order to ſteal away the fleſh. This horrid ſpectacle of ſo many carnivorous human creatures, awakened in me a lively remembrance of the cannibals in *New Zealand*, and had like to have entirely taken away our appetites for a meat ſupper, ſo that we reſolved to bear with our hunger that night as well as we could: but at laſt comes our guide, very opportunely, with the ſhoulder of a *hart-beeſt*, which we immediately cut, and dreſſed it in our pot with dripping; a diſh which was called by the Hottentots by the name of the inſtrument (*t'nora*, which means a knife,) with which it is cut in pieces. Our mouths watered at the ſight of it, and we eat it with an excellent appetite, which was no longer ſpoiled by any reflections ſimilar to thoſe I have juſt mentioned. 1775. December.

On the 6th, at break of day, my guide and I took a ride, in order to cut up the *hart-beeſt* he had ſhot, and loaded one horſe with as much as he could carry, in order to lay it up in the waggon, by way of making proviſion for the journey.

The *tulbagia*, a ſmall hexandrous plant, called by LINNÆUS after M. TULBAG, governor at the Cape, grew here in great abundance; though I had never before ſeen more than a ſingle ſpecimen of it, and that was on the road

to

1775. December. to *Zwellendam*. Here I likewiſe ſaw, for the firſt time, a ſmall kind of onion, with ſpiral leaves; caught an *amphiſbœna*; and drew up the deſcription of a *cleome juncea*, which I have inſerted in the Acta Societ. Upſal. Vol. III. page 192.

The farmers here, as well as ſome others, who were going to the Cape before me, were ſo obliging, as, at my requeſt, to take with them the packet of herbs I had already collected; otherwiſe, I ſhould not have had room enough in my waggon for all my collection.

The tide was very viſible in this river. The wind blew ſtrong from S. S. W. At noon the thermometer was 71 in the ſhade, and in the evening, after the moon was up, at 64. On the 7th, at half paſt five in the morning, the thermometer was at 52.

We now proceeded on our journey, going northwards, and in our way, a good mile and a half from the river, we met with the capital *Zout-pan*, or Salt-pan. By this name thoſe places are diſtinguiſhed, where there is a quantity of culinary ſalt produced.

This ſalt-pan was an extenſive plain, covered over with a level and continued cruſt of ſalt, upon which, in ſeveral places, there ſtood a little water; ſo that there could not be a more natural reſemblance of a frozen lake than this. This by conſequence, being contraſted with the warmth of the weather and ſurrounding trees and flowers, would certainly at firſt ſight have ſtruck me with the greateſt amazement, had I not been previouſly informed of the real cauſe of the phænomenon. Towards the ſides the cruſt of ſalt was thin; and juſt there one might perceive, that it

was diffuſed over a loamy and clayey ſoil. But a little farther towards the middle, I found it was above two feet deep, without being able to diſcover the bottom of it, or any water underneath it. The coloniſts who worked here with poles, imagine that the cruſt of ſalt extends many fathoms below the ſurface. 1775. December.

This ſalt-pan was about three miles in circumference, and of an oblong ſhape. After there have been ſeveral warm days together, there is formed in different places on the cruſt, a hoar froſt, as it were, which is the fineſt and ſtrongeſt ſalt, and is with great reaſon ſuppoſed by the coloniſts to exceed that of Lunenburgh. Indeed, the whole of it ſeems to be quite fine and pure: and it appears to me, and is allowed by others, to give a better taſte to the butter and meat that is preſerved in it, than any that comes from the other ſalt-pans to be met with in Africa; as *Saldanka-bay*, between *Zoet-melk* and *Gawrits* rivers, and in certain places behind the *Sneeuwbergs*, or ſnowy mountains.

My Hottentots were occupied in collecting a ſtock of the fineſt ſalt, as much as I thought we ſhould want for the purpoſe of ſalting our meat, and ſuch ſkins of animals as I might wiſh to preſerve. In the mean time, I myſelf made a rich capture of many reptiles and inſects hitherto unknown; ſome of which were ſtuck faſt and dried up in the cryſtals of ſalt, while others were dying, or had juſt expired, in conſequence of the viſcid ſaline matter with which they were in contact. Many inſects were likewiſe drowned in the clear water or briny liquid, which, after it had rained, was collected in certain places in the incruſtation of

1775. December. of ſalt. We were obliged to wade a good way into it; and although the ſalt dried and cryſtallized upon our legs and feet, till at night we found water to waſh it off with, yet no ill effects enſued from it: a circumſtance which I thought proper to mention, for the encouragement of ſuch as may hereafter collect inſects in this or other places of the ſame nature.

That peculiar inſect, the *cimex paradoxus*, which I have deſcribed and given a drawing of in the Swediſh Tranſactions, (Vol. XXXVIII. p. 235,) *I diſcovered at this place, as at noon-tide I ſought for ſhelter among the branches of a ſhrub from the intolerable heat of the ſun. Though the air was now extremely ſtill and calm, ſo as hardly to have ſhaken an aſpen leaf, yet I thought I ſaw a little withered, pale, crumpled leaf, eaten as it were by caterpillars, flittering from the tree. This appeared to me ſo very extraordinary, that I thought it worth my while ſuddenly to quit my verdant bower in order to contemplate it; and I could ſcarcely believe my eyes, when I ſaw a live inſect, in ſhape and colour reſembling the fragment of a withered leaf, with the edges turned up and eaten away, as it were, by caterpillars, and at the ſame time all over beſet with prickles. Nature, by this peculiar form, has certainly extremely well defended and concealed, as it were in a maſk, this inſect from birds and its other diminutive foes; in all probability with a view to preſerve it, and employ it for ſome important office in the ſyſtem of her œconomy; a ſyſtem with which we are too little acquainted, in general too little inveſtigate, and, in every part of it, can never ſufficiently admire with

* See likewiſe Plate VII. of this Volume.

that

that reſpect and veneration which we owe to the great Author of nature and Ruler of the univerſe. 1775. December.

At night we came to *Kuga*, a little river, the water of which was brackiſh; but ſome good and freſh water was found in a well hard by it. Here likewiſe we had a haſty glimpſe of two hares, which ſeemed to reſemble the ordinary hares of Europe.

My companion, who was ſubject to a ſpitting of blood, happened here to be much troubled with this complaint; a complaint to which the animal diet he had been accuſtomed to during the whole journey, together with the fatigue he had undergone, and the ſcorching heat of the ſun, had neceſſarily diſpoſed him. Bleeding, together with a little ſaltpetre and the water from this ſpring, were the only means, (and thoſe not ill adapted to the purpoſe,) which we fortunately had at hand for his recovery in this deſert place. Upon the whole, I took as much care of him as I poſſibly could on an open plain, with no other canopy than the ſky. The fineneſs of the weather, together with the coolneſs of the night, and above all his utter averſion to all ſickneſs, circumſtanced as we were, I believe did not a little contribute towards his ſpeedy recovery. The next morning, however, when, in order to make a trial of his ſtrength, he walked a few hundred paces from our baiting-place, his life was in ſtill greater and more imminent danger. This was from a herd of young cattle, which, by way of experiment, had been left in this place, under the care of a ſlave, and being at that time unuſed to the ſight of any human creature beſides, had like to have gored him to death. Theſe fierce animals then, making a ſemi-

1775. December. circle about Mr. IMMELMAN, advanced continually nearer and nearer to him, ſo that he was obliged to retire backwards. According to the old ſaying, "a curſt cow has ſhort horns;" this we found in a manner verified on this occaſion, for a heifer without horns was the foremoſt and moſt vicious of them all. I therefore haſtened thither with my loaded piece, with an intention of diſcharging it among them, and at the ſame time, repeating the firing as often as I was able, to cover our retreat. In the mean time, however, it came into my head firſt to try a milder method, which I had heard of, when in Europe, as a certain defence againſt the attacks of wild and vicious bulls; and which, in ſhort, was no more than to hold your hat before your face, and on a ſudden uncover it at intervals, at the ſame time, with a quick pace, advancing upon them, and ſtanding ſtill alternately. With this method we ſo far ſucceeded, that the heifer without horns, as well as the reſt of the herd, was very much ſcared. Juſt after this, one of my Hottentots was attacked by the ſame herd, but eſcaped them by the lightneſs of his heels. Afterwards, on our returning this way home, we were informed, that the owner of the herd had been obliged to remove it from hence, as a lion had begun to infeſt theſe parts.

Two hartbeeſts came likewiſe this morning early very near our waggon in order to ſurvey us, but unluckily juſt at that time we had no gun ready charged. At 12 o'clock I found the thermometer, when placed in the ſhade under our waggon, at 83.

In the afternoon we ſet off again, directing our courſe to the eaſt, and came to a place on the lower part of *Zondags-rivier*,

dags-rivier, known by the name of *t'Nuka t'Kamma*, which, I believe, ſignifies *graſſy water*. We here found the recent traces of a lion, and took proper precautions againſt it, in caſe we ſhould go down to the river. In the evening we likewiſe thought we ſaw in the thickets an elephant at a good diſtance off. Theſe animals are ſaid to aſſemble in great numbers in the thorny thickets, made by the *guaijacum afrum* and the *mimoſa nilotica*, which afford them a kind of aſylum. 1775. December.

We now began to find the Guinea hen (*numida meleagris*) in theſe parts. They kept together in flocks, and conſequently were very ſhy and cautious. I obſerved they flew low and ſtraight forwards, like our partridges. They appeared to get the greateſt part of their food on the ground, but at night they perched together up in the trees; ſo that I once killed ſix of them at one ſhot, and ſeveral more were wounded, which, however, eſcaped in the dark. Their fleſh was dry, and much inferior to that of the common hen.

Of *Sunday-rivier*, which at this part made a great many windings, the banks to us were extremely high and ſteep, and indeed quite perpendicular; conſiſting, to all appearance, merely of the ſame dry and clayey materials as the ſurface of the earth exhibited on our ſide. In the upper part, the bank appeared to be quite plain and level; but it is difficult to conjecture, whence this diſſimilarity in the banks of the river ſhould ariſe, unleſs one of them had been thrown up by an earthquake; or that the river by degrees had made its way to the ſide of ſome flat hill level at top, and undermined it, till the part that hung over fell down, when it would neceſſarily be quite level and per-

1775. December. pendicular; as, in fact, it is at preſent. At night we had rain, with a ſouth-weſt wind.

On the 9th at five o'clock in the morning, when we departed from hence, the thermometer was at 62; and at half paſt three in the afternoon we arrived at *Zondags-rivier's-drift*. We had, nevertheleſs, gone out of our road on purpoſe to chaſe two buffaloes, one of which made its eſcape though wounded, and the other leaped into a cloſe thicket, where it was neither adviſeable, nor indeed poſſible to follow it. In the mean time, to my great aſtoniſhment, we could ſee from the top of the buſhes the animal piercing through the thickeſt of the wood with the greateſt eaſe, juſt as if he was merely running through a rye-field. We likewiſe ſaw a *Koedoe* (the *antilope ſtrepſiceros* of PALLAS.)

Soon after our arrival at this part of *Sunday-rivier*, we were waited upon by three old Hottentots, who ſeemed as if they came to pry into our buſineſs in thoſe parts. They were, properly ſpeaking, of the race of *Boſhies-men*, though of the more civilized ſort, who, even in their own language, diſtinguiſhed themſelves by the name of *good Boſhies-men*; probably from the circumſtance of their grazing a few cattle, and not living by rapine like others of their countrymen. My guide explained their buſineſs to me, which was to beg tobacco, and to complain of their diſtreſſed ſituation; the farmers having been with them, and having carried off all their young people, ſo that they were now left alone in their old age to look after themſelves and their cattle. I ordered my interpreter to tell them in reply, that we, as they

they might very well perceive, were no farmers, and ſtill leſs kidnappers. 1775. December.

I muſt here inform the reader, that many of the ignorant Hottentots and Indians not having been able to form any idea of the Dutch Eaſt-India Company and the board of direction, the Dutch from the very beginning in India, politically gave out the company for one individual powerful prince, by the chriſtian name of *Jan* or *John*. This likewiſe procured them more reſpect, than if they had actually been able to make the Indians comprehend, that they were really governed by a company of merchants. On this account I ordered my interpreter to ſay farther, that we were the children of *Jan Company*, who had ſent us out to view this country, and collect plants for medical purpoſes. I likewiſe bid him give them to underſtand, that we had an amazing quantity of powder and ball, together with five ſtand of fire-arms, as they themſelves ſaw; that we intended to ſhoot a great deal of game, and it would be a great pity if they could not come along with us, and partake of the abundant ſpoil of fleſh, which would otherwiſe be ſuffered to lie as food for the birds and beaſts of prey.

This ſtory, patched up in haſte, with a mixture of truth and falſhood, ſeemed to have made a deep impreſſion on theſe Hottentots. It was, indeed, touching them in a tender part, to talk to them of ſo much meat, and to pity their emaciated ſtate, without letting them obſerve, however, that it was more for my own advantage than theirs, that I was ſo deſirous of their company. That ſame night then, there not only came to me three middle-aged men.

1775. December. men to offer their ſervices, but I even ſaw the three old fellows above-mentioned, with great eagerneſs and diligence preparing their ſhoes, in order to be ready the next morning to follow us in our expedition.

Having given my guide to underſtand, how ſtrange this conduct of the Hottentots appeared to me, when I compared it with the account they had given of themſelves at firſt, at the ſame time that from this circumſtance I apprehended they would prove falſe; beſides, that I doubted, whether we ſhould be able to find food for ſo many as ſix of them, we being five in number ourſelves, which in all made eleven perſons; he replied, "Pſhaw! this is always the Hottentot's cuſtom to lye the firſt word they ſpeak; and as for victuals, we ſhall get game enough to eat, I'll warrant you." The latter part of his reply gave me ſome ſatisfaction; for as to the Hottentots cuſtom of lying at the firſt word, I was pretty even with them in that reſpect, with my pretended relationſhip to *Jan Company*.

On the 10th in the morning we ſet out on our journey, being in all eleven perſons. The ſix newly-arrived Hottentots did not underſtand a word of Dutch, on which account we were obliged to make uſe of the three others as interpreters; though, in general, we made them underſtand us pretty well by ſigns, and ſome few Hottentot words we had learnt the meaning of, and could ourſelves pronounce with the proper clack againſt the roof of the mouth. Still, however, Mr. IMMELMAN and I could not be otherwiſe than anxious about the procuring of food for ſuch a number of people, when, in caſe of a ſcarcity, we expected to hear them grumbling againſt their *Moſes and Aaron*,

Aaron, who had enticed them into the deſert; for the buffalo which we had chaſed the day before got away from us, though the buſhes in more than one place were ſtained with his blood. Upon this, however, we ſoon obſerved, that our volunteer corps, the ſix laſt Hottentots, made no difficulty of eating, without any preparation whatever, the ill-taſted beans of a wild ſhrub, (the *guaiacum afrum.*) I thought I could ſhew the Hottentots another ſubſtance likewiſe, which might ſerve to appeaſe their hunger in caſe of neceſſity. This was the *gum arabic*, which they might gather in many ſpots thereabouts from the *mimoſa nilotica*; but this was a ſpecies of food very well known to them, and which they had often tried. When in want of other proviſions, the Boſhies-men are ſaid to live upon this for many days together. 1775. December.

This day I ſaw, for the firſt time, a herd of *boſch-varkens*, or, as they are likewiſe called, *wilde-varkens*, (wood-ſwine, or wild-ſwine) in their wild uncultivated ſtate; for I had hitherto only ſeen one of this ſpecies of animals in the menagerie at the Cape. It was confined there with a ſtrong iron chain, as it was very wild and vicious. M. PALLAS, who in his *Spicil. Zool.* Faſc. II. p. 11. and *Miſcel. Zool.* p. 16. has deſcribed this animal by the name of *aper Æthiopicus*, and given a figure of it, farther informs us in his *Spicil. Zool.* Faſc. XI. Additam. p. 84. that one of them killed the keeper of the menagerie at Amſterdam. One may eaſily conceive that this creature is very dangerous, if one only takes notice of its large tuſks, (vide Tab. V. l. c.) Theſe are four in number. Two of them proceed from the upper jaw, and turn upwards like a horn, conſiſt-

1775. December. ing, however, of a fine ivory-like ſubſtance. In a head of this animal ſalted and dried, which I gave to the Royal Academy of Sciences in Sweden, the tuſks or horns ſtand nine inches out of the jaws, and meaſure full five inches in circumference at the baſe. The two other tuſks, which come from the lower jaw, project but three inches from the mouth, being flat on the inſide, and correſponding with another plain ſurface ſimilar to it in the upper tuſks. Theſe the beaſts make uſe of not ſo much for biting, as for goring and butting with. A little pig of this ſpecies, which I afterwards caught at *Viſch-rivier*, and had it tied up, thinking to bring it alive along with me, had already got this trick, ſo that I was ſoon obliged to let it be killed. It was terribly vicious, and quick in all its motions; and though at that time not abſolutely dangerous, yet my Boſhies-men were very much afraid of it. "We had rather, ſaid they, attack a lion on the plain, than an African wild boar; for this, though much ſmaller, comes ruſhing on a man as ſwift as an arrow, and throwing him down ſnaps his legs in two, and rips up his belly before he can get to ſtrike it, and kill it with his javelin." The dwelling-place of this ſame ſpecies of wild boar, to which the avenues ſeemed to be very narrow, is under-ground. I have been told indeed, that the *boſch-varkens* go down into them backwards, and place themſelves there in a row one behind the other; but this is not very likely, for probably theſe paſſages are widened lower down. Thus much, however, is certain, that people do not dare to attack them in their holes, for fear of their coming out on them on a ſudden.

The

The body of this animal is ſmall in compariſon with its head, a conformation which facilitates its burrowing and living under-ground. Neither would it be adviſeable for a man on horſeback to approach too near or to hunt this animal, as it will often turn round on a ſudden, and ſtriking with its horns at the horſe's legs, afterwards kill both him and his rider. This day I purſued ſeveral pigs with the old ſows, with a view to ſhoot one of them, but in vain; nevertheleſs, the chaſe of them afforded me peculiar pleaſure. On a ſudden the heads of the old ones, which were before of a tolerable ſize, ſeemed to have grown ſtill larger and more ſhapeleſs than they were before; which momentary and wonderful change aſtoniſhed me ſo much the more, as my hard riding over a country full of buſhes and pits, had hitherto prevented me from giving ſufficient attention to the manner in which it was brought about. The ſecret, however, conſiſted in this; each of the old ones, while they were making off, took a pig in its mouth; a circumſtance that alſo explained to me another ſubject of my ſurprize, which was, that all the pigs which I was juſt before chaſing along with the old ones, vaniſhed all on a ſudden. But in this action we find a kind of unanimity among the wood-ſwine, in which they reſemble the tame ſpecies, and which they have in a greater degree than many other animals. It is likewiſe very aſtoniſhing, that the pigs ſhould be carried about in this manner between ſuch large tuſks as thoſe of their mothers, without being hurt, or crying out in the leaſt. I ſaw the ſame done, however, on two other occaſions, as I was chaſing them. The cry of theſe

1775. December.

1775. December. young ones was like that of our common pigs, as I found in ſome we afterwards caught.

I have it from pretty good authority, that one JOSHUA DE BOER, a farmer in Camdebo, had ſucceeded in obtaining a brood of theſe wood-ſwine, which had been coupled with the ordinary ſort; but as the perſon who told it me had not ſufficiently informed himſelf concerning the circumſtances, I could not get any farther inſight into the matter. This experiment having failed in Holland, as mentioned by M. PALLAS, is no reaſon why it ſhould not ſucceed better in other places. I obſerved a peculiar circumſtance on my return home through *Lange-kloof*, which was, that two tame pigs at a farmer's in that province, not only went down on their knees to graze, but even ſucceſſively changed this poſture to that of ſtanding, with the greateſt eaſe. This faculty the animal ſeems to have acquired in its ſubterraneous caverns, and it proceeds from the creature's neck being too ſhort to be conveniently lowered to the ground.

The African wood-ſwine are likewiſe diſtinguiſhed from any other ſpecies of ſwine, by four peculiar caruncles or excreſcences. Two of theſe are broad and flat, being about two inches over both in length and breadth, and are placed at the diſtance of a hand's breadth juſt before and underneath the eyes. The other two are ſpherical, an inch high, and are ſituated on the noſe at three inches diſtance, in a ſtraight line from behind the jaws. The tail is flatted at the tip; and this appendage they never fail, either old or young, to hold quite erect in the air during

during the whole time that they are purſued. With reſpect to taſte, I found the fleſh very much reſemble that of the ordinary pig; but never obſerved the animals themſelves to be of that dark hue aſcribed to them by M. PALLAS, and which M. VOSMAER has given them in the coloured figures he has publiſhed; thoſe that I ſaw being only of a bright yellow-colour, like the greateſt part of our domeſtic ſwine. Neither did I hear any body in the colony call them *haartloopers*, as M. VOSMAER pretends they are termed: though, on the other hand, I have frequently heard the Hottentots call them *kaunaba*, and have likewiſe been informed by them, that theſe creatures are fond of wallowing in the mire, and are wont to grub after the root of a ſhrub of the meſembryanthemum kind, which they call *da-t'kai*. 1775. December.

At night we came to the upper part of *t'Kurenoi*, or Little Sunday-river. We fixed our reſting-place at the diſtance of a few gun-ſhots from a clan of *baſtards*, or *Hottentot-Caffres*, who are the offſpring of the mixture of both theſe nations. They chiefly ſpoke the Caffre language, but had neither the large lips, robuſt, and eaſy form, nor the black complexion of the *Caffres*. They appeared to me not ſo ſwarthy as my own Hottentots, and I ſuppoſe, that they originate only from a ſet of people, who having acquired ſome cattle by ſervitude among the Caffres, had formed themſelves into this ſociety. The iris of their eyes was of a very dark brown hue, and almoſt, if not quite as dark as the pupil. They had a great quantity of cattle, and ſeemed to live very happily in their

1775. December. way. As ſoon as ever they had taken their cattle up from paſture they milked them; an occupation they intermixed with ſinging and dancing.

We ſeldom ſee ſuch happineſs and contentment as ſeems to be indicated by this feſtive cuſtom, in a handful of people totally uncultivated, and ſubſiſting in their original ſavage ſtate, in the midſt of a perfect deſert. Mr. IMMELMAN accompanied me, in order to behold with his own eyes the real archetype of that ſtate of paſtoral felicity, which the poets are continually occupied in painting and deſcribing. We announced ourſelves here likewiſe as being the children of the company, and were received by them with a friendly ſimplicity and homely freedom, which, however, by no means leſſened them in our thoughts as men. They preſented us with milk, and danced at our requeſt; at the ſame time giving us to underſtand, that our fame, as being a ſingular people with plaited hair, as well as ſimplers and viper-catchers, had reached them long before our arrival.

We were ſpectators of their country dances, in which there was very little either of agility or art. While their feet were employed in a kind of ſtamping and moderately ſlow movement, every one of them between whiles made ſeveral ſmall gentle motions with a little ſtick, which they held in their hands. The ſimplicity which prevailed in their dances was equally conſpicuous in their ſinging, the following being all the words uſed to the tune of one of their country dances, which I took down in writing at the time, *Maijema, Maijema, huh, huh, huh.* The former

part of this was chaunted repeatedly *piano* by an elderly matron, who was anſwered by the young men and maids in the latter words, ſung *ſtaccato* by way of chorus. It muſt be confeſſed, that this concert was not well adapted to ſatisfy a nice ear; but however, it inſpired a certain degree of joy and chearfulneſs, and was by no means diſagreeable. 1775. December.

They had another kind of dance, which conſiſted in taking each other by the hand, and dancing gently in a circle round about one or more perſons, who were placed in the middle of the ring, and whoſe movements were briſker and quicker; yet we could not help laughing, though at the ſame time we were not a little hurt, to ſee the poor infants pop their heads alternately in and out of the bags hanging at the backs of their mothers, who were likewiſe dancing; ſo that we had great reaſon to fear that they would break their necks. But what was ſtill more ridiculous was, that theſe little Hottentots were far from ſhewing any diſlike to this treatment; but, on the contrary, were ſo well pleaſed with it, that they ſufficiently ſhewed their diſpleaſure by crying, when their mothers, who were ſoon tired with carrying them on their backs, wanted to ſet them down, or go out of the dance.

Beſides the pleaſures which theſe daily dances may be ſuppoſed to afford them, they have at their greater feſtivals the more delightful enjoyment of voluptuous love, which, at thoſe times, the youth of both ſexes, by their laws, have full opportunity given them to purſue. For it is ſaid, that the unmarried part of the company, in the very

1775. Deeember. very middle of the dance, withdraw to a private place in couples ſucceſſively and at different intervals, without giving the leaſt ſubject of offence and ſcandal, and without having any occaſion to bluſh when they return again to the company. I have purpoſely ſaid only, that *opportunity is given them* for this purpoſe; as I could not learn, whether their laws, together with the opportunity, allowed the action itſelf, which, as I have mentioned above, the Caffres permit themſelves to tranſact in the preſence of the whole company that is dancing.

This remiſſneſs of their laws, however, in allowing them opportunities of this kind, ſeems to be in direct oppoſition to the rigorous ſtrictneſs of theſe ſame laws in the following particular. Any young woman whatſoever, who, after ſuch dance, ſhall prove pregnant, ſhall be put to death, together with her paramour; unleſs, which indeed is generally the caſe, the oldeſt people in the clan mitigate the puniſhment, by commuting it into a perpetual union; ordering them moreover, to forfeit an ox or a cow to feaſt the whole community with, by way of atonement for their crime. In this latter article of the mitigation of the decree, it is not difficult to perceive the ſelfiſh motives of the ſociety; but it is, perhaps, not ſo eaſy from this ſtrange edict itſelf, to trace out the intention of the primitive inſtitutor of it. Beſides, who could have ſuppoſed, that among theſe artleſs herdſmen another cuſtom ſhould prevail, which ſhould ſacrifice the virtue and innocence of the fair ſex to the intereſted views of a parent or guardian? A Hottentot, who at that time dwelt in thoſe parts, aſſured me,

me, that on any Hottentot's paying a ſtipulated price to a girl's relations, ſhe was obliged to ſleep with him; but that neither did the law ordain, nor had there been any inſtance known, that a young woman ſhould be delivered up into the arms of a Chriſtian, or white man, on any conſideration whatever. The Hottentot added, that for his part, he had not entered into any union here of the kind, as for two, or at moſt three nights enjoyment, it would have coſt him the price of a cow; a price, he ſaid, that would have made him dearly repent his bargain. 1775. December.

This Hottentot, who explained to me the circumſtances I have juſt been mentioning, and at the ſame time gave me many other curious anecdotes and relations, I had the greater reaſon to believe, as he had the appearance of being a ſerious and diſcreet man, and indeed was known to be ſuch by my guide. He had been brought up in a village near the Chriſtians, in the ſervice of whom he had always been; and at this time, with the aſſiſtance of the baſtard or Caffre Hottentots belonging to this craal, he had caught, and then had in his cuſtody, three old Boſhies-women with their children, with an intention to take them home to his maſter for ſlaves. His maſter had given him a gun, but he was at that time quite out of powder, conſequently he was put to his ſhifts for food, both for himſelf and his captives. I therefore gave him ſome powder, as I conſidered, that, ſo far from having any effect in riveting the chains of theſe unhappy people, it would rather tend to make them ſit lighter. He told me likewiſe, that his female captives had threatened to bewitch him; but that he

1775. December. he had no faith in witchcraft, and had an equal contempt for their menaces and their ſavage manners.

A baſtard Hottentot, who had accompanied him in this expedition, had been wounded in the ſhoulder with a poiſoned arrow. The poiſon had been ſucked out of the wound immediately. The tumour had not abſolutely a bad appearance; yet the wounded man was by no means well, and was himſelf in doubt whether he ſhould get over it or not. Nothing was laid upon it but the bruiſed leaves of the *Hottentot fig-tree.*

They keep their milk in leathern ſacks, of which I have given a deſcription above, never eating it till it is curdled; but the veſſels they milked it into were baſkets of a peculiar kind, compoſed of roots plaited together ſo curiouſly, and in ſo cloſe a manner, that they would not only hold milk but even water. Theſe veſſels would be as neat as they are light, if the Hottentots did not always neglect to waſh them. Indeed, moſt of theſe baſkets had acquired ſuch an appearance from the milk being encruſted upon them, as at firſt induced us to ſuppoſe that they were beſmeared with cow-dung, in order to make them hold the liquor the better. But I have ſince tried baſkets, that were quite new and clean, particularly one that I had brought home with me, and found, that without any kind of daubing, they did not leak in the leaſt. Theſe milk-pails, or baſkets, are moſtly of the ſhape of that delineated in Plate I. Vol. I. fig. 1. holding from a pint and a half to four gallons; and beſides the advantage of being very light, they have likewiſe that of their rims being ſufficiently pliable.

No

No cows of the African breed, whether they belong to the coloniſts or Hottentots, will ſuffer themſelves to be milked, without their hind legs being firſt tied together; as they otherwiſe never fail either to kick the perſons who milk them, or get away from them. The interpreter, I have been juſt ſpeaking of, deſired me, therefore, to obſerve here, as being an uncommon circumſtance, that ſeveral of the cows belonging to theſe baſtard Caffres, allowed themſelves to be milked without being tied up. I likewiſe remarked, that the cows here, whether tied up or looſe, were, for the moſt part, too ſhy and wild to ſuffer themſelves to be milked, except their calves were with them, and had previouſly ſucked them a little. The herdſmen themſelves in this place were alſo deſirous that I ſhould take notice, as a matter of curioſity, of the manner in which a cow, who had brought forth a dead calf, was at length induced to be milked. The artifice uſed for this purpoſe, conſiſted in letting her always put her noſe in the ſkin of her dead calf juſt before ſhe was milked. 1775. December.

Circumciſion is practiſed by theſe Hottentots as well as by the *Gonaquas* and *Caffres*, and is performed upon youths at that period of life, when, to uſe their own expreſſion, they become half-men. Yet they generally ſuit the time ſo, as to have an opportunity of performing the operation upon ſeveral at once.

The next morning, being the 11th, we were waked by the Hottentots ſinging and dancing; and with this rejoicing, or, at leaſt, appearance of happineſs and delight, it ſeems that this ſimple race of people always begin and con-

1775. December. clude the day. We likewiſe paid a viſit to them that morning, but ſoon found it more prudent to return to our waggon again; as a great number of them now came to pay their reſpects to us, and at the ſame time became more troubleſome than ever, by importuning us for tobacco. I do not know whether I ſhould look upon it as a mark of the greateſt ſimplicity, or as a witty and ingenious compliment in one of them, who deſired my interpreter to tell me, that he had never ſeen a waggon before, and therefore wiſhed me to inform him, whether mine had grown up in the ſame ſtate in which he then ſaw it.

In the mean while, in order to obtain a truce from their tireſome practice of peſtering us for tobacco, we excited their aſtoniſhment by ſhewing them our watches. I even attempted to acquire ſome reſpect from theſe people, as not being without ſome knowledge of magic. This, it may well be ſuppoſed, did not proceed from any miſplaced ambition, but rather from motives of prudence, and with a view by this means of curbing their growing deſires, which might probably terminate in ſome bold attempts on the iron-work of our waggon, &c. For this purpoſe I bid theſe Hottentots, and at the ſame time my own, endeavour to take ſome quickſilver with their fingers out of a parcel of it which I had brought with me. The various attempts they made ſtill proving abortive, excited in them the greateſt aſtoniſhment, and proved an inexhauſtible ſubject to them of converſation and laughter. Afterwards, to their utter amazement, I took out ſeveral globules of quick-

ſilver, having previouſly, unperceived by them, rubbed my fingers over with tallow. Neither did I omit aſtoniſhing theſe ſimple ſwains, with the wonderful magnetic properties of the needle belonging to my compaſs. I remember, indeed, having read ſomewhere of a certain great commander, who, being in America, in order to intimidate the natives, and make them behave peaceably, ſet fire to ſome brandy, which they took for water, at the ſame time threatening to ſet fire to their rivers and burn them up; but I had no occaſion to have recourſe to extremities, as the miracles I had before performed, ſeemed already to have deterred them from attempting any hoſtilities.—It was particularly from theſe baſtard Caffres, that I got the Caffre words, which are to be found at the end of this volume. 1775. December.

The government of this community, was ſaid to be chiefly veſted in a man, who at the ſame time was pointed out to me as being the richeſt among them. He held this office by inheritance, and appeared to be a ſober, ſedate, middle aged man. His manner diſcovered no particular preeminence or authority; on the contrary, he had more trouble with the milking than any of the reſt. So that riches, even among the uncultivated Hottentots, are attended with uneaſineſs and trouble.

There was another perſon here, whoſe buſy manner, continual chattering and geſticulation, plainly denoted, that he was a man in office, and of ſome conſequence. In fact, he was the ſorcerer (as they term it) of the community; and conſequently, by virtue of his office, was maſter of the

1775. December. ceremonies, high prieſt, phyſician, and cow-leach; and of himſelf, independently of any office whatever, an arch Charlatan; who, by his drolleries and ridiculous antic geſtures, endeavoured to diſtinguiſh himſelf from the reſt, and was perpetually exciting the young people to dance. As I was not ignorant, that the Charlatans in the better informed and more enlightened ſocieties of Europe, frequently, by means of their deſpicable talents, thruſt themſelves into offices of the higheſt importance and the acquiſition of riches, I do not in the leaſt wonder to hear, that this fellow, beſides being univerſally reſpected, was in poſſeſſion of a greater ſtock of cattle than any one among them. I was likewiſe informed, that for delivering a cow, which had a difficult labour, he uſually had an heifer for his fee; and that at every feaſt, the beſt and fatteſt piece fell to his ſhare.

In the northern climates I had been uſed to ſee fox tails worn to keep out the cold. Here I ſaw, for the firſt time, the tails of the jackall, or African fox, made uſe of in warm weather; as the Hottentots wiped the ſweat off their faces with them, for this purpoſe carrying them about with them fixed upon ſhort ſticks. Having now ſufficiently contemplated the manners of theſe people, we proceeded on our journey; and, as in the mean time our guide had given us the ſlip, and ſhot an old, lean, and louſy buffalo, we made a trip to the place where it lay, and loaded our waggon with the beſt part of the meat, leaving the remainder to the baſtard Hottentots, the birds of prey, and the hyænas. The lice that we found upon this buffalo, were of a new ſpecies;

ſpecies; (ſee the deſcription, together with a drawing of them, in *Mem. ſur les Inſectes*, Tom. VII.) 1775. December.

We afterwards drove higher up, along *Kuranoi-rivier*, and found the water there almoſt motionleſs and brackiſh. We had the tops and graſs of the reeds growing in this little ſtream cut off, to fodder our horſes with at night. At night, the wolves which probably had got ſcent of the meat in our waggon, gave us to underſtand by their howlings, that they were not far from us.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Journey from little Sundays-river to Boſhies-mans-river.

1775. December. ON the 12th our guide took us firſt to the eaſt and then to the ſouth-eaſt, over a champain country, that we might bait and water our cattle at noon. This we did at a land ſpring, which had been very much trampled under foot by the buffaloes, and which had no outlet. But at the diſtance of an hour's ride from thence, we found better water, and came to a reſolution to put up the following night not far from the ſpot, in order to be ready in the morning to look out after the buffaloes; as it is in places juſt like theſe, that they particularly come out into the meadows to graze; but, on the contrary, in the day time, on account of the heat, they generally chooſe to keep in the woods.

It had not been dark two hours, before we heard the roaring of lions, which at times appeared to be pretty near us. This was the firſt time that I had heard this kind of muſic, and, as there were ſeveral performers, it might be properly called a concerto of lions. They continued roaring the whole night, whence my guide concluded, that they

they had assembled on the plains in order to copulate, and carry on their amours, by fighting and attacking each other after the manner of cats. 1775. December.

To describe the roaring of the lion as nearly as I can, I must inform the reader, that it consisted in a hoarse inarticulate sound, which at the same time seemed to have a hollowness in it, something like that proceeding from a speaking trumpet. The sound is between that of a German U and an O, being drawn to a great length, and appearing as if it came from out of the earth; at the same time that, after listening with the greatest attention, I could not exactly hear from what quarter it came. The sound of the lion's voice does not bear the least resemblance to thunder, as M. DE BUFFON, Tom. IX. p. 22, from the Voyage of BOULLAYE LE GOUZ, affirms it does. In fact, it appeared to me to be neither peculiarly piercing nor tremendous; yet from its slow prolonged note, joined with nocturnal darkness, and the terrible idea one is apt to form to one's self of this animal, it made one shudder, even in such places, as I had an opportunity of hearing it in with more satisfaction, and without having the least occasion for fear. We could plainly perceive by our animals, when the lions, whether they roared or not, were reconnoitering us at a small distance. For in that case the hounds did not dare to bark in the least, but crept quite close to the Hottentots; and our oxen and horses sighed deeply, frequently hanging back, and pulling slowly with all their might at the strong straps with which they were tied up to the waggon. They likewise laid themselves down upon the ground and stood up alternately, appearing as if they did not know what to do with themselves:

1775. December. ſelves; and, indeed, I may ſay, juſt as if they were in the agonies of death. In the mean time, my Hottentots made the neceſſary preparations, and laid each of them their javelins by the ſide of them. We likewiſe loaded all our five pieces, three of which we diſtributed among thoſe of our Hottentots who ſpoke Dutch.

Fires and fire-brands are univerſally reckoned, and, indeed, were ſaid by my Hottentots, to be a great preſervative and defence againſt lions and other wild beaſts; they could, however, themſelves mention inſtances, in which the lion had leaped forward to the fire, and carried off ſome one of them, who had been ſitting round it and warming themſelves. The animal too has ſometimes taken its prey to ſo ſhort a diſtance, that the poor wretch's companions have plainly heard it champing and chewing his fleſh. The Hottentots deſired us who were placed in the waggon, not to be in too great haſte to fire in caſe a lion ſhould take a leap among them, for fear that in the dark we might at the ſame time hurt ſome of them. They had concerted matters ſo, that ſome of them ſhould rather attempt to pierce him through with their haſſagais or ſpears, while at the ſame inſtant the others ſhould endeavour to cling about its legs.

They looked upon it as a certain fact, and I have ſince heard the ſame from others, that a lion does not immediately kill the perſon he has got under him, unleſs he is excited to do ſo by the reſiſtance he meets with. At length, however, it is reported, the royal tyrant gives the *coup de grace* on the victim's breaſt with a hideous roar. On this occaſion I muſt do my Hottentots the juſtice to ſay, that they

they did not ſhew the leaſt fear; though they conceived the old and commonly-received notion to be abſolutely true, that both lions and tigers would attack a ſlave or a Hottentot, before they will a coloniſt or a white man. Conſequently, Mr. IMMELMAN and I had no ſuch great reaſon to be in fear for our own perſons, unleſs more than one lion ſhould come to attack us, or that we ſhould diſcharge our pieces too precipitately and miſs him; for in ſuch a caſe, the lion always ruſhes on the markſman. In another reſpect, however, we that lay in the waggon and at a diſtance from the fire, were moſt liable to receive a viſit from the lions; or at leaſt to ſee our horſes and oxen, which were tied up to the waggon, ſeized by them. Otherwiſe, for the ſingularity of the ſpectacle, I ſhould have been glad to have ſeen an attack of this kind, if it had not coſt me more than a couple of my oxen. In ſuch a caſe, indeed, my horſes would probably firſt have fallen a prey to this rapacious animal, as it is generally ſuppoſed, that the lion gives them the preference. 1775. December.

Among our oxen there was one which at this time, as well as ſince upon other ſimilar occaſions, appeared extremely diſquieted and reſtleſs. It had beſides, a ſingular and aſtoniſhing habit of making an inward noiſe, which cannot be deſcribed; and this was the caſe likewiſe with the ſtone-horſe, in his own peculiar way. This, in fact, was ſufficient to make us keep ourſelves in readineſs, though it happened not to be abſolutely neceſſary: however, we quickly got accuſtomed to it, and ſeveral times laid ourſelves down to ſleep, void of care, leaving our beaſts to ſigh on unheeded. It is, indeed, a wonderful circumſtance, that

1775. December. the brute creation ſhould have been taught merely by nature to be in dread of the lion; for our horſes and oxen were all from places, where I am certain they could have no knowledge of this dreadful adverſary of theirs: ſo that in this we muſt admire the bounty of providence, which, while it has ſent ſuch a tyrant as the lion amongſt the animal creation, has likewiſe taught them to diſcern and diſtinguiſh it with trembling and horror.

One would ſuppoſe, that the roaring of the lion would prove ſerviceable to the other animals, as being a warning for them to betake themſelves to flight; but as when he roars, according to all report, he puts his mouth to the ground, ſo that the ſound is diffuſed equally all over the place, without, as we have already mentioned, its being poſſible to hear from what quarter it comes, the animals are intimidated and ſcared to ſuch a degree, as to fly about backwards and forwards in the dark to every ſide; in conſequence of which, ſome of them may eaſily chance to run on to the very ſpot from whence the tremendous ſound actually proceeds, and which they meant moſt to avoid.

A writer, in other reſpects extremely rational, who ſtyles himſelf *Officier du Roi*, aſſerts, in his *Voyage a l'Iſle de France*, &c. p. 63, that in Africa there are found whole armies of lions; a fact of which, he ſays, he was informed, by three perſons of conſequence in the government, whoſe names he mentions.

This author, as well as his informers, and thoſe, if ſuch there be, who have given any credit to him, may be eaſily made to conceive the palpable abſurdity of the idea by this ſingle conſideration, that to ſupport armies of lions,

it

it would require a greater quantity of quadrupeds and game, as it is called, than is to be found not only in Africa, but in all the world beſides. In order to confirm this aſſertion, we may appeal to a witty obſervation made by the Indians, and reported by LAFITAU. "It is a very fortunate circumſtance, ſaid they, that the Portugueſe are as few in number as they are cruel in their diſpoſitions; juſt as it is with the tigers and lions with reſpect to the reſt of the animal creation, or otherwiſe there would ſoon be an end of us men." 1775. December.

With regard to the teſtimonies of the perſons of conſequence here appealed to, I muſt beg leave to obſerve, that we may at any time, without the leaſt heſitation, call in queſtion any poſition which militates againſt common ſenſe. Beſides, in the Eaſt-Indies, knowledge and the appearance of truth are not always abſolutely inſeparable from authority. I myſelf have heard a man belonging to the council at the Cape, relate to ſtrangers the moſt ridiculous abſurdities concerning the country in which he lived. Stories of this kind often orignate from the farmers and yeomen, who come from a great diſtance, and who often find their account in amuſing their rulers with pleaſing tales; which, the more wonderful they are, with the greater avidity they are ſwallowed. Another ſource of theſe falſe reports is in the depraved diſpoſition of mankind, who are very prone to impoſe as much as they can on the credulity of the weak and ſimple. Admitting it to be true, that the Romans introduced into their public ſpectacles a great number of lions, which, indeed, they might eaſily collect from the extenſive tracts of country they poſſeſſed in Africa and

1775. December. Aſia, yet it never can be conſonant either with truth or probability, that armies of lions ſhould be found in theſe quarters of the globe, where only, according to the very probable poſition of M. DE BUFFON, they exiſt. So that when a later writer, the Abbé DE MANET, in his deſcription of the northern part of Africa, affirms, that the ſame kind of lion is likewiſe found in America, we may ſafely conſider this merely as a haſty aſſertion, which is not warranted either by the authority of others or by his own experience: indeed, this author's teſtimony is much more to be credited when he informs us, that the "Negroes in the northern parts of Africa, are uſed to catch lions in pits, but do not dare to eat any of the fleſh, for fear leſt the other lions ſhould be revenged on them." In this particular, however, I have not found the Hottentots or inhabitants of the ſouthern parts of Africa equally ſuperſtitious, as they told me, that they ate the fleſh of lions, and looked upon it to be both good and wholeſome. They likewiſe informed me, that the lions as well as hyænas, had been formerly much bolder than they are at preſent, as they uſed to ſeize them at night, and carry them off from their cottages: at the ſame time they aſſured me, that a lion that had once taſted human fleſh would never after, if he could help it, prey upon any other. They added, that for the ſame reaſon they were obliged to fix benches up in trees to ſleep on; ſo that they could not ſo readily be caught unawares by the lions, and might likewiſe the eaſier defend themſelves when they were attacked by them.

So that, in fact, they were obliged to acknowledge, that with the aſſiſtance of the Chriſtians and their fire-arms, they

they are at preſent much leſs expoſed to the ravages of this fierce animal; while, on the other hand, I could not but agree with them, that the coloniſts themſelves were a much greater ſcourge to them than all the wild beaſts of their country put together; as the Hottentot nations, ſince the arrival of the coloniſts in this part of the world, have found themſelves reduced to a much narrower ſpace in their poſſeſſions, and their numbers very much decreaſed. 1775. December.

In theſe times, at leaſt, the lion does not willingly attack any animal openly, unleſs provoked, or extremely hungry; in which latter caſe he is ſaid to fear no danger, and to be repelled by no reſiſtance. The method in which the lion takes his prey, is almoſt always to ſpring or throw himſelf on it, with one vaſt leap from the place of his concealment; yet, if he chances to miſs his leap, he will not, as the Hottentots unanimouſly aſſured me, follow his prey any farther; but, as though he were aſhamed, turning round towards the place where he lay in ambuſh, ſlowly, and ſtep by ſtep, as it were, meaſures the exact length between the two points, in order to find how much too ſhort of, or beyond the mark he had taken his leap. One of theſe animals, however, was once known to purſue an elk-antilope with the greateſt eagerneſs and ardour, without any one getting to ſee the end of the chaſe. It is ſingular, that the foxes in Europe, according to M. COLLONN's *Hiſt. Nouv. de l'Univers*, Tom. IV. p. 20. when they have leaped ſhort of their mark, and their prey has got away from them, meaſure the length of their leap, in the ſame manner as the lion does.

It

1775. December.

It is particularly near rivers and ſprings, that the lion finds it beſt anſwers his purpoſe to lie in wait. Any animal whatever that is obliged to go thither in order to quench its thirſt, is in danger, *tanquam canis ad Nilum*, of becoming a victim to the irreſiſtible power of this blood-thirſty tyrant.

It ſhould ſeem, that in caſe gazels, and other ſuch animals had ſcent of the lion when he was near them, as ſtrong as it appeared to be in my horſes and oxen, they might eaſily avoid the danger. I do not know how the fact really ſtands; but it is poſſible that the lion, like the ſportſmen of this country, may know ſo well how to chuſe the place of its concealment, that the wind may drive its effluvia from the ſide whence it might be perceived by its prey.

Following the example of other travellers in ſuch tracts of this part of Africa as are infeſted by lions, we always took the precaution to make loud cracks with our large ox-whip, whenever we were going to paſs a river. Theſe cracks of a whip, which, in fact, make a louder noiſe, and a greater vibration in the air than the diſcharge from a piſtol, nay, are heard much farther than the report of a gun, is looked upon as a very efficacious method of ſcaring away wild beaſts. Theſe large whips ſeem, therefore, to have contributed not a little to the greater degree of dread which, ſince the arrival of the coloniſts, the lions have of mankind.

The lion's method of taking its prey, as deſcribed above, is not, however, probably, ſo univerſal as to be without exception. Soon after my arrival at the Cape, I heard

1775. December.

ſpeak of a married woman, who ſomewhere in the *Carrow* country was killed at her own door by a lion, which likewiſe ate up her hand; though others, indeed, thought ſhe came by her death in a different manner. Several farmers related to me the following ſingular freak of a lion in *Camdebo*.

" A few years ago a farmer on horſeback, with a led horſe in hand, met with a lion, which had laid itſelf down in the public road where the farmer was to paſs. Thus circumſtanced, he thought it moſt adviſeable to turn back, but found the lion had taken a circle, and laid itſelf in his way again; he was therefore obliged to turn back again, and ſo alternately backwards and forwards. Whether the lion was ſcared away by ſeveral more travellers coming up or no, I cannot ſay that I recollect; for I find, that I have forgot to make a minute of the ſtory, probably, becauſe I did not think my authority ſufficiently to be depended upon. The following occurrence, however, I think I may relate, as being tolerably well authenticated, and ſerving to ſhew the cowardice and inſidious diſpoſition of the lion.

" An elderly Hottentot in the ſervice of a Chriſtian, near the upper part of *Sunday-river* on the *Camdebo* ſide, perceived a lion following him at a great diſtance for two hours together. Thence he naturally concluded, that the lion only waited for the approach of darkneſs, in order to make him his prey; and in the mean time, could not expect any other than to ſerve for this fierce animal's ſupper, inaſmuch as he had no other weapon of defence than a ſtick, and knew that he could not get home before it was dark.

1775. December. dark. But as he was well acquainted with the nature of the lion, and the manner of its ſeizing upon its prey, and at the ſame time had leiſure between whiles to ruminate on the ways and means in which it was moſt likely that his exiſtence would be put an end to, he at length hit on a method of ſaving his life, for which, in fact, he had to thank his meditations upon death, and the ſmall ſkill he had in zoology, (or, to ſpeak plainly, his knowledge of the nature of animals.) For this purpoſe, inſtead of making the beſt of his way home, he looked out for a *klipkrans*, (ſo they generally call a rocky place level and plain at top, and having a perpendicular precipice on one ſide of it,) and ſitting himſelf down on the edge of one of theſe precipices, he found, to his great joy, that the lion likewiſe made a halt, and kept the ſame diſtance as before. As ſoon as it grew dark, the Hottentot ſliding a little forwards, let himſelf down below the upper edge of the precipice upon ſome projecting part or cleft of the rock, where he could juſt keep himſelf from falling. But in order to cheat the lion ſtill more, he ſet his hat and cloak on the ſtick, making with it at the ſame time a gentle motion juſt over his head, and a little way from the edge of the mountain. This crafty expedient had the deſired ſucceſs. He did not ſtay long in that ſituation, before the lion came creeping ſoftly towards him like a cat, and miſtaking the ſkin-cloak for the Hottentot himſelf, took his leap with ſuch exactneſs and preciſion, as to fall headlong down the precipice, directly cloſe to the ſnare which had been ſet up for him; when the Hottentot is ſaid, in his great joy, exultingly to have called

called out, *t'katſi*, an interjection of very extenſive import and ſignification." 1775. December.

This is not the only inſtance of lions in Africa being enſnared in the midſt of their leap. In the out-houſes and waſte grounds about farms, where a lion has been upon the watch for ſome animal and miſſed it, or where they have other reaſons to expect him, they ſet up the figure of a man cloſe by the ſide of ſeveral loaded guns; ſo that theſe diſcharge themſelves into the body of the beaſt, at the very inſtant that he ſprings or throws himſelf upon the dreſſed figure.

As this is done with ſo much eaſe and ſucceſs, and as they hardly ever think it worth while in Africa to take lions alive, they ſeldom give themſelves the trouble of catching them by means of pit-falls. From all the moſt credible accounts I could collect concerning the lions, as well as from what I ſaw myſelf, I think I may ſafely conclude, that this wild beaſt is frequently a great coward; that is, very deficient in point of courage comparatively to his ſtrength: on the other hand, however, he often ſhews an unuſual degree of intrepidity, of which I will juſt mention the following inſtance, as it was related to me.

"A lion had broken into a walled incloſure for cattle through the latticed gate, and done a good deal of damage. The people belonging to the farm, were well aſſured of his coming again by the ſame way; in conſequence of which, they ſtretched a line directly acroſs the entrance, ſo thick ſet with loaded guns, that they muſt neceſſarily diſcharge themſelves into the lion's body as ſoon as ever he ſhould come, which they firmly expected he would, to diſplace

1775. December. the line with his breaſt. But the lion, which came in the day-time before it was yet dark, and probably had ſome ſuſpicions with reſpect to the line, ſtruck it away with his foot; and without betraying the leaſt fear in conſequence of the reports made by the loaded pieces, went on ſteadily and careleſs of every thing, and devoured the prey it had left untouched before."

M. BUFFON (Tom. IX. p. 7.) tells us, on the authority of MARMOL and THEVENOT, that the lions, which in the more cultivated and inhabited parts of Barbary and India, are uſed to experience man's ſuperiority, ſometimes ſuffer themſelves to be intimidated with a few ſtrokes of a ſtick (and that even by women and children) from carrying off their prey. This accords with ſeveral accounts that I heard at the Cape, of ſlaves who had had courage enough, with a knife or ſome other weapon ſtill more inſignificant, to defend their maſter's cattle, which had been attacked in the dark by a lion.

It is ſingular, that the lion, which, according to many, always kills his prey immediately if it belongs to the brute creation, is reported frequently, although provoked, to content himſelf with merely wounding the human ſpecies; or at leaſt, to wait ſome time before he gives the fatal blow to the unhappy victim he has got under him. A farmer, who the year before had the misfortune to be a ſpectator of a lion's ſeizing two of his oxen, at the very inſtant he had taken them out of the waggon, told me, that they immediately fell down dead upon the ſpot cloſe to each other; though, upon examining the carcaſes afterwards, it appeared that their backs only had been broken. In

ſeveral

ſeveral places through which I paſſed, they mentioned to me by name a father and his two ſons, who were ſaid to be ſtill living, and who being on foot near a river on their eſtate in ſearch of a lion, this latter had ruſhed out upon them, and thrown one of them under his feet; the two others, however, had had time enough to ſhoot the lion dead upon the ſpot, which had lain almoſt acroſs the youth ſo nearly and dearly related to them, without having done him any particular hurt. 1775. December.

I myſelf ſaw, near the upper part of *Duyven-hoek-rivier*, an elderly Hottentot, who at that time (his wounds being ſtill open) bore under one eye and underneath his cheek-bone the ghaſtly marks of the bite of a lion, which did not think it worth his while to give him any other chaſtiſement for having, together with his maſter (whom I alſo knew) and ſeveral other Chriſtians, hunted him with great intrepidity, though without ſucceſs. The converſation ran every where in this part of the country upon one BOTA, a farmer and captain in the militia, who had lain for ſome time under a lion, and had received ſeveral bruiſes from the beaſt, having been at the ſame time a good deal bitten by him in one arm, as a token to remember him by; but upon the whole, had, in a manner, had his life given him by this noble animal. The man was ſaid then to be living in the diſtrict of *Artaquas-kloof*.

I do not rightly know how to account for this merciful diſpoſition towards mankind. Does it proceed from the lion's greater reſpect and veneration for man, as being equal to, or even a mightier tyrant than himſelf among the animal creation? or is it merely from the ſame caprice,

1775. December. which has ſometimes induced him not only to ſpare the life of men or brute creatures who have been given up to him for prey, but even to careſs them, and treat them with the greateſt kindneſs? Whims and freaks of this kind have, perhaps, in a great meaſure acquired the lion the reputation it has for generoſity; but I cannot allow this ſpecious name, ſacred only to virtue, to be laviſhed upon a wild beaſt. Slaves, indeed, and wretches of ſervile minds, are wont with this attribute to flatter their greateſt tyrants; but with what ſhew of reaſon can this attribute be beſtowed upon the moſt powerful tyrant among quadrupeds, becauſe it does not exerciſe an equal degree of cruelty upon all occaſions?

That the lion does not, like the wolf, tiger, and ſome other beaſts of prey, kill a great deal of game or cattle at one time, perhaps, proceeds from this, that while he is employed in attacking one or two of them, the remainder fly farther than it accords with the natural indolence of this beaſt to follow them. If this be called generoſity, a cat may be ſtyled generous with reſpect to the rats; as I have ſeen this creature in the fields among a great number of the latter, where ſhe could have made a great havock at once, ſeize on a ſingle one only, and run off with it. The lion and the cat likewiſe, very much reſemble each other, in partly ſleeping out, and partly paſſing away in a quiet inactive ſtate a great part of their time, in which hunger does not urge them to go in queſt of their prey.

From what I have already related, and am farther about to mention, we may conclude, that it is not in magnanimity,

mity, as many will have it to be, but in an inſidious and cowardly diſpoſition, blended with a certain degree of pride, that the general character of the lion conſiſts: and that hunger muſt naturally have the effect of now and then inſpiring ſo ſtrong and nimble an animal with uncommon intrepidity and courage. Moreover, being accuſtomed always itſelf to kill its own food, and that with the greateſt eaſe, as meeting with no reſiſtance, and even frequently to devour it reeking and weltering in its blood, it cannot but be eaſily provoked, and acquire a greater turn for cruelty than for generoſity: but, on the other hand, not being accuſtomed to meet with any reſiſtance, it is no wonder that when it does, it ſhould ſometimes be faint-hearted and creſt-fallen; and, as I have already ſaid, ſuffer itſelf to be ſcared away with a cudgel. Here follows another inſtance of this fact. 1775. December.

" A yeoman, a man of veracity, (JACOB KOK, of *Zeekoe-rivier*,) related to me an adventure he had in theſe words: One day walking over his lands with his loaded gun, he unexpectedly met with a lion. Being an excellent ſhot, he thought himſelf pretty certain, in the poſition he was in, of killing it, and therefore fired his piece. Unfortunately he did not recollect, that the charge had been in it for ſome time, and conſequently was damp; ſo that his piece hung fire, and the ball falling ſhort, entered the ground cloſe to the lion. In conſequence of this he was ſeized with a panic, and took directly to his feet; but being ſoon out of breath, and cloſely purſued by the lion, he jumped up on a little heap of ſtones, and there made a ſtand, preſenting the butt-end of his gun to his adverſary, fully reſolved to defend his life as well as he could to the utmoſt. My friend;

1775. December. friend did not take upon him to determine, whether this poſition and manner of his intimidated the lion or not; it had, however, ſuch an effect upon the creature, that it likewiſe made a ſtand: and what was ſtill more ſingular, laid itſelf down at the diſtance of a few paces from the heap of ſtones ſeemingly quite unconcerned. The ſportſman, in the mean while, did not dare to ſtir a ſtep from the ſpot; beſides, in his flight he had the misfortune to loſe his powder-horn. At length, after waiting a good half hour, the lion roſe up, and at firſt went very ſlowly, and ſtep by ſtep, as if it had a mind to ſteal off; but as ſoon as it got to a greater diſtance, it began to bound away at a great rate. It is very probable, that the lion, like the hyæna, does not eaſily venture upon any creature that makes a ſtand againſt it, and puts itſelf in a poſture of defence. It is well known, that it does not, like the hound, find out its prey by the ſcent, neither does it openly hunt other animals. At leaſt, the only inſtance ever known of this, is that which I have mentioned before, in Vol. I. p. 307. in which it is ſpoken of as having hunted an *elk-antilope:* though it might poſſibly be, that this wild beaſt was reduced by extreme hunger to ſuch an extraordinary expedient. The lion, nevertheleſs, is ſwift of foot. Two hunters informed me, that an imprudent and foolhardy companion of theirs, was cloſely purſued by a lion in their ſight, and very nearly overtaken by it, though he was mounted on an excellent hunter.

The lion's ſtrength is conſiderable. This animal was once ſeen at the Cape to take an heifer in his mouth, and though the legs of this latter dragged on the ground, yet ſeemed

ſeemed to carry her off with the ſame eaſe as a cat does a rat. It likewiſe leaped over a broad dike with her, without the leaſt difficulty. A buffalo, perhaps, would be too cumberſome for this beaſt of prey, notwithſtanding his ſtrength, to ſeize and carry off with him in the manner above-mentioned. Two yeomen, upon whoſe veracity I can place ſome confidence, gave me the following account relative to this matter. 1775. December.

" Being a hunting near *Boſhies-man-rivier* with ſeveral Hottentots, they perceived a lion dragging a buffalo from the plain to a neighbouring woody hill. They, however, ſoon forced it to quit its prey, in order to make a prize of it themſelves; and found that this wild beaſt had had the ſagacity to take out the buffalo's large and unwieldy entrails, in order to be able the eaſier to make off with the fleſhy and more eatable part of the carcaſe. The wild beaſt, however, as ſoon as he ſaw from the ſkirts of the wood, that the Hottentots had begun to carry off the fleſh to the waggon, frequently peeped out upon them, and probably with no little mortification." The lion's ſtrength, however, is ſaid not to be ſufficient alone to get the better of ſo large and ſtrong an animal as the buffalo; but, in order to make it his prey, this fierce creature is obliged to have recourſe both to agility and ſtratagem; inſomuch, that ſtealing on the buffalo, it faſtens with both its paws upon the noſtrils and mouth of the beaſt, and keeps ſqueezing them cloſe together, till at length the creature is ſtrangled, wearied out, and dies. A certain coloniſt, according to report, had had an opportunity of ſeeing an attack of this kind; and others had reaſon to conclude, that ſomething of this nature

1775. December. ture had paſſed, from ſeeing buffaloes, which had eſcaped from the clutches of lions, and bore the marks of the claws of theſe animals about their mouth and noſe. They aſſerted, however, that the lion itſelf riſqued its life in ſuch attempts, eſpecially if any other buffalo was at hand to reſcue that which was attacked. It was ſaid, that a traveller once had an opportunity of ſeeing a female buffalo with her calf, defended by a river at her back, keep for a long time at bay five lions which had partly ſurrounded her, but did not (at leaſt as long as the traveller looked on) dare to attack her. I have been informed from very good authority, that on a plain to the eaſt of *Kromme-rivier*, a lion had been gored and trampled to death by a herd of cattle; having, urged probably by hunger, ventured to attack them in broad day-light.

This the reader will, perhaps, not ſo much wonder at, when he is told, that in the day-time, and upon an open plain, twelve or ſixteen dogs will eaſily get the better of a large lion. There is no neceſſity for the dogs, with which the lion is to be hunted, to be very large and trained up to the ſport, as M. BUFFON thinks they ſhould be, the buſineſs being perfectly well accompliſhed with the common farm-houſe dogs. When theſe have got pretty near the lion, the latter, from a greatneſs of ſoul, does not offer to fly any farther, but ſits himſelf down. The hounds then ſurround him, and, ruſhing on him all at once, are thus, with their united ſtrength, able to tear in pieces, almoſt in an inſtant, the ſtrongeſt of all wild beaſts. It is ſaid, that he has ſeldom time to give more than two or three ſlight ſtrokes with his paws, (each of which ſtrokes is inſtant

instant death) to an equal number of his assailants. M. DE BUFFON asserts also, that the lion may be hunted on horse-back, but that the horses as well as the dogs must be trained to it: this is probably a mere conjecture of that ingenious author, as he does not mention his informers on this point. In Africa, the colonists hunt the lion with common hunting horses; indeed, I do not know how they could easily be able to get horses trained up only to the chase of the lion. 1775. December.

It is said, that horses in battle, or in other dangerous enterprizes, suffer themselves more willingly to be caparisoned by their riders than at other times; a circumstance which I think I have likewise remarked in these animals, on expeditions, where the danger, indeed, was not so great, as in hunting the buffalo and rhinoceros, when they have passed rivers, and gone up and down steep places and precipices with the greatest alacrity. Our horses, the very same as had several times, in the manner above-mentioned, shewn their disquietude when the lion happened to be in the vicinity of them, and which were not in the least trained to the chase, once exhibited a spirit in the pursuit of two large lions, equal to that which they had shewn at other times in chasing the timid gazels. Though, in fact, hunting horses seem to partake much more of their master's pleasure in the chase: I remember in particular, at *Agter Bruntjes Hoogte*, I rode a horse which, by a tremulous sound issuing from its chest, cocking up its ears, and prancing and capering, discovered, in an unequivocal manner, its ardour for the chase, whenever it came in sight of the larger kind of game. There have even been instances of hunting horses, who, when the hunter has jumped off

1775. December. their backs in order to discharge his piece, but has missed his mark, have, in their eagerness for the chase, not allowed him time sufficient to mount again, but followed the game alone for hours together, close at its very heels, in all its turnings and windings.

The chase of the lion on horseback is, in fact, carried on in the same manner as that of the elephant, which I have already described in Vol. I. p. 315; but as various particulars, hitherto unknown, concerning the lion's disposition, may be learned from it, a description of it here will, perhaps, not be superfluous; and, in case I should be too minute and circumstantial, I shall hope for the indulgence of the candid reader; particularly of such of them as are sportsmen, and are conscious with what high glee and satisfaction they are wont to describe, with the utmost minuteness and prolixity, every turning and winding of a poor timid hare.

It is only on the plains, that the hunters venture to go out on horseback after the lion. If it keeps in some coppice, or wood, on a rising ground, they endeavour to teaze it with dogs till it comes out; they likewise prefer going together two or more in number, in order to be able to assist and rescue each other, in case the first shot should not take place.

When the lion sees the hunters at a great distance, it is universally allowed, that he takes to his heels as fast as ever he can, in order to get out of their sight; but if they chance to discover him at a small distance from them, he is then said to walk off in a surly manner, but without putting himself in the least hurry, as though he was above shewing any fear, when he finds himself discovered or hunted.

He

He is therefore reported likewiſe, when he finds himſelf purſued with vigour, to be ſoon provoked to reſiſtance, or at leaſt he diſdains any longer to fly. Conſequently he ſlackens his pace, and at length only ſidles ſlowly off ſtep by ſtep, all the while eying his purſuers aſkaunt; and finally makes a full ſtop, and turning round upon them, and at the ſame time giving himſelf a ſhake, roars with a ſhort and ſharp tone, in order to ſhew his indignation, being ready to ſeize on them and tear them in pieces. This is now preciſely the time for the hunters to be upon the ſpot, or elſe to get as ſoon as poſſible within a certain diſtance of him, yet ſo as at the ſame time to keep at a proper diſtance from each other; and he that is neareſt, or is moſt advantageouſly poſted, and has the beſt mark of that part of the lion's body which contains his heart and lungs, muſt be the firſt to jump off his horſe, and, ſecuring the bridle by putting it round his arm, diſcharge his piece; then in an inſtant recovering his ſeat, muſt ride obliquely athwart his companions; and, in fine, giving his horſe the reins, muſt truſt entirely to the ſpeed and fear of this latter, to convey him out of the reach of the fury of the wild beaſt, in caſe he has only wounded him, or has abſolutely miſſed him. In either of theſe caſes, a fair opportunity preſents itſelf for ſome of the other hunters to jump off their horſes directly, as they may then take their aim and diſcharge their pieces with greater coolneſs and certainty. Should this ſhot likewiſe miſs, (which, however, ſeldom happens,) the third ſportſman rides after the lion, which at that inſtant is in purſuit of the firſt or the ſecond, and, ſpringing off his horſe, fires his piece, as ſoon as he has got within a proper diſtance, and finds a

1775. December.

1775. December. ſufficiently convenient part of the animal preſent itſelf, eſpecially obliquely from behind. If now the lion turns upon him too, the other hunters turn again, in order to come to his reſcue with the charge, which they loaded with on horſeback, while they were flying from the wild beaſt.

No inſtance has ever been known, of any misfortune happening to the hunters in chaſing the lion on horſeback. The African coloniſts, who are born in, or have had the courage to remove into the more remote parts of Africa, which are expoſed to the ravages of wild beaſts, are moſtly good markſmen, and are far from wanting courage. The lion, that has the boldneſs to ſeize on their cattle, which are the moſt valuable part of their property, ſometimes at their very doors, is as odious to them, as he is dangerous and noxious. They conſequently ſeek out theſe animals, and hunt them with the greateſt ardour and glee, with a view to exterminate them. When the lion, therefore, comes upon their grounds, it is much the ſame as if they were going to fight *pro aris et focis*; and I have heard ſeveral yeomen at *Agter Bruntjes Hoogte*, when I was out a hunting with them, merely expreſs a wiſh to meet with the lions, in caſe there were any in that neighbourhood, without mentioning a word about ſhooting them; a ſign, that with regard to that part of the buſineſs they were pretty ſure of their hands.

The lion is by no means hard to kill. Thoſe who have had occaſion to ſhoot ſeveral of theſe animals, have aſſured me, that while buffaloes and the larger ſpecies of antilopes will now and then make their eſcape and run fairly off with

with a ball in their bowels, or in the cavity of their abdomen, of which I myſelf have ſeen inſtances, the lion, on the contrary, on being ſhot in this manner, will be thrown into a vomiting, and be diſabled from running. But be that as it may, it is natural to ſuppoſe, that a well-directed ſhot that enters the heart or lungs, ſhould ſuffice to kill the lion, as well as the elephant and every other creature: therefore, as M. DE BUFFON acknowledges, that the lion's hide cannot withſtand either ball or dart, it is inconceiveable how it ſhould come into this author's head to aſſert, without having the leaſt authority for it, that this furious beaſt is hardly ever to be killed with a ſingle ſhot. 1775. December.

The hides of lions are looked upon as being inferior to, and more rotten than thoſe of cows, and are ſeldom made uſe of at the Cape, excepting for the ſame purpoſe as horſes hides. I met with a farmer, however, who uſed a lion's hide for upper leathers to his ſhoes, and ſpoke highly of them, as being pliable and laſting.

The next morning, being the 13th, we were lucky enough to ſhoot a buffalo fatter than the former. (For a figure of this animal, vide Plate II. of this volume.) This was a great treat for my Hottentots, and, indeed, for myſelf, as the fleſh of the other was grown putrid in conſequence of the warmth of the weather, and the bad quality of the meat itſelf. Beſides, I had now a better opportunity of drawing up a deſcription of this beaſt, which has been hitherto unknown, and at the ſame time of making a rough draught of it. Immediately after the report of the gun, we ſaw the buffalo fall upon its knees; he afterwards, however, raiſed himſelf up, and ran ſeven or eight hundred paces into a

1775. December. thicket, and directly upon this, with a moſt dreadful bellowing, gave us to underſtand that it was all over with him. All this together formed a ſpectacle, which moſt ſportſmen would have been highly delighted to have been preſent at. This creature, as well as moſt of the larger kind of game, was ſhot by the Hottentot whom my friend and hoſt at *Sea-cow-river* had ſent along with me, by way of being my guide and markſman. Even ſome of the beſt huntſmen among the farmers are obliged, for the moſt part, to make uſe of Hottentots by way of buſh-hunters; as in their ſkin cloaks they do not excite the attention of the wild beaſts, ſo much as the Chriſtians do in their dreſs. They are likewiſe ready at any time when there is occaſion for it, to go bare-foot, and crawl ſoftly upon their bellies, till they come within a proper diſtance of the animal. Moreover, when the buffalo at length is irritated, the Hottentots can much eaſier eſcape from the danger which threatens them, than a Chriſtian. I myſelf, on another occaſion, ſaw two Hottentots run with amazing ſwiftneſs, when a buffalo was in purſuit of them.

It was not without the greateſt diſcontent on the part of my Hottentots, that I made a draught, and took the dimenſions of this buffalo; thus preventing them, in the mean while, from falling aboard of the fleſh. Neither did they afterwards delay one moment to cut a few ſlices off and broil them. They likewiſe laid two bones on the fire to broil, for the ſake of the marrow. After this they began to take out the entrails, which, according to the teſtimony of my Hottentots, perfectly reſembled thoſe of an ox: the buffalo's, however, are much larger, and take up more room, and indeed gave us no little trouble in clearing

clearing them away; for the diameter of this creature's body was full three feet. 1775. December.

Upon the whole, the ſize of the buffalo was as follows: the length eight feet, the height five and a half, and the forelegs two feet and a half long; the larger hoofs were five inches over; from the tip of the muzzle to the horns was twenty-two inches. This animal in ſhape, as may be ſeen in the plate, very much reſembled the common ox; but the buffalo has much ſtouter limbs, in proportion to its height and length. Their fetlocks hang likewiſe nearer to the ground. The horns are ſingular, both in their form and poſition; the baſes of them are thirteen inches broad, and are only an inch diſtance from each other; by which means, there is formed between them a narrow channel or furrow, in a great meaſure bare of hair. Meaſuring them from this furrow, the horns riſe up in a ſpherical form, with an elevation of three inches at moſt. In this way they extend over a great part of the head, viz. from the nape of the neck to the diſtance of three and a half inches from the eyes; ſo that the part from which they grow out, does not occupy a ſpace of leſs than eighteen or twenty inches in circumference. From hence bending down on each ſide of the neck, and becoming more cylindrical by degrees, they each of them form a curve, the convex part of which is turned towards the ground, and the point up in the air; which, however, at the ſame time is generally inclined backwards. The diſtance between the points of the horns is frequently above five feet; the colour of them is black; and the ſurface to within about a third part of them meaſured from the baſe, is very rough and craggy,

1775. December. craggy, with cavities ſometimes an inch deep. Neither theſe cavities, nor the elevations which are formed between them, appear to be at all accidental, as there is a tolerable ſimilarity between theſe excreſences, though they are very different in different buffaloes. The ears are a foot in length, ſomewhat pendant, and in a great meaſure covered and defended by the lower edges of the horns. The edges of the ears are notched and ſhrivelled up in divers ways, which probably proceeds from the wounds theſe creatures frequently receive in their battles with each other, and from the rents they get in the briars and almoſt impenetrable thickets through which they paſs together, with other caſualties of that nature. Though ſeveral Hottentots have been induced from thence to imagine, that the buffaloes belonged to certain ſupernatural beings, who marked theſe animals in this manner for their own cattle. By way of naming theſe beings to me, they made uſe of the word *duyvel*, which means devil.

The hairs of the buffalo are of a dark brown colour, about an inch long, harſh, and, on ſuch males as are advanced in years, very thin, eſpecially on the middle of the ſides of the belly; hence they appear at ſome diſtance as if they were girt with a belt; and what contributes not a little to this appearance is, that the buffaloes in general are very fond of rolling in the mire. The hairs on the knees are in moſt buffaloes ſomewhat longer than thoſe on the reſt of the body, and lie, as it were, in whirls. The eyes are ſomewhat ſunk within their prominent orbits. This, together with the near ſituation of them to the baſes of the horns, which hang ſomewhat over its pendant dangling

ling ears, and its uſual method of holding its head inclined to one ſide, gives the buffalo a fierce and treacherous aſpect. The diſpoſition likewiſe of the animal ſeems to correſpond with its countenance. He may in ſome ſort be called treacherous, as he is wont to hide himſelf among the trees, and ſtand there ſkulking till ſomebody happens to come very near him, when he ruſhes out at once into the road, and ſometimes attacks them. This animal likewiſe deſerves the appellation of fierce and cruel, as it has been remarked, that, not content with throwing down and killing the perſon whom he attacks, he ſtands over him afterwards, in order to trample upon him with his hoofs and heels, at the ſame time cruſhing him with his knees, and with his horns and teeth tearing to pieces and mangling the whole body, and ſtripping off the ſkin by licking it with his tongue. This, however, he does not do all at once, but at intervals, going away between whiles to ſome diſtance off. Notwithſtanding all this, the buffalo will bear to be hunted; though ſometimes he will turn and hunt his purſuer, whoſe only dependence in that caſe is upon the ſwiftneſs of his ſteed. The ſureſt way to eſcape from him is to ride up ſome hill, as the great bulk of the buffalo's body, like that of the elephant, is a weight ſufficient to prevent him from being able to vie with the ſlender and fine-limbed horſe in ſwiftneſs; though, on the other hand, the buffalo, in going down-hill, gets on much faſter than the horſe; a fact to which I have more than once been an eye-witneſs. 1775. December.

The buffalo is ſaid to be of a very hot nature, by reaſon that, according to the moſt authentic information I could procure, when thoroughly warmed in hunting, he

1775. December. throws himſelf into the firſt water he meets with, whether it be freſh or ſalt. One thing is certain, and that is, that he frequently, and ſeemingly with great pleaſure, wallows in the mire; and from this circumſtance it is ſuppoſed he could not, with any proſpect of ſucceſs, be tamed for the yoke, as when he was weary and warm, he would throw himſelf into the neareſt water, or be guilty of ſome other tricks.

Mr. HEMMING, the ſub-governor, had, during my reſidence at the Cape, endeavoured to tame a buffalo; but it was ſaid, that this animal was too wild, and at the ſame time too ſtrong and ungovernable to be confined by any yoke or harneſs whatever; or to be kept in order and ſubjection by the tame oxen, which were trained for that purpoſe, and along with which he was to be yoked.

On my return through *Krakekamma* I ſaw a buffalo-calf, as tame as any of the ordinary calves with which it was grazing. It had been taken ſoon after it was brought into the world, having the navel-ſtring hanging to it; but notwithſtanding its being ſo young, it made great reſiſtance to the people who caught it. A fortnight afterwards it had already acquired ſo much ſtrength, that the owner of it, a ſtout luſty man, found it difficult to lead it along. In fact, it was ſomewhat taller, and much ſtouter than other calves of the ſame age. The colour of it was a very light brown, the hairs long and rough, and on the back lying in whirls; in the nape of the neck theſe ſame hairs inclined forwards, while thoſe on the forehead were turned backwards; on the lip, ſome of them were long and ſtiff; and indeed, they were of a conſiderable length on the whole

whole of the lower jaw, and under the belly. The fore- 1775. December.
part of this creature appeared to be low in proportion to the reſt of its body; the head was large, and the ears long and pendent; the legs ſhorter than thoſe of an ordinary calf; and its aſpect ſulky and treacherous. The owner intended to preſent it to the governor for his menagerie. For my part, I do not in the leaſt doubt of the poſſibility of breaking buffaloes for the yoke, provided the calves are taken very young, and are put to it at an early period, and for a long time together. By a properly adapted ſparing diet, and frequently milking the cows, theſe animals might, after ſeveral generations, loſe as much of their fierceneſs as might be thought neceſſary, and yet retain ſo much of their native vigour as to be ſtronger than the common oxen. It would be a curious experiment, to couple the male or female buffalo with a common bull or cow. Moſt of the wild buffalo-calves that I have ſeen were, like the tame one I have juſt deſcribed, of a light brown colour; and the younger they were, the paler was the colour. I have already obſerved, under the date of the 9th of this month, with what ſtrength the buffalo preſſed into the midſt of the cloſeſt thickets; in this the beaſt is aſſiſted by the broad part of its horns, which, at the ſame time that it ſerves to pierce through the prickly buſhes, is of uſe in guarding and ſaving its eyes.

The fleſh of the buffalo is coarſe and not very fat, but full of juice, and of a high and not diſagreeable flavour. The hide is thick and tough, and is in great requeſt with the farmers for thongs and harneſſes. Of it we made the only halters that can be depended upon for

1775. December. ſecuring our horſes and oxen; ſo that theſe beaſts cannot get looſe by ſnapping them aſunder, which they are otherwiſe apt to do, when the lions and wolves make their appearance in the neighbourhood. Every ſuch halter ſhould be a finger and a half in breadth, and about three yards long, and are ſold a good way up in the country for a quarter of a rixdollar apiece.

The hide of the buffalo we had now ſhot, after it had been dreſſed in ſome ſort by my Hottentots, by being ſtretched out and ſalted a little, and afterwards half dried, ſerved to make a pair of new four-plaited traces for my waggon. We obſerved, that the ball had hit the lower part of the neck and entered the lungs, where, though it did not ſeem to have ſtruck againſt any bone, and though it was alloyed with the uſual quantity of tin, it was yet found to be pretty much flattened. In other buffaloes that we ſhot ſince, I have ſometimes found the balls, though alloyed with tin, ſhivered into ſeveral pieces againſt the bones, in the internal parts, or at leaſt, very much flattened. It is not, therefore, worth while to ſet about ſhooting the buffalo with balls made of lead only, for they will ſeldom be able to penetrate into thoſe parts where they are likely to prove mortal. Beſides, being poſſeſſed of the degree of hardneſs requiſite, a ball ſhould be of a tolerable ſize, in order to kill ſo large an animal as the buffalo. The leaſt that ought to be uſed for this purpoſe, ſhould weigh two ounces and a quarter.

I have ſpoken of the buffalo, as being an animal hitherto unknown. So, in fact, I preſume to call it, as I am the firſt that have given a deſcription and drawing of it, which

1775. December.

which I have done in the Swediſh Tranſactions, by the name of the *bos Caffer*. My readers will, perhaps, excuſe me for making uſe, in a great meaſure, of the ſame words in both places, and for being here more diffuſe and circumſtantial.

In M. DE BUFFON, Tom. XI. p. 416. Tab. 41. we find the horns only engraved, as they were brought from the Cape by the Abbé DE LA CAILLE.

The Abbé DE MANET, Tom. II. p. 129. gives us a few lines concerning a ſort of buffalo, which ſeems to anſwer this which I call the bos Caffer. Mr. PENNANT, in the laſt edition of his *Synopſis of Quadrupeds*, Vol. II. p. 29. ſpeaks likewiſe of this ſpecies of buffalo.

My Hottentots ſhewed ſo much diligence and zeal both in cutting up and eating this beaſt, that the encouragement and ſtimulation, which is otherwiſe frequently neceſſary to ſet their ſluggiſh and heavy ſouls in motion, would on this occaſion have been quite ſuperfluous. They drove the waggon then up to the place where the beaſt lay, and loaded it with the beſt and fatteſt part of the fleſh. The raw hide, which was of conſiderable weight and extent, was tied under the waggon till it ſhould be wanted, and the two remaining legs or marrow-bones were faſtened to each ſide of the body of the waggon. Notwithſtanding this, our *Boſhies-men* had each of them loaded themſelves with a quantity of ſlips of fleſh made up into bundles. Thus covered up to the eyes and ears in meat, we made a ſingular appearance, which might have given any traveller that had happened to paſs that way, the idea of a walking fleſh-market. As we proceeded on our journey, a ſwarm of

1775. December. of other carnivorous animals in a conſiderable number, viz. eagles, falcons, and common hawks, were ſeen ſoon afterwards to occupy our places about the buffalo's remains; though we ſaw none of them either in the trees or flying about in the air, till we had got to the diſtance of a few gun-ſhots from the ſpot.

We had ſcarcely got half an *uur* on our road, before we ſaw a great number of *quaggas*, with a huge fat *Cape-elk*; and beſides this, on the open plains, two male buffaloes came within ſeventy paces of us.

It was ſingular enough, that theſe latter did not ſeem to perceive either us or our waggon for a long while, till we made an intolerable noiſe with laughing and talking; when at length they looked up at us, but ſtaid, notwithſtanding, a good while before they betook themſelves to flight.

My Hottentots, who ſaw I was fond of hunting of different ſorts, the chaſe of flies and butterflies not excepted, thought it very ſtrange that I ſhould now neither ſhoot theſe animals myſelf, nor ſuffer them to do it. They, however, owned at length, that I was perfectly in the right, in conſequence of my reminding them, that they were covered up to the eyes in buffalo's fat; and that the fleſh with which they had already loaded the waggon, both inſide and out, would be quite putrid before they could eat it all up; that they ought not to put themſelves on a level with ſo voracious a beaſt as the wolf, of which they often expreſſed their hatred and abhorrence, on account of its killing and wounding every thing it met with; and finally, that theſe buffaloes, if they were ſpared at preſent,

and not ſcared away, might prove extremely uſeful to ſomebody elſe; perhaps, indeed, to ourſelves on our return home. This moderation acquired me afterwards a great deal of reſpect from many of the coloniſts, as with great reaſon, they were very much diſcontented with the capricious conduct of ſeveral ſportſmen, who, merely for the pleaſure of ſhooting, are guilty of waſting the treaſures of nature in the moſt unjuſtifiable manner; and by unneceſſarily deſtroying the game, ſpoil their own ſport in future, as well as that of others. For when they now and then make a little hunting excurſion (as they term it) they ſeldom or ever return from the purſuit of a herd of game, before they have made a great havock among them, though the carcaſes are afterwards left to rot on the ground. It is true, at every ſhot they take they leap off their horſes, to diſcharge their pieces; but mounting again immediately, load their guns, at the ſame time that they are continuing the purſuit of the gazels. In the mean time, I could not help picturing to my imagination, the pleaſure which, on the other hand, ſuch a ſhot as I had had that day, would have given me in the South Sea, when I might have treated myſelf and my famiſhed meſs-mates with ſome excellent high-flavoured roaſt beef of buffalo's fleſh. 1775. December.

We took the oxen out of the waggon, and baited a conſiderable time at the river *Keuſi kunni aati*, which, in the Hottentot language, bears pretty nearly the ſignification of *Let not the ugly drink here.* This river is by the coloniſts otherwiſe called *Little Boſhies-mans-river.*

The fleſh as well as the marrow of the buffalo, was in itſelf very delicate; but both Mr. IMMELMAN and I could not

1775. December. not help being diſguſted with it at times, as we ſaw the Hottentots eat ſo immoderately and greedily of it. For whole nights together the fleſh-kettle was kept boiling on the fire, and frequently they broiled ſome more of the fleſh between whiles. As ſoon as any one of the Hottentots was awake, he was immediately prepared to eat both boiled and roaſt. Sleeping or waking, as one may ſay, they had always either meat or a pipe in their mouths; and beſides, as they found leiſure and opportunity, viz. the two or three firſt days after we had ſhot any game, ſeveral of them were particularly careful and diligent in ſkimming off the fat from the pot. Beſides, however aſſiduous they were in beſmearing their bodies with it, yet I was always obliged to exert my authority as their maſter, in order to make them put a little of it on my ſhoes and bridles, which would otherwiſe have been cracked in pieces, or parched up by the drought of the weather.

In their diſpoſitions my Hottentots were, particularly in the evenings, merry and talkative, and that ſometimes in a high degree. I have every reaſon to believe, that Mr. IMMELMAN and I were not unfrequently the ſubjects of their gibes, jokes, and laughter. Perſuaded as we were of this, it was juſt as well for us that we did not underſtand the language; eſpecially, as now we could not be more hurt than if we imagined they abuſed us in thought only; and in that caſe, we were far from being ſo ſqueamiſh as a certain officer, who firſt puniſhed a ſoldier for a fault he had committed, and afterwards, merely on the ſuſpicion that he muſt infallibly have had the impudence

impudence to take it amiſs, ordered a certain number of laſhes to be given him into the bargain. 1775. December.

In the deſert in particular, a great deal of management was requiſite, in order to keep in with the Hottentots; ſo that theſe people, who are very much inclined, on every little whim that takes them, to run away, might not, in that place, deſert us. On the other hand, not to give room by too much lenity, for any great degree of neglect and impudence, we were twice under the neceſſity of trying what effect blows would have upon them, and we found that they anſwered the purpoſe extremely well. Prudence, however, required, that the offender's crime, his remiſſneſs and neglect of duty, for inſtance, ſhould be repreſented, as being likewiſe a great offence againſt their own comrades, and puniſhed accordingly; who by this means, as well as by that of hemp, tobacco, and commendations properly diſtributed, were prevented from taking the delinquent's part. Having learnt by experience, that the Boſhies-men in our ſervice were extremely ſlothful and entirely independent on me, as long as they had by them any tolerable quantity of hemp or tobacco for ſmoking, I grew very ſparing in my treats, giving out only enough for two or three pipes at a time, and none at all to ſuch as had neglected their duty. In default of tobacco or hemp, they uſed to ſmoke the dry bark of ſome trees, moſs, leaves, horſe-dung, or that of the rhinoceros; to which they added, when they could get it, the ſtem of ſome old wooden pipe, ſtrongly impregnated with the oil of the tobacco that had been ſmoked in it, cutting it into ſhreds, in order to meliorate, by the delicate flavour of the tobacco, that of the ingredient above-mentioned.

1775. December.

In thoſe places where we happened to ſtay ſeveral days, ſome of the Boſhies-men in our train laid themſelves up night and day in perfect repoſe, without giving themſelves the leaſt trouble about any thing. I therefore refuſed to give them the leaſt morſel of tobacco, till they had procured me ſome curious and uncommon inſect or ſnake. By this contrivance I obtained a few rare articles; but for the moſt part, their indolence was ſuch, that they would not give themſelves the leaſt trouble to look after any thing of the kind, till they were, as they termed it, very hungry for tobacco.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Journey from Boſhies-mans-river to Quammedacka.

NEXT morning, being the 14th, at five o'clock, we proceeded on our journey. *Boſhies-mans-rivier*, which we had juſt quitted, had no current; and though it is very deep in ſeveral places, yet it was brackiſh and had a ſalt taſte, and was ſaid to be always ſo in ſummer. A little farther to the eaſt, we had to go through a vale covered with wood. 1775. December.

This vale is called *Niez-hout-kloof*, from a kind of tree which is ſaid to excite ſneezing, if it be rubbed and then ſmelled. We were not ſo fortunate as to find this tree, but from the deſcription that was given me of it, I ſhould imagine it belonged to the order of *lomentaceæ*. A dried piece of this wood that was ſhewn to me, had almoſt entirely loſt the property above-mentioned, neither had it any particular taſte. This tree is ſaid likewiſe to be found at *Bruntjes-hoogte*, though very rarely.

As it may be a uſeful piece of intelligence for future travellers, I muſt juſt mention here, that ſomewhat more than half a mile to the left of the road, there is good water

1775. December. to be found in a vale called *t'Kur-t'keija-t'kei-t'kaſibina*, whither by a road that went over two hills we ſent our oxen and horſes at noon to water, while we ſtopped to refreſh ourſelves. In the evening we arrived at *Haſſagai-boſch*. The other part of the road, together with the adjacent country, was full of ſteep hills; ſo that we were frequently obliged to lock the wheels of the waggon, and at the ſame to diſmount, and lead our horſes over the precipices.

As this day in my abſence, an honour was conferred upon me at *Upſal* far exceeding my moſt ſanguine expectations, viz. the degree of doctor in phyſic, an honour heightened by the flattering *proclamation* by which it was accompanied, I muſt take this opportunity of making my grateful acknowledgments for it, to SIR CHARLES LINNE', and the then promoter, profeſſor J. SIDREN, who at that time compoſed the whole faculty of medicine, and who by their kind recommendations obtained permiſſion of the moſt illuſtrious chancellor for this purpoſe. This inſtance of a Swede being, though afar off in a diſtant deſert, preſent to the remembrance of his countrymen, will, probably, be no ſmall encouragement to ſuch of our compatriots, as may in future travel for the promotion of ſcience; for which reaſon, I thought proper to make mention of it here.

Early the next morning, being the 15th day, we quitted *Haſſagai-boſch*, which in itſelf is merely a little inſignificant grove, and derives its name from a kind of tree to be found here, as well as in many other parts of the country. In the vale below, the water is tolerably good, though very ſcarce and ſtagnating. The diſtrict round about,

about, was of the kind called *Sour*. At noon we arrived at *Nieuw Jaars-drift*, where the thermometer ſtood at 80 in the ſhade. The water here was likewiſe good, and in ſome places very deep. The adjacent country had a delightful appearance, being adorned with great numbers of the *mimoſa nilotica*; a tree we have had occaſion frequently to mention before, and upon which we at this time caught a great many curious inſects. My fellow-traveller, while he was running with his net after a butterfly, was very near falling into a pit, in which a ſharp pole was ſtuck upright; and in that caſe, in all probability, would have ſhared the ſame fate as our inſects, by being himſelf ſpitted through the body. This pit-fall was, probably, made by ſome of the Caffres or Hottentots wandering about theſe parts, for the purpoſe of catching a very different kind of game. 1775. December.

In the evening we came to *Kurekoiku*, or *t'Kurekoi t'Ku*. In our way thither, we ſaw a great number of buffaloes. Out of theſe I ſet out to hunt on horſeback, a herd conſiſting of ſeventy or eighty beaſts, old and young together. As I took with me only a light piece loaded with a leaden ball, my intention was merely to get a bit of roaſt veal, which, for the ſake of change, we longed for very much. But I was diſappointed in my views; for the old ones made a circle round the calves, ſo as quite to ſhelter them from me when I jumped off my horſe, in order to diſcharge my piece. Some of the oldeſt of them in particular, putting themſelves in a poſture of defence, came forwards to meet me; by which means, they gave the others an opportunity to get farther off: at laſt, however,

I fired

1775. December. I fired among the herd, when immediately, on hearing the report of the gun, they all made a full ſtop, and ſtared at me. I was not at that time perfectly acquainted with the nature and danger of buffalo-hunting, otherwiſe I ſhould ſcarcely have ventured to ſet about it in the confident manner I then did; but very luckily for me, the ball did not hurt any of them; otherwiſe, probably, the whole buffalo corps would have turned round and hunted me down the craggy hill, up which I had juſt before purſued them cloſe at their heels; in which caſe, I ſhould not ſo eaſily have got off.

The hunters do not ſuppoſe it poſſible to kill the game ſitting on their horſes, partly on account of the weight of their pieces, and partly from the motion occaſioned by their horſes; but chiefly by reaſon, that both the horſe and its rider are ſomewhat in a tremor, in conſequence of the violent exerciſe they have juſt before undergone in purſuit of the game; while, on the other hand, by jumping off his ſteed, and ſupporting his gun with his ram-rod, in the manner before mentioned, the ſportſman acquires a great degree of ſteadineſs and certainty in his aim.

We ſtaid at *Kurekoiku* till the evening of the 16th, in order to waſh our linen ourſelves and dry it in the ſun. We were, indeed, at that time very ſlenderly provided with this article, as at our firſt ſetting out we had been too laviſh of this and our other apparel to our Hottentots. Our chief inducement to this act of liberality was, together with our clothes, to get rid of a colony of diſguſtful animals, with which our driver in particular, in conſequence of his ſetting in the front ſeat, had ſtocked our waggon. We

after-

afterwards did not ſuffer the Hottentots to wear any other clothes than their own pelliſſes, as in theſe the vermin kept themſelves more quiet, and were more eaſily picked up by the Hottentots, in which caſe, (the broiling part excepted,) they underwent the ſame fate as the priſoners of the Cannibals. Whether they did this, however, for the ſake of gratifying their taſte or revenge, is a queſtion I willingly leave to be determined by the philoſopher, who, ſhut up in his chamber, explains every phænomenon in nature from certain accidental occurrences. At leaſt, the Hottentots themſelves gave us no inſight into this matter; as when we propounded this difficulty to them, they gave us no other anſwer than, *So maar, Baas! This is our way, Maſter!* In the mean time one may perceive from this, that men who are once ſunk into a certain ſtate of filth, degradation and miſery, will not only be eaſily familiariſed with it, but likewiſe, without the intervention of any other cauſe in particular, ſuffer themſelves to be more and more debaſed. 1775. December.

The two Hottentots, however, which I had in my ſervice, ſeemed, by their deſire to earn and wear our European clothes, already inclined to riſe from the inactive and debaſed condition into which they were plunged. It even flattered their ambition, that in conſequence of the European dreſs we had given them, they might, perhaps, be taken for a kind of baſtards, and conſequently might be ſuppoſed to have ſome European blood in their veins. They had, however, not the leaſt notion of taking care of their clothes, but wore them even in the deſert as long as they would hang on their backs; and, indeed, until, in order to prevent the vermin

1775. December. vermin they were covered with from ſpreading any farther, we obliged them to throw them away entirely.

On the ſame day on which they arrived at *Bruntjes Hoogte*, where they expected to meet with a number of ſmart girls of their own nation, they painted their noſes, their cheeks, and the middle of their foreheads, with ſoot. A young Boſhies-man, the only young man amongſt all thoſe whom I engaged in my ſervice at *Zondags-rivier*, ſet off his perſon in the ſame manner. Excepting this, I could not obſerve that they even took any pains to inſinuate themſelves into the good graces of the other ſex; but am rather inclined to ſuſpect, that the firſt advances in the way of courtſhip, moſtly came from the woman's ſide.

This day, while we were buſied in running after inſects, botanizing and waſhing, ſeveral of our Hottentots went a hunting; and in the courſe of their ſport, had come within fifty or ſixty paces of two lions, that were lying on the ground, but they had the prudence not to fire at them. The lions, likewiſe, as ſoon as they perceived the Hottentots, had ſtolen away as ſoftly as they. The height of the thermometer, at noon, was 84 degrees.

In the evening we took our departure, and in our way met with and hunted a conſiderable number of buffaloes; one of them, which was wounded in the breaſt by a ball, eſcaped from us though cloſely purſued; but a female which was ſhot in the cheek, quite through a large vein, fell at laſt, after having ran to ſome diſtance.

This day my friend had an opportunity of ſeeing an amorous combat between two tiger-cats, and one of our

Hottentots caught four oſtrich chicks alive, which we fed for ſeveral days with ſucculent plants, till they died in conſequence of the jolting of the waggon. 1775. December.

That ſame evening we got to *Hevy*, and there baited all night. It was merely a rocky vale, in which there were ſeveral pits of ſtagnating and brackiſh water. From the flat ſummit of a mountain there dripped a little freſh water, of which we could hardly collect a quantity ſufficient to quench our own thirſt. All the plants round about (except the ſucculent ones) were dried up like hay.

On the 17th, at five in the morning, the thermometer was at 60, and at two in the afternoon at 80 degrees. Towards evening we departed, and got before night to *Quammedacka Well.*

This place is ſituated at the diſtance of two hours (uurs) from that which we had juſt quitted. A boggy pool of water, which at that time was partly dried up, from twenty to twenty-five feet acroſs, was the only watering-place to be found in a tract of country of conſiderable extent; upon which account this was ſo much the more reſorted to by wild beaſts, and ſmelt ſo ſtrong and rank of the buffaloes, rhinoceroſes, and other animals that wallowed in it, that, at the diſtance of ſeveral feet, our cattle, and particularly our horſes, perfectly ſhuddered at it. Their thirſt, nevertheleſs, compelled them at laſt to ſip a little of what was collected in the prints made by the feet of the larger kind of game. On a plot of ground a little higher than this bog, we diſcovered traces of a water-ſpring gently trickling down, and dug round about it. From hence we got, it is true, ſome water not quite ſo rank as the former, though it ſtill retained a

1775. December. perfectly muddy taſte, and a blue caſt, leaving on each ſide of the linen, through which we ſtrained it, a deep and indelible ſtain of mud. On this occaſion I could not help being ſtruck with the remark, that habit and the characteriſtic turn of any nation, will generally get the better of the plaineſt dictates of common ſenſe. My friend Mr. IMMELMAN pertinaciouſly followed the laudable Dutch cuſtom of thoroughly wiping the baſons or veſſels with a clean towel, every time that water was fetched in them; though at the ſame time they were perfectly clean, or at the moſt, perhaps, were ſtained with the hundredth part of a grain of ſugar, or elſe of coffee or tea-grounds, and he was juſt going to drink dirt out of them, I may ſay by the ounce.

This evening a herd of about two thouſand *ſpring-boks* coming to drink out of the well, by the ſide of which we had pitched our tents, made a halt at the diſtance of two hundred paces in order to take a view of us; when I fired among them with a long gun, which was loaded with three ſmall balls. And though one of theſe balls, as I afterwards found, hit a doe, and went quite through her, ſo as to pierce her liver, diaphragm, and one lobe of her lungs, ſhe yet ran ſome hundreds of paces, before ſhe began to totter, juſt after which ſhe fell. She ſoon got up again, however, and ſkipped to the diſtance of one hundred and fifty paces farther, till ſhe was caught faſt in a thicket, where we overtook her and killed her. With a larger ball, in all probability, the ſpring-bok would not be found ſo difficult to kill, eſpecially if it hit any of the greater blood-veſſels.

This

1775. December.

This animal, which is called by the coloniſts *ſpring-bok*, a term in the Dutch language ſignifying the *leaping* or *bounding* goat, I have already made mention of in the Swediſh Tranſactions for 1780. The deſcription, however, of ſo remarkable a creature, muſt not be omitted in this place.

This, if not the handſomeſt, is at leaſt one of the handſomeſt, gazels in the whole world; being, like the gazel kind in general, is diſtinguiſhed by its beautiful fiery eyes; ſo that in ſome parts of the eaſt, it is reckoned, and not unjuſtly, as the greateſt compliment that can be made to a handſome woman, to tell her that ſhe has eyes like a gazel. *Vid. Proſp. Alpin. Hiſt. Ægypt.* (I. 232.)

MOSES (in *Numbers*, Chap. XIV.) ſeems by his *Diſchon* to have meant this animal, as the ſeventy interpreters tranſlate this word by *pygargus*; the ſignification of which (*uropygium album*, or *white rump*) beſt agrees with this ſpecies of gazel. PLINY (VIII. 53.) makes mention likewiſe of a pygargus; ſo does JUVENAL (Sat. XI. ver. 138.) According to my taſte, this was the handſomeſt gazel I had ſeen in Africa, as, in fact, it was the moſt common; which latter I conclude from the circumſtance of my having ſeen it in theſe places in much greater numbers, than all the other ſpecies put together. Hitherto, indeed, I had ſeen no more than one of them in their wild ſtate, viz. on the plain near *Boſhiesmans-rivier*; but between the two *Viſch-riviers*, I have ſeen them ſpread over the plains in herds of different magnitudes, as far as the eye could reach; and putting together what I have obſerved in the courſe of a day's journey on horſeback, their numbers amounted to ſeveral thouſand. Thoſe that I ſhot among to-day, were collected cloſe toge-

1775. December. ther into one herd, and, on hearing the report of my piece, directly formed a line, at the ſame time making a circular movement, as if they would ſurround us, but immediately afterwards flew off to a different ſide to that which they came from. In the *Bokke-Velds*, as they are called, theſe animals are found in great numbers, and ſometimes at *Roode-Zand*. A great many of this ſpecies are kept in the governor's menagerie. And yet, though as beautiful as it is common, there has not been hitherto any tolerable drawing given of this animal; and much is ſtill wanting, to the perfection of its hiſtory and deſcription. On this occaſion I cannot help expreſſing my aſtoniſhment, that the *mammalia*, or quadrupeds, the chief branch of the principal kingdom of nature, a branch, indeed, which comprehends man himſelf, ſhould be ſo little known, and nevertheleſs ſo little ſtudied by him. By the neglect of this ſtudy have lions, tigers, and other wild beaſts, at leaſt in Africa, without controul committed their ravages in the animal kingdom. Nay, they have, as we have already remarked, confined man himſelf within certain limits, ſo that he even cannot help trembling for fear of them in his own habitation.

As to this gazel in particular, it deſerves, as indeed do all the works of the Creator, to be conſidered with all the preciſion and minuteneſs of which the ſubject is capable, that in it we may the better learn to know and adore the great Maſter of the Univerſe.

It appears, indeed, that ſelf-love, which uſually has ſo great a ſway with us, ſhould induce us to take this ſtep; for theſe gazels ought, for the general advantage of mankind, to be made tame, and tended in the places where they

1775. December.

they now go to graze expoſed to the ravages of lions, of which animals, in fact, they ſeem to be the peculiar property; and may be aptly termed, according to the expreſſion of the Hottentots, their flocks of ſheep. In the mean while, it is incumbent upon me to give previouſly to this, a tolerably accurate deſcription of this animal, and communicate to the public what information I have got concerning the nature of it and its manners.

The height of it is two feet and a half; from the tip of the noſe to the horns are ſeven inches; from the horns to the ears two; from the ears to the tail three feet three inches; the tail itſelf being ſomewhat leſs than a foot long; the length of the ears is ſix inches and a half; that of the horns, meaſuring them along their curvatures, is ſeven inches; the thickneſs of them at the baſe is two inches three quarters; and the diſtance of them from each other at that part one inch. After that they ſeparate, as is ſhewn in the figure (vide Vol. II. Plate V.) more and more, till at about three-fourths of their length they ſtand at the diſtance of five inches from each other, when they turn inwards; ſo that the tips of them at laſt come within three inches and a half of each other. This appears to me to be the moſt general way, in which their horns are bent. In the ſame animals of this kind in the governor's menagerie I obſerved, however, that they varied greatly, inſomuch that ſome of theſe creatures horns were bent forwards, like the *naguer* of BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. XXXIV. In others again, they were turned back. This it is the more neceſſary to mention, as otherwiſe, by ſuch variations in the horns, zoologiſts might be induced to make

1775. December. make ſeveral ſpecies out of one. In like manner, I beg leave to remark on this occaſion, that in both ſexes of this ſpecies of gazel, the horns are ſimilar both in ſize and ſhape; as M. PALLAS, *Spicil. Zoolog.* I. p. 10. miſled by KÆMPFER, ſuppoſes the female to have very ſhort horns, or none at all. In fact, it is from a female that I made the foregoing deſcription. This ſame female I got ſtuffed, and have it at preſent in the cabinet of the Royal Academy. In anſwer to the query put in the *Spicil. Zoolog. Faſcicul.* XI. p. 15. I will juſt mention, that the Comte DE BUFFON knew nothing at all of this gazel; and that the *koba's* horns, as well as thoſe of the *tzeiran* (vide *Faſcicul.* I. p. 10.) are, beſides the poſition of them, too large ever to have belonged to this gazel.

To conclude, the horns of this beautiful animal are of a deep black colour; and from the bottom of them to ſomewhat above the middle, are adorned with rings raiſed above the ſurface. From hence they are quite ſmooth and plain, terminating in a ſharp point; which, as it was ſaid before, are turned inwards. The rings here ſpoken of are in number about fourteen, being raiſed a line or two above the ſurface, and inclining, as it were, forwards and downwards. On the ſides, where the horns are ſomewhat flattened, theſe rings are leſs obſervable; and between each ring there is a number of ſmall longitudinal *ſtriæ*. There are no *pori ceriferi* under the eyes of this animal.

The predominant colour in this animal is brown of various ſhades, or a light ruſt-colour. This ſame colour occupies a ſpace of two inches in the forehead, juſt in the front of the horns, and goes between them over the nape of

of the neck, and the whole neck itſelf, a narrow ſlip in the front of it only excepted; in the ſame manner it extends over the back, the ſides, the outſide of the haunches, and the whole hind leg; but makes only a narrow ſtripe in the front of the fore leg. To the breadth of an inch or two, the poſterior moiety of the ridge of the back is white, which colour is continued over and round the anus, the inſide of the haunches, and the whole belly, the hind part, inſide and outſide of the fore legs, the cheſt, and the fore part of the ribs, whence it proceeds in a narrow ſtripe all along the neck, extending over the remainder of the head, except a dark-brown liſt on each ſide, of the breadth of an inch, which paſſes from the corner of the mouth over the eyes to the horns. A ſtripe an inch and a half broad of the ſame deep umber-colour, extends from the ſhoulders to the haunches, forming thus a boundary between the ſnowy whiteneſs of the belly, and the ruſty colour of the ſides. The hairs likewiſe, which encompaſs the white part of the back and of the anus, are of a ſomewhat darker brown than the reſt. 1775. December.

The tail, at leaſt at the lower part, is not thicker than a gooſe-quill, and underneath it is quite bare, being covered on the outſide only with very ſhort hairs; excepting, indeed, towards the tip, where there are a few dark-brown hairs from one to two inches and a half long, which are diſpoſed in the manner exhibited in the figure.

The ears are of an aſh-colour, in moſt places covered with very ſhort hairs, and in ſome quite bare; ſeveral fine grey hairs, moreover, occupy the bores of the ears at the fore part and the whole of their edges. On the inſide, they are moſtly bare. The eye-brows, and a few ſhort whiſkers

1775. December. whiſkers with which this creature is furniſhed, are black. The hairs in general are very fine and denſe, the length of them being about half an inch. But the dark-brown ones, which border on the white on the hind part of the back, are from two to three, or three and a half inches long. Of about the ſame length are the white hairs, which grow neareſt the dark-brown ones juſt mentioned; but the middle part of the white ſtripe, conſiſts of ſhort hairs like the reſt of the body.

The intention of the long brown hairs is for the moſt part, and in a great meaſure, to cover the dazzling white part of the back juſt mentioned, the brightneſs and purity of which ſeems by this means to be preſerved; ſo that the animal, by the expanſion of this colour to the breadth of ſix, eight, or nine inches, may, on certain occaſions, be able to make a more ſplendid appearance.

This expanſion particularly takes place when the animal takes a high leap, which it never fails to do when it is purſued. Without any other view than that of contemplating this peculiar property of the *ſpring-bok*, I have frequently rode full ſpeed after whole herds of them; when it was no leſs pleaſant than curious, to ſee them jumping over each others heads to the height of two yards, and, indeed, ſometimes much higher. Some of them would take three or four high leaps together in immediate ſucceſſion, but did not ſeem to get on a whit faſter than the others; which, in the mean while, kept on an even running pace, interſperſed now and then with a moderate leap or two. With their loftieſt bounds they made ſtill leſs progreſs. In this ſituation too they ſeemed to be ſuſpended, as it were, for ſome time in the

air, in order, perhaps with a kind of oſtentation, to look over their ſhoulders at their purſuers; and at the ſame time, by the expanſion of the white part of their backs to throw out a kind of menace, which, upon any other adverſary than man, may, perhaps, have the intended effect. 1775. December.

The poſition of their bodies, when they made the higheſt leaps, was various. Sometimes we ſaw theſe animals with their backs bent convex, their heads downwards, and all their four feet brought cloſe together. Sometimes their backs were hollow, ſo that their bellies bulged out beneath; by which means the nape of their necks and their rumps were brought pretty near to each other, while the fore feet and hind feet were ſo much the more ſeparated for it.

When hunted, theſe animals ſuffer themſelves ſoon to be diſperſed, ſo that in a ſhort time I had not more than two or three of them to purſue. Otherwiſe, as ſoon as the whole flock had got to ſome diſtance they would all make a ſtand, and turn round to look at their purſuers. It is pretty nearly in this poſture that the animal is repreſented in the drawing hereto annexed, at the ſame time ſomewhat expanding the white hairs on its back and rump.

To conclude, *ſpring-boks* are extremely ſwift of foot; ſo that it requires a good horſe, and one that is by no means deficient in point of wind, in order to overtake them. In other reſpects they are not very ſhy, ſometimes allowing a ſportſman either on foot or on horſeback to come within reach of them. Their fleſh is very palatable, and has a more juicy

1775. December. and delicate taſte, though at the ſame time leſs flavour than that of other gazels. I was informed, that in ſuch years as are attended with great drought, the *ſpring-boks* repair in incredible numbers to the ſouthwards, making towards the colonies at the Cape, and keeping ſtraight forwards on their road till they are ſtopped by the ſea, when they turn back to go home by the ſame way as they came, and moſt commonly with ſeveral lions at their heels.

Mr. PENNANT calls this animal the *white antilope*. M. PALLAS gives it the name of the *antilope pygargus*. The *Syſtema Naturæ* mentions an animal by the name of *capra cervi-capra*; and it might be ſuppoſed, that the ſpring-bok was meant by it, as a drawing by Mr. HOUSTON is referred to, in ſome meaſure anſwering to it; but other circumſtances ſeem to claſh with this idea, particularly the figure in DODART; which, however, is referred to as being a good one, not bearing the leaſt reſemblance to this creature. The name of *cervi-capra*, moreover, as denoting an intermediate genus between the deer and the goat, is applicable to the whole race of gazels or antilopes.

After we had ſhot the *ſpring-buck*, we were obliged to ſtay at ſo miſerable a watering-place as this *Quammedacka* five nights longer, as the two-horned rhinoceros (*rhinoceros bicornis*) was ſaid to have its principal reſidence in theſe parts. The longing deſire I had to ſhoot this remarkable animal was ſo much the greater, and the leſs to be wondered at, as it had hitherto been only known to naturaliſts by the double horns, which at various times had been brought into Europe, and preſerved in different cabinets.

KOLBE,

KOLBE, indeed, pretends to have ſeen the *rhinoceros bicornis*; but as, beſides giving a fabulous account of it, he has in the drawing he has given of it, repreſented the tail almoſt as buſhy as that of a ſquirrel, it is certain, that this author, on this as well as many other occaſions, is merely the echo of certain ignorant inhabitants of the Cape, whoſe relations cannot be depended upon. I was ſo much the more deſirous to anatomiſe the *two-horned rhinoceros*, as the inveſtigation of the internal parts of the one-horned animal had been entirely neglected, though this creature had been more than once brought to *Portugal*, *France*, and *England*, and had been kept there alive for ſome time; and upon the whole, has been tolerably well drawn and deſcribed, particularly by Dr. PARSONS, in the *Philoſophical Tranſactions*. The reader may ſee, likewiſe, on this ſubject, an extract of my journal, in the Swediſh Tranſactions for 1778, p. 307. with a figure of the rhinoceros. With what ſucceſs my wiſhes were crowned, I ſhall now proceed to relate. 1775. December.

On the 18th day at ſeven in the morning, the thermometer ſtood at 60 degrees; at three in the afternoon it had riſen to 84. This day I had a good opportunity of ſhooting ſeveral rare and uncommon ſmall birds, which in this arid diſtrict, where water was ſo ſcarce, were obliged to come hither in the hotteſt part of the day, and venture their lives for a few drops of water, which they were in want of, as well for themſelves as for the young brood they had left in their neſts. Though they could not but be frightened away by my gun, and indeed ſome of them were wounded by the ſhot, and at the ſame time they could but too well ſee their deſtroyer, yet they came again, hopping

1775. December. by little and little down to the water-ſide, in order to dip their bills into it with all haſte, for the ſake of quenching their intolerable thirſt; ſeeming all the while with a ceaſeleſs chirping to lament their dangerous ſituation, and at the ſame time to upbraid me with my cruelty. This ſpectacle, affecting as it was of itſelf, ought at this time to have made a ſtill greater impreſſion upon me, as, on account of the heat of the weather and the badneſs of the water I had to drink, I felt a thirſt almoſt equal to theirs. "Yet, thought I to myſelf, on the other hand, what a mere trifle are a few birds compared with the populous fortified towns, which, merely from a deſire of dominion, my betters make no conſcience of afflicting with hunger and thirſt both, in the higheſt degree!" and thus went on inventing many ſpecious arguments, which coſt ſeveral more birds their lives; and all this, merely with a view of finding among them ſome one that was rare and curious. So prone are men to commit acts of cruelty and tyranny, and at the ſame time to find excuſes for their conduct.

About the middle of the following night we were awaked by the roaring of a lion, which brought to our recollection, that we might be as mere a trifle for theſe ravenous beaſts, as the birds I have juſt mentioned are in the eyes of naturaliſts. Our oxen and horſes appeared now much more diſquieted than they were on a former occaſion, when they heard ſeveral lions roaring at once; neither did our dogs now dare to bark, but with their tails between their legs crept cloſe to the Hottentots; who on this occaſion were very active in keeping up a good blaze, as they took it for granted, that a lion at that juncture was reconnoitring us at no great diſtance,

and

and probably would not leave the place without paying us a visit. As they likewise believed that the eyes of the lion could be descried at a pretty good distance in the dark, they looked for them very attentively, in order that they might be able to discover from which side they had to expect the wild beast, and prepare themselves accordingly to receive it. 1775. December.

Mr. IMMELMAN's situation and mine, which this gentleman, determined by motives of convenience rather than of prudence, had chosen the evening before, was extremely critical. We had quitted the waggon, as being just at that time too hot and sultry a place to sleep in; and made our beds on the other side of the very same bush, near which the Hottentots had encamped themselves round about a large fire. We had also till this instant slept there close by the side of each other, and of our fire-arms; but notwithstanding the danger there was to be apprehended from scorpions and serpents, and the inconvenience of lying on a plot of ground which was uneven and full of stumps of trees, we now found it more adviseable to creep close into the bush, and keep our guns ready in our laps; for to go at this time from hence to the waggon would have been extremely dangerous, and to push in among the Hottentots near the fire would have had a cowardly appearance, and, in fact, would have been, without a metaphor, a dirty piece of business. During all this the lion, according to all appearance, had that very night drank out of the well, which was hardly a stone's throw from us; though it was either not hungry enough, or else had not sufficient courage to attack us.

On

1775. December. On the 19th the thermometer was at 60 degrees, and the ſame day at twelve o'clock it roſe to 84, and at three in the afternoon to 95, being hung under the tilt of the waggon. I found about this ſpot a kind of *purſlain*, ſomewhat tougher than the common cultivated ſort, and having very ſmall leaves one or two inches long, and thoſe of a light green colour, (*foliis linearibus, marginib. ad rachid. revolutis, caule herbaceo, ſuperius ſubquadrangl.*) As I had brought with me a pint and a half of vinegar, in caſe of our being ſeized with an inflammation of the brain, proceeding from our heads being ſtruck by the perpendicular rays of the ſun, I put a ſmall quantity of it, together with a little ſugar, to the herb above-mentioned, in order to treat myſelf with a little ſallad, which, however, was tough enough, and ate almoſt like graſs. One of my Boſhies-men, who ſaw me prepare this diſh, gave me to underſtand by ſigns, that I began at the wrong end of the plant, and dug up the root of it, which, though I ate it raw, was better taſted than the plant itſelf; being nearly ſhaped like a carrot, and of a white colour, a palm and a half in length, and an inch and a half in diameter, (*fuſiformis, albid. ſeſquipalm. diametro ſeſquiunciali.*

On another occaſion I learned from this Hottentot, who, contrary to the cuſtom of his nation, was very communicative, that the root of the *da-t'kai*, (p. 27. of this Volume) a ſhrub of the *meſembryanthemum* kind pretty common here, eaten raw, was, in fact, very well-taſted, yielding a ſweetiſh ſubſtance, which might be ſucked or otherwiſe ſeparated from the more woody and fibrous parts in which it was contained. I ſet the greater value upon by this diſcovery, as ſome events

events might eaſily happen, which might make it neceſſary for us to have recourſe to this plant, in order to keep us from ſtarving. The African coloniſts, who are not near ſo forward to inveſtigate the virtues of the plants of this country as by encroachments to increaſe their property in the country itſelf, were as yet ignorant of the uſe of this root; neither were the Hottentots, who followed me from *Zwellendam* acquainted with it; and the Boſhies-men themſelves were at this time too idle to dig for the root, when they could gorge themſelves, as it were, with fleſh. 1775. December.

The Hottentot who was our beſt ſhot, had turned out this morning before dawn to go a hunting, together with two of the others; one of whom was conſtantly his armour-bearer, in order that he himſelf, being diſengaged from the incumbrance of his arms, might have a ſteadier hand, and be more at liberty, when he found it requiſite, to creep on all fours and diſcharge his piece, or elſe in caſes of danger to make a precipitate retreat from the vengeance of the enraged animal. At times, likewiſe, he often ſent the man who carried his arms to reconnoitre the beaſt, and follow its traces.

The three Hottentots I mentioned as having gone out in the morning, came back in the evening, and ſet themſelves down quite ſpent by the well to cool themſelves. I aſked them ſeveral times, if they had ſhot any thing? to which after ſome time they anſwered, "to be ſure there was a great ſcarcity of game in theſe parts;" and at length gave me indirectly to underſtand, that they had ſhot two rhinoceroſes. I mention this trifling incident in ſo circumſtantial a manner, as it affords an inſtance of that ſpecies of reſerve

1775. December. peculiar to the Hottentot nation, which ſeveral coloniſts had told me of, and I myſelf have likewiſe experienced. When, for inſtance, any thing remarkable happens, a Hottentot endeavours to avoid, if he can, mentioning it for ſome days; and when at length he does ſpeak of it, it is with a kind of circumlocution, or, as the coloniſts call it, with a *draij*, a ſort of twiſt or winding. And indeed, for the moſt part, the Hottentot comes out with his intelligence ſo late, that inſtead of being of any uſe, it ſerves only to vex one. In the mean time, however, I was extremely well pleaſed with the news of the rhinoceroſes being ſhot; and only wiſhed that my Hottentots had been ſo kind as to have told me in time, that I might have gone back with them and ſeen the animals alive. However, I have had an opportunity of this kind ſeveral times ſince.

On the 20th betimes in the morning, Mr. IMMELMAN and I rode to the ſpot where the rhinoceroſes lay, and were attended by four of our Hottentots.

In our road we ſaw a great many *quaggas* and *hartbeeſts*, and at the ſame time chaſed a *wood-ſwine*, but chiefly ſpent our time in reconnoitring a herd of *elk-antilopes* (antilope oryx, Vol. II. Plate I.) ſo that we did not arrive at the ſpot where the rhinoceroſes lay till ten o'clock.

It was about the ſame time the day before that theſe beaſts were killed, each of them with one ſingle ſhot, which penetrated into the very middle of their lungs. They lay at the diſtance of about a mile from each other, both of them being proſtrate on their belly and knees, with their hind legs brought forwards, and ſupporting their bodies on each ſide. The firſt thing I did was to draw

draw and take the dimenſions of the leſſer of theſe animals in this poſition, which I afterwards, from ſeveral others that I had an opportunity of ſeeing alive, altered to the attitude of walking. 1775. December.

In order the more readily to form an idea of the ſhape of this animal, and the mutual proportion of its parts, the reader may turn to the figure annexed in Plate III. Vol. II. To this purpoſe he muſt repreſent to himſelf the leſſer of theſe beaſts, eleven feet and a half long, ſeven feet high, and twelve feet in the girt. And when beſides this he conſiders, that, with reſpect to ſize, it ranks among four-footed animals the third from the elephant; and, excepting the horns, has been hitherto abſolutely unknown, with other circumſtances which will eaſily occur to his reflection, he will, perhaps, in ſome meaſure, be able to conceive, what a feaſt the ſight and examination of this creature muſt have been to a naturaliſt.

The circumſtance which firſt and chiefly excited my attention was, that in the hide of this beaſt there were none of thoſe plaits and folds, which we find in the deſcriptions and figures publiſhed of the *rhinoceros bicornis*, and which give it the appearance of being covered with a harneſs. It was only on the hide of the leſſer of theſe animals that we could obſerve a ſmall fold or plait, and that merely at the nape of the neck; but this ſeemed to proceed from the poſition that we found it in, viz. with the head leaning againſt the ground, by which means it was carried ſomewhat backwards.

Conſidering it in other reſpects, the hide was half an inch thick on the back, but ſomewhat thicker on the ſides,

1775. December.

though leſs compact there. The ſurface of it was ſcabrous and knotty, and not much differing from that of the elephant, but of a cloſer texture; and when it is dry, extremely hard. It was of an aſh-colour, excepting about the groin, where the ſkin is not near ſo thick, but is almoſt quite ſmooth, and of the colour of a man's fleſh.

The muzzle or noſe converges to a point, not only above and beneath, but likewiſe very viſibly on the ſides, nearly as it does in the tortoiſe. The upper lip is ſomewhat longer than the lower. The eyes are ſmall, and ſunk in the head.

Though the horns have been diffuſely deſcribed by others, yet, in order that the reader may form a juſt and adequate idea of them, it is requiſite in this place to make various additions to the deſcriptions already given. They are of the ſame ſhape, and in ſome meaſure of the ſame ſize in both ſexes; yet it appeared to me, that the ſize of them was not always proportioned to the body. Neither, indeed, is there any conſtant proportion obſervable between the foremoſt horn and the hindmoſt, though the foremoſt is always the larger of the two.

The hindmoſt, eſpecially in the older animals, is moſt commonly obſerved to be worn away in different parts, which is never the caſe in the foremoſt and larger one. This, in ſome meaſure, confirms the aſſertion of the Hottentots and the coloniſts, that the rhinoceros makes uſe of the ſhorter one only for the digging up of the various roots, which are ſaid to compoſe great part of its food; it being endued with the power of turning the larger horn at that time, on one ſide out of the way. I was even informed, that

that in the live rhinoceros the horns were so mobile and loose, that when the animal walks carelessly along, one may see its horns waggle about, and hear them clash and clatter against each other. What seems to add farther confirmation to this account, concerning the truth of which, however, I am not without my doubts in many respects, is an excavation or cavity in the base of the horns; particularly that of the foremost, which, like a glenoid cavity, by means of certain articulations, is adapted to, and incloses a round protuberance of the scull. It was with great difficulty that we cut the horns away from it through the sinews and cartilages, by means of which they were attached to the cranium, and of which the remains are still to be seen on the horns I have brought home with me. Had I previously had the least hint of the horns being moveable, I should certainly not have omitted to investigate the degree of force with which the muscles and tendons, intended for the strengthening of the joint, and keeping the horn steady and erect, were capable of acting. Of the elder of the rhinoceroses which we had just shot, and whose horns I have preserved in the cabinet of the Royal Academy, the hindmost horn is very evidently much worn away. I have likewise found the same appearance on another rhinoceros-horn, which was put up for sale at the Cape. But in the younger animal, which I dissected, and which I particularly allude to in the present description, no marks of this kind were observable. The shape of the rhinoceros-horns are universally conical, with the tips inclined somewhat backwards, as is shewn in the annexed plate; and may be seen still more distinctly in a

1775. December.

1775. December.

figure given by Mr. KLEIN, which repreſents a pair of rhinoceros-horns of the natural ſize.

With reſpect to their ſubſtance and texture, theſe horns ſeem to conſiſt of parallel horny fibres, the extreme points of which on the lower half, eſpecially on the poſterior part of the foremoſt horn, and on the greater part of the hindmoſt, project in many places; ſo that the ſurface in thoſe parts is full of inequalities, and in ſome places feels as rough as a bruſh. The upper part of the horns is ſmooth and plain, like thoſe of oxen.

The anterior horn belonging to the leſſer of the rhinoceroſes that we had ſhot, was a foot in length, and five inches over at the baſe. On the larger of theſe animals this horn was half as long again, and ſeven inches in diameter meaſured at the ſame part. This rhinoceros, however, did not exceed the other in bulk, in proportion to the ſize of its horns. Indeed, in the cabinet of the Royal Academy of Sciences, there is preſerved a pair of horns belonging to the *rhinoceros bicornis*, the foremoſt of which is twenty-two inches in length, and the hindmoſt ſixteen. The diſtance between theſe horns is ſcarcely two inches. They differ likewiſe from the horns I ſaw in Africa, and from thoſe I brought with me, in being of a lighter colour and ſtraight, and at the ſame time flat on the ſides; ſo that the hindmoſt horn particularly, has pretty ſharp edges on the upper part, both before and behind. Theſe horns moſt probably came from the northern parts of Africa, as they were purchaſed at Naples by Baron EMANUEL DE GEER during his travels, and were by him ſent to his father,

ther, the late Marſhal DE GEER, as an additional ornament to his noble muſeum, together with which they were preſented by the Marſhal's illuſtrious widow to the Royal Academy of Sciences. 1775. December.

This animal may be ſaid to be totally deſtitute of hair, though there are a few ſcattered dark briſtly hairs about an inch long on the edges of the ears, with a very few between and round about the horns. This is likewiſe the caſe at the tip of the tail. This is about an inch thick, diminiſhing by degrees from the root to the tip, which is ſomewhat enlarged in the fore part, and particularly in the back part, and at the ſame time rounded off, but is flattened at the ſides. It is directly on the edges produced by this conformation, that there are to be ſeen ſome ſtrong ſtiff hairs an inch, or an inch and a half in length. Such of them as ſtand towards this creature's hard and rough body, are viſibly worn down and ſtunted.

The feet, as may be ſeen in the figure, are not much wider than the legs. In the fore parts they are furniſhed each with three hoofs, which do not project very much, and of which the middlemoſt is the largeſt and moſt circular. The ſoles of the feet, like thoſe of the elephant, are covered with a thicker and more callous ſkin than the other parts; and are, if we except the edges, (which are compoſed of the hoofs) together with a fiſſure in the heel, ſomewhat of a circular form.

I choſe the leſſer of the rhinoceroſes for the purpoſe of making the diſſection, as well as a deſcription and drawing of this animal. I and my people, making five in all, were not able to ſtir the carcaſe, when, with a view to get at it with

1775. December. with greater convenience, I endeavoured to lay it on its back. This, however, proceeded in a great meaſure from the lazineſs of my Hottentots, and their backwardneſs to aſſiſt me. In the poſition, therefore, in which this unwieldy creature lay, we cut up its left ſide, and took a large ſlip from off its thick hide. This could not be effected without a great deal of trouble, and repeatedly whetting our knives afreſh.

Though the animal had lain above twenty-four hours, and an ecchymoſis was formed about the wound, yet the fleſh had hitherto been preſerved from putrefaction by the thickneſs of the hide. A piece of this fleſh we broiled immediately, which taſted a good deal like pork, but in my opinion was much coarſer. In the mean while, we cut through the ribs with an axe, and what with hacking and tearing together, we at laſt contrived to empty the cavity of the abdomen. I made drawings and deſcriptions of theſe parts, and took the dimenſions of them as ſpeedily as poſſible; after which we took out the diaphragm, and a naked Hottentot crept into the carcaſe, in order to take out the lungs and heart.

As the animal had received its death-wound by a ſhot in the large blood-veſſels of the lungs, theſe parts were already affected with ſome degree of putridity. The lungs, liver and milt had not been long expoſed to the open air, before they began to ſwell and effervеſce. The violent heat of the ſun at noon, the great drought, and the ſtench of the carcaſe, rendered this operation in a ſhort time extremely dangerous as well as diſguſting. In the mean while, I made the following obſervations.

The

1775. December.

The viſcera of the rhinoceros bicornis, in my opinion, moſt reſemble thoſe of a horſe. So that this animal, notwithſtanding its being furniſhed with horns, by no means belongs to the ruminating tribe, but rather to the claſs of thoſe whoſe fat is of a ſoft nature like lard, and not hard like tallow.

The ſtomach does not bear the leaſt reſemblance to that of a horſe, but rather to that of a man or a hog. It was four feet in length, (as I have lately found in my notes, ſince I gave the deſcription of this animal in the Swediſh Tranſactions) and two feet in diameter; and to this viſcus was annexed an inteſtinal tube of twenty-eight feet long, and ſix inches in diameter. This inteſtinal canal was terminated three feet and a half from the bottom by a large cœcum, if I may ſo call a viſcus, which at its upper end was the ſame width as the ſtomach, viz. two feet, and above twice the length; that is eight feet and a half, lying on the ſpine of the back, and attached to it at both ends, after which it is contracted into a rectum ſix inches in width, and a foot and a half in length.

The kidnies were a foot and a half in diameter, and the milt ſcarcely a foot broad, but full four feet long. The heart was a foot and a half in length, and the breadth not much leſs. The right lobe of the lungs had an inciſion in it, but was in other reſpects undivided and entire, being two feet in length. The left was ſubdivided into two lobes, the ſmaller of which was next the baſe of the heart. The liver, when meaſured from right to left, was found to be three feet and a half in breadth; but in depth, or meaſuring from above downwards, as it hangs in the animal when this

1775. December. this latter is in a ſtanding poſition, two feet and a half. It conſiſted of three larger perfectly diſtinct globes, almoſt equal in ſize, and of a ſmall lobe beſides, which projected to about a foot from the concave ſide of the liver, at the middle of its upper edge. No gall-bladder, or any traces of it, was to be obſerved. In this the rhinoceros reſembles the horſe.—Juſt before I finiſhed the diſſection of this animal, I opened its ſtomach, which was very much diſtended, in order to examine what it uſually fed upon. The contents of the ſtomach were entirely without ſmell, and perfectly freſh and ſweet, conſiſting of roots and ſmall branches of trees maſticated, ſome of which were found as big as the end of a man's finger. This creature, as it appeared, had likewiſe eaten a great quantity of ſucculent plants, among which I thought I recognized two or three that were harſh and prickly. The whole of this maſs diffuſed around a very ſtrong and not diſagreeable aromatic odour, which in a great meaſure took off the ſtench which aroſe from the putrid viſcera. Might it not be ſome peculiar herb, or, perhaps, the root only of an herb, with which I was entirely unacquainted, which produced the greateſt part of the aromatic flavour? In the excrements of this animal, which were four inches in diameter, and in other reſpects reſemble thoſe of a horſe, though they are of a much drier nature, there is uſually ſeen a quantity of bark and fibres of trees, a circumſtance that the hunters pay attention to; and by that means are able to diſtinguiſh it from the dung of the hippopotamus, an animal that feeds only on graſs. I thruſt my hand into this creature's mouth, which was half open, and found the tongue perfectly ſoft, which

which is in direct contradiction to the common notion, viz. *Quod lambendo trucidat,* (that he kills by licking with his tongue.) I was likewise not a little aſtoniſhed to find no fore-teeth in any of the three carcaſſes of the rhinoceros, although one of theſe beaſts ſeemed to be old; and, in fact, this animal has little room for fore-teeth, as the mouth goes off ſo ſharp at the fore part, that in that place it is only an inch and a half broad. Beſides, it has no occaſion for any teeth there, as the lips, like the ſkin, are of that extreme hardneſs, that it is able to clip off the tops of plants and ſhrubs with them; and that with ſo much the greater eaſe, as the under jaw goes within the upper; ſo that this ſpecies of rhinoceros is probably capable of laying hold of its food with its lips, and conveying it into its mouth, with the ſame eaſe and dexterity as Dr. PARSONS obſerved in the common rhinoceros on a ſimilar occaſion. 1775. December.

At that time I could not poſſibly ſeparate the fleſh from the other bones, for the purpoſe of examining them. I was in hopes, however, that, by the time I returned, the eagles and wolves would ſave me that trouble. And this, indeed, was ſo far the caſe, that I had it in my power to carry home with me the cranium of the leaſt rhinoceros, which I diſſected, very nearly in a compleat ſtate. It is from this ſkull that I had the annexed drawing made; and this part of the animal is of too much importance, for the deſcription of it to be omitted here.

Both jaws being clapped together in their proper joint, give nineteen inches for the height of it in the back part; and, meaſured at the fore part from the tip of the noſe,

1775. December. fifteen; the length, meaſured from the tip of the noſe to the hindmoſt part of the cranium, is in a direct line twenty-three inches, or ſomething leſs than two feet.

With a view to avoid being prolix in my deſcription, I refer my readers to the figure annexed in Plate III. of this volume, whence they will be able readily to conceive the proportion, &c. of the other parts. It is on the fore part of the *os frontis* that the leſſer horn is fixed; it will, therefore, probably, be eaſily perceived from the annexed drawing, that the *ſagittal ſuture* is obliterated, and that the *os occipitis* is terminated by a flat ſurface, along which it goes ſtrait down in a perpendicular line to the condyloid proceſſes, one of which is ſeen in the figure.

The cavity in which the brain is contained, does not extend much farther forward than the *oſſa bregmatis*. The other bones by which it is encompaſſed are tolerably thick, ſo that this huge animal has but a ſmall brain in proportion to its ſize; the cavity for containing this organ being barely ſix inches long, and four high, and being of an oval ſhape. In order to know the capacity of it with the greater certainty, we filled it with peas, which we afterwards meaſured, and found to amount barely to a quart. With a view to diſcover the proportion between the brain of the rhinoceros and that of a man, I likewiſe filled a middle ſized human ſcull with peas, and found that nearly three pints were requiſite for this purpoſe. On the other hand, the cavity of the noſe in the rhinoceros is of a conſiderable ſize, which probably does not a little contribute to the quickneſs of this animal's ſcent. At leaſt, phyſiologiſts uſe to explain the ſuperiority of hounds in this particular,

cular, from the circumſtance of the *tunica ſchneideriana*, or the nervous membrane appropriated to this ſenſe, (when it is expanded and extricated from all the folds which it makes in the cavity of the noſe, with the greateſt art contrived for this purpoſe,) being ſo extenſive as to cover the whole body of the animal; while on the other hand, this membrane, in the human ſpecies, is capable of covering only the head. 1775. December.

Six *dentes molares* only, or grinders, were obſerved on either ſide of each jaw, belonging to the two oldeſt of the rhinoceroſes ſhot by us, and five only in the leaſt or youngeſt, as the annexed drawing of its cranium ſhews; yet quite back in the mouth we diſcerned the marks of two more on each ſide, the foremoſt of which had begun to make its appearance, but the hindmoſt was almoſt entirely included in its ſocket. Hence it follows, that an aged and full-grown rhinoceros has fourteen teeth in each jaw, in all twenty-eight.

In the anterior part of the *os palati*, this animal appears to have a tooth-like proceſs, which in the ſcull that I brought home with me is loſt. Conſidering the diſtance of it from the lower jaw, it ſhould ſeem that it can hardly ſerve any purpoſes of a tooth. I have to thank M. PALLAS for this piece of intelligence; who, when I had tranſmitted to him this engraving, was ſo good as to ſend me the beautiful figures of the cranium of a rhinoceros, tranſmitted to him by M. CAMPER for the *Acta Petropolitana*.

The dotted lines drawn about the cranium, ſhow pretty nearly the ſituation of the horns and lips.

1775. December.

As I have mentioned above that the rhinoceros may be killed by a ſingle ſhot, it follows that the hide of this animal is not ſo impenetrable as has been ſuppoſed. BONTIUS has long ago remarked, that this beaſt is uſually killed with powder and ball. M. DE BUFFON probably did not pay attention to this paſſage, when he aſſerted, on the authority of GERVAISE, that its hide cannot be penetrated by any ball, excepting only about the ears. To theſe, however, M. DE BUFFON ſeems, of his own free will, to have added the eyes and the belly. It is true, indeed, that leaden balls will ſooner be flattened againſt the ſkin than pierce it; but that balls or cylinders made of iron (*des lingots de fer*) ſhould not be able to make the leaſt impreſſion on it, ſeems to be another addition of M. DE BUFFON's, equally abſurd with the former. It frequently becomes neceſſary for me to correct in this manner, the voluminous works of this illuſtrious author; which, indeed, merit this correction ſo much the more, as the errors in them, being in other reſpects not unfrequently dreſſed up in an elegant ſtyle, have, in fact, impoſed on many with charms which ought to be the attendants on pure genuine truth only, and unadulterated nature. It is therefore probable, that the ſportive genius of M. DE BUFFON, muſt at times have operated in impoſing likewiſe on its owner; but I am willing to hope, that this gentleman being *by profeſſion* the interpreter of nature and truth, will on this account ſee with the greater pleaſure, any ſtrictures and remarks which are neceſſary to preſerve the ſcience of nature from falſehood and error.

For

For this reaſon I ſhall proceed, without any farther ceremony, to inform the reader, that the hide of the rhinoceros, as well as that of the elephant, is capable of being penetrated by javelins and darts. I ordered one of my Hottentots to make a trial of this with his haſſagai, on one of the dead rhinoceroſes. Though his weapon was far from being in good order, and had no other ſharpneſs than that it had received from the forge, yet, by means of a certain manœuvre, it received ſuch an impulſive force, as at the diſtance of five or ſix paces, to pierce through the thick hide of the animal half a foot deep into his body. 1775. December.

The Hottentot or Caffre hunters are accuſtomed to ſteal both upon the elephant and the rhinoceros while they are aſleep, and give them ſeveral wounds at once. After this they follow the traces of the animal for one or more days, till it drops down with weakneſs or dies of its wounds. Generally, however, according to their own account, they poiſon one or two of their darts immediately, before they attack an animal of this ſize; in which caſe, they have no occaſion to wait ſo many days, as they otherwiſe would, before their prey falls into their hands. A farmer told me, he had ſeen an elephant in this manner wounded and dead within twenty-four hours.

As to what regards the one-horned rhinoceros, M. DE BUFFON, in Tom. XI. changes his opinion three times in the ſpace of a few pages. In page 177, without quoting his authority for it, M. DE BUFFON conſiders the hide as being ſo tough, as not to be penetrable either by the fire-arms or ſide-arms of the hunter, (*ni du fer ni du feu du chaſſeur.*) In page 181 again in the notes he quotes, approves and much commends the account given by M. MOURS relative to this point, which

1775. December. which yet is in contradiction with the former. This, however, he ſeems again to have forgot, when, in page 195, (without producing any authority for it) he aſſures us, that javelins (*les javelots & les lances*) are not able to pierce this animal's ſide.

M. DE BUFFON, not content with aſſerting that the hide of the rhinoceros is impenetrable, in page 176, will not even allow it the leaſt portion whatever of ſenſibility, (*privé de toute ſenſibilité*) and this merely without quoting any authority, or having any other foundation for the aſſertion, than what his own imagination has furniſhed him with. And yet, had M. DE BUFFON but paid a moderate degree of attention to the clear and diſtinct account drawn up by Dr. PARSONS in the *Phil. Tranſ.* which he himſelf has quoted, it would ſeem that he muſt have been of a different opinion. In that paper it is mentioned, that the rhinoceros emitted his penis, when he was tickled under the belly with a wiſp of ſtraw. M. DE BUFFON too remarks himſelf, that the rhinoceros is fond of wallowing in the mire like the hog: but I will leave it to others to judge, how this accords with the abſolute inſenſibility he attributes to the hide. And, indeed, when even the thick hide of the elephant is affected by the ſtinging of flies, how can we ſuppoſe that of the rhinoceros to be abſolutely inſenſible? Again, the ſkin at the bottom of a man's foot, though thicker than it is in other parts of the body, is nevertheleſs by no means void of ſenſibility. Moreover, the ſkin of the rhinoceros, however tough and cloſe in its texture, has, at leaſt about the groin, veſſels, blood, and juices, adapted for the nouriſhment of inſects, which, indeed, actually do nouriſh them; this beaſt being infeſted with a kind

kind of *acari*, which I have discovered on its pubis and groin, and have drawn up an account of them, inserted in the VIIth Tome *of Memoires sur les Insectes*. Neither does the thickness of this animal's hide prevent it from perspiring. 1775. December.

This creature, which at all other times appears to be of a grey colour, soon becomes black when it is hard hunted. This proceeds from the dust and dried mud sticking to the animal's skin, and moistened by sweat. Besides that I have been assured of this fact by others, I think I once myself saw a manifest instance of it, in the case of a rhinoceros, which was pursued by some other sportsmen, and very unexpectedly passed within the distance of forty or fifty paces of my waggon, fortunately for me, without perceiving it, or doing it any damage. This beast was much darker coloured than any I ever saw, the number of which, however, in all, did not exceed eight.

From the figure of the rhinoceros referred to above, and from the description I have already given, it follows, that M. DE BUFFON, in his notes to page 186, accuses KOLBE, without any foundation, of having described the lesser horn as being placed in a strait line behind the other, and upon the animal's forehead. *It is impossible*, says he, *that the two horns should be placed so far from each other*; *for in the horns which are preserved in* SIR HANS SLOANE'S *museum, there is only the distance of three inches between the larger horn and the smaller*. In fact, this eminent naturalist seems rather too hasty in the foregoing remark, and forgets that every animal's nose is placed near its forehead; so that while one horn is fixed on the rhinoceros's nose, the other may be very well fixed, and ac-

1775. December. tually is ſo, on the forehead. A figure ſo plain and ſimple as KOLBE's (vide the French edition) might have ſufficed to prevent miſtakes on this ſubject.

In fine, it is neceſſary to inform my readers, that what M. DE BUFFON advances concerning the copulation of the one-horned rhinoceros, viz. that it is performed *croupe à croupe*, is not in the leaſt applicable to the rhinoceros bicornis; but in all probability, this opinion is not true with regard to either ſpecies, as in the two-horned rhinoceros which I examined, the penis was placed as forward under the belly as it is in a horſe; though, conſidered with relation to the different bulk of the two animals, it is much ſhorter. In the animal which I diſſected it was no more than ſeven or eight inches in length, as may be ſeen in the ſpecimen I brought home with me. In a rhinoceros, which had the appearance of being old, it was not much larger. M. DE BUFFON, after Dr. PARSONS, deſcribes the penis in the one-horned ſpecies as being ſtill ſhorter. Beſides, he does not ſay a word concerning the ſituation of this member, but founds his conjecture on the ſubject of this animal's copulation, merely on the circumſtance of its having been obſerved to bend its penis backwards when it ſtaled, in which direction conſequently the urine was emitted. But this, perhaps, was owing to an accidental and vicious conformation; or it might be done out of cleanlineſs, eſpecially as we know that the *rhinoceros bicornis*, at leaſt has a very acute ſmell, and ſeems to love cleanlineſs, from the circumſtance of its chuſing certain places near the buſhes to ſtale upon. It is poſſible, indeed, that the animal may have a kind of *muſculus erector*, for the purpoſe of occaſionally altering

altering the direction of this member. But I am afraid of tiring my reader's patience, by dwelling ſo long on the ſubject of this quadruped; I ſhall therefore at preſent only make mention of it, juſt as it may happen to occur in the courſe of my journal. Mr. IMMELMAN likewiſe was at length tired of ſtanding by and ſeeing me diſſect this beaſt, and therefore ſet out before us on his road home, with a view to repoſe between whiles, and cool himſelf under ſome ſhady tree. In order to go, as it appeared to him, a nearer way, he rode over a hill overgrown with buſhes. From this ſpot a rhinoceros ruſhed out upon him, and he would certainly have been trampled to death by this huge creature, or elſe have been taken up by it on its horns, and, together with his horſe, thrown up into the air, had not this latter in his fright made a ſudden ſtart, and by ſeveral ſide leaps carried his rider through the buſhes, out of the ſight and ſcent of the animal. 1775. December.

Here it muſt be obſerved, that the rhinoceros's eyes are ſunk into its head, and are but ſmall when compared to the bulk of its body; on which account, it is reported to ſee but indiſtinctly, and that only ſtrait forwards. But to make amends for this deficiency in ſight, its organs of ſmelling and hearing are ſo much the more acute; at the leaſt noiſe, therefore, more than uſual, this creature, taking the alarm and pricking up its ears, ſtands clapping with them and liſtening. Above all things one muſt take care, even when one is at a great diſtance, not to get to the windward of it; for in that caſe, it ſeldom fails directly to follow the ſcent, and attack the object of its purſuit, as it was very near doing by Mr. IMMELMAN. This gentleman,

1775. December. having with great difficulty made his eſcape, ſtruck into a by-path, in order, after paſſing through a little dale, to get into the ſtrait and plain road. In this road he overtook me, on a ſpot whither I had retired to ſcreen myſelf and my horſe from the burning rays of the ſun, and was overlooking my drawings and memorandums. He was ſtill ſomewhat out of breath in conſequence of his adventure, at the time he gave me an account of it; and I, for my part, could not help in ſome meaſure envying his good fortune, in having at ſo cheap a rate ſeen this huge unwieldy animal alive, together with the motions it made in the cumberſome hide in which it was incaſed: but, indeed, he himſelf had ſeen ſo little of it, that we ſoon came to an agreement to ride up together on the other ſide of the very hill, in which he had juſt been put to flight by the rhinoceros. From hence we thought we ſhould be able to deſcry this creature on the plain; but that we might not be betrayed by the effluvia of our bodies, in caſe he ſhould return again to the thicket, we threw ſome duſt into the air, in order to determine more accurately which way the wind was, and thus be able to direct our courſe preciſely in oppoſition to it. And indeed, we had not been long arrived at the ſpot before my horſe began to be a little ſhy, and at length was quite reſtive, behaving juſt as he had done before when I firſt rode him up to the carcaſes of the two rhinoceroſes. This circumſtance I took notice of to my companion, conſidering it as a ſign that, in all probability, there was a rhinoceros near the ſpot; but he went on, ſaying, it was impoſſible, as it did not ſtrike him juſt then, that there might be more than one

one in that vicinity. We therefore advanced ſtill nearer, till being but fifteen paces off, I heard a ruſtling noiſe like that of an animal raiſing itſelf up leiſurely on its legs. Immediately upon this appeared a rhinoceros, with its horn projecting over one of the buſhes. I now thought it high time for us to turn back immediately, and made ſigns to my companion, that it might be done as ſilently as poſſible. He too had perceived the ſnout of this animal, and we rode away as ſoftly as poſſible; our horſes' feet, nevertheleſs, made a crackling noiſe among the dry branches which had fallen from the trees, and with which the narrow paths between the buſhes were every where covered. On this account, we did not neglect during our retreat to look behind us, in order that we might make off as faſt as poſſible, in caſe the rhinoceros ſhould have been alarmed by the noiſe, and have been induced to purſue us. What I call paths were merely tracks made by the buffaloes and rhinoceroſes forcing their way through the thickets; but among theſe likewiſe we found many blind paths, i. e. ſuch as terminated on a ſudden in ſome high and impenetrable buſh. Into a place of this ſort we might in our flight eaſily have ſtrayed, and there have been caught by the rhinoceros, as it were, in a trap. This adventure made us afterwards ſuſpect, that every buſh harboured a rhinoceros; and induced us for ſome time to give up all thoughts of reconnoitring among the buſhes with ſo much aſſurance, an animal that did not appear as if it was to be trifled with. 1775. December.

I think we may infer from the preceding relation, that this rhinoceros was different from that which put Mr. IMMEL-

1775. December. MAN to flight; as likewiſe, that this latter did not purſue us, by reaſon that, in conſequence of our having rode up to it full in the face of the wind, it could not get ſcent of us; beſides, this animal did not hear our talking nor the crackling of the branches, with a ſufficient degree of certainty to engage it to make an attack upon us: and in fine, it appears, that it had with great forecaſt choſen a thick and high buſh, by way of entrenchment, on that ſide of the buſh, from whence the wind prevented it from getting ſcent of any thing. If I may form any concluſion from my horſe's ſtopping, it would ſeem, that he had got ſcent of this beaſt as far off as the diſtance of forty or fifty paces, though the wind was very moderate from that quarter.

On our way homewards (for ſo we always called our waggon, or encampment in the deſert) we came within piſtol-ſhot of a herd of *elk-antilopes*, probably the ſame with thoſe we had given chaſe to in the morning without ſucceſs; but what was very ſingular, they at this time hardly ſhewed the leaſt fear. The males, which were of the ſize of an ordinary galloway, appeared much more bulky and corpulent than their females, and ſeemed to run rather heavily.

In the evening we received an unexpected viſit. This was from eight coloniſts, who were come hither from *Camdebo* with four waggons, and had brought with them two of their wives, and a couple of children. They were going to the ſalt-pit before-mentioned near *Zwartkops*-river, in order to fetch ſalt from thence; but having been told by us of the violent drought they would meet with in their way thither, part of them only went with two waggons, that being fewer of them, they might be leſs liable to ſuf-

fer for want of water. Theſe people informed us, that that very day they had chanced to awake a rhinoceros juſt by the road ſide; but that the beaſt, probably ſcared by the noiſe and buſtle it heard from different quarters at once, ran by them without doing them any hurt. They related to me, however, an inſtance, in which a rhinoceros had run up to a waggon, and carried it a good way along with him on his ſnout and horns. They likewiſe informed us, that the diſtemper among the horſes had already begun to commit ravages in the diſtrict of *Camdebo*, where, however, it otherwiſe ſeldom uſed to make its appearance till the month of April. The reaſon of this, probably, was the univerſal drought that prevailed this year. 1775. December.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Journey from Quammedacka to Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte.

1775. December. ON the 21ſt at nine in the morning we left the pool at *Quammedacka*, which we had by this time drank dry, and arrived at noon at Little *Viſch-rivier*, where we again pitched our tents. We here found a herd of ſpring-boks, a couple of which we ſhot. At five o'clock this morning the thermometer was at 52 degrees, at twelve at 82, and at half paſt three at 95 degrees. The evening was very much overcaſt. In this tract of country there was a great drought on both ſides of the river, but ſtill greater farther on towards the north, where the ſoil was more gravelly, and produced a greater quantity of ſucculent plants. In the ſpaces between theſe, beſides ſhrubs and buſhes, there was ſometimes to be found a little dry graſs; every where elſe, the ground was as dry and bare as a high road with a clayey bottom. Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, we heard the roaring of a lion; and though it only roared twice, the animals we had with us were very reſtleſs the whole night throughout.

On

On the 22d early in the morning, we croſſed Little *Viſch-rivier*, it being ſuppoſed, that where we then were, it would not be ſo well worth our while to look after the *hippotamus*, or ſea-cow, an animal that is bigger than the rhinoceros, and lives both in the water and on dry ground, (vid. Plate IV. of this volume.) This, in fact, having ſeen the rhinoceros, was what I now chiefly laid out for. 1775. December.

Between nine and ten o'clock, being on our march, we ſaw two large lions. They were about three hundred paces from us, in a little vale. The inſtant they perceived us, they betook themſelves to flight. Being very deſirous to have a nearer view of theſe animals, we rode in purſuit of them, all the while ſhouting and calling out after them. Upon this they mended their pace till they got down to the ſide of the river, which we had juſt croſſed, and there hid themſelves in the thickets. Urged by their curioſity, two of our Hottentots likewiſe followed behind us, one armed with a couple of haſſagais, and the other with a gun. We ourſelves were without any arms whatever, but I imagine we ran no riſk in this chaſe, as we could eaſily have turned back and fetched our arms, in caſe the lions had thought proper to purſue us. In running they had a kind of ſideling pace, like that of a dog, accompanied now and then with a ſlight bound. Their necks were all the while ſomewhat raiſed, and they ſeemed to look aſkance at us over their ſhoulders. One of them had a mane, and conſequently was a male; but both of them were nearly of an equal ſize, and ſeemed to be conſiderably higher and longer than our ſaddle-horſes, which were of the ſize of common galloways. Neither our horſes, nor ſeveral gazels which were

1775. December. were on the ſpot, ſeemed in the leaſt afraid of theſe lions, though they were as near them as we were. As the lion ſeldom or never attacks his prey openly, it ſeems that he does not ſtrike the other animals with any high degree of terror, except when they take the ſcent of him, which nature has rendered highly diſguſtful to them.

This day likewiſe we ſcared a male oſtrich away from its neſt, which was in the middle of the plains. This neſt, however, conſiſted of nothing but the ground itſelf, on which the eggs lay ſcattered and looſe. Hence it follows, that the oſtrich does not leave its eggs to be hatched by the ſun, but likewiſe, at leaſt in this part of Africa, ſits upon them herſelf: we may alſo infer, that the male and the female ſit upon them alternately. The Hottentots too aſſured me of this fact, which has hitherto been unknown to naturaliſts.

So that THEVENOT is in the right when he aſſerts, that the oſtrich lives in monogamy, or with one female; though he is quite alone in this aſſertion: and the practice is contrary to the cuſtom of the larger kind of birds.

I do not pretend by any means to determine the exact number of eggs laid by this bird; the number of thoſe we at this time found was only eleven; they were all freſh, and probably were to have had ſeveral more added to them. Another time two of my Hottentots ſcared another oſtrich away from its neſt, out of which they took fourteen eggs, and brought them to me, having left ſome behind, which did not ſeem to them to be quite ſo freſh; ſo that perhaps ſixteen, eighteen, or twenty, is the higheſt amount of the number of eggs laid by this bird: and yet it appears to me, that

1775. December.

that it muſt be very difficult for the oſtrich to cover ſo many with its body. A brood of young ones, ſcarcely two feet high, which I ſaw in the diſtrict of *Roode-Zand*, ſeemed to me to amount to ſome ſuch number; but the oſtrich-chicks which I had taken on the 16th of this month at Kurekoi-ku, were about a foot in height. May we not likewiſe conclude from hence, that the oſtriches in Africa have no ſet times for laying their eggs?

Some of my more obſerving readers may, perhaps, wonder how I am able to aſſure them, that it was a male oſtrich which I ſcared away from the neſt. To this I anſwer, that in all this part of Africa it is looked upon as an indiſputable fact, that ſuch of theſe birds which are males, carry white feathers in their tails and wings, while their backs and bellies are covered with black. The females, on the contrary, carry black feathers only in their tails and wings, while thoſe on their bodies are of an aſh-colour. This likewiſe accords with the diſſections made of this bird in Europe, (Vide BUFFON, p. 429.) What ſerves farther to convince me, that the cock oſtrich aſſiſts the hen in hatching her eggs, is, that in the neſt which I have been juſt ſpeaking of, there were found ſeveral white feathers, as well as a number of black ones, both of which would naturally fall into it whilſt the birds were ſitting. Nature, perhaps, has found it the more neceſſary to order both ſexes of the oſtrich mutually to aſſiſt each other in hatching their eggs, as the frame of their bodies is large, and they are furniſhed with many ſtomachs, and at the ſame time are craving beyond many others of the feathered race; ſo that they could not bear the uſual courſe of faſting during the whole time

1775. December. of ſitting, nearly ſo well as the females of other birds. The authors who have deſcribed the young of the oſtrich, as being covered with ſmall grey feathers, are perfectly in the right. With a plumage of this colour, even their necks and thighs are clothed; parts, which in the full-grown birds, are deſtined to be naked, while the reſt of their bodies are adorned with feathers. The moſt beautiful and curled of theſe compoſe the tail of the oſtrich, and conſequently it is chiefly for the purpoſe of adorning our heads with them, that we deprive this bird of its life or freedom.

In this colony, however, I did not ſee oſtrich feathers made any other uſe of, than to bruſh away the flies; for which purpoſe, whiſks were made of them of a conſiderable length as well as breadth, with which a ſlave or two were employed in driving away theſe animals from the table, while the family were at their meals. The Hottentots, who eat all ſorts of fleſh, eat likewiſe that of the oſtrich; but the eggs I have ſeen uſed by the coloniſts, and that even at the Cape, for pancakes and aumelets. While we were travelling through the deſert, we found it anſwer beſt to ſupple our throats with them juſt before we took our chocolate or tea; and likewiſe to clarify our coffee with them, or elſe to ſtew them, for want of pans, in our porridge-pot, having previouſly thrown into it a little fat; a diſh I had learnt to prepare in Sweden by the name of *oeufs perdûs*.

Oſtriches eggs are eatable, indeed, in all theſe ways, but not equal to hen's eggs. They are, as it were, of a coarſer nature and thicker conſiſtence, and at the ſame time

time more filling and luſcious. One of the largeſt ſhells of the oſtriches eggs, kept in the cabinet of the Royal Academy, I found, on examination, to weigh eleven ounces, to be ſix inches and a half in depth, and to hold five pints and a quarter liquid meaſure. It is of the ſhape of a common egg. I never found the weight of the freſh eggs exceed this in any extraordinary proportion; ſo that when M. DE BUFFON (in page 426, 427) computes the weight of one of theſe eggs at fifteen pounds, this bold aſſertion of his ſeems to require to be mentioned, only in order to be confuted.—I have already, in Vol. I. page 130, related the method of hunting the oſtriches in this country; but that this bird contents itſelf barely with hiding its head, when it finds it cannot make its eſcape, is a matter which I do not remember ever to have heard mentioned at the Cape; but even were it a fact, ſtill PLINY's explication of it is not more abſurd than M. DE BUFFON's manner of accounting for it, l. c. page 448. Children, indeed, who play at hide and ſeek, are apt to imagine that they are concealed, when they cover their heads, ſo that they themſelves cannot ſee. I have likewiſe frequently obſerved turkey-poults merely hide their heads, ſo as not to be able to ſee any thing, when they were warned by their mother's cries of the hawk's approach. How then can one expect a greater degree of conſideration in a bird, in other reſpects very ſtupid, and which is in danger of its life?

1775. December.

M. DE BUFFON, page 448, calls the ſkin of this creature very thick; but in this reſpect it is but equal at the beſt to goat's or calf's-ſkin; ſo that how far the Arabians can uſe

1775. December. it for harneſſes and ſhields (l. c. page 443) does not ſeem to deſerve a ſerious inveſtigation.

The cry of the oſtrich, according to the deſcription I have had given me of it in Africa, in ſome reſpects reſembles the roaring of the lion, but is ſhorter, or, in other words, not drawn out to ſo great a length. In this caſe, its cry muſt neceſſarily be hoarſe and rough, as well as fill the breaſt of the hearer with anxiety and terror; and conſequently the prophet MICAH, chap. i. ver. 8, has not unaptly compared it to the voice of a mourner; if in fact by the word יעכה in this and other places of holy writ, the oſtrich is meant, and not a kind of owl.

The young of this bird have no cry at all; one, at leaſt, a foot and a half high, which on my return homewards I brought with me alive to the *Cape* all the way from *Honing-klip*, did not, during the whole time, viz. twenty-four days, let us hear any thing of it. This was trampled to death by my horſe, juſt before my departure from the *Cape*, otherwiſe it might have eaſily been brought to *Europe*. It ate a great deal, and was not nice in its food.

There were ſeveral large tame oſtriches in the governor's menagerie at the *Cape*. Without ſeeming to be impeded by their weight, they would run along with any body whatſoever, and would moveover jump up and perch upon the ſhoulders of all ſuch as would ſuffer it. In conſequence of having made this obſervation, as well as of ſimilar inſtances to be found in authors, I cannot doubt, but that oſtriches might be brought to bear burdens and the like, ſo as to become uſeful to mankind.

The

1775. December.

The inſtance which is given us by ADANSON of a young oſtrich, not properly trained up to this employ, is therefore not capable of raiſing in me the ſame doubts as are entertained by M. DE BUFFON on this ſubject. And yet we read in this illuſtrious author, l. c. that FIRMIUS, who reigned in Egypt in the third century, was drawn by oſtriches; and that in *Joar*, in Africa, an Engliſhman was ſeen riding on an oſtrich, on which he uſed to take journies, &c. I have converſed with yeomen at the Cape, who had brought up oſtriches ſo tame, that they went looſe to and from the farm, and were obliged to ſeek their own food; but at the ſame time were ſo voracious as to ſwallow chickens whole, and trample hens to death, in order to tear them to pieces afterwards and eat them up. At a certain farm they were obliged to kill one of theſe oſtriches, as he had taken to trampling ſheep to death. Quere, Does not the oſtrich eat ſnakes likewiſe?

Theſe large birds were, as it appeared to me, chiefly to be found in ſuch tracts of country as partook of the properties of the *carrow*, and produced ſucculent plants. I ſaw but one of them in the *four* diſtrict, as it is called, of *Lange Kloof*; but this might very probably, like the elephant in the ſame diſtrict, of which I have already given an account, Vol. I. page 315, have got out of its latitude.

Another kind of large bird, which I have mentioned before, as being in the governor's menagerie, viz. the *caſuary*, was not a native of Africa.

This had been a very warm day, and though it might ſeem that I ought by this time to have been inured to heat, yet in conſequence of it, I was ſeized with a violent headach.

1775. December. ach. I found great relief, however, by waſhing my head in running water in great *Viſch-rivier*. Two of my Hottentots likewiſe complained of being affected in the ſame manner, but were ſoon made eaſy by giving them a little hemp to ſmoke. I had forgot to look at the thermometer this day till ten o'clock in the evening. Even at that late hour it was at 78. At dark there fell a few drops of rain. This night we did not hear the lions roar in the leaſt.

Very early on the 23d we proceeded again on our journey, to look out for the *ſea-cows* near ſome other pit belonging to great *Viſch-rivier*. There was now again a great ſcarcity of meat in the waggon; for which reaſon my Hottentots began to grumble, and reminded me, that we ought not to waſte ſo much of our time in looking after inſects and plants, but give a better look out after the game. At the ſame time they pointed to a neighbouring dale over-run with wood, at the upper edge of which, at the diſtance of a mile and a quarter from the ſpot where we then were, they had ſeen ſeveral buffaloes. Accordingly we went thither, but though our fatigue was leſſened by our Hottentots carrying our guns for us up a hill, yet we were quite out of breath and overcome by the heat of the ſun, before we got up to it. Yet, what even now appears to me a matter of wonder is, that as ſoon as we had got a glimpſe of the game, all this languor left us in an inſtant. In fact, we each of us ſtrove to fire before the other, ſo that we ſeemed entirely to have loſt ſight of all prudence and caution. When we advanced to within twenty or thirty paces of the beaſt, and conſequently were, perhaps, likewiſe in ſome degree actuated by our fears, we diſcharged our

our pieces pretty nearly at the ſame time; while the buffalo, which was upon rather lower ground than we were, behind a thin ſcambling buſh, ſeemed to turn his head round in order to make towards us. In the mean while, however, the moment we had diſcharged our guns, we had the pleaſure to ſee him fall, and directly afterwards run down into the thickeſt part of the wood. This induced us to hope, that our ſhot had proved mortal: for which reaſon, we had the imprudence to follow him down into the cloſe thickets, where, luckily for us, we could get no farther. We had, however, as we found afterwards, only hit the hindmoſt part of the chine, where the balls, which lay at the diſtance of three inches from each other, had been ſhivered to pieces againſt the bones. In the mean while our temerity, which chiefly proceeded from hurry and ignorance, was conſidered by the Hottentots as a proof of ſpirit and intrepidity hardly to be equalled; on which account, from that inſtant, they ever after appeared to entertain an infinitely higher opinion of our courage than they had ever done before. Several of our Hottentots now came to us, and threw ſtones down into the dale, though without ſucceſs, in order to find out by the bellowings of the beaſt, whither he had retired: afterwards, however, he ſeemed to have plucked up his courage, for he came up at laſt out of the dale of his own accord to the ſkirts of the wood, and placed himſelf ſo as to have a full view of us on the ſpot, where we were reſting ourſelves ſomewhat higher up: his intention was, in all probability, and in the opinion of our old ſportſmen, to revenge himſelf on us, if we had not happened to ſee him in time, and

1775. December.

1775. December. and fired at him directly. What, perhaps, in ſome meaſure put a ſtop to his boldneſs was, that we ſtood on higher ground than he did: for ſeveral veteran ſportſmen have aſſured me of it as a fact, that they know from experience, that the buffaloes do not willingly venture to aſcend any hill or eminence in order to attack any one. The third ſhot, which afterwards was obſerved to have entered at the belly, was fatal. This occaſioned the buffalo to take himſelf down again into the vale, dying the ground and buſhes all the way he went with his blood. Though ſtill hot upon the chaſe, yet we advanced with the greateſt caution, accompanied by two of our Hottentots, through the thin and more pervious part of the wood, where the buffalo had taken refuge. He was advancing again in order to attack ſome of us, when Mr. IMMELMAN, from the place where he was poſted, ſhot him in the lungs. Notwithſtanding this, he had ſtill ſtrength enough left to make a circuit of a hundred and fifty paces, before we heard him fall: during his fall, and before he died, he bellowed in a moſt ſtupendous manner; and this death-ſong of his inſpired every one of us with joy, on account of the victory we had gained: and ſo thoroughly ſteeled is frequently the human heart againſt the ſufferings of the brute creation, that we haſtened forwards, in order to enjoy the pleaſure of ſeeing the buffalo ſtruggle with the pangs of death. I happened to be the foremoſt amongſt them; but think it impoſſible for anguiſh, accompanied by a ſavage fierceneſs, to be painted in ſtronger colours than they were in the countenance of this buffalo. I was within ten ſteps of him when he perceived me, and, bellowing, raiſed himſelf ſuddenly again on his legs. I had

reaſon

reaſon to believe ſince, that I was at the time very much frightened; for before I could well take my aim, I fired off my gun, and the ſhot miſſed the whole of his huge body, and only hit him in the hind legs, as we afterwards diſcovered by the ſize of the ball. Immediately upon this I flew away like lightning, in order to look out for ſome tree to climb up into. 1775. December.

Notwithſtanding the tedious prolixity it might occaſion me to be guilty of, I thought the beſt and readieſt method of giving my reader an idea of the nature of this animal, and of the method of hunting it, as well as of other contingent circumſtances, would be to adduce an inſtance or two of what occurred during the chaſe.

My Hottentots cut up the buffalo with their uſual alacrity and ardour; but as they had a great way to carry the fleſh to the waggon, they took it thither in a rather unuſual way. This was as follows: they cut out large ſlips of fleſh whole and entire, with holes in the middle, wide enough for them to put their heads and arms through, and loaded themſelves with it in this manner before, behind, and on every ſide of them; the meat all the while dangling about their bodies in a manner ludicrous enough, though not much adapted to create an appetite in the ſpectator. In this way, their hands being entirely diſengaged, excepting that each man carried a ſtick, they clambered up the brow of the hill that overhung the vale, and thus walked on towards the waggon, whither one might trace them all the way by the blood.

In the mean while the Hottentot, who was our principal ſhot, had, at no great diſtance from this place, ſhot

1775. December. an *elk-antilope*, in conſequence of which we repaired thither, in order to carry off the beſt and fatteſt part of the fleſh. Before we got back to the waggon, darkneſs came on, with thunder and lightning; and, to add to the terror of the ſcene, we heard the lions roaring very loud. Indeed we had good reaſon to fear, that theſe wild beaſts would throw themſelves in our way, in order to ſhare our prey with us. Neither ſhould we, in fact, in the total darkneſs in which we were involved, have eaſily found our way back to the waggon, if the Hottentots whom we had left with it, had not been thoughtful and conſiderate enough to ſmack the large ox-whip from time to time by way of ſignal. At length, when we arrived at the plain where the waggon ſtood, we ſaw the fire they had made. We had hardly got home, however, before there came on a heavy ſhower of rain, which continued the greater part of the night, and put out our fire; while the tilt of our waggon was in great danger of being carried away by a violent ſouth-eaſt wind, with which the rain was accompanied; at the ſame time that the rain not only entered the waggon by the ſides of the tilt, but likewiſe penetrated through the tilt-cloth, ſo that we were not a whit better ſheltered there, than the Hottentots under their cloaks. During all this, we frequently heard the roaring of the lions, as well as the yelling of the hyænas; ſome of which latter ſtole away a ſtrap belonging to the tackling of our waggon, together with a good quantity of the fleſh which the Hottentots had hung up at the diſtance of a few paces from the ſpot where they lay.

This

This day the thermometer at five o'clock in the morning was at 74 degrees, preciſely at noon at 99, and in the afternoon it roſe to 100. 1775. December.

On the 24th I was induced to ſtay a little longer on this ſpot, by the hopes of ſhooting a *gnu*, which had been ſeen ranging by itſelf about this part of the country.

T'Gnu is the Hottentot name for a ſingular animal, which, with reſpect to its form, is between the horſe and the ox. The ſize of it is about that of a common galloway, the length of it being ſomewhat above five, and the height of it rather more than four feet. The proportion of the parts to each other may be beſt ſeen by the figure given in Plate II. of this Volume, which repreſents this animal in the attitude into which it puts itſelf when it is going to butt any one; in conſequence of which, we have been able to give a proper idea of the poſition of the horns, and the manner in which they lay, as it were, flat upon the head: while, on the contrary, in a drawing which accompanies Profeſſor ALLAMAND'S fine deſcription of this creature, and which has been copied in a compilation, entitled, "*Nouvelle Deſcription du Cap de B. Eſperance*, the horns appear almoſt as if they grew out of the mane itſelf.

This animal is of a dark-brown colour all over, excepting the tail and mane, which are of a light-grey; the ſhag on the chin, under the lower jaw, and on the breaſt is black, as likewiſe are the ſtiff hairs which ſtand up erect on the forehead and upper part of the face. It is ſomewhat ſingular, that M. ALLAMAND, who was the firſt that deſcribed this ſpecies of animal from one which was brought from the Cape to Holland, found the colour of its mane and body

1775. December. extremely different from what I have deſcribed it to be above, and from what I have obſerved in Africa, and which may likewiſe be ſeen on the ſkin of this animal I brought home with me. This difference probably proceeds from a diverſity of age, climate, or other accidental circumſtances.

At firſt ſight one would be apt to pronounce, that the *gnu* moſt reſembles the ox kind; but with reſpect to the following particulars, this beaſt may likewiſe be referred to the *capræ* in general, or to the genus which the great zoologiſt, M. PALLAS, has ſeparated from them under the denomination of *antilopes*.

1. The legs of the *gnu* are as ſmall as thoſe of the antilope, or the gazel kind; and, like them, have ſmall fetlock-bones and hoofs.

2. The *gnu* reſembles the antilopes and *capræ* in its hair, inaſmuch as this is ſhort, juſt as it is in the hart kind. In its ſhag, the gnu reſembles the *capræ* more than oxen. With reſpect to its mane, it is manifeſtly diſtinct from theſe latter animals; but ſomewhat reſembles another large *capræ*, or antilope (the *antilope oryx*) by the coloniſts called the *Cape-elk*, (vide Plate I. of this Volume.) With regard to the tail, it does not in the leaſt reſemble an ox's tail, but rather that of a horſe; and in this point ſomewhat coincides with another large antilope, viz. the hartbeeſt, (vide Plate I. of this Volume.) This laſt-mentioned antilope, according to the accounts given me by ſeveral perſons at the Cape, falls upon its knees when it is going to butt any one; and probably the gnu reſembles it in this point likewiſe, as M. ALLAMAND remarked of the gnu which was brought to

Holland, that it ſometimes fell on its knees, and butted againſt the ground. 1775. December.

3. The gnu, like many of the hart and antilope kind, has a viſible *ſinus*, or *porus ſebaceus*, or *ceriferus*, below and juſt before each eye. This ſinus, which has not been remarked by M. ALLAMAND, is (juſt as in the hartbeeſt,) about one line in diameter, and encompaſſed with a little tuft of black hair. Pores of this kind, or apertures in the ſkin, which excrete a ſubſtance of the nature of ear-wax, are not to be found, as far as I have been able to learn, in any ſpecies of the ox kind.

4. The noiſe made by the tame calf of a gnu, which I have frequently heard cry, did not in the leaſt reſemble the bleating of the common fawn.

5. I did not find that the fleſh of this animal had any thing of the flavour of beef or of buffalo's fleſh, but was rather like that of the other antilopes or gazels about the Cape; it had, however, a finer grain, and was more juicy than the fleſh of the hartbeeſt, and conſequently was much more delicate than beef.

6. I find from the diſſection I made of a fawn of a gnu, that its viſcera reſemble thoſe of the other antilopes which I had examined, more than the viſcera of the ox, but that they bear no reſemblance whatever to thoſe of a horſe: ſo that this circumſtance is ſufficient entirely to overthrow the conjecture, of thoſe who imagine, that the gnu is produced by the copulation of a horſe with a cow.

What makes it ſtill leſs credible, that the gnu ſhould be the offspring of ſuch an intermixture as I have mentioned, is, that theſe animals are almoſt always ſeen in large herds, and,

1775. December.

and, as far as I can learn, are in Africa to be found only in *Camdebo* and *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*; from whence it is only a few years ago, that one of them was carried to the Cape, and from thence to Holland: conſequently, the gnu then wandering in theſe parts was, probably, an old buck, which did not care to keep company any longer with the herd it belonged to, or had been accidentally ſeparated from it.

As this that was ſeen here kept upon the open plains, and we could not ſteal upon it by creeping towards it from among the buſhes, I endeavoured to overtake it on horſe-back. And indeed, at firſt I got almoſt within gun-ſhot of the animal, when it ſhewed its vicious diſpoſition in making various curvets and plunges, flinging out behind with one or both legs, and butting againſt the mole-hills with its horns; but immediately upon this, it fled with conſiderable velocity in a direct line over the plain as far as the eye could diſcern it: and I cannot help thinking, but that this was one that was become furious, as the other *gnus* I have chaſed ſince would frequently ſtop to look back at their purſuers, as ſoon as they had gained ground of them in any conſiderable degree. What contributed not a little to this gnu's having eſcaped from me was, that the ground was rocky, and that an ardent deſire for diſſecting this animal induced me to puſh my horſe on too faſt at firſt; ſo that in a very little time it was quite out of breath, and all over in a tremor.

A conſiderable number of eagles and birds of prey that feed upon carcaſes, were feaſting on and fighting for the elk-antilope we had ſhot the day before, and had already conſumed

consumed almost all the flesh we had left behind us. I likewise scared a jackal away from the carcase. I could not at this time pretend to chase it, as my horse was not recovered from the fatigue of pursuing the *gnu*. This day we likewise saw a numerous herd of *quaggas*, which not unfrequently made their appearance in these deserts. Scarcely a day passed without our seeing a great number of *hart-beests* between the two *Visch*-rivers, and *spring-boks* by the hundreds and thousands at a time. 1775. December.

It was now the 24th of December, a period which the Christians all over the world usually spend in mirth and festivity. My friend and I, though in the midst of a desert, and separated from the rest of mankind, were desirous of partaking of this religious jubilee; we therefore overhauled our stock of biscuit, and found that on occasion of this great holiday, we could afford to give out two to each man. As to the rest of our fare, we treated ourselves with an ostrich-egg, part of which was stewed in our porridge-pot, the remainder being boiled up with some coffee, a small bason full of which was distributed to every one of our company. The third dish consisted of a piece of elk's flesh. This day at noon the thermometer had been at 84, but towards the evening fell to 76.—At night our Hottentots fastened a piece of meat to a long stout strap in such a manner, that if the wolf should come and attempt to swallow the meat, he would be caught fast by the strap till they could lay hold of him and kill him; but the beast was not at that time in this part of the country, and consequently we could not discover how far this new invention of theirs was practicable.

On

1775. December. On the 25th the thermometer roſe to 100 degrees. We now repaired to a *ſea-cow* hole, (*Zeeko-gat*) near *Viſch-rivier*, to look for the *hippopotamus*.

On the 26th the wind blew agreeably cool, and the thermometer at noon was not above 79. This day we overtook ſeveral farmers from *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, who were come into this neighbourhood for the purpoſe of hunting. I could not help ſmiling, though at the ſame time I was covered with confuſion, at theſe good ruſtics viewing us ſo narrowly as they did from head to foot; while, on the other hand, I could not but allow their as well as our ſurprize, at this unexpected viſit to be extremely natural. In fact, they found me with a beard which had not been touched ſince the end of the preceding month, without a ſtock, and with my waiſtcoat open at the breaſt, my hat flapped, my hair braided into a twiſt, my ſide-curls hanging down ſtrait and fluttering in the air; a fine thin linen coat, with a white ground variegated with blood, dabs of gunpowder, and ſpots of dirt and greaſe of all kinds; but at the ſame time decorated with fine gilt buttons, a third part of which were fallen off, and a great many of them dangled about looſe and were ready to follow the others. As to the other part of my dreſs, my breeches, for the ſake of coolneſs, were turned up at the knees, in the manner in which they are frequently worn by the boors of this country; and after the ſame guiſe, and for a ſimilar reaſon, my ſtockings, which were woollen, were gartered below my knees, at the ſame time that they hung down looſe about my ankles; while my feet were ſet off with Hottentot ſhoes, made to draw

up

up with ſtrings, of the ſame kind with thoſe repreſented in Plate I. Vol. I. Fig. 4. 1775. December.

Mr. IMMELMAN, who, in fact, was a handſome young fellow, with large dark eye-brows and a fine head of hair, at this time wore a beard five weeks old, which was now beginning to curl in a very conſpicuous manner. As to the reſt of his appearance, he figured on horſeback in a long night-gown, with a white night-cap, large wide boots, and, if I remember right, was juſt at that time without ſtockings, in order to keep his legs the cooler. It may be neceſſary here, perhaps, to make ſome excuſe both for our beards and our dreſs. As to our beards, we had both of us in a merry mood, formed a reſolution not to touch a hair of them either with razors or ſciſſors, till we ſhould either get into company again with the Chriſtian laſſes, or ſhould have an opportunity of diſſecting a hippopotamus. Added to this, we wiſhed to try how a long beard would become our juvenile years. "It is a preſent made to us by nature, ſaid we to each other, let us keep it by way of experiment. Our beards, perhaps, prevent our catching cold, and getting defluxions and the tooth-ache in cold nights; at leaſt it is probable, that in this climate they defend the face from the ſcorching rays of the ſun; and who can tell, what reſpect and conſideration it may acquire us from the beardleſs tribes we are likely to meet with in the courſe of our expedition." This reſolution of ours, which we pertinaciouſly adhered to, gave riſe in the mean while to many ludicrous converſations; but I muſt confeſs, that we felt ourſelves delivered from a very heavy burden, when we got rid of our beards. Again, as to our clothing, it was entirely adapted to the

1775. December. warmth of the climate and our own convenience; neither was there any danger of its leſſening us in the eyes of our own Hottentots, or of thoſe we might expect to meet with in the deſert. As for my woollen ſtockings, I wore them principally with a view to keep off the flies, as well as to preſerve my legs from the bites of ſerpents, and from being torn by the branches of trees. Mr. IMMELMAN thought that boots were more convenient, and would anſwer this purpoſe better. Being an African by birth, he was not afraid of being ſun-burned; on which account likewiſe, in order to keep his hair out of his eyes, he generally rode in his night-cap.

On the 27th at ſeven in the morning the thermometer ſtood at 60 degrees, the preceding night having appeared to us extremely cool. At noon the thermometer was at 95. At five in the afternoon it had fallen to 83, when there came a ſhower of rain with thunder and lightning. At nine in the evening the thermometer was at 79 degrees.

On the 29th I forded over Great *Viſch-rivier*, and examined ſeveral ſea-cows ſculls that lay on the other ſide of it, and found them perfectly accord with the deſcription and delineation given of theſe parts by M. DE BUFFON.

I now began to be incommoded by a ſlight pain and ſwelling in the fore part of the breaſt, juſt at the edge of the ſternum, which gave me great uneaſineſs; but it went off in the ſpace of a few days, and in all probability was only a fore-runner of the gout, the ſymptoms of which had already begun to appear in a ſlight pain and ſenſation of burning in the ſoles of my feet. This diſorder, which fell particularly heavy on a botaniſt, and one who was travelling

ling through extenſive deſerts, I had probably brought upon myſelf, by having undergone too great fatigue. At leaſt one of our horſes was afflicted from this very cauſe with a kind of gout or tenderneſs in the feet, together with a ſwelling in the paſtern-joints, as ſoon as it got home to the Cape. The day before we had eaten our laſt biſcuit, our patience, in conſequence of waiting ſo long to ſee the *hippopotamus*, was almoſt as near being exhauſted as our bread; we, therefore, the next day came to a reſolution to go again into a land inhabited by Chriſtians. 1775. December.

On the 29th we were conducted by our Boſhies-men from Great to Little *Viſch-rivier*. This tract of country was thinly covered with thorn-trees (*mimoſa nilotica*,) which ſhaded the ground and kept it cool; ſo that being in ſome meaſure covered with graſs, it exhibited an agreeable verdure, and at the ſame time harboured a conſiderable number of *ſpringers*, *quaggas*, and *hartbeeſts*, of which latter we ſhot a young female. The muſcles and fibres of this creature retained a convulſive motion and twitching, even for ſeveral minutes after the animal had been cut in pieces. I muſt confeſs, that I never, either before or ſince, have obſerved any thing of the kind in the hartbeeſt, or any other animal.

CHAP. XIV.

Reſidence at Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte.

1775. December

THE firſt place where we took up our lodging was at an old elephant hunters, of the name of PRINTSLO, who was the firſt that had migrated here, and at the bottom a high mountain had pitched upon the fineſt ſituation for a farm in the whole diſtrict, and, I had almoſt ſaid, in all Africa. The thermometer in the morning as well as in the evening was about 60 degrees.

On the 30th the thermometer within doors was at 60 degrees at ſeven in the morning, and in the evening at 67.

The 31ſt, which was New Year's Eve, and fell upon a Sunday, was celebrated with a pſalm or two, and after that with a game at cards. They aſſured me, that the winter-months of July and Auguſt were colder at that place than at the Cape; ſo that the ſnow lay on the ground for a couple of days together, about two inches deep; but that their ſheep and cattle, then as well as at other times, were kept out of doors in the open air, and in the day-time were driven abroad to go in queſt of their own food.

January,

January, 1776. *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, where we were now arrived, is rather a flat tract of country, which takes in the upper part of *Kleine Viſch-rivier*, and is ſeparated from *Camdebo* by *Bruntjes-hoogtens*, or the Bruntjes-hills, and with reſpect to the latter place (*Camdebo*) are ſituated *agter*, or behind them. The *Sneeuwbergen*, which lie to the north of *Camdebo*, are ſo called from the ſnow with which in the winter-time the higheſt of them are ſaid to be covered, and even to remain ſo during part of the ſummer; ſo that they are, probably, of the ſame nature as the *Rogge-veld* and *Bokke-veld* mountains, and perhaps compoſe a part of the chain formed by them. The lower *Sneeuwbergen*, or Snow-mountains, are inhabited the year throughout; but on the higher range of hills the winters are ſevere enough: this circumſtance, is ſaid to make the coloniſts remove into the plains below in Camdebo. The inhabitants, indeed, of the more diſtant *Sneeuw*-mountains are ſometimes obliged, according to report, entirely to relinquiſh their dwellings and habitations, on account of the ſavage plundering race of Boſhies-men, of which I have made ſome mention above, in Vol. I. page 198; who from their hiding-places, ſhooting forth their poiſoned arrows at the ſhepherd, kill him, and afterwards drive away the whole of his flock, which perhaps conſiſts of ſeveral hundred ſheep, and forms the chief, if not the whole, of the farmer's property. What they cannot drive away with them they kill and wound, as much as the time will allow them, while they are making their retreat. It is in vain to purſue them, they being very ſwift of foot, and taking refuge up in the ſteep mountains, which they are able to run up almoſt as nimbly

1776. January.

1776. January. nimbly as baboons or monkies. From thence they roll down large ſtones, on any one that is imprudent enough to follow them. The approach of night gives them time to withdraw themſelves entirely from thoſe parts, by ways and places with which none but themſelves are acquainted. Theſe banditti collect together again in bodies to the amount of ſome hundreds, from their hiding-places and the clefts in the mountains, in order to commit freſh depredations and robberies. One of the coloniſts, who had been obliged to fly from theſe mountains, was at this time paſſing to *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte* with his family, ſervants, and cattle, in order to look out for a new habitation. He informed us, that the *Boſhies-men* grew bolder every day, and ſeemed to increaſe in numbers, ſince people had with greater earneſtneſs ſet about extirpating them. It was this, doubtleſs, which has occaſioned them to collect together into large bodies, in order to withſtand the encroachments of the coloniſts, who had already taken from them their beſt dwelling and hunting-places. An inſtance was related of the Boſhies-men having beſieged a peaſant with his wife and children in their cottage, till at length he drove them off by repeatedly firing among them. They had lately carried off from a farmer the greater part of his cattle. Not long before this, however, they had ſuffered a conſiderable defeat in the following manner. Several farmers, who perceived that they were not able to get at the Boſhies-men by the uſual methods, ſhot a ſea-cow, and took only the prime part of it for themſelves, leaving the reſt by way of bait; they themſelves, in the mean while, lying in ambuſh. The Boſhies-men with their wives and children now came

down from their hiding-places, with an intention to feaſt ſumptuouſly on the ſea-cow that had been ſhot; but the farmers, who came back again very unexpectedly, turned the feaſt into a ſcene of blood and ſlaughter.—Pregnant women, and children in their tendereſt years, were not at this time, neither indeed are they ever, exempt from the effects of the hatred and ſpirit of vengeance conſtantly harboured by the coloniſts with reſpect to the Boſhies-man nation; excepting ſuch, indeed, as are marked out to be carried away into bondage. Does a coloniſt at any time get ſight of a Boſhies-man, he takes fire immediately, and ſpirits up his horſe and dogs, in order to hunt him with more ardour and fury than he would a wolf or any other wild beaſt. On an open plain, a few coloniſts on horſeback are always ſure to get the better of the greateſt number of Boſhies-men that can be brought together, as the former always keep at the diſtance of about a hundred or a hundred and fifty paces, (juſt as they find it convenient) and charging their heavy fire-arms with a very large kind of ſhot, jump off their horſes, and reſt their pieces in their uſual manner on their ram-rods, in order that they may ſhoot with the greater certainty; ſo that the balls diſcharged by them will ſometimes, as I have been aſſured, go through the bodies of ſix, ſeven, or eight of the enemy at a time, eſpecially as theſe latter know no better than to keep cloſe together in a body. It is true, that, on the other hand, the Boſhies-men can ſhoot their arrows to the diſtance of two hundred paces, but with a very uncertain aim, as the arrow muſt neceſſarily firſt make a curve in the air; and ſhould it even at that diſtance chance to hit any of the farmers,

1776. January.

1776. January. mers, it is not able to go through his hat, or his ordinary linen or coarſe woollen coat.

In the diſtrict of *Sneeuwberg* the *land-droſt* has appointed one of the farmers, with the title of *veld-corporal*, to command in theſe wars, and as occaſion may require, to order out the country people alternately in ſeparate parties, for the purpoſe of defending the country againſt its original inhabitants. Government, indeed, has no other part in the cruelties exerciſed by its ſubjects, than that of taking no cognizance of them; but in this point it has been certainly too remiſs, in leaving a whole nation to the mercy of every individual peaſant, or in fact, of every one that chuſes to invade their land; as of ſuch people one might naturally expect, that intereſted views, and an unbridled ſpirit of revenge, ſhould prevail over the dictates of prudence and humanity. I am far from accuſing all the coloniſts of having a hand in theſe and other cruelties, which are too frequently committed in this quarter of the globe. While ſome of them plumed themſelves upon them, there were many who, on the contrary, held them in abomination, and feared leſt the vengeance of heaven ſhould, for all theſe crimes, fall upon their land and their poſterity.

It is true, that no endeavours have as yet been made to poliſh the *Boſhies-man* natives, and make them better men, and more uſeful to the coloniſts; but if we may form any judgment from the diſpoſition of thoſe who have been hired into the coloniſts ſervice, or have been made ſlaves of, and have not run away, this ſeems not impoſſible to be effected. Yet, perhaps, the ſentiments that are commonly entertained to their diſadvantage, as well as the cruelties which

which have been hitherto practiſed upon them, cannot but lay many impediments in the way of an attempt of this nature. If what I have been aſſured by many be true, the Hottentots, who originally reſided at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, lived peaceably with the Chriſtians who firſt migrated thither. They uſed likewiſe to perform the kindeſt offices for the latter, and would frequently go unaſked in ſearch of a ſtray lamb, or the like, belonging to the Chriſtians, and take it home to them; but at length they had withdrawn themſelves, and now live concealed in holes and corners up and down this part of the country like other Boſhies-men. Yet, being fewer in number, they are not altogether ſo bold and daring. Their complexions being rather of a yellow caſt, they are conſidered as of a different nation, and have conſequently been called *Chineſe*- or *Sneſe*-Hottentots. The chief abode of theſe fugitives is on each ſide of the two *Viſch-riviers*. Many of them that I ſaw had been good ſerviceable ſlaves. While we, like them, were ſtrolling up and down between the two *Viſch* rivers, we came occaſionally to the very ſpots, where the traces of their extinguiſhed fires were plainly to be ſeen, with other marks of their having been encamped there: and it would not, in my opinion, have been difficult for them to have harraſſed us and done us much miſchief; but whether it was their ſtupidity, the mildneſs of their diſpoſitions, or their fears that withheld them I know not, but they certainly did not do it. If, indeed, the mildneſs of their diſpoſitions alone influenced them in this matter, their conduct is by no means juſtifiable; for viewing it in this light, one may juſtly ſay, that they commit a crime againſt them- 1776. January.

1776. January. ſelves, in leaving the coloniſts at peace, to purſue them and make ſlaves of them at their own leiſure.

Another and more conſiderable part of this yellow-ſkinned nation, is diſperſed over a tract of country eleven days journey in breadth, and ſituated more to the north than to the north-eaſt of the *Viſch-riviers*, near a river called *Zomo*, where ſome of them are ſaid to be occupied in the grazing and rearing of cattle. Small parties of Chriſtians have, indeed, travelled through this country, and ſhot elephants there unmoleſted; yet they have thought it neceſſary for their greater ſecurity, to ſhut themſelves up at night in their waggons, as in a caſtle.

The more conſiderable rivers which run through the country of the Sneſe-Hottentots, are ſaid to be only the following. *t'Kamſi-t'kay*, *t'Nu-t'kay*, *Little Zomo*, *Great Zomo*, at which latter another country belonging to a different nation commences. Theſe rivers are reported to flow from north to ſouth and ſouth-eaſt, down towards the ſea, whither they probably run all together through the country called *Caffer-land*. From *t'Kau-t'kay*, or the great fiſh river, to *t'Kamſi-t'kay*, or the white river, they reckon ſeven days journey; every day's journey being reckoned at above forty-five miles, or eight hours briſk driving of oxen without ſtopping. From thence to *t'Nu-t'kay*, or the black river, it is reckoned one day's journey. From hence to Little *Zomo*, or the little *Watery-eyed* river, it is two days journey; and from this to Great Zomo, or the great *Watery-eye*, it is half a day. In this river, which is one of the largeſt, there is ſaid to be a great number of green ſtones, ſome of which the perſon who gave me this information, carried with

with him to the Cape, and ſold them to a dealer there, who ſold them again, and made preſents of them to travellers. They were, in all probability, of very little value. 1776. January.

On the other ſide of *Zomo* dwells another nation, who, by the Sneſe-Hottentots, are called *Tambukis*, and are ſaid by them to reſemble themſelves in complexion and dreſs, but to be a powerful and warlike people. Adjoining to this nation, towards the north, there is, according to them, a ſtill more warlike and intrepid people, whom they call *Mambukis*. Such coloniſts as have viſited Zomo-river, have obſerved, about two days journey to the northward of it, a mountain that threw out a great quantity of ſmoke. The Sneſe-Hottentots informed me, that the Tambukis had furnaces there for the purpoſe of ſmelting a ſpecies of metal, which they forge and make into ornaments of various kinds, hiring the Sneſe-Hottentots to carry in the wood which they uſe in theſe ſmeltings. I have frequently ſeen the Sneſe-Hottentots at *Bruntjes-hoogte* with ear-rings of this metal, and of the form exhibited in Plate I. Vol. I. fig. 8 and 9. In external appearance they reſemble piſtole gold; but from the aſſay made on one of theſe rings by M. Von ENGSTROEM, counſellor of the mines, they appear to be merely a mixture of copper and ſilver.

That ſingular animal, the *unicorn*, which is uſually repreſented like a horſe with a horn in its forehead, has been found delineated by the Sneſe-Hottentots on the plain ſurface of a rock ſomewhere in that country, though in as an uncouth and artleſs a ſtyle, as might naturally be expected from ſo rude and unpoliſhed a people. JACOB KOK, that great traveller and attentive obſerver of nature, whom

1776. January. I have had occaſion to mention before at page 351, Vol. I. is my only informer on this ſubject. The Sneſe-Hottentots told him, that by this ſketch they meant to repreſent an animal, which, in point of reſemblance, came neareſt to the horſes on which he and his train rode, but which at the ſame time had a horn in its forehead. To this they added, that theſe creatures were rare, extremely ſwift of foot, furious and dangerous; ſo that, when they went out after them they did not dare to attack them at cloſe quarters, nor appear before them on the open plains, but were obliged to clamber up ſome high cliff or rock, and there make a clattering noiſe; by which means they knew that the beaſt, being of a curious diſpoſition, would be enticed towards the ſpot, when they might, without danger, deſtroy it by means of their poiſoned arrows. It ſhould ſeem, that a rude and barbarous people like the Chineſe-Hottentots, could not eaſily invent, and, by the mere force of imagination, repreſent to themſelves ſuch beings, and at the ſame time ſo circumſtantially relate the manner in which they hunted them. Still leſs credible is it, that theſe ſavages ſhould have been able to preſerve any remembrance of the records and traditions of former times concerning this animal. Neither is it any wonder, that a ſketch of the unicorn ſhould be ſeen here only at one place. For, generally ſpeaking, a man ſees little or nothing in paſſing through this country, which is only reſorted to for the purpoſe of hunting elephants. Now I have happened to touch upon the ſubject of the elephant, it is worth while to remark, that even this, the largeſt of all animals on the face of the globe, which is ſo common and ſo much ſought after

after in Africa, and ſo frequently tamed, and at the ſame time ſo much uſed, and conſequently ſo well known in Aſia, has been hitherto, as it were, unknown, and the ſubject of much diſpute with reſpect to an eſſential point, I mean the manner of its copulation, as I have related above at page 326, Vol. I. It is therefore not ſo much to be wondered at, that we ſhould know nothing of an animal leſs in bulk, and much leſs common. And though I ſhould object to the teſtimony given me by my informer, as well as to that of the Chineſe-Hottentots, in regard to the unicorn, yet the exiſtence of it ſhould not on that account be looked upon as a fable, notwithſtanding it is not known to theſe more modern times. 1776. January.

It is but a few years ſince the *camelopardalis*, the talleſt of all quadrupeds, when meaſured at the fore part, has been made freſh mention of by naturaliſts; this too has been the caſe with the *gnu*. A repreſentation of this remarkable animal, the *camelopardalis*, ſeems likewiſe to have been given us by the antients; but who, till theſe our times, ever conſidered it in any other light than that of a fiction, a monſter, or, at leaſt, a monſtrous medley, exiſting only in the imagination? When we conſider, moreover, that the *hippopotamus*, which in all probability is a larger animal, though ſomewhat lower than the elephant, has been hitherto very little known; as likewiſe that, till the preſent moment, we have been almoſt utter ſtrangers even to the *rhinoceros bicornis*, may we not expect that there will be a time, when the unicorn and all other beaſts and inſects, animated by the Creator of all things, but unknown to us at preſent, will be brought out of their holes and hiding-places into the light? The following extract of a let-

1776. January.

a letter from M. PALLAS, dated the 14th of December, 1778, which, on account of the good ſenſe and inſtruction with which it is replete, I ſhall take the liberty of inſerting in this place, will ſerve to confirm us in the idea, that the unicorn is a real, and not an imaginary animal.

" Quod monocerotem in interioribus Africæ partibus etiamnum latere ſuſpicionem moves, id quidem mihi haud inexpectatum; certoque jamdudum perſuaſuſus ſum, non ex nihilo apud veteres illam fuiſſe famam; ſed vel caſu unicornes antilopas, de quibus in XII. Faſciculo Spicilegiorum dixi, anſam dediſſe, vel peculiarem fortè ſpeciem unicornem, nobis hucuſque ignotam, antiquitus innotuiſſe, quando interiora Africæ itineratoribus Europæis erant frequentiora. Si non incidiſti forſan in locum relationis Ludovici Barthema, ubi Monocerotes duos Meccæ ad templum, in theriotrophæo viſos, deſcribit; vide illam, quæſo, in Vol. I. collection. Ramuſii, p. 151. Neſcio quid hominem excitare potuiſſet ad fingenda, quæ ibi retulit, quæque non ita malè cohærent.

I have not as yet been able to procure a ſight of the *Collectiones Ramuſii* referred to by M. PALLAS *.—With reſpect

* The paſſage in VARTHEMA here referred to is as follows:

" Da un altra banda del dicto tempio è una murata, nella quale ſta dentro dui unicorni vivi & li ſe monſtrano per coſa grandiſſima come è certo. Li quali diro come ſono facti. El maggior facto como un polledro di trenta meſi & ha uno corno nella fronte, el quale corno ſie circa tre braccia di longheza. L'altro unicorno ſie come ſerio un polledro de uno anno, & ha un corno longo circa quatro palmi. El colore del dicto animale ſie come un cavallo ſaginato ſcuro: & ha la teſta come un cervo & ha el collo non molto longo con elſchuna crina rara & curta che pendeno ad una banda: & ha la gamba ſottile & aſciuta come un capriolo: el pede ſuo è un poco ſeſſo davanti & longia è caprina: & ha certi peli dalla banda di dietro veramenti queſta moſtra de eſſere un ferociſſima & deſerto animale. Et queſti dui animali furono preſentati allo Soldano della Mecha, per la pui bella coſa ch'hoggi ſe trovi al modi & per piu ricco theſoro liquali furono mandati da uno Re de Ethiopia:

1776. January.

ſpect to other particulars, I have been informed by the coloniſts at *Agter Bruntjes Hoogte*, that the tract of country lying between them and *Zomo*, or the *Tambukis*, conſiſted in a great meaſure of very extenſive and barren plains; that the farther they went to the north, the leſs they knew of the vegetables produced by it; that there grew in theſe parts a kind of blood-tree, &c. that if one travelled from the upper part of *Viſch-rivier* more to the ſouth-eaſt, or the *Caffre* ſide of the country, one would come to a river called *Konap*, which was ſuppoſed to run into *Viſch-rivier*; but two days journey farther on, going from *Konap*-river towards the north-eaſt, there was a river, called *Kaiſi-kamma*, which derived its ſource from a mountain known to the

Ethiopia: zoe da un Re Moro, el quale li fece queſto preſente per fare parentato con el dicto Soldano de la Mecha."

"On the other ſide of the temple there is a court-yard encompaſſed with high walls, where we ſaw two unicorns, which were ſhewn as great rarities, and indeed are fit ſubjects for admiration. The form of them is as follows. The larger one reſembles a foal of two years and a half old, and has a horn in its forehead about three cubits in length. The other unicorn was leſs, being nearly as big as a foal of a year old, and had a horn about four palms long. The colour of this animal is that of a dark dun horſe; its head is like that of a ſtag, its neck of a moderate length, furniſhed with ſome thinly ſcattered ſhort hairs that hang down on one ſide: its legs are long and ſlender like thoſe of a roe; the feet are ſomewhat cloven in the fore part, and the hoofs are like thoſe of a goat. It has on the back part of its legs a great quantity of hair, a circumſtance which gives this animal a fierce appearance; though, in fact, the beaſt is tame and gentle in lts nature. Both the animals were preſenred to the Sultan of Mecca as very great rarities, and which are to be found in very few parts of the globe, by an Ethiopian King, who ſought for the Sultan's friendſhip.

The preceding paſſage is extracted from the original, in the library of the Preſident of the Royal Society. The book itſelf, the title of which is as follows, *Itinerario de Ludovico de Varthema, Bologneſe, ne lo Egypto, ne lo Suria, ne la Arabia, &c.* (*Venezia*, 1517, 8vo.) is extremely ſcarce, and does not appear to have been ſeen either by M. PALLAS, Dr. SPARRMAN, or his German commentator Mr. FORSTER. The tranſlation of this paſſage is made from RAMUSIO, who has modernized this author, or rather re-tranſlated him from a Latin verſion, which is itſelf a tranſlation only from the Spaniſh; ſo that the Italian original muſt have been loſt for ſome time.

coloniſts

1776. January.

coloniſts by the name of the *Bambus-berg*, or Bamboo-mountain, from the circumſtance of a ſort of reeds or bamboos growing upon it, which were very much prized by them for the purpoſe of making handles for their long whips.

Groote-rivier, or *Great* river, is ſaid to be the largeſt river in Africa, and to be no otherwiſe known than from the accounts of the Hottentots. It is reported to contain a great number of ſea-cows or river-horſes, which were very bold and daring; ſo that it cannot, without danger, be navigated for the purpoſe of farther exploring the country. It is ſuppoſed to lie directly to the northward, at the diſtance of eight or ten days journey from the *Sneeuw-bergen*. It was ſaid to riſe in the eaſt, and run ſtrait on towards the north. It is probable that this river ſoon after turns off to the weſt and the ſouth, and is the ſame *Groote-rivier* which I have inſerted in my map, on the authority of M. HENRY HOP's *Journal of an Expedition made to the Diſtrict of Anamaquas*, publiſhed in a compilation called *Nouvelle Deſcription du Cap de bonne Eſperance*, which I quoted above. This river, however, muſt not be confounded with another of the ſame name, which empties itſelf at the eaſtern ſhore of Africa and the Caffre coaſt.

The country of the Caffres lies to the eaſt of Great *Viſch-rivier*, next the coaſt. Its inhabitants, the Caffres, have no notion of the breeding of ſheep, employing themſelves only in rearing horned cattle, and, like the *Gonaquas* Hottentots, wearing cow-hides, which are well rubbed and dreſſed with greaſe, till they become ſoft and pliable. Their houſes, or huts, are ſaid to be ſmall and ſquare, compoſed

of rods, and covered with clay and cow-dung, which gives them the appearance of ſmall ſtone houſes. 1776. January.

The weapons of the Caffres are merely ſhields made of ſole-leather, and haſſagais, or that kind of javelin conſiſting of a ſlender and light wooden ſhaft, headed with a broad and rather heavy iron plate, which I have delineated in Plate II. Vol. I. fig. 1 and 2, and have mentioned at page 9 of this volume, as being made uſe of by the Gonaquas Hottentots.

The nation is governed by many different chiefs, who probably have all the property of their ſubjects veſted in themſelves, and at the ſame time have an abſolute unlimited authority over them. As far as I could underſtand, their ſtate and power are hereditary. It is ſaid that they are frequently at war with each other, and that they always kill the priſoners they have taken. But if a chief ſhould chance to fall into the enemy's hands, he is not put to death, but is ſent back again with admonitions to behave himſelf more peaceably for the future. The occaſion of their wars is generally the ſame as in other parts of the globe, viz. either a want of the common ſentiments of humanity in one of the contending powers, or their arrogant and rapacious diſpoſition, or elſe ſome bone of contention which they cannot on either ſide perſuade themſelves to give up, without ſhedding their own blood and that of their fellow-creatures. It is even ſaid, that a ſtolen or ſtray calf, or one grazing upon territories of a neighbouring country, and other matters equally trifling, will ſometimes be ſufficient to ſet two or more nations together by the ears. Neither of the parties, however, carries their

1776. January.

revenge ſo far as to extirpate the other, but is ſatisfied when the adverſary yields the day and ſues for peace.

The Dutch coloniſts have, by means of the following incident, of which I do not remember exactly the year, inſpired the Caffre nation with no ſmall degree of terror. A man of the name of HEUPPENAER, made an expedition, at the head of a ſmall party of farmers, into the Caffre country, in order to ſhoot elephants. The Caffres, who took a fancy to the iron-work of their waggons, and ſome other articles they had with them, came in a body, conſiſting of ſeveral hundred men, and threw on a ſudden ſuch a number of darts among the coloniſts, that the major part of them were killed; a dart likewiſe pierced through the tilt of a waggon and killed HEUPPENAER, who was ſitting in it. The blame of this was in a great meaſure thrown upon HEUPPENAER, who was too high-ſpirited to ſhew any fear, and, agreeably to the advice of his companions, take to his weapons in time. One of them, who was ſaid ſtill to be living in the colony, had eſcaped, though half drowned, by hiding himſelf for the ſpace of twenty-four hours under a large water-fall. Two others found an opportunity of riding away, and afterwards harraſſing the Caffres a long time on the plain, by jumping, whenever they came near a party of theſe ſavages, off their horſes at intervals, in order to take a better aim, by which means they killed ſeveral at one ſhot. This fracas, and the manner in which it was revenged, have taught the Caffres ever ſince, to lay a greater reſtraint on their deſires for the iron-work of the coloniſts waggons.

In

1776. January.

In *Lange-kloof* I met with a farmer who was juſt come back alone from this country, and had brought with him ſeveral elephants teeth. In return for ſome tobacco with which he had preſented a Caffre prince, this latter had ordered his ſubjects to ſhew him the places where the elephants were to be found.

In my map I have called a tract of country ſituated towards the mouth of *Groote Viſch-rivier*, by the name of *King Ruyter's Craal*, in commemoration of a Hottentot king, or, as he was ſtyled by the coloniſts, a Hottentot captain, called RUYTER. I have met with ſeveral Chriſtians who had paid a viſit to this remarkable man, and related to me his life and adventures, which in brief are as follows. While he was in ſervice at a farmer's at *Rogge-veld*, he happened to have a quarrel with another Hottentot his companion, and murdered him; and as he was apprehenſive of being, agreeably to the laws of the colony, hanged for this action, he ran away. After a variety of adventures, he arrived at length in that part of the country which lies near *Boſhies-man's-rivier*, where by his intrepidity, he raiſed himſelf to be the chief of a party of Boſhies-men, or Hottentot rangers. At the head of theſe he ſubdued ſeveral other tribes, and afterwards had the art to make them take arms againſt the Caffres, by exciting in them a miſtruſt of each other; and at the ſame time inſpiring them with a high opinion of himſelf, as being of ſo great importance to them in the capacity of their chief or leader, that they could not poſſibly do without him; eſpecially as he ſupplied them with plunder, and taught them a method

1776. January. of rearing their cattle, better in both caſes than ever they had been accuſtomed to.

While by ſuch conduct he rendered himſelf highly formidable to the Caffres, he took care, by inflicting the puniſhment of death on his ſubjects for the leaſt fault, or even on the leaſt ſuſpicion of a fault, to exact (and for a long time to enjoy) the moſt ſervile ſubmiſſion and implicit obedience from the ſimple uncultivated mortals he had collected together in order to tyrannize over. He uſed frequently with his own hand to put to death one or more of theſe ſlaviſh vaſſals, and would immediately throw his javelin through the body of any of his attendants, that heſitated at his nod to diſpatch the man whom he had marked out as the victim of his revengeful and cruel diſpoſition.

Excluſively of the dictates of a falſe and ill-judged policy, perhaps the natural turn of the tyrant's mind induced him to be guilty of theſe cruelties; but when the Chriſtians reproached him with the barbarity and blood-thirſtineſs of his diſpoſition, he replied, "It was in a lucky hour that I conveyed myſelf out of the reach of your authority. You would have hanged me for having killed my antagoniſt as if I had committed a crime, when at the ſame time, to kill an enemy is reckoned a laudable and manly action." To the coloniſts he always behaved as a true and faithful ally; and in return for the tobacco and other articles they preſented him with, uſed to help them to make ſlaves of ſuch ſtraggling Boſhies-men as did not live under his juriſdiction. By keeping the Caffres at a proper diſtance, he not only ſerved his own turn, but was likewiſe extremely uſeful

ful to the coloniſts. But however cautious he was to maintain peace with his more powerful neighbours the Chriſtians, yet it is ſaid, that when he was in the meridian of life, and at the zenith of his power, he received them with an uncommon degree of pride and arrogance; which, as my informer expreſſed himſelf, they could not eaſily digeſt from a vagabond *ſheep-ſkin* prince. He ſucceeded, however, in keeping up his importance with them as well as with his own people. At preſent, old and infirm, and barely director of a more inconſiderable and freer ſociety, conſiſting of about two hundred people, he is wont to receive his old Chriſtian acquaintance in the moſt friendly manner, and, with tears in his eyes, to aſk for tobacco, no longer by way of tribute, but as a preſent, which he is willing to receive from their bounty. 1776. January.

The deſpotic and tyrannical conduct by which this chief made himſelf ſo famous, and for ſome time ſo powerful and ſo much feared, is probably the occaſion of his being reduced to the low ſtate in which he is at preſent; and it is imagined, will bring him to a ſtill more abject and lower condition. This great man may, perhaps, at laſt come to the miſerable ſituation of the lion in the fable. Another cauſe of his preſent degradation is as follows. His ſubjects, weary of the ambition and ſevere diſcipline of their chief, took the opportunity of deſerting him, at the time when he was gallantly marching at the head of them againſt the Gaffres. Being no longer ſo ſwift of foot as he was in his youth, he was not able to make his eſcape, and was conſequently taken priſoner; but being recognized as a chief, his life, according to the cuſtom I have before mentioned,

1776. January. tioned, as being eſtabliſhed among the Caffres, was ſpared, and he was ſent back to his people; yet not without menaces of having his eyes put out, if ever he ſhould riſe againſt them in arms in future. This misfortune, and the ſalutary leſſon given him by his enemies, were not efficacious, however, as ſoon as he had again collected together a number of his people, to divert his hoſtile intentions againſt the Caffres. It was ſaid, that he had lately endeavoured to ſpirit up another petty Boſhies-man chief againſt them, and had received from him promiſes of aſſiſtance, as ſoon as he could get iron to head his arrows with, and make the other neceſſary preparations. They were apprehenſive, and not without reaſon, that the old tyrant in this intended expedition of his would meet with that death, which, tired of himſelf and his adverſe fortune, he ſeemed to be in ſearch of. He had, according to a cuſtom prevalent among the Hottentots, appointed the youngeſt of his three ſons to be heir to his poſſeſſions and throne. Neither of the three, however, was ſuppoſed to inherit the father's talents and abilities in a ſufficient degree, to be able to eſtabliſh himſelf on the throne.

The reſpective methods of fighting of the Caffres and Hottentots are very different. The Caffres, as we have mentioned above, make uſe of darts, which they cannot employ with any effect at a greater diſtance than twenty or thirty paces. Of theſe darts they do not carry with them into the field more than three or four; ſo that they are ſoon diſarmed, in caſe their antagoniſts are bold and nimble enough to pick up theſe weapons as ſoon as the Caffres have thrown them out of their hands. The Caffres, moreover,

1776. January.

moreover, uſe a ſhield made of ſhoe-ſole leather, and large enough to cover the whole of their bodies completely, on their ſhrinking themſelves up into a rather ſmaller compaſs. I have ſeen a baſtard Caffre go through his exerciſe with theſe weapons; from whence I conclude, that when they are in actual engagement, they ſhift their bodies continually from one ſide to the other, ſo that they cannot eaſily be hit, taking care all this time to keep their *haſſagais* or darts in readineſs, to throw at the unguarded part of their antagoniſts. The Boſhies-men, on the other hand, who are without any ſhields, are more than a match for the Caffres, as long as they can keep them at a good diſtance from them by means of their bows and poiſoned arrows, which, though they do not immediately make ſo painful a wound, as the *haſſagais* of the Caffres, are yet more dangerous in the end.

It was in conſequence of this circumſtance, that RUYTER'S Boſhies-men beat the Caffres for ſo long a time. It has therefore been a matter of wonder, that the Caffres have not learned the uſe of the bow and arrow, in like manner as their enemies the Boſhies-men. This manner of fighting does not ſeem to require great courage, nor indeed does it appear calculated to give either nation a diſpoſition to it.

If I may be allowed to judge from two inſtances, the ſlaves of the Chriſtians are of a much more warlike turn. Theſe, conſequently, when they elope from their maſters' ſervice, are ſure to be well received and protected by the Caffres. At leaſt, a Caffre prince, notwithſtanding that he had a handſome conſideration offered him, had juſt before our arrival in theſe parts, refuſed to deliver up two ſlaves

1776. January. belonging to the Chriſtians; alledging, by way of giving a reaſon for his refuſal, that they were his beſt warriors.

Before I proceed, agreeably to the order of my journal, to ſpeak of *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, where I lived for ſome time, I muſt juſt mention the following particulars relative to a province immediately bordering upon it.

Camdebo is an arid, flat, *Carrow-like* tract of country, inhabited by Chriſtians, who are chiefly employed in rearing cattle. This diſtrict is ſaid to extend as far as the ſouth ſide of the *Sneeuw* mountains. From the information and accounts that were given me, I have laid down in my map two different roads, by which people may go to the Cape through *Camdebo*, both from *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte* and from the *Sneeuwbergen*. The north road is ſaid to go to *Anthon-veld*, *Kau-veld*, and *Bokke-veld*. The ſouthern way goes downwards to *Oliphant's-rivier*, and ſo along that to the high road, by which I went myſelf, and which I have laid down in my map. You may likewiſe turn out of this ſouthern road before, and go by *Platte-kloof*, *Hex-rivier*, and ſo on to the Cape. The inhabitants of *Camdebo* and *Sneeuwberg* have likewiſe, it is ſaid, found out a by-road, though rough and intricate, down by the ſide of *Zondags-rivier* to *Zwartkops-rivier*, in order to provide themſelves with ſalt at the ſalt-pits deſcribed above.

Theſe two roads through *Camdebo*, &c. are, it is true, the neareſt from *Bruntjes-hoogte* to the *Cape*; and in fact, the only road that people take. But the tracts of country through which they are carried, are ſaid to be but little inhabited, very arid, and deficient in reſpect to paſturage, and ſtill more ſo in the article of water; particularly that year,

year, which was ſuppoſed to be the drieſt in the memory of man, ſo that ſome particular watering-places were entirely dried up. I was told of a traveller, the greater part of whoſe oxen had, on occaſion of this circumſtance, fainted and died upon the road. Conſequently, our beaſts, which were too few in number to be able to relieve each other much, by this time wearied out, and not uſed to put up with the dry buſhes of the Carrow country, were the more likely to periſh, had we not, on the ſcore of theſe conſiderations, ſuffered ourſelves to be entirely diſſuaded from travelling by theſe roads. I was likewiſe obliged to give up all thoughts of viſiting *Sneeuwberg* and *Camdebo*, on account of the diſorder among the horſes, which was ſaid at this time to be very rife, and had already reached almoſt as far as to *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*. In this place, moreover, there were many birds, inſects, and animals which I had not ſeen in other parts, and which gave me ſufficient employment. Beſides, my preſent hoſt, who wiſhed to keep me with him for the ſake of two people who were ſick in his houſe, was extremely civil to me, and aſſiſted me greatly in my reſearches; and, together with one of his ſons and his ſon-in-law, accompanied me afterwards on a hunting-party down *Viſch-rivier*, which laſted for a fortnight, and of which I ſhall give an account hereafter. 1776. January.

Having ſo many ſubjects to employ myſelf upon, I was almoſt tempted to remain here during the winter, in order to make a trip the following ſpring to the *Tambuki mines*, and at the ſame to go in queſt of the unicorn. In fact, both Mr. IMMELMAN and myſelf endeavoured to perſuade

1776. January. several farmers to equip themselves for this undertaking. This scheme they had no great objection to, but could not give me a positive answer on the subject; and indeed, after a more mature consideration of the matter I found, that I had neither money nor gunpowder sufficient for the purpose, not to mention many other good reasons which prevented me from putting it into execution. I was therefore obliged, though sore against my will, to give up all thoughts of this excursion; though afterwards I was not very sorry at having met with the disappointment, being pretty well convinced, that another year's fatigue would not have contributed much more to my future happiness.

In the mean while, after an absence of five years spent in travels and voyages to various parts of the globe, I imagine it will scarcely be necessary to make any excuse for turning my thoughts likewise towards home. Happy if my humble endeavours should excite other naturalists to pursue the same path with greater success, and make us acquainted with the remaining curious and remarkable objects, which are doubtless still to be found in the southern parts of Africa.

Consequently, *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte* is the northernmost part that I visited of the whole colony; and, in my opinion, it is likewise the most pleasant. There was still remaining on the ground, a more meadow-like verdure than is usually seen in this country; a verdure that owed its existence to the shelter that was afforded to the soil by the thorny branches of the *mimosa nilotica*, and was still further enlivened by the numerous yellow blossoms of that plant. The great quantity of beautiful vernal lilies, together with a peculiar

peculiar *paraſitic* plant of a blood-red hue, (deſcribed by me in the Swediſh Tranſact. for 1776, page 307) which were now ſpringing out of their beds covered with a more verdant and luxuriant herbage than the other parts of this country, muſt doubtleſs in the ſeaſon for their blooming, add ſtill more to the ſplendour of this delightful ſcene. This, however, was not a little augmented by a purling ſtream, viz. Little *Viſch-rivier*, which winds through this ſpot in ſportive meanders. On its banks, beſides cornfields, were ſeen ſcattered up and down orchards and kitchen-gardens recently laid out, and ſome of them cut through with drains. Plantations, which though as yet inconſiderable, ſeemed, however, to promiſe every thing to time and induſtry. The houſes, far from intimidating the traveller by their ſplendid appearance, with the conſtrained pomp of antichambers and drawing-rooms, were rather in the ſtyle of plain and ſimple cottages; but, on the other hand, were environed with the animated embelliſhments of ſheep and cattle, and inhabited by people in eaſy circumſtances; who, not with intereſted views, but with open arms received me and my companion, juſt arrived from the dreary and inhoſpitable deſert, and charmed us with their kind and friendly behaviour. 1776. January.

The ſuperior degree of fertility, and the more delightful verdure which I found here, ought, perhaps, to be aſcribed to a ridge of mountains on the eaſt ſide of Little *Viſch-rivier*, which was interſected by beautiful green vales interſperſed with woods. Theſe mountains, by collecting the clouds together, cauſed them to fall in refreſhing ſhowers of rain on the banks of the river that ran at their feet: and

1776. January. the ſuperior degree of fertility occaſioned by theſe circumſtances, invited not only the antilopes and other animals of the chaſe to this ſide of the country, but likewiſe induced various kinds of beautiful birds to reſort to it, and build their neſts in the trees that grew on the banks of the river.

What contributes not a little to this fertility is, that the land is freſh, that is to ſay, not yet worn out by being too frequently and too cloſely grazed off by the numerous flocks and herds of the Chriſtians, vide Vol. p. 251, 252.

All the coloniſts who follow the grazing buſineſs, and particularly thoſe at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, lead an eaſy and pleaſant life. One of theſe boors uſually puts to his plough eight or ten of his fat, or rather pampered oxen; and it is hardly to be conceived, with what little trouble he gets into order a field of a moderate ſize; and in conſequence of his feeding ſo great a number of cattle, how eaſily he can render it in the higheſt degree fertile. So that, always ſure of a rich harveſt from a ſoil not yet worn out, and ever grateful to the culture beſtowed upon it, he may be almoſt ſaid merely to amuſe himſelf with the cultivation of it, for the bread he wants for himſelf and his family; while many other huſbandmen muſt ſweat and toil themſelves almoſt to death, both for what they uſe themſelves, and for that which is conſumed by others, who frequently live in eaſe and indolence. By his extenſive paſtures, and by throwing a ſufficient quantity of land into tillage, he rears a conſiderable number of horſes, which frequently are uſed only a few days in a year, for the purpoſe of treading out and threſhing his corn. With pleaſure, but without the leaſt trouble to himſelf, he ſees the herds and flocks, which conſtitute his riches,

riches, daily and conſiderably increaſing. Theſe are driven to paſture and home again by a few Hottentots or ſlaves, who likewiſe make the butter; ſo that it is almoſt only with the milking, that the farmer, together with his wife and children, concern themſelves at all. To do this buſineſs, however, he has no occaſion to riſe before ſeven or eight o'clock in the morning; and notwithſtanding his having enjoyed his bed ſo long in the morning, he can afford, without neglecting any thing of conſequence, to allow himſelf an afternoon's nap, which the heat of the climate renders more agreeable than it is in our northern regions. 1776. January.

That they might not put their arms and bodies out of the eaſy and commodious poſture in which they had laid them on the couch, they have been known to receive travellers lying quite ſtill and motionleſs, excepting that they have very civilly pointed out the road, by moving their foot to the right or left. Profeſſor THUNBERG, who has had greater opportunities than I had of exploring the warmer *Carrow* diſtricts, (vide Vol. I. page 246) where the inhabitants were ſtill more indolent, has given me an account much to the ſame purpoſe.

The leaning of their arms on the table at meal times, is a cuſtom very common with the coloniſts, and conſidered by them as a very laudable one, and in this particularly I followed my hoſt's example; but I could not ſufficiently admire the inventive ſpirit of idleneſs, exhibited in the voluptuous poſture in which they univerſally indulge themſelves when they ſmoke their pipes. Sitting on a bench or a chair without elbows, with their backs moderately bent, they lay their left leg over their right knee, and upon the

1776. January.

the left knee again thus raiſed, they reſt their left elbow, while with the hand on the ſame ſide they ſupport their chin, or one of their cheeks, at the ſame time holding their pipes in their mouths. Their right hand is then at liberty to graſp the ſmall of their left leg with, or elſe to convey now and then to their mouth a cooling draught of tea. Let the reader repreſent to himſelf ſeveral people ſitting together in this poſture, and he will readily conceive what an elegant figure they would make in a group. I never ſaw any of the fair ſex, however, in a poſture of this kind. Among a ſet of beings ſo entirely devoted to their eaſe, one might naturally expect to meet with a variety of the moſt commodious eaſy chairs and ſofas; but the truth is, that they find it much more commodious to avoid the trouble of inventing and making them.

I remarked as a very ſingular circumſtance, that a wealthy farmer at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, who had plenty of timber to ſell, had nevertheleſs only a ricketty elbow-chair in his houſe, and a few ſcanty ſtools of the moſt ſimple conſtruction, made of a ſingle board, with four rough-hewn ill-ſhapen legs. What, however, was ſtill more ſingular was, that notwithſtanding that one of theſe ſtools had loſt a leg, yet it was frequently made uſe of to the endangering of the perſon's limbs who ſat upon it, without either the maſter of the houſe or any of his three ſons, who were otherwiſe all alert enough at the chaſe, having ever once thought of mending it. Nor did the inhabitants of this place exhibit much leſs ſimplicity and moderation, or to ſpeak more properly, ſlovenlineſs and penury in their dreſs than in their furniture; neither of which, therefore, were

in

in any wife correſpondent to the large flocks and herds poſſeſſed by theſe graziers, and the plentiful tables they could afford to keep in conſequence of theſe poſſeſſions. The diſtance at which they are from the Cape, may, indeed, be ſome excuſe for their having no other earthenware or china in their houſes, but what was cracked or broken; but this, methinks, ſhould not prevent them from being in poſſeſſion of more than one or two old pewter pots, and ſome few plates of the ſame metal; ſo that two people are frequently obliged to eat out of one diſh, uſing it beſides for every different article of food that comes upon table. 1776. January.

Each gueſt muſt bring his knife with him, and they frequently make uſe of their fingers inſtead of forks. The moſt wealthy farmer here is conſidered as being well dreſſed in a jacket of home-made cloth, or ſomething of the kind made of any other coarſe cloth, breeches of undreſſed leather, woollen ſtockings, a ſtriped waiſtcoat, a cotton handkerchief about his neck, a coarſe callico ſhirt, Hottentot field-ſhoes, or elſe leathern ſhoes, with braſs buckles, and a coarſe hat. Indeed it is not in dreſs, but in the number and thriving condition of their cattle, and chiefly in the ſtoutneſs of their draught-oxen, that theſe peaſants vie with each other. It is likewiſe by activity and manly actions, and by other qualities, that render a man fit for the married ſtate, and the rearing of a family, that the youth chiefly obtain the eſteem of the fair ſex; none of whom likewiſe were ever known, for the ſake of vying with each other in point of dreſs, to have endangered either their huſband's property or their own virtue. A plain cloſe cap, and a coarſe cotton gown, virtue and good houſewifery, are look-

1776. January. ed upon by the fair ſex as ſufficient ornaments for their perſons; a flirting diſpoſition, coquetry and paint, would have very little effect in making conqueſts of young men, brought up in ſo hardy a manner, and who have had ſo homely and artleſs an education, as the youth in this place. In ſhort, one may here, if any where in the world, lead an innocent, virtuous, and happy life.

When in company with theſe plain artleſs huſbandmen, I uſed frequently to ſtart ſuch queſtions and ſubjects of converſation, as tended to give them a proper ſenſe of the happineſs of their ſituation, and make them ſet a higher value upon it, than they perhaps had done before. Indeed, I thought I could not more properly or more agreeably employ the little Dutch I had learned, than in perſuading the good people among whom I ſojourned, to be content with their lot, and conſequently to be happy. One day, when I was urging this point, I received the following pertinent, but kind reply, from a diſcreet ſenſible woman, who was daughter to an inferior magiſtrate at *Zwellendam*, and was married to a yeoman in this place.

" My good friend, ſaid ſhe, you talk like a prudent ſenſible man; I am quite of your opinion, and wiſh you every happineſs that can attend you: why need you wander any longer up and down the world in queſt of happineſs? You find it here, and are welcome to enjoy it among us. You have already a waggon, oxen, and ſaddle horſes; theſe are the chief things requiſite in order to ſet up a farmer; there are yet uncultivated places enough in this neighbourhood, proper either for paſturage or tillage, ſo that you may chooſe out of an extenſive tract of land the ſpot that pleaſes

pleaſes you beſt. Here are people enough, who will ſend you that part of their cattle to keep which they cannot conveniently look after themſelves, on conditions that you ſhall have the young ones produced by them for your trouble. In this way, many young beginners have acquired a competency in a few years. With your knowledge of diſorders and plants, you may render yourſelf ſerviceable to your neighbours, and now and then get a heifer or a calf. In ſhort, I will venture to propheſy, that you will ſoon have cows and ſheep in abundance. Yet there is ſtill ſomewhat wanting, which is moſt eſſential to your happineſs; this is, a prudent and diſcreet wife: take my advice and look about you, and I will take upon me to aſſure you, that you will not long be without one in this country." 1776. January.

This advice, ſo conſonant to the voice of nature, and coming with ſuch kind intention from the fair ſex, could not but greatly affect me: it is remarkable, however, that the poor woman who gave it me, had herſelf a bad huſband.

As a farther proof, that it is not ſo much to the different degrees in which nature has ſhed her bounty over the place a man lives in, as to himſelf and his fellow-creatures, that he ought to impute his felicity, I had the chagrin to ſee the peace of this happy ſpot interrupted by the jarring of two neighbours.

Having now for ſome time departed in my narration from the order of my journal, I will here reſume it.—I ſtaid at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte* till the 21ſt day of January. During this time my oxen, which before were very lean, had got

1776. January.

into good condition; and we ourſelves took care, by drinking plentifully of butter-milk, and by doing honour to the good fare ſet before us in great abundance by theſe worthy ruſtics, to make ourſelves amends for the hunger, thirſt, and other hardſhips we had ſuffered for a whole month in the deſert. Among other delicacies, we were entertained on the 3d of January with a diſh, as delicious as it was ſingular, taken from a couple of ſcore of calves which had been caſtrated that day. The women too ate of this diſh without bluſhing. I have already mentioned, that I had had on my way hither ſome little tendency to the gout; and at this place it increaſed ſo much, that on the 8th and 9th of this month I could ſcarcely ſtand on either foot. A ſtiffneſs with which the ſinews and articulations of my feet were affected, and which was attended with an acute pain and dry heat diffuſed over the ſkin itſelf, occaſioned me to think of the vapour bath, as being a powerfully emollient remedy. The quick relief I had ſeen afforded by artificial warm baths to two gouty patients in Africa, as well as the benefits ariſing in ſimilar diſorders from the uſe of natural warm baths in this country, added to my not being able to bear either the pain or loſs of time occaſioned by this diſorder, induced me likewiſe ſoon to make the experiment on myſelf, and thereby entirely overcome both the complaint in my foot, and the common prejudice, that the gout will not bear water.

The apparatus was to the full as ſimple and eaſy as the remedy. My feet were placed twice a day for three or four hours at a time, on a ſtick laid acroſs a tub of warm water, in which the ſteam and heat were confined by means of cloths,

cloths, and kept up by the addition of heated ſtones. At intervals I likewiſe put my foot down into the water, but this did not ſeem to produce ſuch ſpeedy and evident relief as the vapour did, but rather produced a ſwelling in the feet, with ſome degree of ſpaſm. Within a few days I was entirely recovered, and about the ſame time had the pleaſure of reſtoring, by means of this bath, a farmer's wife, who had beſides a bad habit of body, in ſome degree to the uſe of her feet; though for ſeveral weeks before, by reaſon of the pain and ſwelling in them, ſhe had not been able to ſet them on the ground. 1776. January.

Since my return to my native country, I have not been able to perſuade any gouty perſon in ſimilar circumſtances to make uſe of this remedy; though I can now likewiſe appeal to the univerſally as well as juſtly celebrated Dr. TISSOT, who, in a caſe he has given to the public, endeavours to oppoſe the prejudices entertained againſt lukewarm pediluviums in the gout. (Vid. *Eſſai ſur les Maladies des Gens du monde*, p. 142. *Lauſanne*, 1772.)

The farmer's wife above-mentioned, was one of the two patients on whoſe account I was obliged to make a longer ſtay in this place, as I have already intimated. The other was a boy of ten years of age, who kept his bed upwards of ſix months with a fiſtulous ulcer in the thigh, accompanied with a hectic fever and great pain, all which were ſuppoſed to have proceeded merely from his having jumped from off a waggon three feet high. The part afflicted with pain, which afterwards began to ulcerate, had been dreſſed ever ſince, purſuant to a method as commonly practiſed in this country as it is prejudicial, with hot and irritat-

1776. January.

ing cataplaſms made of aromatic herbs. But after I had enlarged the wound, and had dreſſed it for a conſiderable time with a ſalve compoſed of honey mixed with a little oil and melted wax, the patient's diet all the while conſiſting only of wort, milk, and greens, with now and then a little bread, I was able to extract a ſplinter of a bone three inches long, and three fingers broad, after which the whole ſeemed diſpoſed to heal very faſt.

Notwithſtanding that by ſimple and very eaſy remedies of this kind, the lives of the African ruſtics might be for the moſt part ſaved, and the calamities attendant on life be mitigated; yet in this ſimple and truly paſtoral way of life, ſo univerſally celebrated for its felicity, and in the midſt of their delightful parks and meadows, ſtill they are ſo far unfortunate, that, when they are attacked by any diſorder, they are either entirely ignorant of the remedies beſt adapted to the cure of it, or for the moſt part apply them very improperly; and at the ſame time are at the diſtance of many hundred, and, indeed, one may ſay, ſome thouſands of miles from thoſe, from whoſe advice alone and aſſiſtance they have reaſon to expect relief: and in ſo far at leaſt is this much-vaunted paſtoral way of life, with all its ſimplicity and concomitant ignorance, leſs to be prized than our more populous and better regulated ſocieties in towns and cities, where, beſides the advantages redounding to mankind from all the other ſciences, that of medicine in particular remarkably contributes to the happineſs enjoyed by mortals in this life.

It appeared to me very ſingular, that the coloniſts had very little, and, indeed, I may ſay, no knowledge at all of one

1776. January.

one of the commoneſt and moſt troubleſome diſorders of any they were ſubject to, which was worms. Adults, and even elderly perſons, ſeemed to be more univerſally troubled with this complaint than children; particularly with the tape worm, the ſymptoms of which were likewiſe often plainly to be diſcovered in men of the healthieſt appearance. Beſides a great number of the more uſual ſymptoms, which aſcertain the preſence of theſe animals, moſt of the patients complained of an oppreſſion at the breaſt, and an anxiety about the heart (*borſt quaal en benaauwde borſt*,) for which reaſon the greater part of them, ſome of their own heads, and others in purſuance of the advice of quacks at the Cape, kept themſelves weak and low by a ſpare diet and remedies againſt the conſumption of the lungs, and often kept on pertinaciouſly in this treatment of themſelves; though the longer they continued it, the worſe they grew. Nay, under an apprehenſion of their lungs being diſeaſed, they had even given up their beloved brandy; though at the ſame time they owned they never had obſerved that it was in any ways prejudicial to them, in reſpect to the principal complaint. Having, therefore, during the oppreſſion on the cheſt, the ſwoonings, or the difficulty of reſpiration with which they were ſeized, been perſuaded by me to take a ſup or two of it, eſpecially when the virtues of it were heightened by *wilde alſies* (a kind of wormwood) being infuſed in it, and they having always found inſtant relief for the time, their joy can hardly be conceived, which was not leſs (as they ſometimes jocoſely confeſſed) on account of their being able to enjoy the ſweets of this delicious remedy, than of the effect it had in

1776. January. in relieving their complaints; they likewiſe rejoiced in finding themſelves able to ſtand this proof of their lungs not being affected, as in conſequence of their fear on that account, they would hardly have ventured to follow my advice, had I not, on the firſt ſuſpicion I had of their diſorder, informed them of moſt of their complaints before hand, by reckoning up the ſymptoms uſually attendant on worms. Garlick, the buds of the *wilde alſies* above-mentioned, ſalt, oil, ox-gall, and aloes, were, of all vermifuges, the eaſieſt to be procured here; and were given them, together with ſome reſin of jalap which I had brought with me; but two of VEREIRA's relations raſhly attacked their worms with garlick, both taken alone and mixed with every thing they ate, and by this means ſoon voided a number of worms, and got rid of all their complaints. One of them ſaid he had diſcharged part of a worm with legs and feet, which was grey at top, but yellow under the belly like *rups*, or caterpillars, which are changed into chryſaliſes, and afterwards become butterflies. He had likewiſe obſerved the *exuviæ*, or ſkins, of this kind of worm in his ordinary evacuations.

Beſides the ſatisfaction I found in being uſeful, and ſhewing my gratitude to theſe hoſpitable ruſtics, by giving them my advice on this, as well as on other occaſions, as well as by the diſtribution of ſome medicines which I had brought with me, and always gave away gratis in the courſe of my journey, I by this means likewiſe got more into their good graces, and procured aſſiſtance more readily, and more authentic information, than I perhaps could have done with money: ſo that the ſlender ſtock of medical know-

knowledge I was poſſeſſed of, proved of greater ſervice to me than I could have imagined; not to mention the aſtoniſhment and veneration which it excited in theſe good people, and which often reminded me of the proverb, *dans le païs des aveugles les borgnes ſont rois.* 1776. January.

The cauſe, why worms are ſo common a diſorder in this colony, I dare not undertake to explain. It may be ſuſpected that in many people they are hereditary, and are increaſed by a copious milk diet. Others, perhaps, were infeſted by theſe animals, by means of the foul and putrid water which they were for the moſt part obliged to put up with in their hunting expeditions, and in their journey to the Cape; the men in particular, appearing to be troubled with this complaint. With reſpect to theſe country people, there does not ſeem to be much room for attributing the diſorder to fiſh, as in the freſh water and rivers of theſe regions there is hardly any to be found. When, however, theſe ruſtics get to the Cape, they generally take care not to want for freſh fiſh. The towns-people, on the contrary, who live a good deal upon freſh fiſh, are not in proportion ſo much troubled with worms; but then they have pure water to drink; milk is rather ſcarce with them; while, on the other hand, they do not uſe to ſtint themſelves in the articles of wine and ſpirituous liquors.

On the 5th I rode out a hunting along with two farmers, being chiefly in queſt of the *gnu*, the animal I have deſcribed at page 131 of this Volume. In theſe parts we found large herds of them, and ſhot a female *gnu* quite through the body; notwithſtanding which, ſhe ran, though tottering, to the diſtance of eighty or an hundred paces from us before ſhe fell.

1776. January. fell. Being mounted on fleet horſes, we were able to ride by them all, and ſeparate one of the herds from the reſt, from whence we drove away a calf, which we took home with us alive. It was of this that I afterwards made the diſſection, to which I have referred in page 133, for the proof of what I there advanced. The height of this animal was two feet, and the length from the ears to the tail meaſured nearly the ſame; the tail itſelf was ſix inches long, and very hairy, with white and briſtly hairs at the tip. To conclude, the predominant colour in this animal is a very pale or light brown; the belly is white, the noſe black; there is a black circle round the eyes; it is likewiſe black about the ears, and its forehead is of a dark brown colour; the mane is black, two inches long, and rather of a briſtly nature, being ſet off on each ſide by hairs equal to its length, which cover the neck, and which are twice as long as they are in other parts of the body; the beard too inclines more to grey, or is of a lighter colour than the reſt of the animal's body. I had likewiſe previouſly ſeen and examined another tame one of the ſame ſize, which was intended for a preſent for the governor: it was feared, however, that this, as well as the young hartbeeſts which they were endeavouring to bring up tame, would be ſubject to a kind of furor or madneſs. The cry of the young gnu was ſometimes *onje*, and at other times *navond*, a good deal reſembling the *nonje* of the coloniſts (meaning miſs,) and their uſual contraction of the words *goeden avond*, or good evening; ſo that in the dark, the ſound might eaſily be miſtaken for the voice or ſalutation of a child. The roaſted fleſh of this gnu-fawn, the animal being extremely young, was ſoft and flabby.

On

1776. January.

On the day I have mentioned we likewiſe ſhot a *quagga*, which was almoſt entirely devoured within a few hours by birds of prey, after having, according to their uſual cuſtom, begun with the eyes.

An animal of the height of eighteen inches was known to the farmers here by the name of the *grey jackal*, as it approaches pretty near the common jackal in ſize, as well as in the ſhape of its head and body; but to judge from the teeth alone, as far as I can recollect them at preſent, the *grey jackal* ſeems rather to bear the characteriſtic marks by which the *viverra*, or weaſel kind is diſtinguiſhed in the *Syſtem of Nature*, Edit. XII.

The hair with which the grey jackal was covered, was a mixture of light grey and black; ſo that this creature was of a dark aſh colour all over, excepting towards the tip of the tail, which, for the length of three inches, was quite black; it was beſides pretty buſhy, and reached down to the animal's heels. The hairs, indeed, over the whole body were pretty long and ſoft, but on the back they were about twice as long as in other parts, ſo that they appeared to form a bruſh or comb: for which reaſon, this animal may for the preſent be called the *viverra criſtata*. I ſay *for the preſent*, as well on the account that the ſtuffed ſkin of this creature was ſtolen out of my waggon by ſome hounds with which we had been out a hunting, before I had time to draw up a more accurate deſcription of it, as likewiſe becauſe it is very difficult as yet to define the genera belonging to the order of *feræ*. I made a drawing of the grey jackal's liver, and on going to examine it with this view, I found it divided in a ſingular manner. The right lung

1776. January.

likewiſe had four lobes, and the left three. The ſtomach had nothing but ants in it, or, to ſpeak more properly, the white *termites* before-mentioned; yet, that it may not be ſuppoſed from this circumſtance, that the animal here ſpoken of belongs to the genus of the *myrmecophaga* of LINNÆUS, it may be proper to mention here, that the character of this genus is the total want of teeth; and that, excluſively of our Swediſh bears, the Hottentots themſelves are likewiſe very fond of this food.

This day we hunted another animal, which was called the *onkjes jackal*, and ſeemed with reſpect to ſhape and ſize, in ſome meaſure to reſemble the *grey jackal*, but was of a deep brown colour. It now made its eſcape from us by a ſubterraneous paſſage. It has obtained the name of onkjes, in conſequence of its digging up, and feeding upon, the bulbs and roots of flowers. The *onkjes jackal*, moreover, is ſuppoſed to be more common than the grey, and is, perhaps, a kind of badger. Neither this creature nor the former were, as far as I could find, known to any body but the farmers in this neighbourhood.

The common *jackal*, or the *jackal* properly ſo called, nearly reſembles our European fox in its form, manners, and diſpoſition; and here, at leaſt, is not known to aſſemble in packs, for the purpoſe of hunting. Neither is what authors have advanced concerning the hideous cry and voracity of the jackal applicable to this quadruped, theſe qualities being probably peculiar to the hyæna and wild dog, with which animals it has been by ſome means confounded. A couple of ſkins which I brought home with me, three feet in length, with a tail ſomewhat above a foot long, entirely correſpond,

correſpond, with reſpect to hair and colour, with M. DAUBERTON's deſcription of the *chacal*, (BUFFON, Tom. XIII. p. 268) excepting the ſpots on the fore legs; and likewiſe reſemble M. SCHREBER's coloured plate of the *canis meſomel*, or *capiſche ſchakalt*, Tab. XCV. p. 370. This is likewiſe Mr. PENNANT's *jackal*, Vol. I. p. 242.

The predominant colour in this animal is a reddiſh yellow, the legs in particular are of a pale gold colour; under the belly, and on the inſide of the legs, the colour inclines to white; the noſe and ears are of a reddiſh caſt; the head grey; the back part of the neck, together with the whole back, are covered with a large dark grey ſpot of the ſhape of a lancet, with the point towards the tail; which ſpot, as M. DAUBENTON has well remarked, is compoſed of black and white circular ſtreaks of hair intermixed; the tail is partly grey, and partly of an umber colour, but at the tip black. I remember that once I ſaw the fur of a fœtus of a *jackal*, which was of a very fine yellow colour, and inſtead of a blackiſh grey had a dark brown ſpot upon its back.

The *ratel*, ſo called in Africa both by the coloniſts and Hottentots, I have given a drawing of in the Swediſh Tranſactions for the year 1777, p. 147. Tab. IV. and at the ſame time deſcribed it by the name of the *viverra ratel*. (I have likewiſe annexed a figure of it at Plate V. of this Volume.) By the colour, it ſhould ſeem to be the very ſame ſpecies of animal which M. DE LA CAILLE ſaw about *Picquet-berg*, and has mentioned at page 182, by the name of the *blereau puant*; though this author did not himſelf obſerve any diſagreeable odour in the animal, and I, for my part, have never heard

1776. January.

the leaſt mention made of it; at the ſame time that M. DE LA CAILLE does not ſay a ſingle ſyllable concerning the ſingular œconomy of the animal, and moreover deſcribes the claws as being ſomewhat ſmaller than they really are, particularly on the hind feet. Les deux trous oblongs a l'ouverture de la gueule, dans leſquels la peau rentre, according to the obſervation made by M. DE LA CAILLE, appear to deſerve a more accurate inveſtigation and deſcription.

In SCHREBER on the *mammalia*, p. 450, Tab. CXXV. there is a deſcription and drawing of it under the denomination of the *ſtinkbinks*, or the *viverra Capenſis*; though, in my opinion, the claws and tail in this figure are too ſhort, and the head too thick and clumſy, and too black underneath. M. SCHREBER mentions his having heard, that this animal is fond of honey; a circumſtance confirmed by the following account, which I have before inſerted in the Swediſh Tranſactions.

In this part of Africa there is to be ſeen a conſiderable number of holes and ſubterraneous paſſages, ſome of which are actually inhabited, while others have been previouſly formed, but ſince deſerted by the *hyſtrix criſtata*, a ſort of *mus jaculus*, or the *jerbua Capenſis*, the *jackal*, the *mole*, the *ſus Æthiopicus*, with ſeveral ſpecies of *viverræ*. Juſt within the apertures of theſe cavities, and of the ſubterraneous paſſages which are blocked up in part by the ground having given way, the bees moſt commonly uſe to make their neſts, eſpecially as trees fit for their purpoſe are ſeldom to be found. The *ratel*, a ſort of weaſel or badger, by nature deſtined to be the adverſary of the bees, and the unwelcome viſitor of their habitations, is likewiſe endued with

1776. January.

with a particular faculty for diſcovering and attacking them within their entrenchments. His long claws, beſides aſſiſting him in digging the dark ſubterraneous paſſages which ſerve him for an aſylum, are likewiſe of uſe to him in the occupation he is frequently employed in of undermining whole colonies of bees. As a man placed at the maſt-head can eaſieſt deſcry a ſail or land at a great diſtance about ſun-ſet, ſo probably this time of the day is the moſt convenient for the ratel to look out for his ſupper; for he is ſaid likewiſe to be particularly attentive to his buſineſs about ſun-ſet, and will ſit and hold one of his paws before his eyes, in order to modify the rays of the ſun, ſo as to render them inoffenſive to his organs of ſight, and at the ſame time to have a diſtinct view of the object of his purſuit: and when, in conſequence of peering in this manner on each ſide of his paw oppoſite to the ſun, he ſees any bees fly, he knows that they are at this time going ſtrait forward to their own habitation, and conſequently takes care to keep in the ſame direction as that in which they fly, in order to find them. He has beſides, the ſagacity as well as the Hottentots, the Caffres, and the peaſants of the Cape, to follow a little bird, which flies on by degrees with the alluring note of *cherr*, *cherr*, *cherr*, and guides its followers to the bees' neſt. This ſelf-intereſted betrayer of the bees, to which I have many times been obliged for the honey I have eaten in the courſe of my travels through the deſert, is the little *cuculus indicator*, which I have deſcribed and given a drawing of in the Phil. Tranſ. and propoſe to make mention of a little farther on.

As

1776. January.

As the *ratel's* hairs are ſtiff and harſh, ſo its hide is tough, and the animal itſelf is difficult to kill. The coloniſts and the Hottentots both aſſert, that it is almoſt impoſſible to kill this creature, without giving it a great number of violent blows on the noſe; on which account they deſtroy it by ſhooting it, or plunging a knife into its body. The ſhortneſs of the ratel's legs will not permit him to make his eſcape by flight, when purſued by the hounds; he is able, however, to extricate himſelf from their clutches by biting and ſcratching them in a violent degree; while, on the other hand, he is perfectly well defended from the aſſaults of their teeth by the toughneſs of his hide: for when a hound endeavours to bite him, it can lay hold only on the ratel's tough hide; which in this caſe inſtantly ſeparates from the creature's body or fleſh, as it is reported to lie looſe from the ſkin, as though it were within a ſack; ſo that when any body catches hold of him by the hind part of his neck, and that even pretty near his head, he is able to turn round, as it were, in his ſkin, and bite the arm of the perſon that ſeizes him. It is a remarkable circumſtance, that a number of hounds, which collectively are able to tear a lion of a moderate ſize in pieces, are ſaid ſometimes to be forced to leave the ratel only dead to appearance. This report ſeems to be confirmed by the circumſtance of M. DE LA CAILLE'S *blereau puant's* ſtill being alive, after the hounds had dragged it away to the waggon. Thus far, however, is certain, that on the fur of the ratel I have brought home with me, there is ſcarcely the mark of a bite to be ſeen, though it had been attacked and worried by a number of hounds. Is it not probable, that

that nature, which has deſtined the ratel for the deſtruction of bees, may have beſtowed on it a hide ſo much tougher than thoſe ſhe has given to other animals of the viverra kind, merely for the purpoſe of defending it from the ſtings of theſe inſects? Or may not this creature's food, which conſiſts of wax and honey, make it ſo tough and difficult to kill? 1776. January.

Thoſe bees neſts which are built up in trees, are in no danger whatever from the ratel. In the firſt tranſports of his rage at having ſought after theſe bees in vain, he uſes to gnaw or bite the trunk of theſe trees; and theſe bites are ſure marks for the Hottentots, that a bees neſt is to be found up in that tree. I ſhould myſelf have harboured many doubts concerning all theſe circumſtances attributed to the ratel, had I not obtained various accounts of this curious animal, entirely correſponding with each other, from many experienced farmers and Hottentots living in different parts of the country.

As I was not fortunate enough to catch a ratel myſelf, I muſt be contented with giving ſuch a deſcription of it here, as I have been able to make from this creature's ſkin.

The *fore teeth*, ſix in each jaw, moſtly of the ſame ſize, flat at top, probably in conſequence of being worn away; *canine teeth*, two in each jaw, very ſtrong and large when compared with the ſize of the animal, but obtuſe, (probably likewiſe in conſequence of their being worn away;) the *grinders*, about ſix in number, had, as well as the others, a yellow caſt, perhaps from the animal feeding upon honey. The *tongue* was ſharp, and the papillæ ſharp and turned back, as in cats.

1776. January.

The *legs* are ſhort; toes five on each of the fore feet, armed with projecting claws an inch and a half long, but thoſe of the hind feet no more than half that length. Theſe claws have a ſharp edge, which half way up the fore part of it is double, or rather excavated with a deep furrow; a circumſtance that apparently greatly aſſiſts the animal in digging. There is nothing like ear-laps to be ſeen on this creature, excepting a trifling rim round about a rather large aperture, in which is placed the organ of hearing.

Colour; the forehead, crown of the head, nape of the neck, ſhoulders, back, and tail are of an aſh colour; the noſe, and the part round the eyes, and on the cheek-bone, the ears, the lower part of the neck, the breaſt, belly, thighs, and legs, are of a black hue inclining to brown; as are likewiſe the extreme limits of the aſh-coloured part juſt mentioned, which are moreover ſeparated from the black colour by means of a light grey liſt an inch broad, running from the ear quite back to the tail.

Size of the ſkin: From the tip of the noſe to the tail forty inches; length of the tail twelve inches; that of the claws, taken together with the whole phalanx, or all the toes of the fore feet, one inch and three quarters; of thoſe of the hind feet one inch.

Two other ſmall animals, which probably likewiſe belong to the *viverra genus*, I had only a haſty glimpſe of in this colony. The one we ſaw and gave chaſe to between the two Fiſh rivers, made its eſcape from us, however, by running into a hole under ground, and ſeemed to be ſomewhat leſs than a cat, though longer in proportion. The colour of it was a bright red. Of the other

ſort

1776. January.

ſort I ſaw two at once in the vicinity of *Niez-hout-kloof*, when they inſtantly ran out of my ſight, and hid themſelves in a buſh. They appeared to be of a coal-black colour, and above a foot high; yet I am not certain, whether they were not *onkjes jackals*, the animal I have already made mention of at page 176 of this Volume. The former of theſe likewiſe, I mean the light or roſe-coloured animal, might be, for aught I know, the *zerda*, or *vulpes minimus ſarenſis of* M. SKIOLDEBRAND, the Swediſh conſul at Algiers, (vide the *Swediſh Tranſactions* for 1777, page 265) not being able during the chaſe, to attend to its ears ſo accurately as I could have wiſhed; and at the ſame time having been informed, that there was a very ſmall animal, with long ears, which lived under ground, and was not unfrequently ſeen on the plains in *Camdebo*, but was difficult to catch, eſpecially as it never went far from its hole. In this point likewiſe, it anſwers to the deſcription of the *zerda* quoted above; but this again ſeems inconſiſtent with the account given of it by Mr. BRUCE, who ſays it lives in palm-trees, (on the fruit of which it ſubſiſts,) in *Libya*, to the ſouth of the *Palus Tritonidis*. (Vide BUFFON'S *Animal Anonyme*, Supplement, Tom. III. page 148, Tab. XIX.) It is poſſible, indeed, that this creature is to be found in *Libya*; but I have been informed by M. SKIOLDEBRAND, that Mr. BRUCE had previouſly ſeen this animal in *Algiers*, (where both theſe gentlemen were conſuls together) and had employed the ſame painter as M. SKIOLDEBRAND did, to make a drawing of it; and hence it is, that on comparing the two figures, viz. of the animal from *Libya*, and of that from *Algiers*, it plainly appears,

1776. January. that they are taken from each other, or elſe from one and the ſame original.

Many of M. SKIOLDEBRAND's friends, and among them M. NICANDER, one of the ſecretaries of the Royal Academy of Sciences in Sweden, have ſeen a figure of the *zerda* repreſented in its natural ſize and colour, many years ago, in M. SKIOLDEBRAND's ſuperb collection; but could not perſuade this gentleman to ornament the Swediſh Tranſactions with it before, as, the animal having unfortunately eſcaped from him, before he could examine its teeth, and other particulars, he had waited a long time, though in vain, in hopes of procuring ſome better information from *Algiers* with reſpect to theſe points. M. SKIOLDEBRAND could not find at the bottom of this creature's large and beautiful ears, which were of a roſy hue, any traces of a perforation; indeed theſe perforations would eaſily be filled up, and would conſequently become very inconvenient to an animal like this, which is obliged to burrow and live under the ſand. He ſuppoſes that providence has made good this defect, by ſome membrane lying not very deep in the ear. Mr. PENNANT follows M. SKIOLDEBRAND in the account he gives of this animal in Vol. I. p. 248, at the ſame time referring it to the *dog* genus.

The *bee-cuckow*, (*cuculus indicator*) which I made mention of juſt above, in deſcribing the *ratel* at p. 181, deſerves to have more particular notice taken of it in this place. It has, however, nothing remarkable in it with regard to its ſize and colour, as, on a curſory view, it appears in theſe points not to differ from the common ſparrow; excepting indeed,

that it is ſomewhat larger, and rather of a lighter colour, with a little yellow ſpot on each ſhoulder, and the feathers of its tail daſhed with white. 1776. January.

It is, indeed, merely with a view to its own intereſt, that this *cuckow* diſcovers the bees-neſts to man and the *ratel* race, as it is extremely fond both of honey and bees-eggs; and it knows that when a bees-neſt is plundered, ſome of it is ſhed, which conſequently falls to its ſhare, or elſe ſome part is left by the plunderers as a reward for its ſervices. Nevertheleſs, the way in which this bird communicates to others the diſcovery it has made, is as ſurpriſing as it is well adapted to the purpoſe.

The morning and evening are probably its principal meal times; at leaſt it is then that it ſhews the greateſt inclination to come forth, and with the grating cry of *cherr*, *cherr*, *cherr*, to excite, as it were, the attention of the ratel, as well as of the Hottentots and coloniſts. Somebody then generally repairs to the place whence the ſound proceeds, when the bird, all the while continually repeating its cry of cherr, cherr, flies on ſlowly and by degrees towards the quarter where the ſwarm of bees have taken up their abode. The perſons thus invited accordingly follow, taking great care at the ſame time not to frighten their guide with any unuſual noiſe, or by means of a large company, but rather, as I have ſeen done by one of the ſhrewdeſt of my *Boſhies-men*, to anſwer it now and then with a ſoft and very gentle whiſtle, by way of letting the bird know that its call is attended to. I have obſerved, that when the bees-neſt was at a good diſtance, the bird, for the moſt part, made long ſtages, or

1776. January. flights, waiting for its ſporting companion between each flight, and farther exciting him; but flew to ſhorter diſtances, and repeated its cry more frequently, and with greater earneſtneſs, in proportion as they approached nearer to the bees-neſt. I likewiſe ſaw, with aſtoniſhment, what I had been previouſly aſſured of by others, viz. that when this bird has, in conſequence of its great impatience, got too far a-head of its followers, eſpecially when, by reaſon of the roughneſs or unevenneſs of the ground, they have not been able to keep pace with it, it has flown back to meet them, and with redoubled cries, denoting ſtill greater impatience, has upbraided them for being ſo tardy. Finally, when it has come to the bees-neſt, whether this be built in the cleft of a rock, in a hollow tree, or in ſome cavity in the earth, it hovers over the ſpot for the ſpace of a few ſeconds, a circumſtance which I myſelf have been eye-witneſs to twice; after which it ſits in ſilence, and for the moſt part concealed in ſome neighbouring tree or buſh, in expectation of what may happen, and with a view of coming in for its ſhare of the booty. It is probable, that this bird always hovers, more or leſs, in the manner juſt mentioned, over the bees-neſt, before it hides itſelf, though people do not always pay attention to this circumſtance: at all events, however, one may be aſſured that the bees-neſt is very near, when, after the bird has taken one to ſome diſtance, it is on a ſudden ſilent. In a place where we halted a couple of days, my Hottentots were conducted by a bee-cuckow, that was rather ſhy and obſcure in its expreſſions, backwards and forwards ſeveral times to one and the ſame ſpot, till one of them, who was more attentive to the bird than

than the reſt, thought of looking out there for the neſt itſelf. 1776. January.

Having, in conſequence of the bird's directions, dug up the bees-neſt, or otherwiſe come at it, and plundered it, they uſually, by way of acknowledgment, leave it a conſiderable portion of the worſt part, or that part of the comb in which the young bees are hatching; and which, however, is probably for the bird the moſt delicate morſel, and indeed, is by no means looked upon as the worſt, even by the Hottentots. I was informed by my Boſhies-men, as well as by the coloniſts, that a man who makes it his conſtant buſineſs to go after the bees, ſhould not at firſt be too grateful and generous to this officious bird, but leave for it only juſt as much as will ſerve to ſtimulate its appetite; by which means it will be induced, in hopes of obtaining a more liberal reward, to diſcover another ſwarm of bees, if there be any ſuch in the neighbourhood. Though there are plenty of wild bees round about Cape Town, yet both the bird itſelf and the peculiar property it has of diſcovering honey to others, were entirely unknown there; neither could I, when I firſt heard it ſpoken of at *Groot-Vaders-boſch*, conſider it in any other light than that of a fable; eſpecially as at the ſame time I ſaw a lad who was out after one of theſe birds, fail in the object of his purſuit. In this caſe, however, there was great reaſon to lay the blame on the cloſeneſs and compactneſs of the wood, and the greater than uſual ſhyneſs of the bird. My Hottentots from *Buffel-jaagts-rivier* and *Zwellendam* aſſured me ſince, that they had likewiſe been acquainted with this bird at the places juſt mentioned, where they were born, but

1776. January.

but owned at the ſame time, that it was there uncommon as well as ſhy; nor did it direct them to the honey ſo readily and diſtinctly, as in the tract of country where we then were in the deſert, and near the river *t'Kau-t'kai*, or *Great Viſch-river*.

By collating this laſt remark with my account of the *cuculus indicator*, or honey-guide, inſerted in the *Philoſophical Tranſactions*, Vol. LXVII. page 38 and 43, it will appear, that a geographical error has been ſuffered to take place there; probably in conſequence of their being obliged, as my account was written in Engliſh, to alter this paſſage, ſo as to make it approach nearer to the idiom of the Engliſh language.

Though I had frequently in the deſert, and once at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, ſeen this bird, which, on account of the ſingular property it is endued with, is called by the coloniſts *honing-wyzer*, or the honey-guide, and, indeed, had not unfrequently reaped the fruits of its ſervices, yet I had not an opportunity of ſhooting it till I was on the road to return home, when I one day purſued it, the little creature all the while flying before me with its cheering note of *cherr*, *cherr*. This, however, offended my Boſhiesmen not a little: and though I had previouſly promiſed an ample reward, conſiſting of glaſs beads and tobacco, to my *Zwellendam* Hottentots, on condition that they would aſſiſt me in catching and ſhooting a *honing-wyzer*, yet I found them too much the bird's friends to betray it; a circumſtance that gave me great pleaſure, as it ſhewed that theſe people were in general poſſeſſed of good and grateful hearts; though

though ingratitude, I am very ſorry to ſay it, is a crime, by no means rarely to be met with among men. 1776. January.

While I reſided in the interior part of Africa, I was ſhewn a bird's-neſt, which ſeveral farmers aſſured me was that of the bee-cuckow. It reſembled the neſts of certain finches, which are found in thoſe parts, and was formed of fine ſhreds of bark, interwoven and plaited together in the ſhape of a bottle. The neck or aperture of it hung downwards, and a plaited cord, made of the ſame kind of bark as the neſt, hung, as it were, in a ſwing, croſs-wiſe, over and below the opening, being faſtened by both ends to the brim of this ſame aperture, and was certainly intended for the bird to reſt itſelf and rooſt upon.

The following deſcription of this bird was drawn up from the two which I ſhot, and which were ſuppoſed to be hens; for the cock is ſaid to have its neck (*capiſtrum*) encircled with a black ring.

Roſtrum *craſſiuſculum, verſus baſin fuſcum, apice luteum.* Angulus oris *uſque infra oculos extenſus.* Nares *poſtremæ ad baſin* Roſtri, *ſupremæ vicinæ, ut carinula dorſali ſaltem ſepararentur, oblongæ, margine prominulo.* Pili *aliquot ad baſin* Roſtri, *præcipue in mandibula inferiore*; Lingua *plana ſubſagittata.* Oculorum Irides *ferrugineo*-griſeæ; Palpebræ *nudæ, nigræ.* Pedes *nigri ſcanſorii*; Tibiæ *brevis*, Ungues *tenues, nigri.* Pileus *lætè griſeus* è *pennis brevibus latiuſculis.* Gula, Jugulum, Pectus, *ſordide alba, cum aliquo vivere vix notabili in pectore.* Dorſum & Uropygium *ferrugineo-griſea.* Abdomen Criſſumque *alba.* Femora tecta *pennis albis, macula longitudinali nigra notatis.* Alarum Tectrices Superiores, *omnes griſeo-fuſcæ exceptis ſummis aliquot,*

1776. January.

aliquot, quæ flavis apicibus formant, maculum flavam in humeris exiguam & à plumis ſcapularibus ſæpe tectam. Tectrices infra alam *albidæ, harum Supremæ ex albido nigroque maculatæ.* Remiges Primarii 8, R. Secundarii 6, R. Omnes *ſupra fuſci, ſubtus cinereo fuſci.* Alulæ *griſeo-fuſcæ*; Cauda *cuneiformis, rectricibus* 12: *harum duæ intermediæ longiores anguſtiores, ſupra & infra æruginoſo-fuſcæ*; *proximæ duæ fuliginoſæ, margine interiore albicantes*; *Duæ utrinque his proximæ albæ apice fuſcæ, & exterius ad baſin macula nigra notatæ: extima utrinque reliquis brevior, Alba apice fuſca, macula nigra vix ulla ad* baſin. Alæ *complicatæ caudæ partem quartem attingunt.* Longitudo *ab apice Roſtri, ad extremam Caudæ circiter ſeptem uncias pedis Anglicani explet.* Roſtrum *à baſi ſuperiore ad apicem ſemiunciale.*

Since my deſcription of the *cuculus indicator* was printed in the *Phil. Tranſ.* I have ſeen in Lobo's Travels to Abyſſinia, publiſhed by LE GRAND in 1728, (a book to which I was referred by M. B. BERGIUS, one of the directors of the bank,) and a gentleman of extenſive reading, the following account, which deſerves to be quoted here verbatim.

" The *moroc*, or honey-bird, is furniſhed with a peculiar inſtinct, or faculty of diſcovering honey. They have here multitudes of various kinds, ſome are tame like ours, and form their combs in hives: of the wild ones ſome place their honey in hollow trees, others hide it in holes in the ground, which they keep extremely clean, and at the ſame time cover ſo carefully, that though they are commonly in the highway, they are ſeldom found, unleſs by

by the *moroc's* affiſtance. The honey thus prepared under ground, is to the full as good as that which is made in hives: I have only found it a little blacker; and cannot help imagining it to be the ſame, with that which St. JOHN lived on in the wilderneſs. When the *moroc* has diſcovered any honey, he repairs immediately to the road-ſide, and when he ſees a traveller, ſings and claps his wings, making many motions to invite him to follow him; and when he perceives him coming, flies before him from tree to tree, till he comes to the place where the bees have ſtored their treaſure, and then begins to ſing melodiouſly. The Abyſſin takes the honey, without failing to leave part of it for the bird, to reward him for his information." 1776. January.

There is good reaſon to ſuppoſe from this paſſage, that the *moroc* of Abyſſinia and the *bee-cuckoo*, which I have deſcribed above, are one and the ſame bird; but if this be the caſe, it ſhould ſeem, that Father LOBO himſelf had not been an eye-witneſs of this ſingular kind of chaſe, or elſe that he has not given an accurate deſcription of it. Neither, indeed, have I ever found the honey which has been made under-ground, blacker than that which comes out of the hives; but on the contrary, full as good as any other honey whatever, that in the deſert particularly having a finer flavour than any I ever taſted. Though as delicacies did not greatly abound here, and I was obliged to live chiefly on animal food, I cannot place any great dependence upon the niceneſs of my taſte at that time. My Hottentots, and even two of the coloniſts, ate likewiſe the young bees and the honey-comb itſelf, or the neſt, looking upon it as the moſt delicate part of the whole. The honey

1776. January.

here was fine and mellow, and appeared, without having undergone any purification whatever, to be tolerably free from wax.—I neither ſaw nor heard of any one in all Africa that kept tame bees, excepting in the country about Conſtantia, where a young lad, the ſon of a coloniſt, uſed ſometimes to ſet out empty cheſts and boxes, into which a wild ſwarm would enter without fail in the ſpace of a few days and ſettle; but the hive was generally taken almoſt immediately by this greedy *amateur*, and was likewiſe partly ſtolen by liquoriſh ſlaves, among whom thoſe who were natives of Madagaſcar had a particular knack at finding wild bees and honey. As in the tracts of country laſt-mentioned, beſides other flowers, there grow in particular many different ſorts of heaths, the culture of bees might in theſe places be carried to a very great height. Near the *Cape* I found the wild honey of an inferior quality. Whether this proceeded from the great abundance of heath in the above-mentioned diſtricts, or from my being more faſtidious and nice when I was at the latter place, I am not able to determine.

The *jerbua Capenſis*, which I enumerated a little above at page 180 among the animals in the ruins of whoſe ſubterraneous dwellings the bees, in default of trees fit for their purpoſe, build their neſts, is deſcribed by Dr. J. R. FORSTER in the Swediſh Tranſactions for 1778, page 108, with ſome remarks of mine annexed, l. c. page 119. On this head likewiſe, the reader may conſult the compilation referred to above, called *Nouv. Deſcript. &c.* together with M. PALLAS's *de Murium Genere*, page 87, in which book it was afterwards referred to under the denomination of the *mus Caffer*.

1776. January.

Caffer. By the coloniſts it is called *berg-haas*, or *ſpring-haas*, (the mountain or bounding hare) and lives upon roots and other vegetables, his principal haunts being in the vicinity of *Stellen-boſch* and *Camdebo*. It is nearly of the ſize and colour of a common hare, but its hind legs, by means of which it is ſaid to be able to take a leap twenty feet in length, are much longer and ſlenderer; its fore legs, on the other hand, are extremely ſhort, the animal ſeldom ſupporting itſelf upon them, being generally in a ſitting poſture, and uſing them as hands to convey the food to its mouth. It is likewiſe able, with great expedition, by means of its fore paws, and with the aſſiſtance of its long projecting teeth, to dig holes for itſelf and paſſages under ground; though it does not by any means experience the greateſt degree of ſecurity in this aſylum, on account of the dykes and cuts made by the coloniſts to their corn-fields and plantations, which likewiſe find their way into theſe ſubterraneous paſſages; ſo that the *jerbuas*, which are thus in danger of being drowned in their own habitations, are obliged to evacuate them with the greateſt precipitation, in conſequence of which they are frequently purſued and taken.

Where the inhabitants of this country have an opportunity (that of a neighbouring mountain, for inſtance) of making the dykes and ſluices here alluded to, they do not omit by means of them to drown the moles likewiſe, as they are called, which infeſt this colony, and which are, in fact, a kind of rat with ſhort tails. The one ſort is leſs than the other, but is moſt common round about the *Cape*; and from the white ſpots on its head is called *bleeſmol*, and

1776. January. is the *mus Capenſis* of Meſſrs. PENNANT, SCHREBER, and PALLAS, and the long-toothed *marmot* of Mr. BROWN, page 112, Plate XLVI. which plate exhibits a coloured repreſentation of this animal; but the figure, which is the ſame with that in the compilation we have frequently referred to, as well as with that in BUFFON's Supplement, Tom. III. is not remarkably good.

The other ſpecies, which is called the *zand-mol*, is the *mus Africanus* of Mr. PENNANT. This is in every part ſhaped like the former, but is without any ſpots; and though of a mouſe colour, is of a lighter hue, its tail being in proportion equally ſhort with that of the other, but flattended both at top and underneath, though furniſhed with hairs ſtanding out in the ſame manner. It bears a great reſemblance to the figure of the *mus talpinus* in PALLAS and SCHREBER, but differs from that animal in having a compreſſed tail, as I have juſt before mentioned; as likewiſe with reſpect to its body, which I have found to meaſure a foot at the higheſt, though even then it was twice or thrice as big as the *mus Capenſis*, or the *mus talpinus*. Theſe two different ſpecies, the *mus Caffer* and the *mus Capenſis*, are very troubleſome vermin, particularly in orchards and vineyards; and are caught with ſnares, which fall upon them at the apertures of their holes, and are likewiſe frequently killed with piſtols, which ſhoot them through the body, on their touching in the ſlighteſt manner a thread tied to the trigger. The *mus Caffer* is particularly unwieldy and clumſy in its make, and is conſequently ſlow in running, making its eſcape with difficulty when it is found near its neſt; though, on the other hand, when it is laid hold on, it throws the anterior

anterior part of its body about to the right and left with great activity and alertneſs, in order to faſten upon its enemy with its teeth. In this particular I have, as well as many of the coloniſts, diſcovered a great reſemblance between the rhinoceros and the ſand-mole, which, indeed, proceeds merely from the ſmallneſs of the eyes and obſcurity of viſion in both theſe animals. 1776. January.

The *talpa Aſiatica*, LINN. the *talpa Siberica* of PENNANT, SEBA, and KLEIN; the *talpa aurea* of BRISSON, PALLAS, and SCHREBER; and the *variable mole* of BROWN, are one and the ſame animal, which comes from the *Cape*; and which not only has been erroneouſly attributed to Siberia, but likewiſe, on account of the number and ſhape of its teeth being unknown, has been hitherto improperly referred to the *mole* genus; though, in fact, it belongs to that of the *ſhrew* or *ſorex*, as plainly appears from the following deſcription of the teeth, which I made after a ſpecimen I brought home from the Cape preſerved in ſpirits. *Dentes ſuperiores* anteriores 2 cuneati, approximati. *D. inferiores* anteriores 4 ſubulati, horum *intermediis brevioribus*. *D. laterales* in utraque maxilla utrinque 7, horum duobus ſeu 3; bus prioribus ſimpliciuſculis, acutis, interioribus ſeu poſter. 2 ſeu 3; bus furcatis, cuſpide extimo majore. This animal may therefore for the future be called *Sorex aureus*, *cauda nulla*, *roſtro nudo brevi*, *palmis ſub* 4 *dactylis*, *plantis* 5 *dactylis*. I ſay *ſub-tetra-dactylis*, as this creature has, on the outſide of its three crooked claws which ſtand behind each other, a very ſmall ſpur, or ſhorter kind of claw projecting, which the naturaliſts abovementioned did not obſerve, and which might eaſily induce them

1776. January. them very improperly to augment the catalogue of the animal creation with one animal more than really exiſts in it.

This creature is five or ſix inches in length, its ſnout is ſhort and without any hair upon it, notwithſtanding which the upper lip is hairy. The colour, which in other reſpects is exceedingly beautiful, is continually varying, as SCHREBER has remarked, page 563, between green, brown, and gold. In PETER BROWN'S Illuſtrations of Zoology, page 110. Plate XLV. there is a tolerable coloured drawing of this animal; the caſt, however, of this colour bordering upon gold, is not expreſſed with a ſufficient degree of accuracy and beauty; neither is the leaſt notice taken of the fourth ſmall or external claw.

To the query which M. PALLAS (*de Murium Genere*) propoſes at page 154, in the notes, I anſwer, that this creature, in fact, has eyes, but they are ſo ſmall that they were not eaſily to be diſcerned in the animal juſt after it was ſhot; and in the ſpecimen I have preſerved in ſpirits, could not be ſeen at all till I had ſtripped the ſkin from off the head. They are placed in the center of a ſtrait line, conceived to be drawn from the noſtrils to the ears. Again, theſe latter are in the ſame horizontal line with the fauces, the apertures of them being pretty wide externally, but internally almoſt imperceptible. This creature has no laps to its ears.

It will be moſt ſuitable in this place to enumerate and give a farther deſcription of the African *gazels* all together, partly as I have juſt been deſcribing ſeveral other animals, and partly as by following the order of my jour-

nal in this particular, I ſhould be liable to make frequent repetitions. 1776. January.

The *hartbeeſt*, of which I have already made frequent mention in the courſe of this work, (viz. page 129, 131, 270, 345, Vol. I. and page 4, 12, 13, 18, Vol. II.) is the moſt common of all the larger gazels which are to be met with at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, or indeed in the whole colony, and in all probability in any part of Africa. Theſe animals moſtly keep together in herds of different magnitudes, though one does not unfrequently ſee them wandering about in a ſolitary ſtate. I have often had occaſion to hunt and ſhoot them, and made the drawing annexed (vide Plate I. of this Vol.) from one that I had juſt ſhot. Without wiſhing in the leaſt to depreciate the labours of others, I find myſelf neceſſitated to refer my readers to this, as being the only figure hitherto publiſhed, which exhibits the leaſt reſemblance of this animal.

The greateſt height of this animal, which is from the fore feet to the withers, ſomewhat exceeds four feet. The horns, (which are common to both ſexes,) meaſured along the exterior curvature, are from ſix to nine inches long, and of a black colour all over, being of the ſame nature in general as thoſe of the gazel kind. The coloniſts make handſome ſpoons of them, though the gnu's horns are reckoned to have the fineſt grain, as well as the blackeſt hue, and likewiſe to take the beſt poliſh. With reſpect to other particulars, the horns of this animal ſtand upon a ſmall protuberance of the cranium, with their baſes almoſt quite cloſe together, diverging as they go upwards continually more and more from each other, as far as to one third of their

1776. January.

their whole length; when proceeding farther on to two thirds of their whole length, they lean a little inwards or towards each other, at the ſame time making a bend backwards; ſo that the uppermoſt or laſt diviſion, which is ſmooth and even, goes backwards very nearly in a horizontal direction, yet ſo that the tips turn a little downwards. Theſe horns from their baſes upwards, as far as to two thirds of their length, are emboſſed in the form of rings, which are about eighteen in number, and near the baſes of the horns are not elevated more than half a line or a line above the ſurface beneath; but higher up, or near and upon the curvatures of the horns, theſe rings are not only much larger, viz. from a quarter to half an inch, but likewiſe ſeem to be more irregular, ſome of them forming knobs, while others take a ſpiral turn. All theſe rings or elevations are ſmooth in other reſpects, but between them there is a number of longitudinal furrows.

The predominant colour in the hartbeeſt is cinnamon colour, but the forehead is covered with black hairs, which, with a ſmall admixture of brown, lie in a whirl. Two inches below this begins an oblong black ſpot, which extends quite down to the noſtrils; the lower lip alſo, and the fore part of the ſhoulders are covered with black hairs, as are likewiſe the anterior part of the fore legs quite down to the hoofs, theſe black hairs being at the ſame time carried round them, and riſing behind up to the fetlock-joints. This black colour is diſperſed nearly in the ſame manner on the fore parts of the hind legs, and between the fetlock-joints and the hoofs behind. A good deal of the hindmoſt part of the haunch is covered with a wide black ſtreak,

ſtreak, which reaches down to the knee, as may be ſeen in the figure annexed. There are two narrow ſtripes, which take their riſe one behind each ear, and afterwards run together all along the ridge of the neck. From hence a dark brown oval ſpot extends over the whole ridge of the back, terminating with its broader and obtuſer end juſt above the tail, which is ſlender, and, at the firſt glance, has the appearance of an aſs's tail. The hairs of this begin high up, being black, and nearly of the nature of briſtles, and rather pointing outwards than hanging down; the outermoſt, which are the longeſt, being ſcarcely ſix inches long. The upper and hind parts of the haunches are of a pale-yellow colour, as well as the anterior and upper edge of them, the inſide of them, and the belly. The poſterior parts of the fore legs are likewiſe of a ſomewhat lighter hue than the cinnamon colour above-mentioned, which covers every other part of the animal. 1776. January.

There is a pore one line in diameter, an inch or an inch and a half below and before the internal angle of the eye. From this pore, which is the aperture of a caruncle that lies below, there is ſecreted a matter almoſt like ear-wax, which I obſerved my Hottentots kept in a piece of ſkin, as a rare and excellent medicine; on the dried ſkin of the animal, this pore is ſcarcely to be diſcerned. This, perhaps, is the reaſon, that ſo great and accurate a zoologiſt as M. PALLAS makes no mention of this pore, as he made his deſcriptions chiefly from the dried ſkins of this animal; and as to the live hartbeeſt which he ſaw, he could not ſo eaſily come at it, ſo as to take notice of its pore. The rudiments of a beard or whiſkers, mentioned by M. PALLAS as being

1776. January. on each ſide of the black ſpot on the under lip, may likewiſe be ſeen on the ſkin of the hartbeeſt which I brought home with me. This animal is deſcribed by M. PALLAS, in Faſc. I. p. 12, No. XVI. and Faſc. XII. No. XIII. p. 16 of his *Spicilegia Zoologica*, under the denomination of the *antilope bubalis*; but in the *Syſtema Naturæ*, it has been previouſly taken notice of by the name of *capra dorcas*: wherefore I chooſe to keep this ſpecific name, for the ſake of avoiding confuſion; at the ſame time in conformity to the well-founded opinion of M. PALLAS, referring the *dorcas* to the *antilope* or *gazel* genus. The *bubalis* of the ancients was probably the ſame animal with our hartbeeſts, and ſo is the *vache de Barbarie*, deſcribed in the *Mem. pour ſervir a l'Hiſt. des Animaux*, Part II. p. 24. The figure given there, Tab. XXXIX. is, it is true, not a perfect likeneſs of the *antilope dorcas*; but being very indifferent likewiſe in other reſpects, may, with ſome degree of probability, be ſuppoſed to repreſent this animal. The deſcription, however, contained in the following paſſage, l. c. does not correſpond quite ſo well with the hartbeeſt's hair, viz. *Poil roux, plus pâle vers la poitrine, que vers la racine, preſque de même groſſeur vers le point que vers la racine.* It ſeems to be merely this paſſage that has occaſioned M. BUFFON, Tom. XII. p. 296, under the article *bubal*, to confound the hartbeeſt with the animal which KOLBE called the elk; though at the ſame time he evidently gives a different deſcription of the latter, viz. that it is of an aſh colour, &c. &c.

The hair of the hartbeeſt is particularly fine, and about an inch in length, and in other reſpects reſembling that of harts and gazels. The ears are covered with white hair on the inſide.

1776. January.

inſide. This animal has no teeth, excepting in the lower jaw. Theſe are eight in number; thoſe in the middle are the broadeſt, and they are likewiſe broader at the top than they are near the baſe; thus in number, as well as other properties, entirely reſembling the teeth of the *gnu*. The legs are rather ſlender, with ſmall fetlocks and hoofs. M. PENNANT, in his *Synopſis of Quadrupeds*, p. 37, and in his *Hiſtory of Quadrupeds*, p. 90, calls this beaſt the *cervine antilope*; and ſuppoſes that M. FORSKAL, by the *baker uaſch* of the Arabians, which he places among the animals of a genus hitherto undetermined, means this creature. Mr. HOUTTUYN likewiſe, by the deſcription and miſerable drawing he has given us in Vol. III. p. 213, Plate XXIV. probably means the *hartbeeſt*. One may eaſily ſee that this figure has ſome affinity with the *temamaçama* of SEBA, Vol. I. Tab. XLIII. which is likewiſe very properly referred to by M. PALLAS for the hartbeeſt; but I now find that Mr. PENNANT looks upon this to be his Senegal antilope: the deſcription, however, does not ſeem to agree ſo well with the figure of *Seba* there referred to, as with M. DE BUFFON's of the *thoba*, Tab. XXXII. fig. 2, to which he refers likewiſe. The ſkeleton and cranium given by M. DE BUFFON in Vol. XII. Tab. XXXVII and XXXVIII. under the denomination of thoſe of the *bubal*, belong to the hartbeeſt; and from hence it appears, that the horns are apt to vary in this animal. May not, therefore, the Senegal and cervine antilopes of Mr. PENNANT be, in fact, one and the ſame animal? Indeed, though I have found the horns of the hartbeeſt differ from each other pretty much in their external ſurface, yet it appeared to me that the poſition of

1776. January.

them was very conſtant in the very conſiderable number of them that I have ſeen in Africa. The head of the figure here annexed, is rather too ſmall in proportion to the body; a miſtake which happened, in the reduction of the drawing from a larger to a leſſer ſcale *.

The large head and high fore-hand, together with the aſinine ears and tail of the hartbeeſt, render it one of the leaſt handſome of the whole tribe of antilopes. Its pace, when at full ſpeed, appears like a heavy gallop; notwithſtanding which, it runs as faſt as any of the other large antilopes. When it has in the leaſt got a-head of its purſuers, it is more apt than almoſt any other gazel to turn round frequently while it is flying, and, making a ſtand, ſtare them full in the face. I have already made mention, at page 132 of this Volume, of its falling on its knees, like the *gnu*, when it goes to butt any one. The fleſh of it is of a fine grain, and rather dry, but yet of a rather agreeable high flavour. It is at leaſt not ſo coarſe and dry as that of the *bunte-bok*. M. DE BUFFON, who, at page 298, ſeems deſirous of ſeparating the hartbeeſt from the gazel, goat, and all other genera, will, perhaps, now be induced, by what has been juſt mentioned, to allow that it ought rather to be referred to the gazel or antilope kind.

Eland, or *Kaapſe Eland*, (the *Cape elk*) vide Plate I. Vol. II. is a name given by the coloniſts to a ſpecies of gazel which is ſomewhat larger and clumſier, though, upon the whole, handſomer than the *hartbeeſt*. I have already had occaſion in Vol. I. page 131, and Vol. II. page 70, 96, 116, 130, to make

* This defect is remedied in the preſent edition.

mention

1776. January.

mention of this animal, and have given a deſcription and drawing of it in the Swediſh Tranſactions for 1779. In one of the places above referred to, I have mentioned, that it is called by the Caffres *empofos*; I have ſince found in my manuſcript notes, that it is likewiſe called by the ſame nation *poffo*, and by the Hottentots *t'gann*. There has not been hitherto given any ſatisfactory deſcription or drawing of this rare animal, as before this it had never been ſeen by any naturaliſt.

Mr. PENNANT, in the new edition of his excellent Hiſtory of Quadrupeds, Vol. I. page 70, has perfectly well comprehended my meaning in the Swediſh Tranſactions; but, as well as M. PALLAS, in his *Spicil. Zool. Faſcic.* XII. p. 11, has been led by KOLBE into the error of fixing the habitation of the Cape elk in mountainous tracts; (vide Faſc. I. Plate XVI.) an error, which has occaſioned that great zoologiſt, M. PALLAS, who had before in Faſc. I. l. c. made mention of this animal by the name of *oryx*, to change it for that of *orcas*, (vide Faſc. XII. page 5, 11, 17,) and afterwards gave the name of *oryx* to another animal; a circumſtance which it were to be wiſhed could be avoided, on account of the confuſion in which the multitude of names, and more eſpecially the alterations of them, muſt neceſſarily involve the ſcience of natural hiſtory. After all, however, the fact is this, that the elk antilope, like the other large ſpecies of the gazel kind, lives on the plains and in vallies, inſtead of the high mountains, whither KOLBE has ſent it, and up which this animal in particular would in all probability be too heavy and unwieldy to climb. The Comte de BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. XLVI.

1776. January. LXVI. p. 378, has delineated the horns extremely well, but has very improperly aſcribed them to the *coudou* (Belgis *koedoe*) which is quite a different animal, and of which we ſhall ſay more hereafter.

The figure annexed at Plate I. Vol. II. I had an opportunity, in my journey homewards, of drawing from a live elk, which had been caught while it was yet a fawn; but though it was not quite grown up, and though it was permitted to go looſe day and night without the leaſt reſtraint or confinement, yet it never went away, but kept very near to mankind, and about the farm: whence it appears, how eaſy it would be to domeſticate this ſpecies of gazel, which, in its tame ſtate, might be more ſerviceable than either horſes or oxen, and, in a great meaſure, perform the offices for which both theſe animals are uſed; eſpecially as this beaſt is ſaid to keep up its fleſh without taking much food, for the moſt part contenting itſelf with ſhrubs and buſhes, which the land is more inclined to produce than graſs. It appeared to me, that the hair in the fore-top and on the forehead was longer in this than in the three old ones which I ſaw ſhot; on the other hand, this wanted the ſmall elevation, or knob, which the others, and particularly one of them, had between and behind their horns.

This beaſt is of an aſh-colour, inclining a little towards blue, excepting the following parts, which are quite black, viz. the tuft at the end of the tail, the ſkin between the fetlocks and the hoofs, and the thin erect mane, which extends from the nape of the animal's neck along the ſpine of its back.

The

1776. January.

The horns of this creature, when it is full grown, are two feet long, and of a dark brown colour, being twiſted, or forming a very conſpicuous wreath half way up from the baſe, in which they have three ſides and three ridges or ribs, ſeparated by the ſides from each other; the horns afterwards become round and ſtraight, excepting that the tips of them are gradually turned a little fowards and inwards. The hindmoſt ridge near the baſe becomes, in the middle of the writhen part of the horn, the middlemoſt ridge, and the moſt raiſed; but at its termination again becoming the hindmoſt, gradually decreaſes, and vaniſhes at the back of the upper half of the horn. The interior and anterior edge is the moſt obtuſe of any, and in ſome is quite rounded off; the exterior and anterior likewiſe terminates at top, outwards and forwards, ſomewhat higher than the others. At the bottom of all, near the baſes of the horn, there appears ſeveral irregular ſcabrous and oblique rings, which are tolerably well expreſſed in the figure of the tobacco horn given in Plate I. Vol. I. fig. 3; but after this, the fibres of the horn take a ſpiral form, running over and parallel with the above-deſcribed twiſted angles and ſides of the horn, though in ſeveral places a half ring or ſcabrous inequality going acroſs them is diſcoverable. The forehead of this animal is flat, and tolerably broad at top, in proportion to what it is lower down about the eyes, where it becomes very narrow. It has a foretop ſtanding erect, the length of its whole forehead. Its noſe is ſharp and pointed. Its breaſt is covered with a *paleare*, or looſe ſkin, with long hair.

This animal has a great deal of fat, eſpecially about the heart: from an old male which we gave chaſe to and ſhot,

1776. January. we got ſuch a quantity of fine and tender fat, as we could with difficulty get into a box that would hold about ten pounds of butter. As at the commencement of our journey homewards through the deſert, the hounds we had with us had unluckily devoured our ſtock of butter, a farmer, who ſtill accompanied us, ſhewed us how to prepare the fat from about the heart of the elk, and to uſe it for dreſſing victuals with, and for eating on bread in the ſame manner as is generally practiſed with gooſe-greaſe and hogs-lard. The taſte of it alſo was very ſimilar to theſe, and to the full as good; and, indeed, if I may be ſuppoſed to have been able to form any judgment of the matter at a time when we were ſo ſharp ſet, and in abſolute want of any thing elſe of the kind, it was rather better. The breaſt is likewiſe extremely fat, and is always looked upon as a great delicacy. The fleſh is univerſally of a finer grain, more juicy and better taſted than that of the *hart-beeſt*. When the elk-antilopes are hunted, they always run, if poſſible, againſt the wind, even though the hunter himſelf ſhould come from that ſide, and attempt to drive them back. I have myſelf ſeen a moſt evident inſtance of this, when on a hunting party with three others. In fact, it is ſuppoſed, that being very fat and purſy, they find it eaſier to fetch their breath when they run againſt the wind. They moſtly keep together in large herds, and were ſuppoſed to migrate now and then to the ſouthward, like the ſpringboks, when any great drought, or failure with reſpect to rain and water, happens in the interior or northern parts of Africa. Juſt before our departure from *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, ſome Hottentots arrived there with the news, that they

1776. January.

they had ſeen, between the two *Viſch-riviers*, an infinite number of elks, which juſt at that place turned back again and made towards the north. This piece of intelligence was in probability very true; for on our return homewards, we found ſeveral ſpots, which before were green and covered with herbage, grazed off quite bare, and almoſt as much beaten and trampled under foot, as a place of encampment for cavalry. It was imagined, that ſuch large herds as theſe, either would not deign to make way for any huntſmen on horſeback, or elſe that the foremoſt of them could not avoid making ſome reſiſtance, on account of thoſe in the rear preſſing upon them. If this were the caſe, it would have been a great misfortune for our ſmall party to have met with this army of quadrupeds, as they would, in all probability, have jumped over our heads and trod us under foot, in caſe we had not had time or room enough to have got on one ſide out of their way. The male elks, which are rather aged, and conſequently ſlow and tardy, keep apart from the reſt of the herd; and are generally ſo fat and heavy, as, in caſe of being chaſed, to tire immediately on the firſt onſet. And indeed, of the elk ſpecies, the males are always the fatteſt and largeſt in the herd, and have evidently a fuller neck than the others; it is likewiſe theſe, that the hunter ſingles out and is ſure to come up with firſt. I have been aſſured by ſeveral people, that ſome of the younger and fleeter, but at the ſame time fatter ſort of bucks, will ſometimes, when they are hard run, drop down dead during the chaſe; and that melted fat, as it were, together with the blood, would at that time guſh out of their noſtrils.

1776. January.

Being on a hunting-party on our way home, and obſerving a young buck of the elk-antilope ſpecies, a farmer who was along with us, ſent off his ſon, a lad about twenty years old, as being the lighteſt, as well as the beſt mounted of us all, to give chaſe to it; and by ſo doing, procured me likewiſe no ſmall degree of pleaſure, as long as I could get to view the chaſe, which was for the ſpace of more than a quarter of an hour. In conſequence of their diſtance from me, and the great rate at which they went, the legs of the horſe, as well as thoſe of the elk, being ſcarcely perceptible, both the ſportſman and his game ſeemed to ſwim, or ſail, as it were, over the hills and plains, while they were mutually endeavouring to get to the windward of each other. In fact, the young huntſman had more than once the advantage in this point; but in order to prolong the pleaſure of the chaſe, and buoyed up by the ambitious hopes of being able to tire out his game, and afterwards drive it back to us, he purpoſely neglected ſeveral opportunities that offered of jumping off his horſe, (as the ſportſmen here are uſed to do) and ſhooting the flying foe. Beſides, the air was now tolerably calm; and in this caſe, the animal in general does not ſtrive ſo pertinaciouſly to get to the windward of its purſuers, as at other times; ſo that there have been inſtances known of ſpirited and expert ſportſmen who, to their ſingular ſatisfaction, as well as for the ſake of greater convenience, have hunted elks and other gazels, and driven them back, for many miles together, from the open plains, on to their own doors, before they have thought it worth while to fire their pieces at them. But to return to our ſportſman; in the ſpace of about two hours he comes back,

wearied and confuſed, and pleading in his excuſe that, having fired at the beaſt and wounded it, though not mortally, it had eſcaped into a cloſe thicket, while he was occupied in adjuſting his ſaddle, which had got looſe; together with other excuſes of that nature. He likewiſe added, that while he was chaſing the animal, he could plainly perceive a bloody froth exſuding from its neck, along with the white foam which appears on moſt animals on their being hard run. This exſudation, or ſweating of blood, does not appear to me in the leaſt improbable; however, I will not by any means pledge myſelf for the truth of it; as, being ſo very unuſual a circumſtance, it muſt have been ſeen at a ſmaller diſtance, and confirmed by the teſtimony of ſeveral, before it could be thought credible. Every body, however, in this country was firmly of opinion, (and, as it appears to me, not without reaſon) that although game of this kind, and hunted almoſt as hard as this, might eſcape for the preſent, they would however ſoon after grow ſtiff in their joints and die; or at leaſt be ſo diſabled, that the next time they were chaſed either by ſportſmen or wild beaſts, they would the eaſier become a prey to them. The caſe is quite otherwiſe with horſes, which are prevented by their maſters from drinking, or from being otherwiſe cooled too ſoon, when they are warm. Nevertheleſs, almoſt all horſes which have been much uſed in hunting, are pretty much ſpavined, and ſometimes are very ſtiff in their joints, and ſlow in their paces, till, previouſly to their being taken out a hunting again, they have been rode out a little, and their limbs, by this means, rendered pliable. One of our company had a large horſe, but as thin as a grey-hound, which

1776. January.

1776. January. was very much foundered. This horſe, however, when it had got warm, was one of the ſwifteſt I ever ſet eyes on.

Neither are theſe hunting-parties without their difficulties, and even danger for the hunters themſelves; as beſides that they cannot help ſometimes being carried by their horſes through coppices and thickets, (in which caſe their legs are ſcratched, and the ſkirts of their coats torn by the buſhes) and are obliged to leap over pits and rivulets, neither can they entirely avoid ſinking now and then into the holes and ſubterraneous paſſages, which are dug in the earth by the various kinds of animals I have deſcribed above. In chaſing the elk-antilope near little *Fiſh* river in our way home on the firſt of February, I had the misfortune to have my horſe, which was galloping full ſpeed, ſink into the ground with his fore feet; in conſequence of which he, as it appeared to me and my companions in the chaſe, tumbled over head and heel, (*gat over de kop.*) I myſelf was thrown, with my gun in my hand, to a great diſtance from him, and was particularly hurt in both my wriſts, of which I had not the perfect uſe for a long time. The gun, though it was cocked, did not go off in the fall. As ſoon as my horſe came up, he galloped home again to our waggons, which were in ſight, ſo that I had the additional mortification of being obliged to return on foot; a circumſtance, which, in the caſe of hunting the buffalo or the lion, might have been attended with ſtill worſe conſequences. My companions were ſo eager and intent on the chaſe, that they all rode on without giving themſelves the trouble to ſee whether I wanted any help or no.

The

1776. January.

The *elk-antilopes*, however, are none of them ſo fleet as the *hartbeeſts*; the hide likewiſe of the neck, particularly of that of the male, is thicker and tougher than either the hide of this latter or that of the common ox; and is looked upon, next to the buffalo's hide, to be the fitteſt for halters for oxen, traces for waggons, field-ſhoes, and ſuch like uſes. The female has horns, like the male, but ſmaller; though they, as well as thoſe of the male, are uſed by the Hottentots, both men and women, for tobacco-pipes, in the manner I have before mentioned at page 230, Vol. I. (ſee likewiſe Plate I. fig. 3. of the ſame volume.) There is no porus ſebaceus, or ceriferus, at the corner of the eye of this animal, as there is in the eye of the *gnu* and of the *hartbeeſt*. I obſerved a very ſingular circumſtance in the laſt elk we ſhot, which was, that on each ſide of its eight front teeth, there was a cartilaginous proceſs exactly reſembling a tuſk. Theſe proceſſes were ſomewhat flexible and elaſtic; in fact, they did not ſeem at all adapted to maſtication, ſo that it was difficult to conjecture for what purpoſe they were intended by nature. In the live young elk that I made a drawing of, it did not once enter into my thoughts to examine how things were ſituated with reſpect to this proceſs.

Koedoe is the name given by the coloniſts to a beautiful tall *gazel* with long and ſlender ſhanks, which is larger, though much leſs clumſy and heavy, than the *elk-antilope*. The horns too of the *koedoe*, beſides that the ſpiral twiſt on them is more deeply emboſſed, and is embelliſhed with a ſingularly prominent edge, or rib, are twice as long as the horns of the elk. M. DE BUFFON, who has ſeen the horns only

1776. January.

only of both theſe animals, has, as I have already mentioned, miſcalled the *Cape-elk* by the name of *coudou*; which however properly belongs to the animal I am now deſcribing, whoſe name he has, inſtead of this, diſtorted to *condoma*; a circumſtance which probably proceeded from the letter to which M. BUFFON refers, having been ill written, or elſe from his having made a miſtake in reading it; ſo that either in one caſe or the other, they turned the letter *u* in *coudou* topſy turvy, and made an *n* of it. He was obliged to alter the termination alſo, otherwiſe we ſhould have had two very different animals with the ſame name. By this means, likewiſe, the *elk-antilope* ran the riſk of wearing the long ſtately horns of the *koedoe*.

Neither has M. HOUTTUYN been more fortunate in his *Natuurlyke Hiſtorie*, Vol. III. p. 267, in which he claſſes them with the ſheep. Excepting the horns, the whole of the figure he has given in Tab. XXVI. l. c. is good for nothing. Our great countryman LINNÆUS has been ſo far miſled, as to refer to it in his *Syſtem of Nature* for the figure of the *ovis ſtrepſiceros*; though the body they have put to the horns (which, however, never belonged to it) is certainly not like that of a ſheep. A better figure is given in the *Nouv. Deſcrip. du Cap de B. Eſperance*, page 41, 42, the author of which aſſures us, that it was taken from the life. In the mean time I muſt confeſs, that I had no cognizance whatever of the beard: I will not venture, however, to diſpute the point very tenaciouſly, as I ſaw theſe animals alive but twice in the courſe of my hunting expeditions, though, indeed, that was at no great diſtance. M. PALLAS, who had examined the head of a koedoe, remarks

marks in Spic. I. p. 1—17, that the *koedoe* has no beard, and therefore cannot be the *capra anonyma* of KOLBE. Mr. PENNANT, who in his *Hiſtory of Quadrupeds*, Vol. I. p. 77, has accurately deſcribed the *koedoe* under the name of the *ſtriped antilope* from ſeveral ſkins of this animal, and who refers to the above-mentioned figure in the *Nouv. Deſcript. du Cap*, as being a good one, is quite ſilent with reſpect to the beard. I have ſome time before aſſerted in the Swediſh Tranſactions for 1779, p. 157, that the male of the *koedoe* had no horns; a circumſtance which had not been remarked before by any zoologiſt, and which I would wiſh to confirm in this place; with the additional remark, that the *porus ceriferus*, which in a number of *gazels* is placed below the eye, is wanting in the *koedoe*. Concerning this point I aſſured myſelf, by inſpecting the body of a fawn of one of the animals immediately after it was ſhot.

The predominant colour in this fawn's ſkin, which I brought home with me, is a ruſty brown; the ridge of the back is likewiſe partly inclined to brown and partly to white; but the ſtripes which go from it downwards, to the number of eight or nine, are white; the hind part of the belly is of a white colour, which extends ſtrait downwards on the fore part of the hind legs in the form of a white liſt, terminating a hand's breadth above the hoofs; but directly above them on all the four feet there is a white ſpot, compoſed, as it were, of two; the fetlock-joints are extremely ſmall, and the part below each of them is of a brown colour. On the breaſt again, there are likewiſe ſome dark brown marks. The forehead and the fore part of the noſe are brown,

the

1776. January. the lower lip is white, and there is ſome white on the upper lip, on the knees, and on each ſide of the fore legs; a white ſtripe half an inch long runs forward from the internal angle of each eye, and theſe ſtripes almoſt meet together juſt above the noſe; upon each of the cheek-bones there are two ſmall white ſpots; the inner edges of the ears are covered with white hairs, and the upper part of the neck is adorned with a brown mane an inch long.

From the tall and ſlender form of the *koedoe*, I had conceived it to be a very ſwift-footed animal; but I have been aſſured by two coloniſts, that in this reſpect it is not only very moderate, but likewiſe ſoon tires; ſo that it is more eaſily overtaken by the hounds than any other *gazel:* on the other hand, the males with their long horns defend themſelves with great ſpirit againſt their foe, when he comes to cloſe quarters with them. I cannot by any means ſuppoſe, that the large horns of the male are the cauſe of its running ſo ſlowly; for the female, which is free from this burthen, is not looked upon to be ſwifter of foot than the male: ſo that I cannot conceive the reaſon, why nature has denied her the power of extricating herſelf from danger, both by means of her head and of her feet.

On the 29th of January, being on our way homewards, we came very cloſe upon ſeven or eight *koedoes*, one of which, not placing any dependence on its legs, fled for refuge into the river, where it got entangled in the weeds and graſs that floated on the ſurface, and was ſeized and worried to death by our hounds. Afterwards two of our Hottentots ſwam to it, and cut off ſeveral ſlices from it. I found the fleſh much of the ſame nature with that of the

hartbeeſt,

1776. January.

hartbeeſt, but the marrow was, at leaſt in my opinion, extremely delicious. The *koedoe* is ſaid to live more on ſhrubs and buſhes, than any of the other gazels I have before mentioned. A ſportſman, in whoſe preſence I was making mention of the cartilages of the elk-antilope which reſemble tuſks, informed me, that the *koedoe* had proceſſes exactly of the ſame kind.

Another of the larger kind of *gazel* at the Cape, is known by the name of *gemſe-bok*, or *chamois*. How improper an appellation this is in many reſpects Dr. FORSTER has already taken notice, in his *Voyage round the World*, Vol. I. page 84. The horns are very well delineated in BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. XXXIII. Fig. 3. and there is a beautiful figure of the whole animal in the *Nouv. Deſcript.* page 56, where the name of *paſan*, which had been given it by M. DE BUFFON, is retained. M. PALLAS, who, in his Spic. Zool. Faſc. I. pag. 14. hath called it the *antilope bezoartica*, has thought proper to alter the name in his Faſc. XII. page 16 and 17, to that of *antilope oryx*. Mr. PENNANT has deſcribed this *gazel* under the denomination of *Egyptian*, vide his *Synopſis of Quadrupeds*, page 25; and his *Hiſt. of Quadrupeds*, p. 67. M. HOUTTUYN likewiſe by his Fig. 1. Tab. XXIV. which LINNÆUS refers to for his *capra gazella*, probably meant the *Cape chamois*. In all probability, this animal is peculiar to the north-weſtern part of the colony; for in the tracts of country I travelled through, I neither ſaw nor heard any thing of it. At Cape Town, however, the horns are not very ſcarce. I have one under my care in the cabinet of the Royal Academy, which is of a blackiſh colour, about three feet long, and almoſt

1776. January.

perfectly ſtrait, the lower half of it at the ſame time being diſtinguiſhed by twenty or more craggy wavy rings projecting above the ſurface. The upper half is ſmooth, and goes off tapering by degrees to a ſharp point, the diameter of the baſe being about an inch and a half. In other reſpects, this creature is deſcribed both by Mr. PENNANT, and in the above-mentioned compilation, as being of an aſh colour ſomewhat inclining to red; the belly, legs, and face are white; but the ſpaces juſt before and round about the horn, together with the fore part of the upper extremity of the noſe, and the lower part of the forehead, are black, or black bordering upon brown; there alſo goes from the eyes to the chin a browniſh black ſtripe, which is connected by another of the ſame kind with the above-mentioned ſpot on the noſe and forehead. This animal is likewiſe ſaid to be of a dark colour on the ſhoulders, a little on the fore part of the legs, on thoſe parts where the belly terminates in the ſides, on the tail itſelf, and all along the back and the neck. The tail ſeems to reach to the hocks, and the hoofs appear to be of an uncommon length; ſo, at leaſt, they are repreſented in the figures alluded to above.

KOLBE's deſcription of his elk (called the *elend-thier* in the German edition, p. 145,) anſwers better in ſome ſort to this *gazel* than to that which is actually known at the Cape by this name, and of which I have given a deſcription; but whichever of theſe two it is that KOLBE means, his deſcription is faulty at all events, and the weight he mentions, viz. 400 lb. is under the real weight of the animal. But be that as it will, there is the moſt manifeſt

manifeſt abſurdity in KOLBE's aſſertion, that an animal of ſuch a weight as this ſhould be caught in a ſpringe with a ſmall cord, and drawn up into the air. 1776. January.

The *blaauw-bok* is alſo one of the large ſpecies of *gazel*, which, probably, are only to be found in the ſame diſtrict with the *gazel* juſt deſcribed; excepting, perhaps, a ſingle one, which may happen now and then by great chance to ſtray from theſe parts: for at *Krakeel-rivier*, I found they had preſerved a ſkin of this animal. The colour of this creature when alive is ſaid to reſemble that of blue velvet, but when it is dead it is of a lead colour. There is a beautiful figure of it by the name of the *Tzeiran*, to be ſeen at p. 58 of the compilation I have frequently referred to. On this ſubject the reader may likewiſe turn to Mr. PENNANT's *blue antilope*, and M. PALLAS's *antilope leucophæa*; being thus called by the latter gentleman, from the circumſtance of its being marked with a large white ſpot juſt before and beneath each eye. The hairs on the belly are long and white; the tail is ſhort; the horns go backwards with a curve, being decorated with about twenty-four rings to three-fourths of their height; but the uppermoſt quarter is ſmooth, and goes off tapering by degrees to a point.

The *bunte-bok*, (the painted or pied goat) called by Mr. PENNANT the *harneſſed antilope*, and by M. PALLAS *antilope ſcripta*, I have already mentioned in Vol. I. page 129, as being ſomewhat leſs than the *hartbeeſt*; and again at page 277, as being larger than the *boſch-bok*. The *bunte-bok* is not to be found any farther to the eaſtward of the Cape than *Zwellendam*; but a farmer who had been in the country of *Tambuki* informed me, that he had there again

1776. January.

ſeen *bunte-boks*, though ſomewhat different from the above-mentioned.

The *gnu*, which I have deſcribed above at pages 132, 152, and 175, and have given the figure of in Plate II. of this volume, I reckon, with ſtill greater confidence than I did before, among the large gazels of Africa; ſince induced by the arguments I have made uſe of to this purpoſe in the Swediſh Tranſactions, the great Engliſh PLINY, whoſe admirable Hiſtory of Quadrupeds I have ſo often quoted in theſe ſheets, has likewiſe thought proper to refer the *gnu* to the *gazel* kind.

To the ſmaller African *gazels*, (which, indeed, has been already treated of) having no porus ceriferus underneath the eye, belong the following:

The *boſch-bok*, or *antilope ſylvatica, cornibus erectis ſubtriquetris ſpiralibus, corpore fuſco, albo maculato, cauda breviſſima*. This animal I have already ſpoken of at page 270, Vol. I. and have given the figure of it in Plate VI. of this volume. As the ſpecific difference of the other *gazels* which are better known than this in the reſpective deſcriptions of each of them, or may be found in ſome of the authors there quoted, I chooſe to omit the inſertion of them here, in order to avoid prolixity; particulary as it would be of no ſervice, excepting with reſpect to the making out of the nomenclature of the whole genus.

The *ſpring-bok*, or the bounding goat, (vide page 83 to page 90, and Plate V. of this volume) is called by M. PALLAS, in his Faſc. XII. page 15, the *antilope pygargus*.

Beſides the gazels above-mentioned, there are ſeveral others of which I am not able to give the zoologiſts ſo good

an account as they may require of me. I conceive, nevertheleſs, that the enumerating of them here will not be wholly uſeleſs, as by this means the attention of naturaliſts and travellers may be turned to them in a particular manner, ſo that ſome light may at length be thrown on this principal branch of zoology, which has been hitherto ſo much involved in darkneſs. Theſe animals are the following: 1776. January.

The *ree-bok* is a gregarious animal, two feet in height. The predominant colour of it is an aſh-colour, ſomewhat reſembling that of a hare, but a little inclining to red; the belly and anus are white, as well as the under part of the tail, which is very ſhort; the horns are black, quite ſtraight, and in poſition, form and ſubſtance, very like thoſe of the *gemſe-bok*, but are barely a foot long, and proportionally very ſmall, conſequently very taper at the end and ſharp-pointed; for which reaſon the Hottentots frequently keep them by them, and uſe them as awls or bodkins for the purpoſe of boring holes, when they make or repair their ſhoes or cloaks. The hair likewiſe of this creature ſeems to be ſofter and finer than common. The fleſh of it is dry, and is accounted worſe than that of any other gazel.

This animal was not uncommon in *Hottentots Holland*, *Artaquas-kloof*, and *Lange-kloof*. I muſt own, however, that I have drawn up the account I have juſt given of this animal, from memory only, as I had the misfortune to loſe the original deſcription, together with the drawing. In a journey like mine, loſſes of this kind are not to be wondered at. At times, when I was wet through with heavy ſhowers of rain, or in conſequence of having forded a river,

1776. January. ver, a paper or two that I had about me, muſt neceſſarily have been in the ſame predicament. The overturning of our waggon likewiſe, eſpecially at night, which happened at two different times, was of no great ſervice to my collections, particularly to my inſects.

The *riet*, or reed *ree-bok*, I ſaw but once, and then I had but a haſty glimpſe of it, as it ran by me. This was during my reſidence at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, and it was there only that I heard any mention of this creature. It generally keeps concealed among the reeds and marſhy places, and is thought to reſemble a little the animal laſt deſcribed, from which two circumſtances it has obtained the name it bears. It is, however, twice as big as the *ree-bok*; they are monogamous, or keep only in pairs, and, if I remember right, the females are ſaid to be without horns.

Notwithſtanding all the preſents and offers I have made to my correſpondents at the Cape, they have not yet fulfilled their promiſes of ſending me the ſkins of theſe two animals, which are probably a ſpecies of the *capra* or GAZEL genus, hitherto entirely unknown.

The *vlakſteen-bok* was the name given at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte* to animals (probably of the gazel kind) two feet in height, which uſed, in ſome ſort, to herd together on the *vlaktens*, or plains, though for the moſt part diſperſed and at a diſtance from each other. I likewiſe ſaw this creature twice on my journey homeward through the deſert. Though, when at a certain diſtance, it did not appear in the leaſt ſhy, it always took care, however, not to let any of us come within gun-ſhot of it. It muſt conſequently be

be hunted down on horſeback, except the ground is too ſtoney and rough. The colour of it was a very pale-red or a mouſe-colour, (*colore murino*) on which account it was likewiſe ſaid to be called by ſome the *bleek-bok*, or *vaal ree-bok*. It is more clumſy and unwieldy than the *ree-bok*, and in its form more reſembles the animal commonly called the *ſteen-bok* at the Cape. 1776. January.

The animals called by the coloniſts *ſteen-bok*, *grys-bok*, *duyker-bok*, and *klipſpringer*, are about two feet high, being probably of the *gazel* kind, and are not uncommon near the Cape. But for this very reaſon, and in conſequence of my having been frequently impeded by my botanical reſearches, I deferred the inveſtigation of theſe animals till it was too late, as my departure for Europe took place much ſooner than I expected. It is ſome conſolation to me, however, to reflect, that this loſs may eaſily be repaired; and, indeed, more than repaired, by ſomebody elſe: perhaps we may expect that favour from Meſſrs. FORSTERS, who, when at the Cape, were engaged in making drawings, together with accurate deſcriptions of theſe quadrupeds; for which reaſon likewiſe, I even then conſidered my reſearches into this matter as being the more ſuperfluous. In the mean time, however, I muſt obſerve, that I am perfectly convinced that theſe animals are of ſpecies diſtinct from each other, the females of which have no horns; and, if I remember right, they have all a porus ceriferus below the eye, except, according to what I was told, the *duyker-bok*. The fleſh too of this laſt animal was alſo ſaid to be very dry and tough, when compared with that of the others, which I taſted of, and which appeared to me, with reſpect

to

1776. January.

to the high flavour and dryneſs of the meat, to bear ſome reſemblance to the fleſh of the hare.

The *ſteen-bok* is of a reddiſh colour, with a white ſpot over its eyes, and is probably a variety of Mr. PENNANT's red antilope. Hiſt. of Quadrupeds, page 76.

The *grys-bok* is of a greyiſh colour, with black ears, and a large black ſpot round the eyes, being probably the *A. Grimmia. Spicil. Zool.* I. p. 8. Tab. III.

The *klipſpringer* is of a light red colour, inclining to yellow, and intermixed with black ſtreaks; the tips and edges of its ears are black. The tails of theſe animals were very ſhort; the horns of all the males, if I remember right, are rather ſhorter than their ears, being in ſome meaſure ſtraight, and at the ſame time round, ſmooth, ſharp-pointed, black, and ſtanding at a great diſtance from each other, though probably they vary in their poſition. The *klipſpringer* has obtained the name it bears, from the circumſtance of its running with the greateſt volocity, and making large bounds even on the ſteepeſt precipices and in the moſt rocky places; ſo that, like the other two, it cannot be eaſily caught with hounds. In this reſpect it reſembles Mr. PENNANT's *ſwift antilope*, l. c. As for the *duyker-bok*, or diving goat, I have only had a ſingle glimpſe of it. The colour of it ſeemed to be dark brown, and its manner of running in the higheſt degree ſingular; as the animal would make a bound at intervals, riſing in its leap with its neck erect, and in its deſcent bringing it down between its legs, and then continuing its courſe on the ground. This, perhaps, among the buſhes, had the appearance of diving, and gave riſe to its name.

Apes,

1776. January.

Apes, or *baboons*, reſide in conſiderable numbers in the woody part of the mountain, at the foot of which runs little *Viſch-rivier*. They are ſaid to have long canine teeth or tuſks, and to be very ſwift of foot, nimble, ſtrong, and difficult to kill, ſo that they will ſometimes even force the tigers to quit their hold, and part with their lives to the hounds at a dear rate. On this account the coloniſts are not very fond of hunting them. One day, however, when ſeveral baboons made their appearance very near the farm where we were lodged, I perſuaded my hoſt to ſet his dogs upon them. One of theſe baboons, which ſeemed rather in years and inactive, and perhaps was not able to reach the mountains ſo ſoon as the reſt, took refuge in a low tree down in the plain. My piece was at this time loaded with what they call *ſteen-bok* ſhot, or ſhot about the ſize of a common pea; and with theſe, at the diſtance of fifteen paces only, I hit the animal in the left breaſt; notwithſtanding which, the creature, though mortally wounded, was able to ſtay in the tree ſeveral minutes, and during that time did not utter the leaſt cry or groan. At laſt, when it was obliged to quit its hold on the tree, the dogs fell upon it before it came to the ground. I now found that there was very good foundation for what I had been formerly told, viz. that there was no ſpecies of hunting in which the dogs ſhew ſo much fury and malice as in the chaſe of monkies or baboons; ours having wounded the animal in a moſt terrible manner, before they could be made to quit it. The head of this creature very much reſembled that of a dog, and its tuſks were about half an inch long; the colour of the hair was a yellowiſh brown;

1776. January. the tail was nearly as long as the body, and was terminated by a tuft of hair, ſo that in this reſpect it reſembled the tail of the lion. The whole length of the animal from head to foot was five feet; its colour was the common baboon colour, or a mixture of yellow and brown. It is probable, that this baboon is the *ſimia cynocephalus* of the *Syſtema Naturæ*; though the *cauda floccoſa* of this animal is not taken notice of in the *differentia ſpecifica*, as the tails of ſuch monkies as are kept in a ſtate of confinement are uſually cut ſhort by their keepers. In the courſe of my journey I accidentally ſaw a young baboon or two with cropped tails, which were kept chained up, and were ſaid to be natives of the Cape colonies; but they had not a dog's noſe and large tuſks like this, ſo that they probably formed a diſtinct ſpecies; neither had they ſuch a dark colour as Mr. PENNANT deſcribes in his *urſine baboon*, which he ſuppoſes came from the Cape. The ſkin of the monkey I had ſhot, had been too ill uſed by the dogs to be worth preſerving; but curious to know, what this animal, in ſo many reſpects reſembling the human race, fed upon in his wild ſtate, I opened his ſtomach, and found it filled with a ſubſtance like ſpinach, cut ſmall and ſtewed: this animal, in all probability, eats likewiſe certain bulbs and roots, like the *Boſhies-men*; though at that time at leaſt, its diet did not appear to conſiſt of a mixture of different ſubſtances, neither fruit nor berries of any ſort being to be found in theſe parts, at leaſt not in that quantity as to deſerve to be ranked among the articles on which theſe animals ſubſiſted. They were not in the leaſt ſuſpected of living upon animal food; beſides, it is well known, that many ſorts of monkies,

kies, when in a ſtate of confinement, are fed only with vegetables, and upon ſuch food are briſk and lively; for which reaſon, as one can ſcarcely entertain ſo ill an opinion of M. DE BUFFON, conſidering him as a naturaliſt and author of a conſiderable number of large volumes on the ſubject of zoology, as to ſuppoſe him ignorant of the circumſtance of moſt of the monkey tribe obſerving in general a vegetable diet, or of the great reſemblance between the viſcera of theſe creatures and thoſe of man; for this reaſon I ſay, it is difficult to conceive, what could induce this celebrated author to aſſert, that animals which have only one ſtomach and ſhort inteſtines, are obliged, like man, to feed upon fleſh? *Les animaux qui n'ont qu'un eſtomac, et les inteſtins courts, ſont forcés, comme l'homme, à ſe nourrir de chair.* (BUFFON, Tom. VII. p. 36.)

In fact, muſt it not likewiſe inevitably follow from this poſition, that the rhinoceros and horſe, which, in like manner, have one ſtomach, with inteſtines very ſhort in proportion, ſhould be obliged, like man, to live upon fleſh? M. DE BUFFON, indeed, in order farther to enforce his opinion, adviſes us, l. c. to compare the bowels of animals with each other: but to ſay the truth, it is, very unfortunately for him, preciſely this compariſon, which when made between man, the ape, the rhinoceros, and the horſe; or again, between the diminutive fructivorous ape, *ſaimiri*, Tom. XV. and thoſe carnivorous animals the *couguas* and *lynx*, Tom. IX. or the wolf, Tom. VII. militates againſt him. We likewiſe find this learned author, who is himſelf, perhaps, fonder of animal than of vegetable food, at page 32 and the following pages of Tom. VII. urging in

1776. January.

the ſtrongeſt manner the indiſpenſible neceſſity that mankind is under of taking animal food; and in one place he breaks out in this manner, "*Were man reduced to the neceſſity of living on bread and vegetables alone, he would ſcarcely be able to ſupport life in a weak and languiſhing condition.*" From aſſertions like theſe one is almoſt induced to ſuſpect, that this ample and voluminous hiſtorian of the animal kingdom, has acquired but a ſlight and ſuperficial knowledge of the human race; and that, preferring eloquence and paradox to ſolid argument, he is at any time more likely to adopt falſhood and error, than to arrive at truth: for, allowing that the *Bramins*, who live without animal food, are rather, as M. DE BUFFON will have it, a particular ſect than a peculiar race of people, ſtill, however, they are men, who live and propagate their ſpecies, and are certainly by no means in a weakly and debilitated ſtate. I have been told, that a great part of the poor in China ſubſiſt, and that tolerably well, upon rice alone. The lower claſs of inhabitants in the South-Sea, (the *Tataús*) and even thoſe of the higher claſſes, uſed to beg meat of us, as it was a great rarity with them; and though many of theſe could very ſeldom get at any fiſh, and even that but in ſmall quantities, they nevertheleſs throve very well on this chiefly vegetable diet, and were ſo ſtout and robuſt as, not to mention other proofs of their ſtrength, for the ſake of a glaſs bead or a nail, frequently to diſpute with each other which of them ſhould carry ſome of us carnivorous Europeans on their backs over places, which we could not have otherwiſe paſſed without being wet-ſhod. This office they performed ſo well, as never once to ſtumble in pretty rapid ſtreams

ſtreams with rough gravelly bottoms, though at the ſame time the water reached up to their middles, and we ſate aſtride upon their ſhoulders with our guns in our hands. 1776. January.

The wretched iſland, called *Eaſter Iſland*, is a very convincing proof, that human nature can accuſtom itſelf to be content with very little nouriſhment; for though we walked quite acroſs the iſland, and explored a conſiderable part of it, we could ſee no more than one little boat, which, by the by too, was very much patched up and cobled; neither could we find timber enough to make another like it; ſo that I do not know what could induce Capt. Cook to affirm that they had three or four boats. Neither did we obſerve any kind of fiſhing-tackle in the leaſt, nor any ſigns, that the inhabitants were uſed to get their food from the ſea or its ſhore. They had, indeed, ſome cocks and hens, but as theſe were but ſmall and very tame, and at the ſame time ſo far from being numerous, that we ſcarcely ſaw fifty of them in a place containing ſeven or eight hundred people, we may with great propriety aſſert, that there were many perſons in this iſland who ſubſiſted almoſt, if not quite, without animal food of any kind whatſoever. There were ſome roots there, it is true; but as theſe were not extremely plentiful, and are held in abhorrence in the other iſlands, I do not know, whether the reaſons given by Capt. Cook are ſufficient to induce one to ſuppoſe, that the inhabitants of this iſland uſed them as food; and in caſe they did, they would ſeldom be able to make a good meal of them. It is true, that theſe people were almoſt all of them lank and lean; but then it muſt be conſidered likewiſe, that there was alſo a very great ſcarcity of vegetables;

1776. January.

tables; as the vegetable produce of the whole country hardly conſiſted of twenty plants, among which the piſang, yams, ſweet potatoes, and the ſugar cane, were the chief articles which it appeared to me they could make uſe of. On the other hand, theſe people were agile, and as ſwift as goats, and ſeemed to be very healthy. Their ſtrength was not put to the trial; but that their vegetable food did not make them tardy in the performance of the Cyprian rites, an effect which M. DE BUFFON, at page 33, ſeems willing to attribute to it, the reader may be eaſily convinced by peruſing Dr. FORSTER's deſcription of the Meſſalina-like temperament of the women. One of theſe, who had ſwam to our ſhip, when it was at a great diſtance from the ſhore, was ſaid, within the ſpace of a few hours, to have ſuffered the embraces of ſeventeen of our ſailors and marines, before ſhe ſwam again to land.

By way of farther refuting M. DE BUFFON's aſſertion with reſpect to the indiſpenſable neceſſity of an animal diet, that in the Society Iſlands the inhabitants had no great ſuperfluity of meat for themſelves, much leſs had they any fiſh or fleſh to beſtow on their dogs; ſo that theſe creatures, which, according to M. DE BUFFON, particularly came under the denomination of carnivorous animals, might very properly be ſaid to be fed almoſt, if not entirely, on vegetable food alone. I had no reaſon, however, to look upon them as being feeble and weak; though, on the other hand, the roaſted ones which now and then appeared at our table, as well as at thoſe of the principal inhabitants, were convincing proofs of their being fat and in good condition. Moreover, ſince our hounds in Europe, which certainly

certainly belong more properly than man to the claſs of carnivorous animals, are often nouriſhed for a long time together extremely well with nothing elſe but flour and water, why ſhould not ſeveral ſorts of vegetables ſuffice for mankind? The ſlaves and the Boſhies-men at the Cape, who are engaged in the ſervice of ſuch farmers as do nothing but graze ſheep, and conſequently have little or no butter-milk, and at the ſame time live in parts where the game has been previouſly deſtroyed, are yet kept by their maſters in good condition, almoſt entirely with bread and other preparations of meal and flour; for they are very careful not to laviſh their ſheep on their ſlaves, theſe ſheep being very frequently the only articles by which they can get a little ready caſh and pay their taxes. In THOMAS GAGE's voyage to New Spain we find, that the poor lived on *maiz* and a ſort of *phaſeolus*, or kidney-bean; though thoſe which live nearer the town, now and then, at leaſt on Sundays, got a little meat.

In ULLOA's Voyage, Tom. I. p. 248, 249, we read as follows: "The poor people here have nothing to live upon but *papas*; theſe roots ſtand them in the ſtead of all other nouriſhment. The Creoles prefer them to fowls and the fineſt fleſh meats." Who is there that does not know, how great a part cacao beans make of the food of the inhabitants in the country where they grow; and how ſoon people of waſted and reduced conſtitutions, by means of them, recover their fleſh and ſtrength? Nay, we have an inſtance of a ſhip's crew, which for two months had nothing but chocolate for their food, and were very hearty and well with it.

Now,

1776. January.

Now, notwithſtanding that there are many families in Upper Egypt which live entirely upon dates, (vide HASSELQUIST, p. 501) not to mention ſeveral other ſimilar inſtances, yet I will not look upon them as abſolutely concluſive with reſpect to M. DE BUFFON himſelf; as this author, at page 33, l. c. advances, that abſtinence from animal food would deſtroy the human race; or, at leaſt in our climate, would render it unfit for the propagation of its ſpecies, farther ſays, "It is poſſible, indeed, that a vegetable diet may be practicable in the ſouthern countries, where the fruits are riper, the herbs have more ſubſtance in them, the roots are more ſucculent, and the ſeeds contain more nouriſhment." Setting aſide this gentleman's *may be*, I rather chooſe, by inſtances brought from Europe and our own climate, fully to refute his deluſive doctrines with reſpect to the abſolute neceſſity of an animal diet. I cannot, however, help remarking, *en paſſant*, in contradiction to this author, that he has the leſs reaſon to conſider a vegetable diet as making a man unfit for propagation, as the vegetable kingdom produces the greateſt quantity of ſubſtances which promote venery. Beſides a great many plants belonging to the claſs *gynandria*, together with ſeveral others which might be enumerated, we have chocolate and ſalep, which are known even by the more ignorant part of mankind to be poſſeſſed of *aphrodiſiac* qualities: peas likewiſe, turnips, cabbage, and other flatulent vegetables, are looked upon as poſſeſſing theſe virtues in ſome degree, and that not without foundation nor unwarranted by experience. This *philoſopher*, indeed, who is ſo much prejudiced againſt vegetable diet, might have learned even

even from the moſt illiterate, that certain vegetables exalted by fermentation, as in the caſe of good wine and ale, in proper doſes, augment, in this particular, the inclination as well as the faculty. As to the greater degree of perfection aſcribed by M. DE BUFFON to the plants of the ſouthern countries, in compariſon with thoſe which grow in Europe, it is repugnant to all probability, as well as to what we know for certain of the œconomy of nature, which brings to as great perfection the root, ſtem, leaves, and ſeed of a plant ſhe had intended for the Alps, as of one which ſhe has planted under the line itſelf. 1776. January.

One cannot in particular help wondering the more, that M. DE BUFFON ſhould take it into his head, that the plants which grow in the ſouthern climates, have more ſubſtance in them than thoſe of France; as, according to the teſtimony of OLAFSON and ſeveral others, a buſhel of the *lichen Iſlandicus*, or Iceland moſs, a plant produced in the moſt northern part of Europe, is adequate to two buſhels of wheat; and, as M. DE BUFFON likewiſe ſuppoſes, that the roots in the ſouthern countries are more ſucculent than they are in the north, are we to take it for granted that he did not find the turnips in Burgundy ſufficiently juicy?

But the fact is, that as far as a knowledge of phyſiology and botany, and above all mature reflection, joined with a habit of method and arrangement, are requiſite in order to enable a man to form a right judgment concerning the food of animals, this great naturaliſt has in this place, as well as in many others, happened to enter upon a ſubject, of which he is entirely ignorant: of this we have ſufficient proofs, in the detracting aſperſions he has thrown

1776. January.

out againſt LINNÆUS, and his ſyſtem of botany, although this ſyſtem has been received by all good naturaliſts. M. DE BUFFON, therefore, would have done better, had he kept to his uſual admeaſurements and prolix deſcriptions of animals, their ſkins, ſkeletons, and horns; taking care, however, for the future, to make his obſervations in a more accurate manner than he has done with reſpect to the horns of oxen; on the ſubject of which he has happened very unfortunately to make a capital blunder, as I ſhall be obliged to ſhew more at large a little farther on, when I come to treat of the *camelopardalis*.

In the mean while, let us finiſh the diſcuſſion of the queſtion, in how far a man, at leaſt in France or Europe, (*au moins dans ces pays*, vide BUFFON, l. c.) may be ſuppoſed to linger on through life in a weak and debilitated ſtate, or to be incapacitated for the propagation of his ſpecies, by living on vegetable food, ſuch as is likely to be found in theſe countries, e. g. potatoes, turnips, turnip-rooted cabbage, carrots, onions, aſparagus, ſcorzonera, ſkirrets, the lathyrus tuberoſus, ſallads, and cabbages of all kinds, artichokes, peas, beans, bread, puddings, and all the other various preparations of meal or corn, cheſnuts, almonds, apples, pears, and plums of all ſorts, melons, pumpkins, cucumbers, olives, oil, figs, grapes, berries of all ſorts, wine, beer, &c.

The very mention of theſe ſeems to be a ſufficient proof of the abſurdity of M. DE BUFFON's opinion; but as he poſſibly will not give up the point without good authority being produced to the contrary, I will firſt of all refer him to his juſtly celebrated countryman TOURNEFORT's excellent

lent obſervations in the Levant, viz. that the food of the inhabitants of certain diſtricts in that part of the world conſiſted almoſt entirely of bread, figs, and grapes, with ſometimes raw cucumbers. Farther, M. DE BUFFON might have learned from LINNÆUS's *Amœnitates Academicæ*, Tom. I. p. 137, that the *athletæ* of former times, whoſe principal occupation was wreſtling and fighting, for which purpoſe a ſtrengthening diet was doubtleſs requiſite, lived chiefly upon figs before it was the practice to eat fleſh. We are likewiſe told, l. c. that the poor, who were ſet to watch the fig-trees and vineyards, grew plump and fat in the ſpace of two months by feeding on theſe fruits, joined to a very ſmall quantity of bread; and that the foxes, which had an opportunity of creeping into places of this kind, uſually got ſo fat upon this diet, as to be uſed by ſome people as food.

I have ſeen a great number of *Dalecarlians*, who wrought for a long time together at a hard and laborious buſineſs, ſubſiſt almoſt entirely upon haſty-pudding and beer, without even a morſel of bread; neither was this in the leaſt conſidered by them as hard fare. I have alſo met with many poor cottagers in *Up-landia*, who for a long time together even wanted bread, particularly for their children, ſo that they were obliged to bring them up upon pancakes and frumenty made without milk.

Thoſe who in the above-mentioned province or elſewhere have an opportunity of adding a little milk to their vegetable food, may nevertheleſs be conſidered as living nearly on a vegetable diet; as, according to M. GEOFFROI, the conſtituent parts of milk are almoſt entirely the ſame

1776. January.

with thoſe of vegetables. According to the accounts given me by the Engliſh, many of the poor people in Ireland live on potatoes only, with now and then a little milk; and a perſon who ſeveral years ago reſided for a long time in Ruſſia aſſured me, that the common people in ſome places there lived entirely upon ſour-crout and groats; and likewiſe upon ſour bread, raw cucumbers, onions, ſalt, *quaſs*, and *tradakna*, a diſh conſiſting of oatmeal dried in the oven, and mixed up with water: ſo that out of thirty thouſand peaſants belonging to a certain nobleman who lived on the borders of Muſcovy, there were very few who had the opportunity of taſting either fleſh or fiſh four times a year. M. DE BUFFON may ſee, moreover, in HALLER, Tom. VI. Lib. XIX. a long liſt of ſuch authors as have produced proofs and inſtances that mankind in Europe muſt neceſſarily be able, and actually are able to go without animal food: and indeed, why ſhould it not be ſo, as the ſame glutinous matter which is ſo peculiarly nouriſhing in the animal creation, is likewiſe found in vegetables? eſpecially as, to omit mentioning many other inſtances, it is well known, that the people who are condemned to work in the gallies, as well as many others, can make ſhift with a certain portion of bread and water only; and likewiſe, that the inhabitants of the Apennine Mountains live almoſt entirely upon cheſnuts.

The utility of a diet conſiſting entirely of vegetables in the hypochondriaſis, obſtinate gouts, and other ſtubborn and pertinacious diſorders, has, moreover, of late been placed in a very clear light by Dr. W. GRANT, in his *Eſſay on the Atrabilious Conſtitution*, p. 399, and ſeq. in which inſtances

inſtances are given of its having not only greatly improved the patients' health, and given them freſh ſtrength and vigour, but likewiſe made them younger than before. In the ſame book too we are informed, that this diet may be ſafely had recourſe to by perſons far advanced in years; and that it needs to be continued for the ſpace of ſix weeks only, or two years at the fartheſt. 1776. January.

The *camelopardalis* is, as I have ſaid above at p. 149 of this volume, the talleſt of all quadrupeds when meaſured in front; and though it is only found in thoſe parts of the Cape colonies that lie fartheſt towards the north-weſt, merits, however, an accurate deſcription, eſpecially in this place, along with the other animals of Africa. The lateſt and beſt accounts concerning the real form and other properties of this beaſt have been given to the public by the preſent Commandant at the Cape, Major GORDON, who ſhot one of theſe creatures in the diſtrict of *Anamaquas*; in conſequence of which, the public has been gratified with a very good drawing and deſcription of it by M. ALLAMAND, in his edition of M. DE BUFFON's Hiſtory of Animals, Suppl. DE LA GIRAFFE, p. 46. Of this deſcription I ſhall here preſent my reader with an abſtract.

The height of this animal, when it holds its neck ſtrait and erect, is, from the crown of the head to the ground, fifteen feet two inches; the length of it, from the cheſt to the anus, five feet ſeven inches; from the top of the ſhoulders to the ground about ten feet; but from the loins only eight feet two inches; a difference which proceeds partly from the length of the ſhoulder-blades, which are two feet long, and partly from a ſharp proceſs of the firſt

1776. January. vertebra of the back, which projects above a foot beyond the reſt. From the breaſt to the ground it meaſures five feet and a half; the neck, which is decorated with a mane like that of the zebra, is ſix feet long, and conſequently twice the length of the camel's; the head is above two feet in length, and ſomewhat reſembles the head of a ſheep; the upper lip is rather larger and thicker than the under, but both of them are covered with ſtiff hairs; the eyes of this creature are large and beautiful; its fore teeth ſmall, and eight in number, and are only to be found in the lower jaw, though the animal has ſix grinders on both ſides of each jaw. Directly before the horns there is a knob, which proceeds from an elevation of part of the cranium, and projects two inches above the ſurface; and behind them, or in the crag of the neck, there are two ſmaller ones, which are formed by the ſubjacent glands; the horns are ſeven inches long, i. e. a little ſhorter than the ears; they rather incline backwards, and are a little broader and rounded off at the ends, where they are encircled with long hairs, which reach beyond the horny part, forming a tuft. In fine, the horns are covered, like thoſe of other animals, with a cutaneous and hairy ſubſtance; but the interior ſubſtance of them is ſaid to reſemble the heart or boney part of the horns of gazels and oxen, and to be proceſſes of the ſcull itſelf. On the horns of this beaſt, when aged, there have been obſerved ſmall irregular elevations, which M. ALLAMAND ſuppoſes to be the ſhoots of future branches.

The colour of this beaſt is a white ground, with large reddiſh ſpots ſtanding pretty cloſe to each other; which ſpots,

ſpots, in the more aged animals, incline to a dark-brown or black, but in the others border upon the yellow. The tail is ſmall and ſlender, and is terminated by a large tuft of very coarſe and moſtly black ſetaceous hairs; the fore parts of the hoofs are much higher than the back parts. This creature has no fetlocks, as all other hoofed animals have.

This animal when it goes faſt does not limp, as ſome have imagined, but ſometimes paces, and ſometimes gallops. Every time it lifts up its fore feet it throws its neck back, which on other occaſions it holds erect; notwithſtanding this, it is by no means ſlow when purſued, as M. DE BUFFON ſuppoſes it to be, but, on the contrary, it requires a fleet horſe to hunt it.

In eating the graſs from off the ground, it ſometimes bends one of its knees, as horſes do; and in plucking leaves and ſmall branches from high trees, it brings its fore feet about a foot and a half nearer than common to the hind feet. A camelopardalis which Major Gordon wounded in the leg, ſo that it could not raiſe itſelf from the ground, nevertheleſs did not ſhew the leaſt ſigns of anger or reſentment; but when its throat was cut, ſpurned againſt the ground with a force far beyond that of any other animal. The viſcera reſembled thoſe of gazels, but this animal had no porus ceriferus. The fleſh of the young ones is very good eating, but ſometimes has a ſtrong flavour of a certain ſhrub, which is ſuppoſed to be a ſpecies of *mimoſa*. The Hottentots are particularly fond of the marrow, and chiefly for the ſake of this hunt the beaſt, and kill

1776. January. kill it with their poiſoned arrows. Of the ſkin they make veſſels, in which they keep water and other liquors.

M. DE BUFFON, who has very unadviſedly taken it into his head to declare war not only againſt LINNÆUS, but likewiſe againſt his diſciples, has, in a prolix introduction to his Diſſertation upon the camelopardalis, (*Giraffe*, Tom. XIII.) in a peculiar manner inſulted the memory of Dr. HASSELQUIST, a man whoſe merit has ſhone conſpicuous in ſeveral different ſciences. *School-boy*, *pedant*, *blunderer*, &c. are the terms, as reproachful as unmerited, in which M. DE BUFFON ſpeaks of a man, who at too early a period, alas! for the intereſts of ſcience, yet crowned with the applauſes of the literati of Europe, fell a victim to his zeal for natural hiſtory. I could ſincerely have wiſhed to have avoided this diſplay of M. DE BUFFON's ungenerous conduct, that it might not reach to the knowledge of any others (beſides thoſe who are already acquainted with the fact) in how far, on occaſion of the deſcription of the above-mentioned animal, he has forgot the language of a gentleman; but my reſpect for truth in general, and a wiſh to throw a light on my preſent ſubject, the hiſtory of animals, forbid me to be ſilent on this head.

The reſpect likewiſe which I juſtly bear to M. HASSELQUIST, on account of his merit, and a full conviction of his innocence, call upon me to defend him; and that more particularly from the reproaches he has ſuſtained for not having mentioned in his deſcription of his camelopardalis, whether the horns of this animal fall off or not. If it be a fault in Dr. HASSELQUIST not to have mentioned what he could not poſſibly ſee, and not to have deſcribed,

described, like M. DE BUFFON, in the compleatest manner, what he could not possibly know, I must then confess myself faulty on the same grounds; as, though in fact I was allowed to draw up a description of the dried head of a camelopardalis at the Cape, yet I could not obtain permission to saw in pieces or dissect the horns, as they were promised by the governor to a particular friend of his in Europe. It is much to be wished, indeed, that M. DE BUFFON had followed Dr. HASSELQUIST's example in this respect, in which case his *Natural History* would have been much shorter, much more useful and authentic; and, what would have been still better, our oxen and cows would have kept their horns on their heads in the way in which nature has ordained they should, viz. without their falling off every third year, in conformity to the ignorant assertion of M. DE BUFFON, Tom. IV. p. 459, and of the edition revised by Mr. ALLAMAND, p. 176. He there says, "Ainsi la castration ni le sexe ne changent rien à la crue & à la chute des dentes: cela ne change rien non plus a la chûte des cornes, car elles tombent egalement à trois ans au taureau, au bœuf & à la vache, & elles sont remplacées par d'autres cornes qui, comme les secondes dents, ne tombent plus; celles du bœuf & de la vache deviennent seulement plus grosses & plus longues que celles du taureau. L'accroissement de ces secondes cornes ne se fait pas d'une manière uniforme, & par un developpement égal; la premiere année, c'est à dire, la quatrieme année de l'age de bœuf, il lui pousse deux petites cornes pointues, nettes, unies, & terminées vers la tête par une espece de bourrelet, l'année suivante ce bourrelet s'eloigne de la tête, poussé par

1776. January.

1776. January.

un cylindre de corne qui ſe forme, & qui ſe termine auſſi par un autre bourrelet & ainſi de ſuite, car tant que l'animal vit les cornes croiſſent." For the ſake of ſuch perſons as have not had an opportunity of being better acquainted with M. DE BUFFON and his works, I will juſt take occaſion to obſerve, that this is the celebrated man, who, after a minute inveſtigation of every concomitant circumſtance (in conſequence of which he has likewiſe favoured us with a particular deſcription of the whole proceſs) thought himſelf authoriſed to advance, that a comet, having ſtruck againſt the ſun in its courſe, beat ſeveral pieces out of it, of which the planets were formed, and has beſides calculated the preciſe time which each of theſe celeſtial bodies reſpectively took to cool. But quite enough has been ſaid of a blunder, which the moſt illiterate cottager is able to rectify, in caſe it ſhould happen to miſlead any raw ſchool-boy, totally unacquainted with natural hiſtory. But as we are upon the ſubject of horns at preſent, I cannot help requeſting M. DE BUFFON to inform me, how the ſmalleſt elk's horns, Tom. XII. Tab. XLVI. could grow from the ſize which, at page 326, under the article *mazames*, they are ſaid to be of, (viz. not quite ſix inches long;) how theſe, I ſay, could grow ſo quickly, at page 357, 358, in the article *coudou*, to the length of two feet? if, indeed, the nice admeaſurements of M. DAUBENTON, page 377, 378, MCXCIX. M. C. C. are in every reſpect to be depended upon. Neither can I better comprehend, why Meſſrs. DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON make uſe of the ſame horns for two quite different animals; by doing which, they have induced two other zoologiſts, certainly in other re

ſpects

ſpects the greateſt and moſt accurate in Europe, in like manner to refer to horns of one and the ſame ſpecies, for two different animals; though this, indeed, is not ſo much to be wondered at, theſe gentlemen being too complaiſant to harbour ſuch a degree of miſtruſt with reſpect to the *Hiſtoire Naturelle*, as, in fact, was in this caſe neceſſary; neither could they eaſily ſuſpect ſo palpable a miſtake in this great work of Meſſrs. DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON, concerning which, however, I fear, that many people will paſs the ſame judgment, as M. DE BUFFON has done on SEBA's *theſaurus*. But I muſt write a treatiſe conſiſting of many volumes, were I to continue to diſſect M. DE BUFFON's work; I ſhall therefore content myſelf at preſent with making, as briefly as poſſible, a few remarks on the *camelopardalis* and the *viverra ichneumon*, (the *giraffe* and *mangouſt* of BUFFON,) on account of the deſcriptions of which M. HASSELQUIST has been ſo ill uſed. 1776. January.

M. DE BUFFON has not been able to point out, much leſs to demonſtrate, any blunder committed by HASSELQUIST; but why does he then blame this learned and highly deſerving *academician?* It is, indeed, aſtoniſhing, that he ſhould conſider HASSELQUIST's deſcriptions as prolix, when, in fact, the ſame animals are treated of in one and the ſame Tome of M. DE BUFFON's own writings; one of them in at leaſt twice, and the other twelve times as diffuſe a manner; notwithſtanding which, this ſame volume is ſtill farther ſwelled out with admeaſurements of the *vagina* and urethra of the rat. Is it poſſible here to refrain from enquiring, what is the uſe of all this? ſince the animal alluded to has nothing extraordinary in the proportion of this part,

1776. January.

and ſtands in no need of any aſſiſtance with reſpect to its copulation, and never has any occaſion either for the *catheter* to be applied, or to be cut for the ſtone. The very cat itſelf, an animal which every old woman has it in her power to meaſure and examine in her chimney corner, has likewiſe been obliged to undergo the moſt minute and tedious admeaſurements in the *Hiſtoire Naturelle*, though at the ſame time, on account of the beautiful engravings, which, more than any thing elſe, threw a light on this work, the learned world, according to M. DE BUFFON's own confeſſion, l. c. page 9, might have been very well ſpared theſe trifles.

M. HASSELQUIST's Latin, which M. DE BUFFON ſays is no Latin at all, is nevertheleſs perfectly good, and exactly ſuch as is required for the purpoſes of ſcience, conciſe, expreſſive, and eaſily comprehended by any one who has ſtudied the language, and may even be underſtood by any ſchool-boy that has made the leaſt progreſs in this department of learning. It is not HASSELQUIST's fault, that his deſcription as it is quoted by M. DE BUFFON, l. c. page 7 and 8, from negligence, ignorance, or malice, has been ſo badly copied from the original edition, ſo that e. g. from it may be concluded, that the animal's teeth and tongue are round, and are placed on its head together with its horns, &c. How was it poſſible for this circumſtance to eſcape the critical eyes of the great BUFFON, ſuppoſing indeed that he underſtands Latin, and, as he expreſſes it at page 15, l. c. is capable of ſeizing the genuine knowledge of nature by means of *la vue immediate de l'eſprit & coup d'oeil du genie?*

In

1776. January.

In ſhort, I am ſorry that Dr. HASSELQUIST's deſcription ſhould appear dry to M. DE BUFFON; but I cannot help thinking, that if it had been ſtuffed and ſeaſoned with unjuſt and ill-natured criticiſms, with conjectures and miſtakes, even though it had been compoſed in the French language, and in the moſt tumid and high-flown ſtyle, moſt lovers of truth and natural knowledge would have found it in the higheſt degree diſguſtful. The reader needs only compare Major GORDON's deſcription with that of Meſſrs. DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON, in order to be convinced of the inſignificancy and futility of all their tedious deductions and calculations.

Had M. DE BUFFON taken the pains to underſtand, and made uſe of HASSELQUIST's Latin deſcription, inſtead of quoting it, merely for the purpoſe of criticiſing it right or wrong, he would have known, that the head belonging to the ſkin deſcribed by M. HASSELQUIST, was four ſpans, or at leaſt two feet long; and conſequently, that the deſcriptions of OPPIAN, HELIODORUS, and STRABO, are by no means adapted, as M. DE BUFFON affirms they are, to give a tolerably juſt idea of the *camelopardalis*, or *giraffe*; for, according to theſe, a *giraffe*, of the ſize of a camel, has a head not above twice as large as that of an oſtrich: a creature which would certainly make a figure in Prince P***'s collection of monſters. (Vide BRYDONE's Tour, Vol. I. page 93.) We are, however, too well acquainted with, and have too great an eſteem for, the extenſive genius and learning of the Count DE BUFFON, in the leaſt to ſuſpect him to be of the ſame taſte; although, beſides the circumſtance above alluded to concerning the head,

1776. January. head, he terms the *camelopardalis* at one and the ſame time the handſomeſt, and, with reſpect to its legs, the moſt enormouſly diſproportionate animal in the whole creation; though other people are apt to conſider that only as beautiful which is proportionable. M. DE BUFFON might likewiſe have learnt from Dr. HASSELQUIST's accurate deſcription of this quadruped, that neither the head nor legs are ſo diſproportionate, as he imagines them to be. In fine, Major GORDON did not find this animal ſo tottering, ſlothful, and unwieldy, as it has pleaſed M. DE BUFFON, without any authority, but that of his own prolific imagination, to repreſent it in the deſcription he has given of it.

With regard to the *viverra ichneumon*, or the *mangouſt*, I ſhall only ſay, that at the Cape I had an opportunity of comparing M. HASSELQUIST's deſcription of it with the creature itſelf, and found it remarkably accurate. This ſame gentleman having obſerved in a note, that the French, when in Egypt, are accuſtomed to beſtow French names on the natural objects of which they have no knowledge, and conſequently have in all probability given the name of *rat de pharaon* to this animal; M. DE BUFFON conſiders this remark as an attack upon the French nation. But if M. DE BUFFON means by this, to excite his countrymen againſt Dr. HASSELQUIST, he muſt pardon me when I tell him, that I am too well acquainted with the generoſity and diſcernment of the French nation in general, to ſuppoſe that his deſires would be gratified. For my part, I can have no inducement on the ſcore of any national predilection to take Dr. HASSELQUIST's part againſt M. DE BUFFON, as all thoſe who are occupied in enlightening themſelves and mankind

by the promotion of ſcience, are, as being fellow-labourers, to be conſidered likewiſe as brethren and fellows of a community, in which it is neceſſary for each to aſſiſt the other in promoting the object of their common purſuit; in a word, they are countrymen and fellow-citizens of the commonwealth of literature. After all, whether there is any foundation for this obſervation of Dr. HASSELQUIST or no, in neither caſe can it in the leaſt affect the reputation of the French merchants who are uſed to viſit Egypt, whether they are ſaid to give French or Latin names to the ſubjects they ſee, or whether they take the pains to learn the Arabic, Turkiſh, or Coptic names of them; ſtill leſs could it have been M. HASSELQUIST's intention by any remarks of his, to caſt a reflection upon a whole nation. 1776. January.

To conclude, if M. DE BUFFON had read and taken the pains to underſtand M. HASSELQUIST's book, with any other view than that of criticiſing LINNÆUS and his diſciples, he might have eaſily found by it, that HASSELQUIST's manuſcripts were ſeized in Egypt after his death, being afterwards redeemed by the munificence of a great queen, and through the conſpicuous love and zeal for ſcience of the ſame exalted perſonage, were ordered to be printed in the manner mentioned in the preface; and that conſequently, the author himſelf could not put the laſt hand to his work; in which caſe, indeed, he poſſibly, either from memory or from his notes, which were loſt by his untimely death, might have added the deſcription of the interior part of the *giraffe's* horn, which M. DE BUFFON ſeems to have ſo very much at heart. Perhaps, likewiſe, M. HASSELQUIST, in order to pleaſe M. DE BUFFON, would have ſomewhat curtailed

1776. January. tailed his deſcription of the *mangouſt*; though, as I have ſaid before, it is much ſhorter than it is in the *Hiſtoire Naturelle*.

I have doubtleſs ſaid ſufficient at preſent, to convince a man of M. DE BUFFON'S great genius, that even he, with his ſuperior talents, is capable of committing blunders, and at the ſame time has in particular done great wrong to *academicians* of the higheſt merit: and that if, on the contrary, he ſhould rather ſhew that he is touched with compaſſion for their ſufferings, and is at the ſame time happy on every occaſion to vindicate their reputation when attacked, he would give manifeſt proofs of that magnanimity and candor which, in a great man, ought always to go hand in hand with his talents, and which would moſt aſſuredly add to the eſteem which every lover of literature entertains for them.

Of the *tiger-boſch-kat* I have made mention above, and had an intention of deſcribing it in this place, (together with the reſt of the African animals) from the ſkin of this creature which I brought home with me; but find that it has ſince been ſo accurately deſcribed and delineated from the live ſubject by Dr. FORSTER in the Philoſoph. Tranſact. Vol. LXXI. for the year 1781, that I can refer the reader to it with the greateſt pleaſure.

On the 21ſt of January, as I have mentioned above at page 169, we took our departure from *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*. In the afternoon we arrived at Great *Viſch-rivier*, where we again reſolved to try our luck in the purſuit of *ſea-cows*; for I was determined not to depart out of the country, before I had made as accurate an inveſtigation of this

this large, though not unknown animal, as I had of the *two-horned rhinoceros*. On our arrival at a certain ſpot upon *Viſch-rivier*, we found ſeveral farmers from the province we had juſt left, who had arrived there before us. In their company, likewiſe, came to this place a huſbandman, or, as they are uſually called here, a *corn-boor*, from the country near Cape Town. When we firſt ſaw him he was ſleeping under a ſhady tree, by the ſide of a perfect beauty, who was clad in a light ſummer dreſs: no wonder then, that ſo uncommon and romantic a ſcene appearing on a ſudden in a deſert, ſhould immediately chaſe away all thoſe images of deſolation and wild horror, which the ſavage and dreary aſpect of theſe plains had begun once more to excite in mine and my friend's imagination: and I would not anſwer for him, that he would not ſoon have forgot all his botany, had he ſuffered himſelf any longer to be carried away, by the firſt delightful and charming impreſſions made on him by the contemplation of ſo perfect a production in the chief of the three kingdoms of nature. On our entering into converſation with them, our voluptuous corn-boor and his beautiful ſpouſe informed us, that they had juſt been to pay a viſit to their relations at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, where having experienced for the ſpace of ſix months the ſweets of the eaſe and convenience attending a paſtoral life, when compared with the drudgery of that of the huſbandman and wine-dreſſer, they had given up all thoughts of their former buſineſs, ſo that they intended to ſell their vineyard and corn-farm near the Cape, and to look out for ſome ſpot in theſe parts, proper to carry on the grazing buſineſs. Our converſation on this ſubject was now in- 1776. January.

1776. January. terrupted by the arrival of another farmer and a little boy of their party, who informed us, that ſome wild beaſt, probably a tiger, had juſt before come upon one of the hounds by ſtealth, and torn it to pieces, while it was drinking out of the river, on the very ſpot where our informer told us he had juſt been laying down for an afternoon's nap, having riſen from it only half a minute before. They, as well as we, had only heard the dog give one ſingle ſqueak; after which it was found quite dead. So that in all probability the wild beaſt had, previouſly to this, lain in wait for the little boy, in order (as they ſaid) purſuant to its uſual cuſtom, to kill him in a ſly inſidious manner, and then, after a ſhort interval, to return and carry him off.

In the mean while, this incident put us all inſtantly into an alarm, and occaſioned us to take to our arms in order to revenge ourſelves. Accordingly, ſeveral couple of hounds were put upon the ſcent in a thicket cloſe by the river ſide, where the wild beaſt ſtill lay concealed, while we poſted ourſelves round about. The hounds, which followed the ſcent with great eagerneſs, ſoon drove the tiger out, and that only forty or fifty paces from our beſt ſhot, a little old farmer, who ſhot him flying, as it were, while he was ſpringing from the ground. The ball was found afterwards to have entered at the upper edge of the *anus*, and to have made its way through the whole length of the body, till at laſt it came out at the animal's mouth; as a great part of the palate was miſſing, and the remainder of it, cloſe by the fore teeth, was bloody, without theſe latter, however, being damaged in the leaſt. I do not know whether this can be explained from

1776. January.

from any particular poſition of the animal, or rather from the circumſtance of the ball, in conſequence of the reſiſtance it met with, having gone out of the right line. On the body of this wild beaſt we found a little *hippoboſca*, totally unknown to naturaliſts, which they told me was uſually met with on the carcaſſes of tigers. They likewiſe informed me, that a peculiar ſort of fly, much larger than this, in all probability likewiſe of the *hippoboſca* kind, ſubſiſted on the body of the lion.

The animals which I and the coloniſts in this part of Africa call tigers, are of that kind which are repreſented in Tab. XI. XII. and XIV. Tom. IX. of M. DE BUFFON's work, under the denomination of *panthers* and *leopards*. At the Cape I have likewiſe ſeen ſeveral ſkins of the *cuncæ* of M. DE BUFFON, which, by ſome of the coloniſts, was diſtinguiſhed from the former by the name of *leopard*, and was ſaid to live chiefly in the mountains, and to be leſs common, bold and daring, though more treacherous and deceitful, than the animal uſually called tiger at the Cape, or the *panther* of M. DE BUFFON: to which, however, it is equal in point of ſize, though the ſkin is not ſo beautiful, nor ſo much coveted, as it is more ſhaggy, and covered with longer hairs, neither is it ſo much ſpotted nor ſo gloſſy.

Both theſe ſorts, when they happen to come in the way of ſix or eight hounds of the common ſort, which, in fact, are uſed by the coloniſts for this purpoſe, are eaſily caught, or elſe torn in pieces by them. I ſaw at one farmer's only at *Gantze-craal*, about fourteen or fifteen furs of tigers, as they are called, which were ſaid to have been taken and

1776. January. killed within the ſpace of three years, by the common dogs belonging to the farm; now and then, however, a dog or two had loſt their lives in the conflict, or elſe had been very much wounded.

I was told, that a ſlave who looked after his maſter's cattle, had been attacked unawares and by ſtealth on the plains between *Tiger-mountain* and the *Cape*, by a tiger, with which he had long ſtruggled and rolled about upon the ground: at length, however, the tiger was overpowered by the ſlave, who, notwithſtanding the dangerous wounds he had received, recovered. This, though bordering on the marvellous, is not abſolutely incredible; for when revenge, or the dread of inſtant death, is added to a man's natural ſtrength and vigour, he is almoſt capable of performing ſupernatural things. I recollect, moreover, to have read, in JONSTON's *Thaumatographia Naturalis*, that a man of the name of POLYDAMAS, was able, unarmed, to kill a lion. The tiger, however, that we ſhot at this place, ſeemed to me to be rather dangerous to grapple with. It was thought to be old and about the uſual ſize. I cannot find in my note-book, whether I had taken any notes of the meaſure; but I think I remember that the beaſt was two feet high, but much longer in proportion than a dog of the ſame height.

Very early in the afternoon, the hunting party abovementioned went away, and about an hour before dark there arrived a hord of *Caffres*. They had got within three hundred paces of us, before we diſcovered them, being to the number of about one hundred, all men, and each of them armed with a few *haſſagais*, or a couple of *kirries*. They marched,

marched, moreover, directly on towards our waggon, not with the careleſs gait of ordinary travellers, but with meaſured ſteps, as it were; and, in ſhort, with an almoſt affected pride and ſtatelineſs in their deportment, as they approached nearer to us. Upon the whole, we could not well have received a viſit on this ſpot more unexpected, nor of a more alarming nature; indeed, it occaſioned a viſible conſternation in ſeveral of my Hottentots, at the ſame time that it puzzled my friend and me, to think in what manner we ſhould receive this nation ſo on a ſudden, ſo as to avoid ſharing the unhappy fate which, as I have already mentioned before, at page 154 of this volume, attended HEUPPENAER and his ſuit. In caſe of an attack, my Hottentots were too few in number, and too cowardly to be depended upon; ſuch of them as were of the Boſhies-man's race, and had come with us from *Zondags-rivier*, would probably have aſſiſted in plundering our waggon, had they found a convenient opportunity; and who knows, whether they were not in ſecret intelligence with the Boſhies-men, who were at this time in the ſervice of the Caffres, and belonged to their party. They had long preſſed me to leave *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*. At leaſt I had hints given me afterwards, that this viſit of the Caffres was not accidental, but was paid me in conſequence of ſome intelligence given them by certain Hottentots at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*. However, I had not then time to go into ſuch deep ſpeculations on the ſubject, being entirely occupied by the apprehenſion, leſt the party under my command, by the ſmalleſt appearance of cowardice or a diſpoſition to mutiny, ſhould call forth the uſual enterpriſing ſpirit of the *Caffres*. I was very ſenſible that my friend

1776. January.

1776. January.

friend and I, mounted on our horſes, would have been a match for them, in like manner as the two men were who revenged HEUPPENAER's death; but in this caſe, we had not a moment to loſe, much leſs had we any ſpare time to fetch our horſes from paſture. I therefore reſolved inſtantly to carry matters with as high a hand as it was poſſible for me to aſſume in the ſituation we were in, eſpecially as I knew from experience, that by this means the Indians might ſometimes be kept in awe juſt like children. Accordingly, I began with my own *Hottentots*, threatening with the moſt terrible Dutch oaths my memory furniſhed me with, to ſhoot the firſt man through the head, who ſhould ſtir a foot without leave, or once open his mouth to the Caffres; or, in fine, ſhould not, at the ſmalleſt nod, perform what I might think fit to command. My companion, on his part, taking a handful of bullets, put them into a loaded gun of an uncommon length which he had brought with him; in the mean time frequently addreſſing himſelf to me, and making it out to be a very eaſy matter (and of the feaſibility of which there could be no doubt) to kill with it the whole body of Caffres at a ſingle ſhot, in caſe they ſhould offer to behave in a hoſtile manner; and at the ſame time, in order to give ſome probability to this gaſconade, did not omit to practiſe a few manœuvres in the true legerdemain ſtyle. While Mr. IMMELMAN was thus with his long gun, beyond all doubt, making a tremendous figure in the eyes of the Caffres, and I was likewiſe armed with my gun, and the fierceſt mien I could poſſibly muſter up, they came towards us wedged up, as it were, into a cloſe body, with three leaders in their

their front. A Hottentot interpreter in one of the wings, seemed just going to open with a long harangue; when I put a sudden stop to his sublime oratory, by accosting him with a few rough compliments in the Swedish language, and turning my back upon him. 1776. January.

This haughty and uncivil reception, which would only have served to irritate any other than Hottentots and Caffres, on the contrary, from the very beginning, abased their pride, so that they stood like a parcel of orderly, or rather intimidated, school-boys, and waited for my questioning them; upon which we, in quality of the principal sons of the company, ordered our interpreter to ask them what nation they were of? Whence they came? and whither they were going? For the purpose of making this examination, I called out JAN SKEPER, the most alert and intelligent of all my Hottentots, and had the satisfaction to see him fly to me like a flash of lightning; a proof of his obedience, which, indeed, was at this time very agreeable to me; as it was requisite in order to excite in the Caffres a high opinion of our authority and power: but the still higher ideas, and even dread which he had conceived of this nation, put his whole body into a tremor, so that even his teeth chattered in such a manner, that he could not utter a word. This unlooked for cowardly behaviour, threatened to spoil my whole plan; for which reason, both from indignation, and in order to disguise the reason of his trembling, I threatened him very hard, and accosted him in the roughest manner. I am not certain, however, whether the Caffres were not more sharp-sighted than I wished them to be;

1776. January. however that be, ſome of them fixed their eyes upon him and laughed.

Whenever the interpreter of the Caffres offered, which he did ſeveral times, to enter into a private converſation with my Hottentot, I conſtantly took care to prevent it. In fine, the account they gave of themſelves was, "that they were Caffres from *Konaps-rivier*, and were come hither merely with a view of meeting with us, and to ſee whether we had brought with us a great deal of iron and copper to exchange for their cattle; for they knew from report, that we were come from a great diſtance, and had long reſided in theſe plains."

In the mean while, this propoſition of theirs with reſpect to the traffic and cattle, appeared to me extremely ſuſpicious, inaſmuch as I could not at that time perceive that they had brought any live ſtock along with them; and thoſe which their herdſmen and boys brought to this place afterwards, conſiſted merely in a few milch cows and young ſteers, upon which they ſet an amazing high price, and in all probability, intended them for their own ſupport during their march.

In order to prevent their ſitting down without being previouſly aſked, I told them without delay by means of the interpreters, that they had my leave to ſit down, whilſt I gave my anſwer on the ſubject of their propoſed commerce. Accordingly they ſat themſelves down in the ſame order as they came, viz. the three Chiefs in front of the reſt. I aſked, nevertheleſs, how many of them were captains or commanders; and the three foremoſt being mentioned

tioned by name as ſuch, I gave each of them a good piece of tobacco; telling them, at the ſame time, that this was the way the company's ſons choſe to receive their friends the *Caffre captains*; but that we had already exchanged our iron and copper in theſe very plains with ſome other Caffre friends; that, however, I imagined that they had not taken their journey in vain, in caſe they called at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, where they would get enough of theſe commodities from the farmers ſettled there. 1776. January.

When they ſaw that, in order to get tobacco, nothing more was neceſſary than to be a captain, they preſented to me ſeveral others of the party, as being likewiſe *t'Ku-t'kois*, or captains, and aſked for tobacco for them; but the ſcheme not ſucceeding, they themſelves laughed heartily at the captains of their own creation. Neither did they ſhew the leaſt inclination to diſtribute to theſe pretended chiefs, any part of the preſents that had been made them. However, in order to keep the real chiefs in good humour, I likewiſe gave them afterwards a handful of dry hemp, which they accepted as a valuable preſent; and mixing it with ſome tobacco, ſmoked it with a high reliſh, while we were talking together. The pipes out of which they ſmoked, were circulated merely among the chiefs, had ſtems above four feet long, from 3-4ths of which the pith had been taken out, but by what means I am entirely ignorant. Where this hollow part of the pipe ſeemed to terminate, a bowl three inches long but very narrow, appeared to be fixed at the bottom of the ſtem, being kept firm and ſteady with a band or collar, in the ſame way as the ſtays of a maſt are in a ſhip. From the ſmall bore and ſize of this bowl, one

1776. January.

may venture to conclude, that theſe Caffres were but indifferent ſmokers compared to the Hottentots.

When they heard that we intended to hunt the *ſea-cow*, and that theſe animals were rather uncommon as well as ſhy in theſe parts, they told us, that about *Konap-river*, theſe creatures were ſeen to come up out of the river in the very middle of the day, and both to ſleep and graze in the fields there; where, in fact, for the ſake of defending themſelves from the attacks of their enemies, they were collected in as great numbers as the pebble-ſtones I actually ſaw ſcattered by the ſide of *Viſch-rivier*, on the ſpot on which we then ſtood. Though this compariſon was, it muſt be owned, in the true Oriental ſtyle, yet it is probable that theſe animals were really to be found in great numbers about the river above-mentioned; and that they were far from being ſhy, but grazed and ſlept on land in open day, as the Caffres informed us; for, in conſequence of the uncultivated ſtate in which they were, and particularly as they had not the uſe of fire-arms, theſe people muſt neceſſarily be obliged to give way to animals of ſuch ſtrength and magnitude.

When it grew dark, the Caffres ſtood up, and without any kind of order, or taking leave, went towards a large buſh, at the diſtance of a muſket-ſhot from us, where they made a great fire, near which they took up their repoſe for the night. Shortly after we heard a hideous roaring near that ſpot, and we conjectured that it proceeded from ſome beaſt they were killing. Accordingly Mr. IMMELMAN and I haſtened thither, to ſee it, and found the beaſt, which had been felled to the ground, lying on

its right ſide, with its left fore leg bound over its head; neither was any other binding or faſtening neceſſary, as the animal lay tolerably ſtill, though not yet dead; while five or ſix people ſtood by, and made ſeveral inciſions with their haſſagais into its ſtomach, which they afterwards took out through an opening they made for that purpoſe in the cheſt. I do not know whether this way of ſlaughtering beaſts is practiſed by any other nation; it certainly appeared to be a very cruel one, though while this buſineſs was diſpatching, a good deal of mirth and laughter ſeemed to paſs between thoſe who had the management of it. The whole of this operation, however, did not take up a long time, the animal's pain terminating with its life in about two minutes after the firſt inciſion had been made. Immediately after this they ſet about flaying the beaſt piece-meal, with the aſſiſtance of their haſſagais, and cutting the hide into ſlices of different forms and ſizes. Theſe were likewiſe intended to be eaten, as I afterwards learned from one of my Hottentots, who the next day got a broiled piece of it, in exchange for a little tobacco; and aſſured me, that when an ox or cow's hide was well dreſſed, viz. firſt boiled in water and then in milk, it is by no means a contemptible diſh. 1776. January.

While we were ſtanding to ſee the beaſt ſlaughtered, we took notice that all the ſpears and haſſagais, excluſive of thoſe that were uſed in killing the animal, were piled up together in the middle juſt before one of the chiefs, who was now obſerved to be very buſy in iſſuing out his orders; theſe orders being obeyed without delay by thoſe who looked after the fire. Indeed, they did not ſeem to pay the

1776. January.

leaſt regard to our being preſent: however, as it was grown very dark, we thought it moſt adviſeable not to make a long ſtay. We had ſcarcely got home, before their interpreter came along with two Caffres to borrow our porridge pot. This meſſage our Hottentots interpreted to us in a ſorrowful tone, adding, that the Caffres uſually kept what they borrowed, elſe we muſt have a (*rusje*) or diſpute with them. As our porridge pot was abſolutely a treaſure to us, and was particularly uſeful to our Hottentots, for the purpoſe of boiling and melting their fat, &c. and the Caffres probably could not have withſtood the temptation of keeping it, I thought it was as well to have a *rusje* with them at firſt as at laſt. I endeavoured to pacify them however, by a civil anſwer; and ſent them word, that if the company's ſons had two porridge pots, they would certainly lend one of them to their friends the *Caffres*; but that we were then hungry, and were going to dreſs our victuals that very night: to which I added, that ſome ſkill was requiſite in order to dreſs victuals in our pot, ſo that they might not be ſpoiled; for which reaſon, I would myſelf take care to have their meat dreſſed for them the next morning, as ſoon as ever they ſhould ſend it to my Hottentots. It is true, they ſuffered themſelves to be put off with this compliment; but we could not tell for all that, whether they might not take it in their heads to ſend a ſhower of darts in the night, before we were aware of it, through the tilt of our waggon, in the ſame manner as happened to HEUPPENAER, whoſe ſtory I have related at page 154 of this volume; on which account we fortified that part of our waggon with our ſaddles, and the ſkins of beaſts,

beaſts, and defended ourſelves on the ſides with bundles of paper, clothes, and pieces of dried rhinoceros's hides. Two guns, with their muzzles pointed in a proper poſition, were placed at each end of the waggon, ſo that we could directly, on the firſt rupture, diſcharge four pieces; moreover, in order to increaſe the alarm and terror of the enemy, we were then, as well as at the firſt arrival of the Caffres on the preceding day, prepared to throw, if neceſſary, powder-horns and large cartouches into the fire, which was about eight or nine paces diſtant from us: we were likewiſe on this occcaſion to have filled our pockets without delay with looſe gunpowder, in order to keep up from our fire-arms, a briſker, though leſs effectual fire, and a continual report, with a view to frighten the enemy at a diſtance. We conſidered our horſes and oxen too, which, according to our conſtant cuſtom, were tied to the waggon all around it, as a kind of intrenchment, having particular reaſon to expect, from the ſhyneſs of our horſes, previous notice of any attack; ſo that upon the whole we ſlept tolerably ſecure: and though, even after ſuch ample preparations for our defence, we thought ourſelves happy to eſcape being attacked by the enemy, yet ſtill we could not help wiſhing that we had been able to gratify our friends with an account of an aſſault on the part of the Caffres. 1776. January.

I cannot help thinking, however, that the inſtances we have of the deceitful diſpoſitions of the barbarians in general, and of the ſudden tranſitions which are ſometimes made by them from a ſtate of peace and tranquillity to that of rapine and ſlaughter, are ſufficient to juſtify all our ſuſpicions, and the precautions we took with reſpect to them;

1776. January. them; and I am inclined to conſider the being maſſacred by theſe fellows, as one ſpecies of the ſudden death, againſt which we are taught to pray in the Litany. I have lately been informed by a letter from Mr. IMMELMAN, dated from the Cape, 25th of March, 1781, that the *Caffres* at that time were laying waſte every thing they could meet with in the diſtricts belonging to the Chriſtians: among others PRINTSLO, my old worthy hoſt, and the firſt I had at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, had had the mortification to ſee his new houſe burnt to the ground by theſe barbarians, after having loſt his numerous herds of cattle, out of all which he had been able to ſave no more than ſix oxen. A woman, of the name of KOETSJE, had with great difficulty eſcaped the purſuit of theſe barbarians, having been obliged to leave one of her children behind her, which had been pierced through the body with ſeven haſſagais. The loſs of the Chriſtians in the article of cattle, is ſaid to amount to twenty-one thouſand; while, on the other hand, they could not meet with the third part of that number of cattle belonging to the Caffres, who, Mr. IMMELMAN tells me, were led on by the Captains MOSAN and KOBA. I cannot ſay whether it was either of theſe that paid us a viſit, as I forgot to take down their names, and therefore cannot remember them ſo as to be certain of them. Juſt after midnight it rained, with thunder and lightning.

The next morning (being the 22d) at ten o'clock, the whole party of Caffres went away without taking leave, after having, under pretence of ſelling a milch cow, tried to get a ſight of all the iron and copper which they ſuppoſed I had brought with me: however, that I might not lead

lead them into temptation, I ſhewed them nothing but plants and inſects, which I told them were the only commodities I had of any moderate value; theſe, however, I ſuppoſed they would hardly take in exchange for their cow, which we otherwiſe, on account of the ſtore we ſet by the milk, would have been glad to have bargained with them for. 1776. January.

After this they bent their courſe towards *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, and were met on the road by three farmers, viz. JACOB POTGIETER, with his ſon FLIP, and his ſon-in-law FRANS LABESKANJE, who were coming with three Hottentots, according to agreement, to ſtrengthen our party, and to enable us the better to block up and ſhoot the ſea-cows.

As the coloniſts are ſtrictly prohibited from carrying on any kind of commerce with the Hottentots and Caffres, and as beſides theſe peaſants, not without reaſon, ſuſpected the Caffre's deſigns, apprehending at the ſame time, that they would at leaſt ſtrike a terror by their arrival, in thoſe whom they left at home behind them, they at firſt endeavoured to diſſuade them in a friendly manner from going to the town; and afterwards had recourſe to threats, which ſucceeded better; aſſuring them, that in caſe they would not go their way peaceably, they would make a great havock among them with their fire-arms; which, in fact, as they were on horſeback, they might do without danger, by ſucceſſively diſpatching them in ſmall parties, in the ſame manner as I mentioned at page 143 and 154 of this volume, and of which the Caffres were not ignorant.

As

1776. January.

As to the external appearance of theſe *Caffres*, I found them not ſo tall in general as the *Gonaquas Hottentots*, and the Caffres I ſaw with that people; neither were they nearly ſo much adorned with copper and beads: they were, however, full as robuſt and manly.

While I was waiting for the arrival of the three farmers, and there was no particular natural ſubject about this ſpot that required peculiar attention, I ſet about digging in the earth after antiquities. I had before this, during my firſt reſidence near *Groote Viſch-rivier*, obſerved heaps of ſtones larger than thoſe few I had ſeen near *Krakeel-rivier*, and compoſed of ſtones equal to them in bulk. They were from three to four and four feet and a half high, and the baſes of them meaſured ſix, eight, and ten feet in diameter. They likewiſe lay ten, twenty, fifty, two hundred paces, and even farther aſunder, but conſtantly between two particular points of the compaſs, and conſequently in right lines, and thoſe always running parallel to each other.

I likewiſe found theſe heaps of ſtones in a conſiderable number, and knew from the account I had on this ſubject from the coloniſts, that they extended in this manner ſeveral days journey from this ſpot, in a northern direction, through uncultivated plains, into the *Sneeſe Vlaktens*, as they are called, where they are ſaid to be met with in a ſtill greater number of parallel lines. Theſe monuments are therefore conſidered as irrefragable proofs, that this tract of country was formerly inhabited by a race of people, who were more powerful and numerous than either the Hottentots or Caffres, whoſe ſepulchral rites, as well

well as other cuſtoms, and above all their inconceivable ſloth and idleneſs, are too well known for them to be ſuſpected of ſuch large, and, to all appearance, uſeleſs undertakings. 1776. January.

In the mean while, in order to diſcover the intention of theſe heaps of ſtones being collected together, many conjectures were formed with various degrees of probability: thus much, however, is certain, that they could not have been collected together by any other than ſlaves. But whether this was done by a people bending beneath the yoke of ſuperſtition, or elſe under that of monarchy or of an oligarchy, I ſhall not pretend to determine. In the firſt caſe it is probable, that they conceived themſelves bound to make offerings like theſe, of uſeleſs toil and trouble, to their tyrannical gods; or in the latter caſe, were compelled to pay this tribute to the pride and vanity of ſome tyrant, who even after death, for the ſake of immortalizing and procuring vain and imaginary honours for his duſt, contrived in this manner to waſte the ſtrength, and exhauſt the forces of his ſurviving ſubjects. Under the influence of which ſoever of theſe cauſes the ſtones have been accumulated, they are certainly the relicks of ſome early period, in which, whether ſmarting under the ſcourge of ſuperſtition or that of a tyrant, ſome populous nation has dwindled away to a few ſcattered herdſmen, or elſe has been degraded to the preſent race of Caffres, Hottentots, Boſhies-men, and ſavages.

In ſome few heaps of ſtones, I obſerved that the foundations only had been laid, or perhaps the ſtones had been carried off, till the remainder was level with the ſurface of

1776. January. the earth. As theſe ſeemed moſt convenient for the purpoſe of exploring the ground, Mr. IMMELMAN and I rode nearly three miles to one of them, which was in the vicinity of *Koks-craal*, in order, as I ſaid before, to ſearch after antiquities, or any relicks whatever of antient times, concerning which I was in hopes of getting information.

A bar of iron, two feet long, which we had taken with us in order to dig up bulbs and roots with it in the courſe of our journey, was the only inſtrument we had fit for our purpoſe; and we had not an opportunity of taking any more hands with us by way of aſſiſting us, than the youngeſt of our Boſhies-men, a ſtout, willing, and alert young fellow. We met, however, with impediments not to be overcome, in large ſtones piled up cloſe together, ſo that with our united ſtrength we could not get more than two feet deep into the centre of the heap, and that not without great labour and trouble; and at laſt found nothing more than ſome rotten bits of trees, and ſomething that appeared to be a piece of a bone quite mouldered away. The Hottentot who before this, induced by the tobacco which we promiſed him, had aſſiſted us, though not without ſneering us a good deal, and ridiculing us in his own language, which we did not underſtand, at laſt fairly burſt out a laughing, and began likewiſe, with an air of great indignation, and moralizing on the matter, to turn his back upon the work. To this may be added, that this diſtrict was very much noted for harbouring lions; and that our horſes, which we had turned out upon the paſtures, with their heads and legs tied together, had ſtrayed away, and were miſſing a long time before

before we could find them again among the buſhes on this dangerous ſpot. 1776. January.

In the duſk we got home to our waggon, and were not a little pleaſed with the punctuality of the three farmers before ſpoken of, who were now come, agreeably to their promiſe, to aſſiſt us in hunting the ſea-cow: though at the ſame time I was, and am ſtill exceedingly vexed at having miſſed the opportunity of exploring, in a proper manner, and with a ſufficient degree of accuracy, the heaps of ſtones occurring in theſe parts; an inveſtigation which would probably throw much light on the nature of mankind in general, and more particularly on its priſtine condition in this part of the world. There was a vague report propagated here, that a farmer had found on a ſpot near the diſtrict of Camdebo, ſome antient ſtone ruins. This ſtory I ſhall make no comment upon; yet, together with the heaps of ſtones ſo often mentioned, it forms a ſubject worthy of a particular and cloſe inveſtigation: and this could not be done by any one better than Major GORDON, who, being a member of the regency at the Cape, and a man of great genius and an inquiſitive turn of mind, would certainly have as great a claim to the gratitude of the public by his ſucceſsful labours on this ſubject, as he has already by clearing up the remarkable hiſtory of the *camelopardalis*.

Jacob Koks-craal, which I have mentioned before, and put down in my map, is a place which is in general paſſable with waggons; and from the ſituation of the mountains near it, and other circumſtances, is ſaid to be the key, as it were, to the northern part of Africa. It is reported

1776. January. to have obtained the name it now bears from the circumſtance of JACOB KOK, my friend at *Zeekoe-rivier*, who, with ſeveral others, had intended to make a long journey a great way up the country, having been detained for ſeveral months by an unuſual flooding of the water; which indeed was ſo great, that the force of the ſtream even prevented them in their attempts to croſs it on a float of wood. On this, as well as on the preceding night, we had thunder and rain.

On the next morning, being the 23d, we ſet off from hence, in order to go to another part of the river. This day I for the firſt time perceived that my lazy Boſhies-men run faſter and hold it out longer, than I ſhould otherwiſe ever have ſuppoſed. The farmers, who had lately joined our party, and who were better appriſed of this circumſtance than we, as well as of what was to be expected from theſe gentry, obliged ſome of them to carry our arms, and at the ſame time follow as faſt as we rode; our pace in general being an ordinary trot, which we now and then changed to a gallop, for ſeveral hours together, over different kinds of ground. Once or twice, indeed, we made a little ſtop; but twice at other times, having taken our arms from them and carried them ourſelves, we went the faſter, by which means we ſoon got ſomewhat a-head of them, but did not wait long before they came up to us. In ſhort, I found then, as well as afterwards, that even the oldeſt of theſe fellows would run about twenty miles in the ſpace of three or four hours, without appearing to be extremely fatigued by it. The farmers moreover aſſured me, that they knew of Boſhies-men, who could hold out in

in this manner all day long; and had, by this means, ran down, and with their own hands deſtroyed, many elks or hart-beeſts, eſpecially when theſe creatures had been previouſly wounded. Indeed, moſt of the people belonging to this nation are obliged, for their ſupport, to acquire this ſwiftneſs of foot; to which, beſides their manner of life, and their education from their infancy, cannot but diſpoſe them. 1776. January.

Towards evening, after having loſt our way ſeveral times, we came by a number of by-roads to a pit in the river, which our new guides, the farmers, knew uſed to be frequented by ſea-cows. For this reaſon, all the different ways, by which theſe animals might come up from the river, were beſet by us ſeparately, our hunting-party conſiſting in the whole of ſeven perſons; viz. five of us Chriſtians, together with my Hottentot and another belonging to the farmers. Beſides this, the reſt of the Hottentots were ordered to go to the windward and to the more open places, and by ſmacking their whips and making other noiſes, to frighten and drive the animal towards us, as ſoon as it ſhould make its appearance: in conſequence of which meaſures it appeared to us, that, when at length obliged to go on ſhore in queſt of its food, it muſt neceſſarily come to the hiding-place of ſome one of the hunters. Every one of theſe places were juſt at the edge of the river, between the reeds which grew on the dry parts of the river, or on thoſe ſpots which the water had left, and at the ſame time cloſe to the very narrow paths which the animal had made for itſelf at each place: in conſequence of which diſpoſition, it would inevitably paſs not above ſix inches, or a foot at moſt, from the mouth of the ſportſman's piece. Conſequently our whole dependence

was

1776. January.

was upon two circumſtances, viz. that our guns ſhould not miſs fire, and that the ſhot ſhould not fail to prove mortal. In the former caſe, the ſportſman muſt have inevitably paid for his temerity with his life; though in the latter he had reaſon to hope, from inſtances of what had happened to others, that the fire, together with the report from the piece, as well as the ball itſelf, would confuſe the animal, ſo as to prevent it from immediately making towards its enemy.

The banks of the pit, which we then beſet, were in moſt places ſteep and perpendicular, and the pit itſelf was almoſt three quarters of a mile long: but my poſt, and that of my fellow-traveller, happened to be at the diſtance of not above thirty or forty paces from each other. To theſe very places too, after we had waited at them an hour and a half, in the moſt profound ſilence, the enormous animals did not fail to reſort. They had already, while on the other ſide of the river, got ſcent of the Hottentots, and now ſhewed by their ſwimming up and down and blowing themſelves, as well as by a ſhort but acute and piercing grunt, or neighing noiſe, that they had a great ſuſpicion of theſe paſſes. I believe Mr. IMMELMAN was not leſs eager and anxious than myſelf, each of us expecting every moment to have a bout with a huge enormous beaſt, which we knew had given certain proofs of its being able to bite a man aſunder. Yet were we each of us at times no leſs fearful, leſt the other ſhould have the honour of killing game of ſuch conſequence. The *hippopotamus*, however, left us, and had made its appearance in the ſame manner, where the farmers were ſtationed; notwithſtanding which,

at that very inſtant we heard it ſhot at by one of the Hottentots. 1776. January.

The ſable darkneſs of the night, and the glittering of the Hottentot's piece, together with the loudneſs of the report from it, occaſioned by the weight of the charge, and the vibrations of the echo prolonging the ſound along the neighbouring chain of mountains, all conſpired to compoſe a moſt awful and ſuperb ſpectacle, which was ſtill heightened by the expectation of ſeeing an animal fall ſuperior in bulk to the elephant. This ſublime ſpectacle was immediately followed by a ridiculous kind of farce performed by a troop of baboons, which, from their calling and anſwering each other along a ſtrait line, we could diſcover to be encamped on a ſteep rocky mountain in the neighbourhood, with regular out-poſts in the trees on each ſide of it. After an interval of a couple of minutes, ſilence again took place till two o'clock, when the other Hottentot fired his piece, and another alarm, though of ſhorter duration, went through the baboons out-poſts and head-quarters.

The next morning, for the arrival of which we ardently longed, in order to ſatisfy our curioſity, our Hottentot ſportſmen related to us the following particulars concerning the adventures of the night. Involved in darkneſs, covered up to the eyes in reeds, and overſhadowed with branches of trees, they could only get a glimpſe of the animal, and conſequently could not anſwer for their ſhots having taken place: and one of them acknowledged, that he was a little confuſed, as he could not well ſee what he was about; and for the ſame reaſon fired his piece too ſoon, before the animal had well riſen out of the water;

1776. January. water; the other, indeed, had had an opportunity, both with the ball and ſhot that made up the charge, of wounding the animal, which went on its road and paſſed directly by him; but he could not ſee which part of the animal preſented itſelf before the muzzle of his piece. As ſoon as he had fired, he ſlank away, and directly afterwards heard the beaſt take to the water. The reſt of the Hottentots had obſerved one of theſe animals, probably a different one from this, run up on a ſhallow along the river ſide, and thus make its eſcape, without their having been able to prevent it. After this we ſtaid here till the afternoon, in hopes that the wounded animals would die and riſe to the top of the water, but we ſtaid in vain; and to as little purpoſe would it probably have been, had we waited ſtill longer, as there grew by the ſide of the river a great number of trees, to the roots of which theſe creatures, it is ſaid, in the agonies of death, make themſelves faſt, by means of their long and crooked tuſks. On the other hand, ſuppoſing theſe two ſea-cows to be but ſlightly wounded, they would be cautious how they made their appearance; and, indeed, in all probability, it would have been a dangerous ſervice to the ſportſmen who ſhould have ventured to have followed them any farther. Beſides, the water had now, in the ſpace of a few hours, riſen conſiderably, and had overflowed many ſpots fit for lying in ambuſh; for which reaſon we departed to another hippopotamus-pit, leſs than this. Here too we laid, by way of ſnare, a large blunderbuſs, which the farmers had brought with them for that purpoſe; the Hottentots occupied one poſt, Mr. IMMELMAN and LABESCANJE guarded another;

1776. January.

another; the oldeſt of the farmers, POTGIETER, with his ſon FLIP, ſtationed themſelves at the third, and placed me in the middle of them. Juſt in this part, the banks of the river were of a conſiderable height, and the river itſelf was dried up, near an extenſive ſhallow, where it was ſpread out into a little plain covered with pebble-ſtones and gravel. We three then ſet ourſelves down cloſe by the ſide of each other, in a path made by the ſea-cows, making ourſelves pretty certain, as the place was flat, and conſequently it was light here, of being able, if any hippopotamus ſhould chance to come upon the ſhallow and look about it, to ſee it plain enough to kill it, with a volley of three ſhot. But, to the great endangering of our lives, we, on a ſudden, found the animal much quicker in its motions, as well as bolder than we had thought it: for while I was ſitting half aſleep and moralizing on the ſubject, ſtruck with the conſideration, that we, with our guns, had at that preſent moment the dominion over Job's *Leviathan* or *Behemoth*, while on the other hand, the flies, or ſmall muſquitos, had the dominion over us, (ſo much, indeed, that I was obliged to wrap my face up in a handkerchief,) a ſea-cow came ruſhing upon us out of the river, with a hideous cry, as ſwift as an arrow out of a bow; at the ſame time, I heard the farmer call out, "*Heer Jeſus!*" but fortunately at the very inſtant he diſcharged his piece, which flaſhing full in the animal's face, contributed, perhaps, more than the ball, to make it ſtart back; when ſetting up another cry, it threw itſelf into the water again with as great precipitation as it came out.

1776. January.

At this I was not a little alarmed; yet, what is very ſingular, not at the danger, which was real, of being trampled under foot, or being bitten aſunder by the beaſt, but in conſequence of my apprehenſions, which were merely imaginary, of being drowned: for the rattling noiſe, ariſing from the creature's running out of the water and along the ſtoney beech, immediately ſuggeſted to me the idea, that the river had on a ſudden overflowed its banks: a ſuppoſition to which I was the more inclined, as I knew that this accident happens more frequently here than at *Gauritz-rivier*, (for an account of which I muſt refer the reader to Vol. I. page 254:) and as the *hippopotamus*, when it is newly come up out of the water, and is wet and ſlimy, is ſaid to gliſten in the moon-ſhine like a fiſh, it is no wonder, that as ſoon as I took my handkerchief from before my eyes, it ſhould appear to me, at ſo near a view as I had of it, like a high column of water, which ſeemed to threaten to carry us off and drown us in a moment: for which reaſon, I ran, or rather flew towards the higher ground, leaving both my guns and my brother ſentinels behind me; but, as juſt at this ſpot, I was prevented by the ſteepneſs of the river's banks from aſcending the heights, and nevertheleſs perceived that neither my companions nor myſelf were drowned, it ran in my head, for the ſpace of ſeveral ſeconds, that we were all of us either dreaming or delirious. The farmer's ſon had fallen aſleep, and ſtill continued to ſleep very ſoundly: as to the farmer himſelf, who, panting and breathleſs, every now and then looked up to heaven, and at the ſame time, with much aukwardneſs and buſtle, was endeavouring to make

make his eſcape, I made all the haſte I could to diſengage him from a large wrapper, which, as well on account of his gout as by way of keeping off the flies, he had wrapped round his legs. I then aſked him what courſe the water had taken when it overflowed; and he, after a long pauſe, anſwered only by aſking me in his turn, if I was not mad; upon which I was almoſt ready to put the ſame queſtion to myſelf: and even at laſt, when all this was unriddled to me, could not help doubting of the truth of it, till I found the farmer's gun was really diſcharged; for the rattling among the ſtones and the ſquaſhing in the water, occaſioned by the ſea-cow, was what I firſt heard, and what made me take to my legs; ſo that I did not attend in the leaſt either to the report of the gun or the cry of the animal, though theſe latter appeared to the reſt of our party the moſt terrible; ſo much, indeed, that they occaſioned Mr. IMMELMAN, together with the farmer's ſon-in-law, to fly from their poſt, though they had ſeen nothing of all that had happened, and could not eaſily have come to any harm. 1776. January.

We concluded the chaſe, and ſpent the remainder of the night in laughing at each other; in chattering and forming various conjectures on the ſubject of the precipitation and impetuous fury of the ſea-cow, which, however, was probably as much alarmed and frightened as we ourſelves could poſſibly be: we even ſmoked a couple of pipes, while we liſtened to the roaring of the lion, and waited for the approach of the morning. Several Hottentots then told us, that ſoon after the noiſe and tumult we have been deſcribing had ceaſed, they had ſeen a ſea-cow, making its

1776. January. way out of the river towards that ſide of it which was unguarded.

On the 25th, from ſome traces of the ſea-cows which we found in the duſt near another ſpot, we concluded that many of theſe huge amphibious animals had lately taken up their quarters in a certain pit thereabouts, which we accordingly prepared to lay ſiege to in every poſſible way.

In the mean time, we ſaw a yonng lion make its eſcape into a cloſe thicket, on the ſide of this ſame pit, where it might be perfectly ſafe from us and our hounds. Not much approving of this animal's being ſo near a neighbour to us, we thought it beſt for ſeveral of us markſmen to be together at each hiding-place; at the ſame time ordering our Hottentots, partly by making a noiſe and uproar, and partly by the means of making large fires, to frighten the ſea-cows from attempting any of the other paſſes.

Theſe animals had probably been beſet in the ſame manner ſeveral times before, as this night we ſcarcely heard any thing of them. In the mean while, however, we flattered ourſelves, that by continuing to block them up, we ſhould at leaſt by ſtarving them, force them to quit their aſylum, and expoſe themſelves on the land to the fire of our guns.

On the 26th likewiſe, we were on the look-out after theſe animals, between the hours of ten and eleven in the forenoon, and alſo juſt before duſk, though upon a quite different plan from what we had before, as we meant now to hit them on their ſnouts the inſtant they ſhould ſtick them up within the reach of our guns out of the water, in order to take breath, or more properly, (as

it is not unaptly called by the coloniſts) to blow themſelves. In order that the ſhot might prove mortal, we were obliged, however, on this occaſion, to direct it in ſuch a manner, that the ball ſhould paſs through the cavity of the noſe into the brain. It was merely upon this plan, that we went out after the ſea-cows, before we arrived at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, and were ſtrengthened by the farmer's party. But we conſtantly found theſe animals too ſhy, to allow us to put our deſigns in execution: for although in thoſe places where they had not been frightened or wounded, they will often in the middle of the day raiſe their heads and part of their bodies above the ſurface of the water, they at this time ſcarcely ventured juſt to put one of their noſtrils only out of it, in order to breathe almoſt imperceptibly; and this only for the moſt part, in thoſe ſpots in which they were ſheltered from us by the hanging branches of trees. Notwithſtanding this diſadvantageous ſituation, in conſequence of the acuteneſs of their ſmell, they ſeemed ſtill to diſcern us, eſpecially when we were to the windward of them; as in that caſe they inſtantly withdrew to another part. 1776. January.

The ſame night, we betook ourſelves again to our poſts; and in the duſk of the evening, I ſaw a little animal, which probably was an otter, ſtick its head up out of the water and blow itſelf a little, ſuffering itſelf for a few moments to be borne away by the current.

At half an hour after eight, it being already very dark, a ſea-cow began at intervals to put its head up above the water, and utter a ſharp, piercing, and, as it were, a very angry cry, which ſeemed to be between grunting and neighing. Perhaps this cry may be beſt expreſſed by the words,

hëurkh

1776. January. *këurkh hurkh, huh-huh:* the two firſt being uttered ſlowly, in a hoarſe but ſharp and tremulous ſound, reſembling the grunting of other animals; while the third, or compound word, is ſounded extremely quick, and is not unlike the neighing of a horſe. It is true, it is impoſſible to expreſs theſe inarticulate ſounds in writing; but, perhaps, one may make nearer approaches to it, than one can to the gutturo-palatial ſounds of the Hottentot language.

At eleven o'clock came the ſame, or elſe ſome other *hippopotamus*, and in like manner viſited the poſts we occupied; he did not, however, dare to come up, though to our extreme mortification we heard him come and nibble the boughs which hung over the ſurface of the water, as well as a little graſs and a few low ſhrubs which grew here and there on the inſide of the river's banks. We were, however, in hopes, that this way of living would not long ſuffice animals, one of which only required almoſt a larger portion than a whole team of oxen. Thus far at leaſt is certain, that if one ſhould calculate the conſumption of proviſions made by a ſea-cow, from the ſize of its fauces, and from that of its body and of its belly, which hangs almoſt down to the ground, together with the quantity of graſs which I have at different times obſerved to have been conſumed by one of theſe animals in ſpots, whither it has come over night to graze, the amount would appear almoſt incredible.

On the 27th day, we met with the misfortune of one of our Hottentots having heedleſsly hit the muzzle of his gun againſt a rock, ſo that it went off and ſhot him through the foot, at the ſame time wounding ſeveral others in the legs

legs with the ſhivers of the ball (a compoſition of lead and tin) which was ſplit in pieces againſt a rock. As proviſions were now ſcarce with us, we were obliged in the day-time to ride a good way round about the neighbourhood in ſearch of game. Excluſively of our having had an opportunity of giving chaſe, *en paſſant*, though without ſucceſs, to a *lion* and a *hyæna*, we had the good luck to catch a young wood-pig, and to ſhoot a hart-beeſt; but our Hottentots going only two hours afterwards to fetch off the fleſh of the latter, the eagles had already conſumed the major part of it. In the afternoon it thundered, and we paſſed the following night at the ſame poſts as we occupied on the night preceding, the ſea-cows acting much in the ſame manner as before. 1776. January.

On the 28th, after ſun-riſe, juſt as we were thinking of going from our poſts home to our waggons, there comes a female hippopotamus with her calf, from ſome other pit or river, to take up her quarters in that which we were then blockading. While ſhe was waiting at a rather ſteep part of the river's banks, and looking back after her calf, which was lame, and conſequently came on but ſlowly, ſhe received a ſhot in her ſide, upon which ſhe directly plunged into the river, but was not mortally wounded; for FLIP, the drowſieſt of all ſublunary beings, who had ſhot her, and that inſtant could hardly be awakened by two Hottentots, was ſtill half aſleep when he fired his piece; and happy was it for him, that the enormous beaſt did not make towards his hiding, or rather ſleeping-place, and ſend him into the other world to ſleep for ever. In the mean while his ſhot was ſo far of ſervice, that one of my

1776. January. my Hottentots ventured to ſeize the calf and hold it faſt by its hind legs, till the reſt of the hunting party came to his aſſiſtance. Upon which the calf was faſt bound, and with the greateſt joy borne in triumph to our waggons; though while they were taking it over a ſhallow near the river, the Hottentots were very much alarmed, leſt the wounded mother and the other ſea-cows, ſhould be induced by the cries of the calf to come to its reſcue; the creature, as long as it was bound, making a noiſe a good deal like a hog that is going to be killed, or has got faſt between two poſts. The ſound, however, proceeding from the hippopotamus calf, was more ſhrill and harſh. It ſhowed likewiſe a conſiderable ſhare of ſtrength in the attempt it made to get looſe, and was found to be quite unmanageable and unwieldy; the length of it being already three feet and a half, and the height two feet; though the Hottentots ſuppoſed it to be no more than a fortnight, or at moſt three weeks old. When at laſt it was turned looſe, it ceaſed crying; and when the Hottentots had paſſed their hands ſeveral times over its noſe, in order to accuſtom it to their effluvia, began directly to take to them.

While the calf was yet alive, I made a drawing of it, a copy of which may be ſeen in the Swediſh Tranſactions for 1778, and likewiſe in Plate IV. of this volume. After this it was killed, diſſected, and eaten up in leſs than three hours time. The reaſon of this quick diſpatch was partly the warmth of the weather, and partly our being in abſolute want of any other freſh proviſions. The dried ſkin, which I brought home with me, is of the thickneſs of the ſole of a thin ſhoe, and at the ſame time was very ſtiff.

Not-

1776. January.

Notwithſtanding theſe diſadvantages, I have had it ſtuffed for the cabinet of the Royal Academy, ſo as to bear a tolerable reſemblance to the living animal, excepting that the belly could not be ſufficiently diſtended. On this account, the drawing given by M. ALLAMAND from a ſtuffed hippopotamus's calf, and afterwards copied in M. DE BUFFON's Supplement, could not but be incomplete, in reſpect that it is too lean, and the toes or hoofs too far diſtant from each other. The eyes, moreover, are made too large, and juſt the ſame may doubtleſs be ſaid of the figures given of the adult hippopotamus in the ſame place. We found the fleſh and fat of this calf, as flabby as one might have expected from its want of age, and conſequently not near ſo good as that of the old *ſea-cows*; of which I found the fleſh tender, and the fat of a taſte like marrow, or at leaſt not ſo greaſy and ſtrong as other fat. It is for this reaſon, likewiſe, that the coloniſts look upon the fleſh and fat of the ſea-cow, as the wholeſomeſt meat that can be eaten; the gelatinous part of the feet in particular, when properly dreſſed, being accounted a great delicacy. The dried tongues of theſe animals are alſo conſidered, even at the Cape, as a rare and ſavory diſh. On my return to Sweden, I had the honour to furniſh his Majeſty's table with a dried ſea-cow's tongue, two feet and eight inches long. With reſpect to form, the tongue of a full-grown hippopotamus is very blunt at the tip, and is, in fact, broadeſt at that part; if, at the ſame time, it is ſlanted off towards one ſide, and marked with *lobes*, as I was informed it is, this circumſtance may, perhaps, proceed from the friction it ſuffers againſt the teeth, towards the ſide on which the

1776. January.

animal chiefly chews; at leaſt ſome traces of this oblique form were diſcoverable on the dried tongue I am ſpeaking of.

On the ſkin of the hippopotamus calf which I had ſtuffed for the Royal Academy, there are ſome ſtiff reddiſh-brown hairs, from a quarter to half an inch long, ſome on the inſide of the ears, and others about the noſe and the back part of the neck; but they grow ſo ſcattered and thin, as to be at the diſtance of 1-8th, or even half an inch from each other. There are alſo hairs upon the back like the former, excepting that they are ſtill more thinly ſcattered and ſhorter; theſe were longeſt on the edges of the tail, as I formerly obſerved in the deſcription I gave of this animal in the Swediſh Tranſactions, though they have ſince fallen off during the ſtuffing of the animal. The reſt of the hide is quite bare of hairs. The tail itſelf is flattened at the ſides, and conſequently the edges or ſharp parts of it look upwards and downwards, as in the tail of the rhinoceros.

The tuſks, or canine teeth are to be ſeen on the calf here deſcribed, already grown to the length of half an inch; but thoſe of the large ſea-cows weigh, according to KOLBE, ten pounds. An aſſertion which is, however, criticized by M. DE LA CAILLE, at page 349, who aſſerts, that they ſcarcely weigh three pounds. M. DE BUFFON again, Tom. XII. page 38, ſays, that the weight of one of the grinders exceeds three pounds, and that the tuſks are each of them from twelve to ſixteen inches in length, and weigh twelve or thirteen pounds. On the other hand, though I have actually had an opportunity of ſeeing a great many very large ſea-cow-teeth, yet I find that one of the

the largeſt ſize which I had brought home with me and preſented to the Royal Academy of Sciences, weighs no more than ſix pounds nine ounces, and is twenty-ſeven inches long, meaſured along the inſide of its curve; and conſequently about twice the length, and at the ſame time not half the weight of that mentioned by M. DE BUFFON. It is therefore to be hoped, that this illuſtrious author will excuſe my preſumption in doubting the accuracy of his account, eſpecially as M. DAUBENTON himſelf, at page 62 of the ſame tome, makes the length of a canine tooth of the hippopotamus to be twenty-ſix inches, and conſequently twice as long as it is affirmed to be by M. DE BUFFON. I have not yet weighed a grinder of one of theſe animals; at preſent, however, I cannot help doubting, whether M. DE BUFFON can find any that exceed the weight of three pounds; for an elephant's grinder, which I brought home with me as a preſent for the cabinet of the Royal Academy, weighs four pounds and a half, and is nine inches broad; but yet, to judge from the eye, was at leaſt three times as large in every dimenſion as any grinder of a hippopotamus, with which I compared it, and of which I have had an opportunity of ſeeing great numbers, in ſeveral ſkulls, in different ſpots on the banks of *Viſch-rivier*, being the relicks of ſea-cows which the farmers had ſhot there from time to time. From what has been ſaid it likewiſe follows, that KOLBE is in this place moſt to be depended upon. M. DE BUFFON is, however, in the right, when he aſſerts, l. c. page 48, that KOLBE took the figures of his animals from other people, and compoſed moſt of his deſcriptions from

1776. January.

1776. January.

memory, ſo that no great dependence is to be placed upon them.

The mouth of the hippopotamus is ſo large, that though a full third of the enormous tuſks above-mentioned in the lower jaw, as well as ſeveral of the fore teeth which project forwards, ſtands above the gums, yet they are not ſeen except when the animal opens his mouth.

The hide of the adult hippopotamus bears a great reſemblance to that of the rhinoceros, but is rather thicker. Whips likewiſe made of this hide are ſtronger, and, after being uſed ſome time, are more pliable than thoſe made of the hide of the rhinoceros uſually are, though they are not ſo tranſparent as theſe latter are when new.

The food of the hippopotamus conſiſts entirely in herbs and graſs, a circumſtance of which we are informed by Father LOBO; and which may partly be inferred from what I have already ſaid on the ſubject, as well as from the figure of the ſtomach belonging to the *fœtus* of a hippopotamus given in Meſſrs. DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON's elegant work. I therefore do not look upon it as very probable, that theſe animals, agreeably to the aſſertions of M. DE BUFFON, page 93, or of DAMPIER in his voyage, ſhould hunt after fiſh by way of preying upon them; eſpecially as in ſome of the rivers of the ſouthern part of Africa, where the ſea-cows are ſeen daily and in great abundance, there is not a fiſh to be ſeen; and in others only a few *baſtard ſpringers*, as they are called, (*cyprinus gonorynchus*) which are ſcarcely as big as a common herring. It is ſaid, that a ſmall ſpecies of carp is ſtill more rarely to be met with here. It

is

1776. January.

is true, that the ſea-cows ſometimes frequent the mouths of the rivers here, which are full of ſea-fiſh, and even ſometimes the ſea itſelf: we know, however, that theſe huge quadrupeds are notwithſtanding this, obliged to go from thence upon dry land in queſt of food. Neither is it probable that they can drink the ſea-water; as an inſtance was related to me of the contrary in a hippopotamus, which, having been diſturbed in the rivers, had taken refuge in the ſea, and yet was obliged to go aſhore every night and drink freſh water from a well in the neighbourhood, till at laſt it was ſhot by ſome people that lay in wait for it there. That the hippopotamuſes actually lived in ſalt-water, I have ſeen evident proofs at the mouths both of *Kromme* and *Camtour* rivers, particularly in the latter, on my journey homewards; where many of theſe animals blowed themſelves in broad day-light, and thruſt their heads up above the water; and one of them in particular, which had been wounded by an ill-directed ſhot on the noſe, neighed from anger and reſentment. In *Krakekamma* I ſaw on the beach manifeſt traces of a hippopotamus which had come out of the ſea, but had retired thither again directly. That very attentive navigator Captain BURTZ informed me, that he had frequently ſeen on the eaſtern coaſt of Africa ſea-horſes (meaning probably the hippopotamus) raiſe their heads above the ſurface of the water, in order to blow themſelves and neigh. I have been induced to be rather circumſtantial on this ſubject, as M. ADANSON has taken it into his head, in his *Voyage au Senegal*, to limit the abode of the hippopotamus to the freſh water rivers only in Africa; and M. DE BUFFON has taken upon him to ſupport this opinion,

1776. January. opinion, and to render KOLBE's teſtimony to the contrary liable to ſuſpicion.

An old experienced huntſman told me, that he had once ſeen two hippopotamuſes copulate, which they did in the ſame manner as common cattle. On this occaſion the beaſts ſtood in a ſhallow part of the river, where the water reached up to their knees.

The ſize of the largeſt of the two ſea-cows meaſured by ZERENGHI, was, according to BUFFON, Tom. XII. page 31, as follows: The length ſixteen feet nine inches, the girt fifteen feet, the height ſix feet and a half, the aperture of the mouth two feet four inches wide, and the tuſks were above a foot long, clear of the ſockets.

The method of catching the hippopotamus conſiſts (beſides ſhooting it) in making pits for it in thoſe parts which the animal paſſes in his way to and from the river; but this method is peculiar to the Hottentots, and is only practiſed by them in the rainy ſeaſon, as the ground in ſummer is too hard for that purpoſe. It is ſaid that they have never ſucceeded in killing this huge aquatic animal with poiſoned darts, though this way of killing game is practiſed with advantage by the Hottentots for the deſtruction both of the elephant and rhinoceros. The coloniſts, likewiſe, were not entirely unacquainted with the method mentioned by M. HASSELQUIST, as being common in Egypt, viz. to ſtrew on the ground as many peaſe or beans as the animal can poſſibly eat, by which means it burſts its belly and dies. But as this method is very expenſive, and they can generally have this animal for a ſingle charge of powder and a tin ball, ſhot in a proper direction, they chiefly

and almoſt ſolely have recourſe to this cheaper expedient. 1776. January.

The hippopotamus is probably not ſo quick in its pace on land as the generality of the larger quadrupeds, though perhaps it is not ſo ſlow and heavy as M. DE BUFFON, l. c. page 39, deſcribes it to be; as both the Hottentots and coloniſts look upon it as dangerous to meet a hippopotamus out of the water, eſpecially, as according to report, they had had a recent inſtance of one of theſe animals, which, from certain circumſtances, was ſuppoſed to be in rut, having, for ſeveral hours, purſued a Hottentot, who found it very difficult to make his eſcape. M. KLOCKNER confirms this opinion, by the inſertion of a ſtory to this purpoſe related by one MARAIS.

The people of this country did not entertain that opinion of the medicinal virtues of the hippopotamus, as they did of certain parts of the elephant and rhinoceros; excepting one coloniſt, who imagined he had found the *os petroſum* of this animal, reduced to powder, and taken in the quantity that would lie on the point of a knife, excellent in convulſions, and particularly in the convulſions (*ſtuypen*) of children. That the fleſh is reckoned very wholeſome food, I have already mentioned.

Having already exceeded the limits I had preſcribed to myſelf, I do not intend to dwell here on the anatomy of the hippopotamus we caught, particularly as the internal conformation of the calves is ſomewhat different from that of the adult animal. I ſhall, therefore, only briefly mention the following particulars: the ſtomachs were four in number, and conſequently one more than in the fœtus examined

1776. January. examined by M. DAUBENTON, which was kept in ſpirits. Compare BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. IV. Fig. 2. The two firſt ſtomachs, which correſpond with, and were ſomewhat ſimilar to the ſtomachs H. and L. (l. c.) were each of them about ſeven inches long, and three inches in diameter; the third was nine inches in length, and a little wider than the two former; the fourth was ſeven inches long, and at the upper part five inches broad, but decreaſed by degrees on one ſide till it terminated in the *pylorus*, which had an aperture an inch in width, being about half as wide again as the *cardia*. I did not obſerve any ſuch valves as M. DAUBENTON has delineated. The firſt ſtomach we found moſtly empty, it containing only a few lumps of cheeſe or curd; it likewiſe differed from the reſt by the ſuperior fineneſs of its internal coat. The internal membrane of the ſecond ſtomach was rather coarſer, and had many ſmall holes in it; it likewiſe contained ſeveral clods of caſeous matter, together with a great quantity of ſand and mud. The third ſtomach had very viſible folds, both longitudinal and tranſverſal, on the inſide of it, and contained caſeous lumps of a yellow colour and harder conſiſtence than the others, together with ſeveral leaves quite whole and freſh, and at the ſame time ſome dirt. The interior membrane of the fourth ſtomach was very ſmooth, though it was not without folds; in the ſtomach itſelf there was a good deal of dirt, with a ſmall quantity of curds, which were whiter than they were in any of the other ſtomachs. This fourth ſtomach in a great meaſured covered the reſt, being ſituated on the right ſide of the animal, and was found to have the upper part of the melt adhearing to its ſuperior and interior

1776. January.

interior edge. This latter viſcus, which was one foot long and three inches broad, diverged from it downwards on the left ſide. The inteſtinal canal was 109 feet long; the liver meaſured fourteen inches from right to left, and ſeven or eight from the hind part to the fore part. On its anterior edges it had a large notch, being in other reſpects undivided and entire; it was of an oblique form, being broadeſt towards the left ſide, where I diſcovered a gall-bladder five inches in length. In the uterus there was nothing particularly worthy of obſervation; I found two teats and the heart, ſurrounded with more fat in proportion than the elk-antilope's heart, deſcribed at page 208 of this volume; the length of this muſcle was five inches, and the breadth about four inches and a half. The communication between the auricles called the *foramen ovale*, was above an inch in diameter; each lung was eleven inches long and undivided; but at the ſuperior and exterior part of the right lung, there were two globules or proceſſes elevated half an inch above the ſurface; and on the ſide correſponding to it, in the left lung, and in the upper part of it, there was a little excreſcence, terminating in a point; ſomewhat below this, yet more forwards, there was found likewiſe a proceſs, half an inch in height. Directly over the lower part of the communication formed between the right and left lung, there was a kind of creſt or comb, meaſuring an inch from the top to the baſes.

One of my brother ſportſmen ſaid, he had once obſerved a peculiar kind of vermin on the body of one of theſe amphibious animals; but on the calf we had caught we found nothing but a ſpecies of leech, which kept only

1776. January.

about the anus, and likewiſe a good way up in the ſtrait gut, where, by a timely abſtraction of the blood, they may be of uſe to theſe large amphibious animals; and particularly may act as preſervatives againſt the piles, repaying themſelves for their trouble in kind. Moſt of them were very ſmall, but on the other hand there was a conſiderable number of them. The only large one I ſaw of this ſpecies, being ſomewhat more than an inch in length, I deſcribed and made a drawing of; this is inſerted by the name of the *Hirudo Capenſis, corpore ſuprà nigricante, medio longitudinaliter ſub-brunneo, ſubtus pallidè fuſco*, in the elegant treatiſe on worms, which M. ADOLPHUS NODEER, firſt ſecretary of the Patriotic Society, is preparing for the preſs. Inſtead of the lighter coloured ſtreak upon the back, there was diſcoverable in ſome of theſe leeches, one, and ſometimes two longitudinal browniſh lines, which grew fainter and fainter towards the extremities.

The huge animal, of which we have been ſpeaking, has doubtleſs obtained its preſent name of hippopotamus, which ſignifies river-horſe, merely in conſequence of the neighing ſound it makes; as otherwiſe in its form it bears not the leaſt reſemblance to a horſe, but rather to a hog. Neither does it in the leaſt reſemble the ox; ſo it could be only the different ſtomachs of this animal, which could occaſion it to be called *ſea-cow*, at the Cape; and, perhaps, it is for the ſame reaſon, that the Hottentots call it the *t' gao*, which nearly approaches to *t' kau*, the name by which the buffalo is known among theſe people.

From the account given by BELLONIUS of a tame hippopotamus, which he deſcribes as a beaſt of a very mild and

1776. January.

and gentle nature, as well as from the diſpoſition of the calf we had juſt caught, it follows, that this animal might be eaſily brought over to Europe, where it has been formerly exhibited at two different times in the public ſpectacles at Rome. (Vid. PLIN. lib. 8. and DION. CASS. lib. 11.) For this purpoſe, the capture might eaſieſt be made at *Konaps*-river, where theſe animals, according to the accounts given me by the Caffres, reſide in great abundance; and milch-cows might be kept ready at hand, in order to rear the calf, in caſe it was a ſuckling. Indeed, I am apt to ſuppoſe, that one a little older than this, would not be very nice in its food; as that which we caught, was induced by hunger, as ſoon as it was let looſe near the waggon, to put up with ſomething not extremely delicate, which had been juſt dropped from one of our oxen. This, perhaps, may appear very extraordinary in an animal with four ſtomachs; but there have been inſtances of this kind known in common cattle, which in *Herjedal* are partly fed with horſe-dung*. (Vid. A. A. HULPHERS's *Beſkrifning om Norrland*, 3:je Saml. *om Herjedalen*, page 27—87.) I have been likewiſe aſſured, that this method of feeding cattle has been practiſed with great advantage in *Uplandia*, when there has been a ſcarcity of fodder; and that afterwards theſe ſame cattle, even when they have not been in want of proper fodder, have taken to this food of their own accord, and eaten it without any thing elſe being mixed with it.

At noon the temperature of the air was, according to Fahrenheit's thermometer, 104 degrees; and the heat of

* HULPHER's Deſcription of Norway.

1776. January. the ſun, to which I had been to-day particularly expoſed, occaſioned me to have a violent head-ache, which, however, was ſenſibly relieved, by wetting my head all over with vinegar. The length of time we had ſet up, had likewiſe not a little contributed to this indiſpoſition of mine; notwithſtanding which, we reſolved ſtill to continue blockading this place. The following night, however, it was uncomfortable and even dangerous to keep at our poſts, in the open air, as there fell a violent thunder-ſhower, which not only made ſome of our fire-arms uſeleſs, but even extinguiſhed the fires we had made at the upper ſide of the pit; ſo that two ſea-cows had the boldneſs to venture out of the water at this place, and run along the ſhallow in the river. We fired, indeed, a ſhot at them in the dark at a venture, but without effect.

On the 29th in the morning, finding that it would not be worth while to ſtay here any longer, we took our departure, going towards the ſouth, and hunting *buffaloes* and *koedoes*, one of which latter leaped into the river, as I have before mentioned at page 216 of this volume. In the evening, we had hardly taken our oxen out of the waggons, and unſaddled our horſes, before a large rhinoceros paſſed within fifty paces of our waggon, probably without ſeeing any thing of us; as otherwiſe, in the opinion of the Hottentots, this enormous animal would not have failed at leaſt to have turned our waggon topſy-turvy. I have made mention of this rhinoceros at page 111 of this volume. It was, as we afterwards learned, in the midſt of its flight, having been hunted juſt before by two of our party. It had likewiſe got to a good diſtance from us, before we could

get our fire-arms out of the waggon; ſo that two ſhot that we ſent after him, could not poſſibly have any effect. Our hounds, which at firſt were able to keep cloſe to the animal's heels, formed a ſtrong contraſt to the coloſſal ſize of this animal; while the beaſt on his part did not ſeem to take the leaſt notice of them, but, with a trifling riſe and fall of the neck, kept on an even and ſteady courſe, which was a kind of pacing, but notwithſtanding rid a great deal of ground; which pace, however, was, by the report of guns, changed to a very faſt gallop, ſo that the hounds were in an inſtant left behind at a great diſtance: and it appears to me, that any ſportſman, though mounted on an excellent hunter, would inevitably be loſt, who ſhould be purſued by this animal, and ſhould not know how to get out of the ſight and ſcent of it, by ſhifting and dodging occaſionally. The rhinoceros was ſaid, in this particular, to reſemble the elephant, that without delaying or ſtopping in the leaſt, it will run to the diſtance of many leagues from the place where it has been cloſely hunted, or in any other way moleſted. 1776. January.

On the 30th, we ſet out for *Kleine Viſchs* river, in hopes of ſucceeding better there in our purſuit after the ſea-cows. In the night it rained.

On the 31ſt, we hunted ſome elk-antilopes, and afterwards met in theſe deſert tracts of country with a young farmer, from the *Camdebo* quarter, who had taken a journey hither, in order to look out, together with a ſlave and two Hottentots in his ſervice, for a proper place to ſettle in. In the mean while they were feaſting on ſome of the prime parts of a buffalo, which they had ſhot. In purſuance of

1776. January. of the directions we received from this man, we found three rhinoceroſes, viz. a female, with her calf of no inconſiderable ſize, and a male, which was much larger than the female; and, indeed, was the largeſt of all the rhinoceroſes I had ever ſeen. This laſt was hit in the ſhoulder by a ball from one of the Hottentots, who lay concealed behind a buſh, a circuſtance which occaſioned the animal to ruſh forth into the plain, where all the ſportſmen that were provided with horſes were ſtationed; and now, being greatly alarmed, betook themſelves to flight. The greateſt braggadochio in the whole company, was the firſt on this occaſion to ſet an example of prudence, and a ſpirit of ſelf-preſervation in the extreme, by clapping ſpurs to his horſe and galloping off immediately; and was the laſt to turn back and purſue the maimed and limping beaſt, whither it ſoon turned off towards a different quarter, and by this means at laſt made its eſcape through a cloſe thicket.

One of my Hottentots, who in fact was our driver, but whom I had uſed in ſome meaſure to ſhooting, and had at this time entruſted with a gun, that he might aſſiſt the other ſportſmen, was accuſed by them of having ſhewn, on this occaſion, a greater inclination to ſkulk and hide himſelf, than to join in the ſport. On which account, I having, by way of puniſhing him, given his gun to one of the Boſhiesmen, he did not, indeed, diſcover any concern at the time; yet, perhaps, was even in this reſpect, capable of being actuated by ambition and emulation, as, indeed, are many of his countrymen; as a proof of his puniſhment having had an effect upon him, ſhewing that very day afterwards upon other occaſions, though entirely without arms, great boldneſs

and

and courage; in conſequence of which he, that evening, ran the riſk of being trampled under foot by another rhinoceros. 1776. January.

To conclude, we now quitted our horſes, in order to go with a party of our Hottentots and trace the wounded rhinoceros on foot. We were able to follow the traces of the animal in this manner during the ſpace of half an hour, notwithſtanding the ground's being very dry and hard; for a Boſhies-man, who was our principal leader, and went before us with the deepeſt ſilence and utmoſt attention, pointing occaſionally to the earth, was very ſkilful in obſerving (and regulating our courſe accordingly) where the dried graſs or duſt had been diſturbed or diſplaced in the leaſt; which, with all the attention I was maſter of, I was not able to diſcern; though in more than one ſpot, we found, nevertheleſs, ſome plain and diſtinct prints of the rhinoceros's feet, a proof that our leader had taken us right. In fact, neceſſity and cuſtom render the ſight, faculty of obſervation, and judgment of the Hottentots, very acute in this reſpect; juſt as, on the other hand, by the ſame means they have acquired the talent, which is univerſally acknowledged, of finding water in ſpots they are unacquainted with, much better than the Chriſtians; a talent, which alone ſerves them inſtead of a compaſs, in particular exigencies, and precludes the neceſſity of ſuppoſing them to be endued with a particular acuteneſs in the organ of ſmell, as they are erroneouſly repreſented to be by ſome, who, living at a diſtance from the Hottentots, have no great opportunities of knowing this peculiar race of men. This, however, is no argument, that the inſtances we have of other men who have been endued with a very fine and acute

1776. February.

acute ſmell, not much different from that of the hound, may not be perfectly true. In the evening, we rode home to our waggons; but the greater part of our Hottentots did not come home till the next morning, after having ſhot a young buffalo.

On the 1ſt of February, my horſe fell down with me, in hunting the elk-antilope, as I have already mentioned at page 212 of this volume. The ſame evening, two of our Hottentot markſmen found a rhinoceros lying on its right ſide; and ſo faſt aſleep withal, that it did not wake, though they chanced to make a conſiderable clattering, by their gun-barrels ſtriking againſt each other, when they firſt happened to ſee it through the buſhes, being then at the diſtance of three or four paces only from its hinder parts, and immediately in their fright took aim; but when they found that the animal did not wake, they gave themſelves time to reflect a little, and, after holding a conſulation upon the matter, took a circuit round a couple of buſhes, and having placed themſelves ſo that they could point the muzzles of their guns right againſt the animal's head, diſcharged their pieces both at the ſame inſtant into its brain: but afterwards again, the animal making a few trifling ſtruggles, they were afraid it might come to itſelf again; for which reaſon, as well as for their amuſement, they charged again, and fired ſeveral balls into its cheſt. This incident, together with the account given me by an old hunter, of a rhinoceros which he found ſo faſt aſleep, that he had it in his power to go very near to it and ſhoot it, induced me to believe, that this animal ſleeps very ſound; though the caſe ſeems to have been quite otherwiſe with the one-horned rhinoceros

which

which Dr. PARSONS made his obſervations upon, and gave a deſcription of in London. 1776. February.

On the 2d, when I went to diſſect the rhinoceros which had been ſhot the day before, I found that my Hottentot markſmen, with a view the better to preſerve the fleſh from putrefying, had taken out the entrails as ſoon as the beaſt was dead; I ſaw, however, very evidently, from the liver, that theſe animals have no gall-bladder; a circumſtance about which one of the farmers belonging to our hunting-party entered into a diſpute with me, and for which reaſon we were at that time very eager to chaſe them.

One of my Boſhies-men, who had been ordered to come to us, and help to cut up the rhinoceros, and at the ſame time bring with him a few things which we wanted, put us very much to our ſhifts by ſtaying away. It ſeems that he had rather choſen to repair to the elk which had been ſhot the night before, partly becauſe he preferred the taſte of elk's fleſh, and partly as, like the reſt of his countrymen, he ſet great ſtore by the ſinews and *aponeuroſes* of the elk; particularly thoſe on the back of the animal, as forming the beſt ſtrings that could be got for their clokes.

Now this Hottentot, though according to our articles of war, as well as from his own experience, he might expect to receive a good drubbing for an act of diſobedience of this kind, yet he made his appearance quite free and eaſy, with ſeveral ſlices of a honey-comb in his hand, and making an excuſe in his language, which was interpreted to me as follows: "That the *honing-wyzer* (*cuculus indicator*, vide page 186 of this volume) had enticed him quite away from that part of the country, where the rhinoceros was,

1776. February.

to that where the elk lay; but that he had now brought with him a conſiderable quantity of honey to ſmear my mouth with." I, on my part, accepted both of the excuſe and the bribe; as my brother ſportſmen, whoſe mouths began to water at the latter, unanimouſly voted, that the Hottentot had done better in following the honey-guide, than he would have done had he obeyed our orders.

But where could a Boſhies-man Hottentot, bred and born in the wild and deſert plains near *Zondags-rivier*, where could ſuch a one as this learn the art of bribing? Was it of his ſimple companions, or rather from the readineſs of the more enlightened coloniſts to give theſe heathens in this manner a proof of their forgiving diſpoſitions? It is a great pity that I could not determine this queſtion with any degree of certainty, a determination which would have thrown much light on the nature of man in his ſavage ſtate! It deſerves, however, to be remarked, that the Hottentots in *Houtniquas*, who are in a much more civilized ſtate, are ſaid now and then to endeavour to ſoften their judges with preſents of honey; and even ſometimes to ſucceed in their attempts, and thereby to obtain beſides certain privileges.

This day we took an oſtrich's neſt, and gave chaſe to the elk, which I mentioned at page 211 of this volume, as having ſweated blood. At night we laid ſiege to a ſea-cow-pit, out of which too a ſea-cow came running up, but made its eſcape, after two of our company had fired at her in the dark, and miſſed her.

On the 3d our Hottentots again ſaw a couple of rhinoceroſes, a circumſtance which, for the information of others,

and particularly of the poſterity of the coloniſts of this country, with reſpect to the numbers, and, as it were, peculiar abode of this huge animal in theſe parts, ſeems to me to be worth noticing here. It may not be amiſs likewiſe, for the ſake of giving the reader ſome notion of the diſpoſition of the Hottentots in general, to mention, that our driver ſpent twelve hours in running to a place and back again, where he had recollected that he had left his wooden tobacco-pipe two days before, though he could have made another as good in a little more than half the time. Here it may be remarked by the by, that he walked all the way alone and without weapons, and conſequently ran ſome riſk of becoming a prey to the lions. Neither this, nor the following night, did we ſucceed in our attempts on the ſea-cows in the pits of Little *Viſch-rivier*. 1776. February.

On the 5th, the three farmers who had come to our aſſiſtance on the 22d of January, took leave of us in order to go home. We had kept company with each other much longer than we had at firſt expected; the reaſon of which was, our having had ſuch bad ſucceeſs in hunting the ſea-cow. Once, viz. on the 28th of January, it was, as I have already obſerved, the fault of FLIP. The extraordinary drowſineſs of this youth, of which I have given an inſtance at page 279 of this volume, proceeded in all probability from a paſſion, which yet, for the moſt part, makes others ſleepleſs. For FLIP, though a briſk lad in other reſpects, and bold and daring to a degree in the chaſe, one who had been the death of many a buffalo, and who, at ſo early a period as two years before, being out with a hunting party after the lion, had fired the firſt ball into the body of that

1776. February.

fierce animal, was yet ſo timid with reſpect to the fair ſex, that he had long been deeply in love with a fine girl in his neighbourhood, without daring to let either her or any one elſe know it; till one day when we were riding cheek by jowl over the deſert plains, he divulged his paſſion to me, (no doubt becauſe I was a phyſician) and at the ſame time aſked my advice. I, on my part, preſcribed to him to diſcloſe his ſentiments to the object of his affections in writing. Though this way of wooing was, in all probability, entirely unknown to FLIP, as well as, perhaps, to the greater part of the colony, yet he placed an implicit faith in the remedy, and the phyſician was inveſted with the office of dictating the terms of the billet-doux. The epiſtle was accordingly written on the round lid of my box; and, as may naturally be ſuppoſed, in a pretty amorous ſtyle, though in a curious kind of broken Dutch, which ſavoured very ſtrongly of the foreign dialect of the inditer; but as the girl, in all probability, would lay a greater ſtreſs on the looks of her lover, who was a ſmart well-made young fellow, than upon his letter, I was in hopes that, notwithſtanding theſe diſadvantages, my epiſtle would prepare the way to his good fortune, than which nothing could give me greater pleaſure.

On the 6th of February, with Mr. IMMELMAN and my nine Hottentots, I ſet out again on our road home to the Cape, and in the afternoon arrived at the well of *Quammedacka*, deſcribed at page 81 of this volume. Here I firſt began to have an earneſt longing to reviſit the Cape, having, almoſt as well as could be expected, accompliſhed the purpoſes for which I undertook the expedition into theſe parts; and having hitherto, partly by means of the remarkable objects

which actually preſented themſelves to my notice, and partly in conſequence of being in continual expectation of meeting with them, been able to paſs the time with ſome degree of pleaſure, under more fatigues and difficulties than can eaſily be imagined. Beſides, I was now obliged to haſten back to the Cape, that I might not be overtaken by the winter ſeaſon, and miſs the opportunity of returning, or at leaſt writing to Europe, by one of the Eaſt-India homeward bound ſhips. 1776. February.

In the evening I rode along with a Hottentot to the ſpot where we had ſhot the two rhinoceroſes on the 19th of December, and found the greater part of theſe animals already eaten up or deſtroyed; but the ſkulls were ſtill in good preſervation. Having taken the leaſt of theſe with us, and being about to return to our waggon, in our way we found a female rhinoceros with her calf. Theſe animals had probably been drawn out from the place of their retirement by the cool of the evening, and were juſt then coming out to graze for the night. The calf had already attained the ſize of a ſmall ox, though its horns were of a very trifling ſize, in compariſon with thoſe of the mother; and upon the whole, it followed and was guided entirely by every motion of her's. I would gladly have waited with the greateſt patience, in order to explore this animal's manner of eating and digging up roots, &c. but the night was approaching, and it would have been too dangerous an undertaking for us two, to paſs the night on theſe plains, which abound with lions and rhinoceroſes, without the apparatus neceſſary for making a fire. Beſides, the clattering noiſe made by the caparisons of our ſteeds, had already betrayed

1776. February. betrayed us to the two rhinoceroſes, while they ſtood liſtening and moving their ears about juſt at the entrance of a narrow vale, through which we muſt neceſſarily paſs, if we wiſhed to reach our waggon before night. In this critical ſituation, therefore, we had no other reſource than to ſhoot them immediately, or at leaſt to frighten them from the ſpot. Of theſe two different methods we were moſt inclined to attempt the former, though neither our pieces, nor the charge they were loaded with, were any ways adapted to game of ſuch an enormous ſize; my Hottentot having taken with him a ſmall fowling-piece only, into which we put a leaden ball in addition to the ſhot with which it was already charged. My piece, indeed, was loaded with a tin ball, which however, was not near large enough for a rhinoceros. Notwithſtanding this, we crept on till we got behind a large ſpreading buſh, which, with reſpect to its height and the extent of its branches, was like a tree, and which ſtood forwards on the plain at the diſtance of fifteen paces only from the two rhinoceroſes.

My piece, which had, unknown to me, got damp the night before, went off, to my great ſurprize and mortification, with a hiſſing noiſe, and hung fire a long while; and, inſtead of hitting the old rhinoceros in the heart, only wounded her, as we afterwards found, in the poſterior angle of the lower jaw. It made her, however, ſomewhat ſwag about with the fore part of her body, and ſnuff up her noſtrils, as if endeavouring to diſcover her enemy by the ſcent; but as we were to the windward of her, ſo that ſhe could not get ſcent of us, ſhe advanced forwards to the quarter where ſhe heard the noiſe, cloſe followed by her calf,

calf, with a ſlow meaſured pace, and ſeemingly full of attention, in all probability with an intent to ſearch the buſh all over which ſtood between her and us. The blood now began to mount in our faces, chiefly from the apprehenſion, leſt while we were endeavouring to avoid one of the beaſts, we ſhould run into the jaws of the other; for with one rhinoceros alone, a ſportſman, who is tolerable agile, may very well venture upon occaſion to play at blind man's buff. My attendant and companion, the ſame Hottentot who had made ſo miſerable a figure in the preſence of the Caffres, now ſtood to his ground boldly, as he had promiſed to do, and did not fire, before the animals were juſt upon us; by this means being alarmed, they ruſhed forward with great violence, as we ſuppoſed they would, and conſequently paſſed us, when the Hottentot inſtantly leaped up among the boughs of the buſh, and I ſtole off to the other ſide of it. Having found our horſes again at the place where we had tied them up out of the way, my curioſity led me to ſee which way the two rhinoceroſes had taken. In fact, I happened to find them much ſooner than I expected; and at the ſame time diſcovered, that they were nearer-ſighted than I could have ever imagined, they ſtanding about eighty or ninety paces from me on the open plain, without ſeeming to perceive either me or my horſe, though they ſtood liſtening with their heads turned towards the quarter whence I was coming towards them. After this, getting off my horſe, and walking on till I got within fifty or ſixty paces of them, without any thing to cover my approach, I fired at the old one, which even now did not ſee me, only ſwinging the fore part of her body from one ſide to the other with great violence,

1776. February.

1776. February. lence, and at the ſame time blowing ſo hard and loud, that our horſes, which I had left in the care of my Hottentot at the diſtance of ſeveral hundred paces, were not a little ſcared by it. Upon this, the two wild beaſts ran off through the buſhes, where it was both dangerous and difficult to purſue them. The Hottentots, who were better ſkilled in this kind of chaſe, afterwards told us, that we ſhould have done much better if we had fired at the calf, on which the ſmall ball would have taken more effect; in which caſe they imagined, that the mother would have ſtaid by the dead body till the next day, when they might have gone there and ſhot her likewiſe. In like manner they ſuppoſed, that the calf would have ſtaid by the body of the mother in caſe ſhe had been ſhot firſt.

It was as dark as pitch before we got to our waggons; and as here was no beaten path, I was under great apprehenſions leſt we ſhould miſs the road; though my Hottentot was under no concern on that ſcore, being quite ſure of what he was about. There was, however, great reaſon to fear, leſt in the dark we ſhould ride full butt againſt a rhinoceros, or elſe into the jaws of a lion. Once our horſes ſtartled, a circumſtance which did not a little alarm us; till we obſerved, that what excited our fears was nothing more than a porcupine, (vide Vol. I. page 151.) The holes and ſubterraneous paſſages made by this, as well as the various other animals enumerated above, and by which the ground was every where undermined, occaſioned our horſes to have ſeveral falls, which put us under the diſagreable neceſſity of riding very ſlowly; at laſt we began to perceive now and then a little glimmer from the fire of our

our brother ſportſmen who were left with the waggon at *Quammedacka*, and I muſt own, that I was not a little rejoiced at the appearance of this leading ſtar. When at length we had got to our waggons, we were told, that our Hottentot huntſman had likewiſe that day ſeen and wounded a rhinoceros. Juſt before dawn two buffaloes came to drink out of the well near which we were encamped; but though we fired at them, we miſſed them in the dark. 1776. February.

On the 7th we went by *Hevy* to *Kurekoiku*, and ſhot a buffalo in our way. In the night we were awakened by ſeveral horrid diſſonant noiſes, which, though quite diſſimilar to each other, were uttered at one and the ſame time, ſo as to form a moſt diſmal chorus. Among theſe, however, there was one which almoſt drowned the reſt, and which in ſome meaſure reſembled the diſguſting kind of laugh, which the ſimple populace in Sweden aſcribes to a ſpirit they call the *Gaſt*, or the ſhrieking man, but which is nothing more than one of the ſeveral different cries uſually uttered by the *ſtrix nyctea*, or ſcriech-owl. By the light of the moon we could ſee on a hill near us, the glimpſe of above half a ſcore hyænas; and the horrid din we heard was, in all probability, nothing more than a tumultuous yell, ſet up by them in order to ſcare our oxen, and put them to flight, not daring otherwiſe to attack them; but theſe, with our uſual forecaſt, we had made faſt to the waggon. As I thought one of theſe ravenous creatures preſented a good mark to my piece, I could not help, in direct oppoſition to the advice of the Hottentots, firing a ball at it. The ſhot, ſo far from ſcaring them away, rather occaſioned them to repeat their attempts to frighten us; as the whole pack now

1776. February. ruſhed down from the hill, and ran cloſe by us at full ſpeed, which bore the appearance of their having at firſt intended a general attack.

On the 8th, we continued our way homewards, when, beſides a few ſcattered hartbeeſts, we ſaw a large herd of elk-antilopes; we likewiſe that day ſhot a buffalo, by which our Hottentot markſman was in the utmoſt danger of being trampled under foot.

On the 9th we again ſaw ſeveral elk-antilopes, hartbeeſts, and quaggas, paſſing by *Haſſagai-boſch*. We ſhot a female elk, from whoſe body we cut out a fœtus, which we carried away with us, and the next morning diſſected. The viſcera we found to reſemble thoſe of gazels in general.

On the 10th we met with a farmer, who informed us, that two days journey from hence, two Caffre princes were at war with each other on account of a few ſtray calves. At this place, croſſing Boſhies-man-rivier, we went up to a *craal* of *Gonaquas Hottentots*, who, in our preſence, performed their military exerciſe, of which I have made ſome mention at page 158 of this volume.

On the 11th, one of our Boſhies-men having been informed, that his neareſt relations had removed along with their craal into this neighbourhood, wiſhed to take leave of us; and as he had given us his company and aſſiſtance throughout the whole courſe of our journey, he aſked for ſomething by way of gratuity or recompence; which I readily complied with, to his entire ſatisfaction, by preſenting him with a ſteel for ſtriking fire, a braſs tinder-box, ſome tobacco, a knife, and a few glaſs beads. He was the only

only maried man in our party, and ſeemed to have more œconomy than any of the reſt, having either for his own uſe, or that of his wife, loaded himſelf with the fleſh of the buffalo we had ſhot laſt; ſome of which he carried extended over his ſhoulders, and the reſt hanging on a ſtick, for the ſake of drying it in the ſun. When the time came in which he muſt part from us and his countrymen, he went away without taking any leave. In fact, it is the mode with the Hottentots, (as now, indeed, it is ſometimes practiſed with us) to *eclipſe*, as it is called, in this manner. However, on my calling out to him when he was at a conſiderable diſtance from us, *farewel*, in the Dutch language, accompanied with the Hottentot ſalutation *t'kabè*, he anſwered me in the ſame language; at the ſame time making ſeveral aukward bows in the Dutch faſhion. The other Hottentots laughed immediately at this incident, and (probably on this account) took a formal leave of us, as well as of each other, when they parted from us at *Zondags-rivier*, where we arrived in the evening. Here I met with an old Hottentot, who was born with four nipples, the two ſpurious ones being rather leſs than the others, and placed three inches lower. 1776. January.

On the 12th, we met with ſeveral peaſants, who, with the permiſſion of the preſent governor, BARON PLETTENBERG, had removed hither in order to inhabit this part of the country; which, for this reaſon, in my map, I have called PLETTENBERG'S colony. In the evening about duſk, the thermometer was at 68 degrees, when the rain began, which continued all night long, with a ſouth-weſt wind.

1776. February.

On the 13th, at ſeven o'clock, the thermometer was at 64, and the whole day was overcaſt and rainy. We ſaw a *koedoe*, and our Hottentot markſman, who had been courſing along *Zondags-rivier*, informed us, that he had obſerved one of the ſea-cows there, had her calf riding on her back, when ſhe came up to the ſurface of the water, in order to breathe; but that as ſoon as ſhe had got ſcent of him, ſhe breathed with the edge of her noſtrils only out of the water; and each time after ſhe had breathed, dived, or ducked her head forward, with ſuch nice exactneſs, that her calf likewiſe appeared with the extremity of her noſtrils only above the ſurface of the water, and was able to blow herſelf too.

On the 14th we came to *Kuga*; the thermometer, at five in the afternoon, was at 72 degrees.

On the 15th, the thermometer, about dawn, was at 62. We ſaw ſome buffaloes, and three Hottentot fugitives, and paid another viſit to the ſalt-pans, with the view of catching inſects. At noon, in the ſhade, the thermometer was at 90 degrees. We paid a viſit to a little *craal* of Caffres, which had lately removed to *Zwartkops-rivier*; and went to the upper part of this river, to viſit a coloniſt of the name of GERT SKEPPER, who had long reſided there, partly in conformity to ſome orders of government, and partly in direct oppoſition to them: for government, which, though it had long employed land-ſurveyors, was yet left totally in the dark with reſpect to the geography of the country, had not permitted the coloniſts to cultivate or dwell farther to the eaſtward than *Kabeliaauw-rivier*, but had

had left them at liberty to inhabit what part they pleaſed to the ſouth of Camdebo; in conſequence of which, this ſhrewd peaſant had gone round about by the way of *Camdebo* from the Cape to this place, to take poſſeſſion of it; and upon this pretence, had got a charter for the tenure of it; when, on the contrary, he would have been ſeverely puniſhed, had he gone by the nearer and better road. We were totally diſappointed in our hopes of furniſhing ourſelves with bread at this place, as the farmer himſelf had choſen to be without it for ſome days, ſooner than grind the flour in his hand-mill. Conſequently, we lived ſome time entirely upon fleſh. From the 5th of February hitherto, we had been provided with ſome very coarſe meal, or gurgions, which our Hottentots, with the addition of a moderate quantity of water, had every day kneaded into dough, and made up into loaves or ſmall cakes of ſeven or eight inches diameter, and about half an inch thick: theſe were baked on the ground, which had been previouſly heated by our fires, with great eaſe and readineſs, by covering them up well with warm aſhes and a few live coals. 1776. February.

A ſmall ſociety of *Gunjemans* Hottentots, whoſe anceſtors, at the time that the Dutch invaded this part of the continent, inhabited the tract of country about *Table-mountain* and *Conſtantia*, now lived on friendly terms with the farmer above-mentioned. By what I could underſtand, this little ſociety had long been without the exerciſe of any perſonal authority among them, without beggars, and without any penal laws and ſtatutes, as well as without crimes and miſdemeanors; having been united and governed only

1776. February. by their own natural love of juſtice and mildneſs of diſpoſition, together with ſeveral common Hottentot uſages and cuſtoms. My Hottentots from *Zwellendam* ſeemed to hold in high eſtimation the virtue, freedom, and happy ſtate of theſe people; ſo much, indeed, that they were reſolved to partake of the bleſſings enjoyed by this happy race, for the remainder of their lives, as ſoon as they ſhould have finiſhed the journey with us at the Cape. For this purpoſe, they ſolicited me to buy at this place for each of them a heifer with calf, which, according to our agreement, they had a right to demand for their reward. As Hottentots, this way of thinking and turn of mind, did not by any means diſcredit them. I, therefore, advanced for them glaſs beads, braſs tinder-boxes, knives, and ſteels for flints, to the value of nine or ten rix-dollars; in conſideration of which, two of the beſt heifers in their judgment among the whole herd of cattle belonging to the craal, were looked out for them.

The moſt conſiderable part of this herd belonged to a widow, who was reckoned to be worth ſixty milch-cows, and was (at leaſt in this point) the moſt reſpectable female Hottentot I was ever acquainted with. She was childleſs, and was to be ſucceeded in her eſtate by her couſin; ſhe ſeemed to be paſt the middle age, and, in her younger days, to have been a beauty in her kind. Beſides a coſtly necklace of ſhells, and a ſpare cap, (vide Plate I. Vol. I.) (which by the bye I got from her, in the way of barter,) ſhe was not better clad than the reſt; having neither more leathern rings on her arms and legs, a better ſheep-ſkin over her ſhoulders, and particularly no more greaſe upon her body than any of the others. It is true, beſides a few common glaſs-

glaſs-beads, I obſerved, that two ſtrings of the ſmall copper beads, mentioned at page 238 of the ſame volume, were kept by her in a pouch apart, being the whole of her trinkets and jewels, and the only things for which ſhe could poſſibly be envied by the reſt of her ſex. However, I am willing to hope, that this vice had taken little or no root among theſe gentle and benevolent people; as the female juſt mentioned, who was ſo much richer than any of them, was not obſerved to take more upon her, and, indeed, ſcarcely to be dreſſed better than the reſt. In fact, the other women ſmoked their pipes, without any ceremony, by her ſide; and theſe too were filled by my Hottentots, without the leaſt reſpect to perſons, with a cloſe-ſpun and better kind of tobacco, which they had brought with them; while, for their entertainment, on the other hand, a ball was ſet on foot, which was to open late at night, and by moon-ſhine. Here I muſt confeſs, that my companion and I, by indulging ourſelves in ſleep, loſt a fine opportunity of ſeeing and deſcribing a brilliant *Gunjemans-Hottentot* ball, which was ſaid to be very different from the dances I have mentioned before. 1776. February.

In fine, it appeared to me, that the Hottentot widow I have juſt been ſpeaking of, was the leſs liable to be the object of the envy of her compatriots, as, notwithſtanding all her riches, ſhe could not get at more ſavory and higher ſeaſoned diſhes, and conſequently could not have more faſhionable pains and indigeſtions, nor any diſorders that would entitle her to higher reſpect than the reſt; for in the hairy leathern ſacks for milk is this ſalutary beverage, neither by nature nor art, prepared for the rich in any other

1776. February.

other manner than it is for the poor. They all roaſt their *onkjes* in the aſhes, in the ſame ſimple way; and almoſt every one of them dreſſes his meat by boiling it over the coals, as it is a very uncommon thing for a Hottentot to have earthen veſſels of his own manufacturing, for the purpoſe of boiling or ſtewing his victuals; and as the Hottentots abſolutely deteſt ſalt, they muſt eat their meat freſh, or elſe dried in the ſun; though upon recollection, it occurs to me, that the ſame purpoſe may be ſerved by the addition of a little more or leſs fat.

Conſequently fat or greaſe was here, and is univerſally among the Hottentots, who live at a diſtance from the Dutch, one of the principal comforts of life; and is, indeed, the only gratification afforded to this nation by its herds of cattle; and which is likely to prove a motive ſufficiently powerful, to induce them to be eager after the acquiſition of this kind of wealth: at the ſame time, I do not mean to exclude other motives, which in all likelihood co-operate with this; ſuch as, for inſtance, ſome reſpect to the honour and advantage of being able to maintain ſeveral ſervants, or cow-herds, as well as the divine pleaſure of doing good to their fellow-creatures. To the ſtimulus of this latter inducement, I look upon the Hottentots to be by no means inſenſible; as I have ſeen them diſplay the greateſt hoſpitality to each other, when in the courſe of their buſineſs, or merely for pleaſure, they have viſited one another from a great diſtance. Beſides, it is probable, that in the other well-governed Hottentot craals, any more than in this, no member of ſociety is abandoned to any conſiderable degree of indigence and miſery. But

in

in conſequence of the farther migrations of the coloniſts hither, and of the quantity of glaſs-beads and other commodities which I at this time brought to market here, and for which I found a good ſale among the fair ſex, I think I can plainly foreſee a ſpeedy and not inconſiderable revolution in the turn of mind and manners of this ſociety. 1776. February.

On the 16th there aroſe ſo violent a ſtorm from the north-weſt, that we did not dare to ſet out on our journey, for fear leſt our waggon ſhould be overſet on the plains. Towards night, however, the wind chopped about to the ſouth-eaſt, and was leſs violent, being accompanied with rain.

On the 17th drizzling rain. At firſt ſetting out we paſſed two Caffre families juſt removed hither, and afterwards went to the ſouthward into *Krakekamma*, paſſing by ſeveral hollows or bogs of different ſizes, which contained very few ſaline particles, but on the other hand, a great deal of rain-water: theſe I have diſtinguiſhed in the map, by the ſame marks which I have uſed for pointing out the ſalt-pans. I made this round, merely for the ſake of taking a curſory view of two harbours or inlets, which I was told a ſmall Dutch veſſel had lately viſited, and taken poſſeſſion of, as it were, in the name of the government at the Cape, by erecting a ſmall ſtone of marble, on which they put the company's mark. The Captain of this veſſel is ſaid to have informed his employers, that there was good anchorage in both theſe harbours, and particularly in that which lay to the ſouth; which yet I did not give myſelf time to look at, but have notwithſtanding laid it down on my map from the relation of others, and diſtin-

1776. February.

guiſhed it by an anchor. Yet, as there is ſaid to be no river nor ſprings in this harbour, it would not be of much uſe to ſhips which are in want of water; but, on the other hand, being nearer to the foreſt, it is more convenient for fetching wood and timber. The ſtrand and the tract of country between *Zwart-kops-rivier*, and the rivulet or brook which I have lain down on the northernmoſt inlet of *Krakekamma*, beſides being flat and without wood, were likewiſe found to be low and ſandy, but from that part began to be full of rocks and breakers; and as it was ſeen from the land, between ſouth and eaſt, terminated in a ſharp point, with a rock quite detached from it; which probably was ſome part of what, in the Portugueſe chart, is called *Point Padron*. The weather now cleared up for a while, ſo that I got a good view of *Sunday* river, and the two iſlands ſituated near it: all this, however, requires a more accurate inveſtigation, and likewiſe to be delineated on a ſeparate chart and on a larger ſcale, than can reaſonably be expected in ſo general a map as mine; which, therefore, can only ſerve, in this reſpect, as a foundation for the farther and more minute reſearches of navigators.

Government having lately allowed the coloniſts to inhabit *Krakekamma*, a farmer had twelve days before left a number of cattle here in the care of one Hottentot only.

On his removal hither, as the farmer was walking out with his hounds after him, a lioneſs had killed one of his oxen in the duſk of the evening, but was ſcared away from its prey by the noiſe made by people belonging to the farmer with their whips, and by the yelling of the hounds. The following day they looked after the lioneſs in vain, but

but inſtead of her found her three whelps, which did not offer to fly in the leaſt, but proudly put themſelves into a poſture of defence againſt the dogs, which were nearly four times their number, and which immediately tore them in pieces: for in fact, theſe hounds were not much ſmaller than the wild beaſts themſelves, which moreover were obſerved to be very rough and rugged, lean, and ſeemingly half ſtarved; ſo that the lioneſs herſelf was ſuppoſed to have periſhed with hunger, or elſe to be ſick, eſpecially, as ſhe never afterwards made her appearance in thoſe parts to take her revenge. 1776. February.

On the 18th, in the morning, the thermometer was at 67 degrees, ſo that probably the temperature of the air near the ſea, was here, as it is in general elſewhere, milder than it was farther up the country.

On the 19th we ſhot a hartbeeſt.

On the 20th we came to a farm newly laid out, and ſituated on an eminence, from which, early the next morning, we ſaw thouſands of buffaloes in a line one after another, croſſing the plains by the ſea ſide, that were incloſed by a thick wood, out of which theſe animals were then marching, probably with a view to ſpread themſelves out in the paſtures, and graze at a diſtance from each other; after having, perhaps, been obliged to herd together in the night, in order to defend themſelves againſt ſome lions. In the afternoon we ſhot an old buffalo, and at the ſame time arrived at a farm newly laid out, near a little lake, fen, or hollow, filled with freſh water to ſome depth, where we ſhot a few ducks, and I made a drawing of the live buffalo-calf I mentioned at page 66 of this volume.

1776. February.

On the 22d we met with ſome farmers of our acquaintance, who, with their wives, children, and cattle, had removed into *Krakekamma*. Theſe honeſt ruſtics gave us much pleaſure, by news of different kinds they brought from the Cape, and from our friends on the road; being on their parts very happy to find us ſafe and in a whole ſkin, as people had been all along apprehenſive that the Caffres would cut us in pieces; and this was ſuppoſed to have been actually the caſe, on account of the long ſtay we had made before we returned. We then took a trip to *Van Staades-rivier*, to ſee the ſame Gonaquas Hottentots, which we had met with before in our journey to *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*. But as the current of this river was dammed up in a conſiderable degree by ſtorms and the ſurge of the ſea, we were obliged next morning to go back by a road two hours round about, before, on account of mountains and other ſuch impediments, we could find a ſhallower place; by which at length, however, we paſſed this river. We there met with ſeveral Hottentot families, who called themſelves *Damaquas*, and ſeemed to have a greater affinity to the Caffres than the Gonaquas had. Then we came to a pretty ſteep hill, which, though only a few hundred yards long, took ſix oxen a good hour's work and hard tugging to go up it with the waggon, which might, had there been occaſion for it, have been drawn by one pair only on level ground.—On the 22d we ſtopped at *Galge-boſch*.—On the 23d at *Lorris-rivier*, and on the 24th we ſtaid at *Camtours-rivier*, with Captain KIES, whom I mentioned at page 1 of this volume; and who, in conſideration of a trifle that I gave

gave him to boot, ſwopped with me for two of my oxen, which were become quite uſeleſs to me. A pair of young lively oxen, full of fire and ſpirit, and as ſwift-footed as deer, which I received inſtead of theſe, were each of them immediately yoked with a ſteady old ox, and in the ſpace of a few hours were pretty well broke in, with the aſſiſtance of the large whip. In fact, the reader muſt not imagine that theſe animals are as ſlow and heavy in Africa as they are in our country, where they are obliged to be kept within doors during our long winters: but ſhould recollect, on the contrary, what I have related at page 238 of this volume, concerning a Hottentot who had trained up his pack-ox to hunting. 1776. February.

On the 26th we arrived at *Cabeljaauw-rivier*; and the ſame day, the bailiff of the farm of this name, Mr. IMMELMAN and I rode towards the lower part of *Camtours-rivier*, in order to look out for the ſea-cows; of the way of life and manners of theſe animals, I have already ſpoken at page 284 of this volume. To what has been there advanced I will add, that we now ſaw theſe animals going out to ſea with the tide, as, indeed, it is ſaid, they are in general uſed to do. At this time they appeared to enjoy themſelves, by blowing, rolling, and toſſing about in the water, which was here already ſalt, but were ſaid to return in greater ſilence with the flood tide. On account of the ruſhes and weeds which grew at the ſide of the river, our ſhot did not take place; by which means likewiſe the ſea-cows were made ſo ſhy, that for a long while after they could not be attacked with any hopes of ſucceſs.

There

1776. February.

There was a ſingle track more beaten than the others by the buffaloes, which led to the lower part of the river through a very cloſe thicket full of thorns and briars, but otherwiſe cut through in every direction with a labyrinth of buffalo-paths. An old buffalo, with hardly any hair upon its hide, which ruſhed out of a buſh cloſe to us, and was very near knocking us down, confounded our guide, ſo that he loſt his uſual marks on the road; in conſequence of which, we were obliged to ride backwards and forwards above two hours, being all the while in no ſmall danger from the buffaloes; and abſolutely uncertain whether we ſhould be able to get out of the labyrinth in the ſpace of as many days, eſpecially if the ſun did not ſhine out, whereby we might diſcover whereabouts we were. After this, we gave chaſe to and wounded a *hartbeeſt* on the open plains.

On the 28th we rode to our old and opulent friend JACOB KOK, near *Sea-cow* river; where, after an abſence of about three months, during which we had been continually ſhifting our lodging, we now, by the care of our kind hoſteſs, had an opportunity of reſting our weary limbs and bodies broke down, as it were, with fatigue, on the ſofteſt beds in the beſt bed-chamber. But ſcarcely two nights had paſſed, after ſo agreeable a change, before we found ourſelves, (while ſinking in the yielding down,) involved in heavy though reſtleſs ſlumbers, attended with the moſt uneaſy dreams; ſlumbers with which we had to ſtruggle at a late hour every morning, almoſt as if we had been in the agonies of death: inſtead of this, before our return

hither, though on the ground, and in the open air, we had ever enjoyed an eaſy, cool, and refreſhing ſleep; out of which we were accuſtomed to awake of our own accord, as early and briſk as the reſt of the animal creation, which awoke with the firſt dawn of day. On the 29th, the day after our arrival, it rained all day long, with the wind at ſouth-eaſt. 1776. March.

March the 1ſt and 2d rainy, with the wind at ſouth-eaſt. The thermometer at 72. We ſtaid with our worthy and agreeable hoſts till the 7th of this month. Now and then, during this period, I rode with my hoſt to the ſea-ſhore, and treated myſelf with oyſters, at the ſame time taking ſome home with me. Some time before this, he had found in the ſtrand there a bottle of red wine, which he had ſet by to regale us with on our return from the deſert. This, though not very nicely corked, proved not only not damaged, but even excellent; and had probably, in conſequence of a ſhipwreck, or of its having been offered up, either in a merry or a ſuperſtitious mood, by ſome brave tar to Neptune, been long toſſed about by the waves, before it came to its original deſtination, to which we applied it by drinking each others healths. In one part of the ſtrand, we perceived a ſtrong ſmell of amber, without being able, however, to find any of this drug thereabouts. Several ſpecimens of the *Gorgonia ceratophyta* (a black horn-like coral with a red bark) which had been thrown up here by the ſea, I have brought home with me; one of theſe, which was three feet and a half long, and is branched out to an almoſt equal breadth, is conſidered by divers connoiſſeurs, who have ſeen the firſt cabinets in Europe,

1776. March. Europe, as being one of the largeſt of this ſpecies that ever was found.

On the 9th we again viſited *Sitſicamma*, where we now found a number of ſnakes, which, on account of the farmers having ſet fire to the dry graſs, for the purpoſe of manuring their lands, fled to the ſands, and there at this time lay dead; partly ſcorched by the fire, partly dried by the ſun, and in part rotted to pieces. There were ſome traces left of their having had four legs, ſo that probably this ſerpent was the *anguis quadrupes* of LINNÆUS. Numbers of the *bulla achatina* of LINNÆUS, though only the *variatas livida* of it, were found alive on the ſandy plains, and up in the trees. When I was here before, I found in the very ſhell of one of theſe ſnails, ſeveral yolks of eggs (as it were) of the ſhape of common eggs, which, however, only contained a thin watery liquid.

On the 11th, having taken up our quarters near *Wagen-booms-rivier*, the moſt eaſterly part of *Lange-kloof*, we diſcovered at night on a ſudden, that a tract, near three miles in length, conſiſting of fields of dry graſs, was in flames. This conflagration, which a neighbouring farmer had cauſed, for the purpoſes of deſtroying the arid plants, graſs, and buſhes that grew on his lands, (but it muſt be owned, had ſet about it very mal-à-propos, both as to time and weather,) ſpread with the wind that blew very hard, with incredible ſpeed, proceeding in a direct line to the farm where we were; ſo that our hoſts were obliged to throw water on the roof of their corn-loft, in order to preſerve it from the flames. We were likewiſe not a little anxious for the ſafety of our waggon, and were obliged to keep ourſelves

ourſelves in readineſs to drive it into the water, as well as to put off our journey till the next day, as the fire burnt rapidly on each ſide of the road. By this way of dreſſing the land, a number of ſerpents, lizards, ſcorpions, and ſeveral other kinds of inſects, together with young birds, are generally deſtroyed in their habitations. When we ſailed along the African coaſt, in the *Reſolution*, on our return from the South Pole, we ſaw of nights ſeveral large fires up the country, which probably were occaſioned by the lands being ſet fire to in this manner. 1776. March.

A piece of *lapis lazuli* in a matrix of *quartz*, which I found in the vicinity of the river above-mentioned, is tolerably rich; but, ſuppoſing it ſhould abound here, even then it would hardly pay for the ſmelting, on account of the length of the way and the badneſs of the roads, by which the coal and fuel muſt be brought hither for this purpoſe from *Sitſikamma*.

On the 13th we left this place, and arrived at *Krakeel-rivier*, which I now found to be a continuation of *Wagen-booms-rivier*, but have forgot to rectify the error in my map *. In the evening, riding alone to *Aapies-rivier* on a mettleſome horſe which I had lately purchaſed, and which was unacquainted with this part of the country, I unavoidably loſt my way when the night was far advanced; eſpecially as the road over certain fields was unbeaten and not to be diſtinguiſhed. In the mean while, there came on the moſt violent ſtorm of thunder that I ever experienced in any climate: the lightning frequently darting and crackling between my horſe's feet, while I was naturally enough puſhing him on as

* This error is rectified in the preſent edition.

1776. March. fast as I could, in order to get out of the rain. Though my steed, notwithstanding this, did not lose any of his mettle, but, on the contrary, made several sudden starts and leaps, yet the poor animal was so much affected at two different times by the violence of the thunder, that he sunk quite down to the ground. As I found that I run risks in divers ways, and met with several obstacles in the course I was steering, I thought it most advisable to endeavour, by the assistance of the frequent flashes of lightning, to regain the beaten road which I had quitted. In this attempt I at last succeeded, and lighted upon a farm that was newly laid out, without any other premises upon it, than a solitary hut thatched with straw; in which, though I found no better company there than a parcel of Hottentots, I was very glad to have at least the comfort of a roof over my head; the fire being already quite burnt out, so that I was obliged to sit there freezing and dripping wet till the next morning. In the mean while, I was extremely anxious concerning Mr. IMMELMAN, who had set out the same evening, though later than I did; while he, having by means of a horse which he led in hand, and which was perfectly acquainted with the road, arrived safe at the place of our destination; and likewise missing me, was not less uneasy on my account than I was on his; and, after having made, to no purpose, several signals by firing a musket, among other surmises which presented itself to his imagination, he could not help being apprehensive that I was struck dead by lightning; especially as he had appeared himself to have been in great danger from it, by a flash having darted into the ground close by the side of his horses, in the same instant throwing them both

both on their knees. It rained likewiſe the following night, but without much thunder; and on the 15th, while we were on the road to *Kukoi-rivier*, it rained all day long. 1776. March.

On the 16th we came again to the farm of *Zand-plaat*, near *Klein-dorn-rivier*, mentioned in Vol. I. page 299. Here they were at this time very buſy in preſerving and drying raiſins; which was done by macerating the grapes a longer or ſhorter time, according to what ſort they were of, in boiling water, and then ſpreading them out on mats to dry. The uncommon drought which, this ſummer in a greater or leſs degree, infeſted the whole country, had, among many other inconveniencies produced here, as well as in many other places, a ſcarcity of meal, ſo that they had no bread at this farm. The cattle in many places died for want of fodder; ſo that at *Falſe*, or more properly *Valſche-rivier*, where, as I mentioned at page 244 of Vol. I. I ſaw, the preceding September, ſeveral buckets of butter-milk thrown away, they complained that they had then hardly enough to wean a child with. In conſequence of this horrid drought, which, according to the account I read in the papers, was probably pretty general in other parts of the world, my draught-oxen fell away in their fleſh, being quite ſpent and worn out with fatigue, ſo that ſeveral of them died one after the other; which obliged me to ſupply their places with freſh ones.

On the 20th we came to *Zaffraan-craal*. On the 21ſt, early in the morning, we entered the tedious and tireſome vale, called *Artaquas-kloof*; and about the duſk of the evening, at a precipice by the ſide of the road, my waggon met with a worſe accident than it had done during the whole journey,

1776. March. as it was turned quite topſy-turvy. Beſides the danger which one of our Hottentots and two of the hind oxen were in of breaking their necks, I had the mortification of ſeeing my collection of natural curioſities trundle down the hill, in conſequence of which they received conſiderable damage. I look upon it, however, as peculiarly fortunate, that I was at this time near at hand, by which means I, in ſome degree, preſerved them.

On the 22d we had, with great care and trouble, got the waggon, together with our wearied oxen, through the remainder of *Artaquas-kloof*, having been obliged to unload it in two difficult places, and carry the contents of it ourſelves. Our hoſt at *Hagel-craal*, who had himſelf travelled a good deal in this country, was peculiarly happy at our having got off ſo well. This night there fell frequent ſhowers; but on the 23d, being arrived at *Honing-klip*, there fell the whole night throughout the moſt dreadful heavy rain known in the memory of man; which continued, though with ſomewhat leſs violence, all the next day, being the 24th, by which means, on the 25th, the road leading from hence was intirely impaſſable.

On the 26th we paſſed *Valſche-rivier*. They began now, in this part of the country, to take advantage of the wet that had fallen, for ſowing; but though every grazier in this country has a greater quantity of land, draught-oxen, and bread than he wants, yet the farmers here had hardly every one a plough-ſhare to themſelves, and this as well for want of ſmiths as of iron; which, even in the town itſelf, are difficult to be procured. It hurt me extremely, that theſe good people ſhould not be more plentifully ſupplied

plied with a metal with which our country abounds almoſt to exceſs, and of the implements made of which probably all South-America is not leſs in want than the ſouthern part of Africa: where I at this time ſaw a wealthy farmer wringing his hands and complaining, that he could not take advantage of the wet weather, on account of his plough being broken, and was obliged to wait till he could borrow one of his neighbours. I muſt juſt mention here, that a plough-ſhare, 19 inches broad and 27 long, ſuch as is commonly uſed in this country, coſts from three to five rix-dollars; and a ſmall round-ſhouldered ſpade, with a peaked point, which might be bought in Sweden for tenpence, is ſold at the Cape for ſix times that price. Copper veſſels alſo bear a high price in this country, but the demand for them is by no means conſiderable; and they muſt be wrought after the peculiar faſhion of the country. 1776. March.

March 27th. Not having had occaſion to remark, during the whole journey, the leaſt diſagreement among the Hottentots, excepting that a young Hottentot girl pretty ſeverely rallied one of the ſame nation, older than herſelf, for wearing too ſmall, and conſequently indecent *a t'neite*, or apron, we were the more ſurprized to ſee this day, at *Zoete-melk's-rivier*, a terrible fierce battle between two Hottentots. I muſt not, however, forget to mention, that the combatants were man and wife, both equally ſmall and ſtunted in their growth, as well as equal in point of ſtrength; both born and bred in the ſervice of the Chriſtians, and both dreſſed in the Hottentot faſhion.

There was at that time nobody at home but a few ſlaves, who every now and then parted them; but on the leaſt

1776. March.

wry face or haſty expreſſion, theſe loving turtles flew like lightning again at each other's throats. On my teſtifying my ſurprize at the peculiar readineſs and expertneſs they ſhewed in boxing each other, one of the ſlaves anſwered me very ſeriouſly, "*Ha, baas!* there is no great wonder in that, for in the two years that I have been here, ſcarcely a day has paſſed without their having practiſed together once, if not oftener, before any body could get to them to part them." The ſingularity of this account was increaſed by the following remark, "that they had never been obſerved to be at variance of nights, nor had they ever had occaſion to upbraid each other with the leaſt infidelity." Matters being thus ſituated, as the beſt way of reconciling them, we deſired the ſlaves to let them alone, and leave them at full liberty, in the phraſe of the Engliſh ſailors, *to fight it out*, and give each other their bellies full. This was accordingly done, and I have reaſon to believe, that they not only had enough of the ſport, but that they were heartily tired into the bargain, and conſequently that the enſuing peace laſted ſo much the longer.—On the 28th, 29th, and 30th, it rained more or leſs, but always with the wind at weſt. At *Krommbeek-rivier* a yeoman, who was a great obſerver of the weather, had remarked, that the moſt violent winds were the north-weſt and ſouth-eaſt; but that the former was generally the moſt violent, and that the weſt wind was the warmeſt; but what was very extraordinary was, that the north wind was the coldeſt. He informed me likewiſe, that the ſouth-eaſt wind was not near ſo cold as it was at the Cape, and that the weſt wind uſed to ſet in every evening. Foul weather moſtly came into this

this country with an eaſterly or weſterly wind. Though violent rains fell at that time at the Cape, or on the other ſide of *Hex-rivier*, it ſeldom extended as far as this place, the wind becoming only colder. Likewiſe when it rains here, the rain ſeldom extends to the other ſide of the laſt-mentioned river. 1776. April.

On the 31ſt I rode alone to a farm on the other ſide of the upper part of *Duyven-hoeks-rivier*, having reaſon to believe, from report, that there was gold ore at this place.

On the 1ſt of April I examined this pretended gold ore, and found it was nothing more than a *pyrites*, which they had given themſelves the trouble of breaking off from the mountains. In certain ſpots here I met with a blue clay, impregnated with iron, which at firſt, in ſome degree, imparted a colour to any thing it was rubbed upon; but in the ſpace of a few days grew hard, and acquired a ſchirrous nature. I likewiſe found there a red ferruginous earth, or bole, but higher up in the mountain there was a great quantity of flint-ſand. Towards the end of the preceding month a noiſe had been heard at a diſtance, and we were afterwards informed, that certain changes had taken place in a mountain, and in a little ſtream ſituated a great many miles on the other ſide of the high chain of mountains upon which I then was.

On the 5th we arrived at *Zwellendam*, from whence, for the ſake of variety, we determined to purſue the remainder of our journey by *Hex-rivier*, *Cockelmans-kloof*, *Roode-zand*, &c. This tract of country was partly of the carrow kind, and was ſo well inhabited, (chiefly by *wine-boors*) that I could not find room for diſtinguiſhing all the farms with the

1776. April.

the uſual circular mark in my map. The rivers, or rathe brooks, that lay between *Zwellendam* and *Hex-rivier*, were *Puſpas-valley*, *Klip-rivier*, *Meulemaars-rivier*, *Leeuwen-rivier*, *Saaras-rivier*, *Fink-rivier*, *Goree-rivier*, *Seuj-rivier*, and *Nana-rivier*.

The *aloe* plant, (vide LINN. *Suppl. Plant.*) commonly called at the Cape *Goré-boſch*, has its name from the river *Goré* juſt mentioned: though beſides that ſpot, this well-known vegetable, of which there are many varieties, being of a ſucculent nature, throve extremely well in all the dry *carrow* and *half carrow* plains; yet it grew in the greateſt abundance in the tract of country lying round about *Muſcle-bay*, *Gaurits* and *Duyvenhoeks-riviers*; ſo that in certain ſpots thereabouts, and that chiefly on the declivity of mountains, theſe plants formed groves, (as it were) of ſmall palm-trees: as the ſtems which aroſe from, and were compoſed of the thick ſucculent leaves, in conſequence of almoſt the whole of each leaf, after being dried up and withered towards the bottom, having fallen off, or at leaſt having been ſtripped off purpoſely, (by which means they had moreover acquired a rough, brown, and parched appearance) were, however, for the moſt part, ſtrait and erect, from eight to thirty feet in height, and about one thick, and were terminated by pale green tufts of freſh and healthy leaves.

Not only the uſe, but even the real name of this plant, (viz. *aloe*) was, as I have been told by many people, long unknown to the coloniſts, and for this reaſon had been neglected and held cheap by them. It is true, there had been always in the ſervice of the government a number of Negro ſlaves, who, at the place of their nativity, (another part of

of the African coaſt) had learned the method of preparing, as well as the value of the gum aloe; but bowing as they did, beneath the yoke of ſlavery, they would rather at any time have ſeen a dart pierce the hearts of their tyrants, than be inſtrumental in procuring them any additional knowledge or wealth of what kind ſoever; by which, on the one ſide, the pride, avarice, and power of their maſters, and on the other ſide, their work, as well as the number of ſlaves employed would be increaſed. For this reaſon, the uſe of the aloe was for a long time kept a ſecret among the ſlaves; who, indeed, made a point of conſcience of not revealing it, till one of them, called GOREE, diſcovered it to a coloniſt of the DE WITT family. Whether this proceeded from gratitude to his maſter for his humane treatment of him, or whether it was done in hopes of being rewarded for it, they could not inform me with any certainty: they only knew, that DE WITT had, through this diſcovery, obtained an excluſive privilege for the delivery of a certain quantity of aloes to the Eaſt-India company, and had given up to GOREE the inſpection of the whole work. It is likewiſe after the name of this ſlave, that the aloe plant is ſtill to this day in Africa moſt commonly, if not ſolely, called the *Goree-boſch*. 1776. April.

The method in which gum aloes is prepared in Africa, has, it is true, been deſcribed before by profeſſor THUNBERG, (vide Tranſactions of the Swediſh Phyſiographical Society, Part I. Art. II. page 112.) But as my readers may, nevertheleſs, probably expect ſome information on this ſubject, I have thought proper to communicate the following particulars concerning this ſubject.

1776. April.

The leaves being cut off at ſome diſtance from the ſtem, as many of them as there is room for are placed in a ſlanting poſition over the concavity of another aloe leaf laid under them for this purpoſe, ſo that the juice, trickling down from the leaves which are cut, may be collected in it. After this, the whole quantity of juice contained in theſe reſervoirs, is boiled down to about a third part, and being poured out into boxes, is left to coagulate and grow hard.

Others again content themſelves with wiping off the juice, which comes out of the freſh cut leaves, ſeveral times againſt the edges of a marble veſſel, wherein it is by this means collected, and is afterwards boiled down.

In the methods deſcribed above, which, however, in all probability, are by no means the beſt that might be imagined, only a few drops, or at moſt a thimbleful or two, are procured from each leaf. By handling it, the hands of the operator are ſubject to be made ſore; and the boiling of it down, an operation which is likewiſe performed in the open air, the operator being at the ſame time frequently expoſed to the ſcorching rays of the ſun, is alſo attended with its inconveniencies. Add to this, that thoſe who at preſent make it their buſineſs to buy up this drug at the Cape, do not give above two or three ſtivers a pound for it; and it will not appear ſtrange, that the Cape farmers do not think it worth their while to prepare this gum, unleſs they have young children or other people, that can do nothing elſe, to employ upon it. "In the winter (*quaade mouſſon*) the aloe leaves are ſuppoſed to contain moſt juice; on which account, this ſeaſon is principally choſen for preparing the gum aloe, and particularly fine and calm days;

as in windy weather the juice coagulates too ſoon, and cannot run out of the leaves." Vide l. c. The gum prepared in this manner is, when powdered, yellow, like any other aloes in powder; but the thin pieces that are broken off from it, and the edges of even larger pieces, are tranſparent, appearing as though they were made of a yellowiſh brown glaſs. Conſequently it has nothing of that dark green cloudy and opaque appearance, like the other aloes which are to be found in the apothecaries ſhops under the denominations of *ſuccotrine* and *hepatic* aloes. This dark colour, which is ſeen in a great quantity of aloes, in all probability proceeds from its having been prepared in a method very different from that uſed at the Cape; perhaps from the leaves being preſſed, by which means a greater quantity indeed of juice is obtained, but then it is full of dregs. 1776. April.

It is true, I have often uſed the gum aloe of the Cape for medical purpoſes, but cannot take upon me as yet to give it the preference to the more opaque ſort; in the mean while, deſirous of exploring this drug in divers ways, I got M. JOHN E. JULIN, apothecary at *New Carleby*, to ſeparate from each other the gummy and reſinous parts of the gum aloe from the Cape, who found it to contain nearly equal quantities of both theſe principles.

Near the above-mentioned river *Goree*, farmer ALOVEN SMIDT, who reſided on the banks of that river, had caught a dreadfully venomous lizard, called *t'geitje*, which he had kept in ſpirits of wine; and on the 19th of this month, on my departure from this place, made me a preſent of it.

1776. April.

I had long before this been told by many people, that the bite of this creature would produce a terrible ſort of leproſy, which terminated in death, but not till the expiration of ſix months or a year, the body in the mean while rotting and falling away piece-meal. This man, however, gave me an inſtance of a Buguneſe ſlave having, a few years before, been fortunate enough to cure a female ſlave in the neighbourhood, who had already experienced, in a pretty high degree, the effects of the *geitje's* bite. The patient, who had afterward removed to about ſixty miles from this place, was ſuppoſed to be ſtill alive and in good health; but the ſlave, they knew, had died with the ſecret, having never diſcovered either this or any other of the remedies of which he was in poſſeſſion of, to any body. It has been obſerved, however, that among other means which he uſed, he had ſometimes dreſſed the wound with oranges and lemons cut into halves. In the mean while, the matter deſerves to be inveſtigated in different ways. Among other things, animals ought to be expoſed to the bite of this ſerpent, and the effects of oranges and other remedies on the ulcers that would in all probability ariſe from it, ſhould be tried. It is a fortunate circumſtance, that the *geitje* is ſlow in its motions, and not of a very irritable diſpoſition; conſequently the diſorder occaſioned by its bite is not common, though the animal itſelf is common enough in ſpring, or at leaſt at certain times in the year. We ſought for it, however, to no purpoſe, under the rocks and ſtones near *Krakeel* river, and in the empty ſhells of the *bulla achatina* in *Sitſicamma*, (where the inhabitants aſſured me it was very common)

1776. April.

mon) when I paſſed through theſe places. As the tail is apt to fall off with a ſlight touch, and is found filled up with a yellow matter, like that which is ſeen in boils and ulcers, and as no nails are diſcoverable in the ſpecimen that I brought home with me, is it not probable that the *geitje* is a larva, which in time is transformed into a lizard of a quite different form and nature? I do not know for certain, whether I have ſeen this lizard alive or not; yet I think I remember, that I caught one of them at the warm bath, and, wrapping it up in paper, kept it in my pocket; but pulled it out again, through haſte and careleſſneſs, along with the wadding of my gun; not being aware at that time, what a venomous prize I had got and parted with. I afterwards heard the company at the bath ſpeak of this lizard, though (if I remember right) by another name, being to be found at *Franſe-hoek*; but I conſidered the account they gave concerning the poiſonous quality of this animal, as one of the tales by which I obſerved they endeavoured to alarm me, and render me cautious in the courſe of my journey. The *geitje* which I brought home with me, is ſcarcely three inches in length, of which length the tail makes the ſmalleſt half, and is very peaked; but in the middle is nearly as thick as the animal's body, which is without any ſcales, and at top ſpeckled with dark ſpots, and white underneath, with from twelve to fourteen papillæ on the edge of the under jaw. There are five toes to each foot. I have given a figure of the geitje, together with a full deſcription of it, in the Tranſactions of the Gottenburgh Society of Sciences and Belles Lettres, Part I. page 75. Tab. V.

1776. April.

I have already, at page 308 of this volume, made mention of a lizard as black as jet, which the Hottentots dread very much, as being highly venomous.

Not having room for them within the limits which I have preſcribed to myſelf in this volume, I am obliged to poſtpone the deſcription of the African lizards, as well as ſeveral other matters, for the preſent, with an intention to give them to the public at ſome future period, in a ſeparate treatiſe, or by ſome other opportunity. The following lizard, however, which is much the largeſt in the whole colony, and to which I ſhall give the name of *lacerta Capenſis*, deſerves to be briefly mentioned, were it only on account of the hardineſs of its nature, and the difficulty with which I found it to be deprived of life. It is true, it bears ſome diſtant reſemblance to that of SEBA, from Ceylon, Tom. I. Tab. 94. Fig. I. in the rings or girdles with which it is encircled; but it has a much greater number of them, not to ſpeak of the remarkable diſſimilarity there is between them in point of colour, which may be collected from the following character of that from the Cape.

" Lacerta Capenſis, cauda compreſſa ſupra carinata, Zonis 16, ſeu 18, albis totidemque nigris alternantibus annulata, apice nigra. Corpore ſubſquamoſo, ſuperne ex nigro viridique fuſco, ſubtus albido, faſciis 16—18, nigris anomalis notato. Harum 8 circiter juguli, 9 autem Pectoris Abdominiſque regiones occupant."

One of this ſpecies, of the middle ſize, which, together with its two young ones, I brought home with me from *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, was about two feet long in the body, and

and three in the tail; having caught her by the neck, ſo that ſhe could not bite me, and finding that it required ſome ſtrength to hold her faſt, I got a large worſted needle, and gave her ſeveral punctures with it, not only in the heart, but in every part of the cranium which was in contact with the brain. This, however, was ſo far from anſwering my purpoſe, which was to kill her in the moſt ſpeedy and leaſt painful manner, without mangling or mutilating her, that ſhe ſeemed ſtill to have life enough left to be able to run away. After this my hoſt undertook to put an end to her, and after having given her ſeveral hard ſqueezes about the cheſt, and tied her feet together, hung her up by the neck in a nooſe, which he drew as cloſe as he poſſibly could. From this ſituation ſhe was found in the ſpace of 48 hours to have extricated herſelf, though ſhe ſtill remained near the farm, appearing at the ſame time to be almoſt entirely exhauſted. Upon this, we tied her feet cloſe behind her, ſo that with her long and ſharp claws, of which ſhe had five upon each foot, ſhe could not damage the ſerpents and other animals which I kept in a caſk of brandy, and among which I put her with my own hands, holding her a long time under the ſurface of the liquor; yet ſhe was ſo far from being ſuffocated immediately by the ſtrength of the liquor, that ſhe flounced about a good deal in it; and even a quarter of an hour afterwards, convinced us by her motions that ſhe had ſtill ſome life remaining in her. This ſpecies of lizard I found to be amphibious, living in water as well as on land, and likewiſe that it grew to a ſtill greater ſize; conſequently it appears to be an extremely long-lived animal, and, as well

1776. April.

on

1776. April.

on account of this property, as of that of not being killed without great difficulty, to have an important office aſſigned it in the general ſyſtem of the œconomy of nature. It was ſuppoſed, (and not without foundation) by the people with whom I reſided, that this creature might eaſily be made tame, and that it was not in the leaſt of a malignant or venomous nature.

I have this moment received the fœtus of a very ſingular quadruped from the Cape, which has been kept in ſpirits, I can therefore do no more than give a ſhort deſcription of it in this place, which may ſerve as a foundation for farther reſearches in future.

It ſeems to be of a dark grey colour, and ſeven inches and a half long, meaſuring from the noſe to the anus; in its body, tail, and feet, ſomewhat reſembling a young whelp, but with a quite different head.

The noſe is round and ſmall, two-thirds of an inch in length, and projecting ſtrait forwards, ſo as to form a right angle with the forehead, which is upright, and rounded almoſt like that of a man; and thus in theſe particulars, likewiſe very different from the long-ſnouted genus of *viverra*, or *weaſel*. The mouth, moreover, projects in ſuch a manner, that the upper lip forms an acute angle with the noſe. Notwithſtanding this, the under-lip and jaw project beyond the upper. The tongue is broad, and is round at the tip.

Captain ADOLPHUS BURTZ, who has enriched the cabinet of Natural Hiſtory belonging to the Royal Academy of Sciences with divers rarities from the Eaſt-Indies, has made me a preſent likewiſe of this animal, which he had bought of

of a countryman at the Cape. This man told him, that it was to be found in the country round about *Saldanha-bay*, and gave him the name of it, which Captain BURTZ took down in writing, but loſt the paper; ſo that this animal ſeems to be one of the regular and ordinary productions of nature, and no monſter. 1776. April.

In the evening we came to *Nana-rivier*. At this time there lived here a widow, whoſe huſband had ſeveral years before met with the dreadful cataſtrophe of being beheaded by his own ſlaves. His ſon, then about 13 or 14 years of age, was obliged to be eye-witneſs to his father's fate, and was even threatened with being made to partake of it, but luckily found an opportunity of giving them the ſlip; and after eluding their moſt vigilant ſearch, hid himſelf up cloſe from the forenoon till it was dark at night; when at laſt he ventured forth, with a view to ſeek a ſafer aſylum at a neighbouring farm, and to accuſe his father's murderers. Theſe villains had reſolved likewiſe to murder the mother, who was expected that day home from the Cape; but fortunately for her, though very much to her diſſatisfaction, ſhe was delayed by ſome accident on the road till the next day. By means of her ſon, who had made his eſcape, ſhe received advice of what had happened. As the whole premiſes on the farm conſiſted merely of two houſes, ſituated on a plain quite open on all ſides, excepting that it was covered with a few ſtraggling buſhes, which grew along the little river or brook that ran cloſe by the ſpot, the lad's contrivance to hide himſelf, though in fact extremely painful as well as ſingular, was the only one that could at this time poſſibly ſave him. It conſiſted in this,

1776. April.

viz. that he ſat, or rather ſank himſelf up to his noſe in the river; taking care at the ſame time to hide his face behind the boughs that hung over the water. The murderers not being able to find him any where, he having as it were entirely vaniſhed out of their ſight, immediately began to conclude, that, in order to avoid the ſtroke of the bloody axe, he had rather choſe to put an end to his life himſelf, by jumping into the river: notwithſtanding this, however, they attempted to make themſelves certain whether he was drowned or not. The means they took in order to effect this, was to ſound the brook all over with the branches of a tree; but they luckily forgot juſt the particular place where the boy was ſitting, probably as the river was in that part ſhallower, and had a briſker current.

I ſhould doubtleſs have brought the tears into the eyes of our hoſts, and at the ſame time made them a bad return for their civilities, had I, by queſtioning them cloſely concerning the particulars of this ſtory, endeavoured ſo unſeaſonably to ſatisfy my curioſity. For this reaſon, I have contented myſelf with taking it down, juſt as I have related it above, from the accounts given me by Mr. IMMELMAN and others; and conſequently was not able to learn with any certainty, whether the deceaſed had by any unuſual act of ſeverity provoked his ſlaves to commit this crime, by way of revenging themſelves; or elſe whether theſe latter had acted thus, from a perſuaſion that the ſame crimes and predatory practices by which violence had been offered to their perſons, and they had been deprived of their liberties, might likewiſe lawfully be had recourſe to, for the recovery of this precious

right

right beſtowed on them by nature, and might conſequently be very pardonable when exerciſed on their tyrants. 1776. April.

Yet, whatever might be the real reaſon of the committing this dreadful crime, I am convinced, that it has its origin in the very eſſence and nature of the commerce in ſlaves, in whatever manner and in whatever country it may be practiſed; a motive which I found had as much influence among the Chriſtians in many places, as among the Turks on the coaſt of Barbary, to induce the unhappy ſlaves, and ſtill more their tyrannical maſters, to behave very ſtrangely; nay, ſometimes to be guilty of the moſt horrid cruelties. I have known ſome coloniſts, not only in the heat of their paſſion, but even deliberately and in cool blood, undertake themſelves the low office (fit only for the executioner) of not only flaying, for a trifling neglect, both the backs and limbs of their ſlaves by a peculiar ſlow lingering method, but likewiſe, exceeding the very tigers in point of cruelty, throw pepper and ſalt over the wounds. But what appeared to me more ſtrange and horrible, was to hear a coloniſt, not only deſcribe with great ſeeming ſatisfaction the whole proceſs of this diabolical invention, but even pride himſelf on the practice of it; and rack his brains, in order to find ſophiſms in defence of it, as well as of the ſlave trade; in which occupation the important poſt he enjoyed in the colony, and his own intereſt, had engaged him. He was, however, an European by birth; of a free and civilized nation; and, indeed, gave evident proofs of poſſeſſing a kind and tender heart; ſo that, perhaps, it would be difficult to ſhew any where a

1776. April.

greater contradiction in the diſpoſition of man, though in a world compoſed almoſt entirely of contradictions.

Many a time, eſpecially in the mornings and evenings, have I ſeen in various places unhappy ſlaves, who with the moſt diſmal cries and lamentations, were ſuffering the immoderately ſevere puniſhments inflicted on them by their maſters; during which, they are uſed, as I was informed, to beg not ſo much for mercy, as for a draught of water; but as long as their blood was ſtill inflamed with the pain and torture, it was ſaid that great care muſt be taken to avoid allowing them the refreſhment of any kind of drink; as experience had ſhewn, that in that caſe, they would die in the ſpace of a few hours, and ſometimes the very inſtant after they had drank it. The ſame thing is ſaid to happen to thoſe who are impaled alive, after having been broken upon the wheel, or even without having previouſly ſuffered this puniſhment. The ſpike in this caſe is thruſt up along the back-bone and the vertebræ of the neck, between the ſkin and the cuticle, in ſuch a manner, that the delinquent is brought into a ſitting poſture. In this horrid ſituation, however, they are ſaid to be capable of ſupporting life for ſeveral days, as long as there comes no rain; as in that caſe, the humidity will occaſion their ſores to mortify, and conſequently put an end to their ſufferings in a few hours.

I am glad that, during my reſidence in the town, no opportunity preſented itſelf to me of ſeeing any one undergo this puniſhment; which, though it is only deſtined for incendiaries, or for ſuch as are guilty of ſedition or murder, aggravated with peculiar circumſtances of cruelty and barbarity, yet it appears not leſs ſhocking and revolting to human

human nature, than the very crimes themſelves, and actually irritates more than it is generally thought to do, the other ſlaves in the town; whom I have ſeen compelled to be preſent even at ſuch public puniſhments as do not affect the life of the culprit, in order that they might take warning from it. But the ſlave who is puniſhed for ſedition, is always, in the eyes of his fellow-ſlaves a martyr, that ſuffers for the common cauſe, and for having maintained the deareſt rights beſtowed upon them by nature, which is their liberty. Spikes, wheels, red-hot pincers, and all the reſt of the horrid apparatus employed by their executioners, will never have with the ſufferers the effect of convincing them of the contrary doctrine; on the contrary, they become ſtill more obſtinate in ſuppoſing themſelves tyrannized over, and in thinking that ſuch of their fellow-ſlaves as have had the courage to take away the lives of their own tyrants, and prefer death and tortures to the baſely groveling and crawling any longer upon the earth in an opprobrious ſtate of bondage, are examples worthy of imitation, and that at leaſt they deſerve to be venerated, pitied, and even revenged. The Chineſe maſſacre at *Batavia* in 1748, affords a ſtill more dreadful inſtance of the rage and cruelties into which men in general may be precipitated by the tyranny of their rulers. Had the Chineſe ſucceeded in this inſurrection, the governor-general IMHOFF, and M. THEDENS, would have been cut to pieces and devoured. (Vide ADR. VALKENIER, T. XVII.) May not we conclude from hence, that oppreſſion and injuſtice, rather than hunger, have given riſe to the practice of eating human fleſh, which prevails in many parts of the world?—I have before obſerved,

1776. April.

6 that

1776. April.

that the *Buguneſe* ſlaves are particularly ſtrict and ſcrupulous with reſpect to the adminiſtration of juſtice. Thoſe ſlaves are a ſort of Mahomedans, and nearly of the ſame complexion as the people of Java, though they are taken upon other iſlands in the Eaſt-Indies. They are not moreover of a humour to put up with harſh expreſſions or abuſive language, ſtill leſs when they are not deſerving of it, and not at all from a woman; looking upon it as the greateſt ſhame, to ſuffer themſelves to be diſciplined by the weaker ſex. Many a maſter and miſtreſs of a family, who have happened to forget themſelves with reſpect to this point, have, when a proper opportunity has offered, been made to pay for this miſtake of theirs with their lives. Theſe ſame ſlaves, on the other hand, when they know that they are in the wrong, are ſaid to thank their maſter for each ſtroke he beſtows upon them; at the ſame time commending his rigour and juſtice, nay even kiſſing his feet; a circumſtance of which I myſelf have been an eye-witneſs. In fine, they are reported to be capable of bearing the moſt cruel torments with wonderful fortitude, as though they were entirely devoid of feeling. There have been inſtances of their not having uttered the leaſt cry or complaint when impaled alive, or broken upon the wheel. But ſhould a Buguneſe ſlave at any time happen to betray the leaſt want of reſolution in this point, his countrymen are ſaid to feel themſelves hurt by it, conſidering it as a reproach to the whole nation. The female ſlaves belonging to theſe people, are reported to be extremely conſtant in love, as likewiſe to exact the ſtricteſt fidelity from their lovers. In ſhort, the bold and intrepid character of this nation, is the cauſe

1776. April.

cauſe that people at the Cape are not fond of buying them; and that the importation of them is prohibited, though in fact it is ſometimes practiſed. The ſlaves from other parts, ſuch as from *Moſambique*, *Madagaſcar*, *Malabar*, &c. are in general not ſo dangerous to their unreaſonable and tyrannical maſters. On account of this great tameneſs ſhewn by them, they are more generally made to bow beneath the yoke; and the miſtreſs of a family may venture to give as free a ſcope to all her whims and fancies as her huſband himſelf, with reſpect to theſe ſlaves. There is a law, indeed, exiſting in the colonies, which prohibits maſters from killing their ſlaves, or from flogging or otherwiſe chaſtizing them with too great ſeverity; but how is a ſlave to go to law with his maſter, who is, as it were, his ſovereign, and who, by the ſame laws, has a right (or at leaſt may by dint of bribes purchaſe that right) to have him flogged at the public whipping-poſt, not abſolutely to death, indeed, yet not far from it; and this merely on the ſtrength of the maſter's own teſtimony, and without any farther inquiſition into the merits of the caſe? The maſter has, beſides, ſo far his ſlave's life in his hands, that by rating and abuſing him day after day, as likewiſe by proper family diſcipline, as it is called, ſuch as heavy iron chains, hard work, and little meat, he may, without controul, by little and little, though ſoon enough for his purpoſe, worry the poor fellow out of his life. In conſequence of this, the unhappy ſlaves, who are frequently endued with finer feelings and nobler ſentiments of humanity, though for the moſt part actuated by ſtronger paſſions than their maſters, often give themſelves up totally

to

1776. April. to deſpondency, and commit various acts of deſperation and violence. Divers circumſtances and conſiderations may, perhaps, concur to induce a wretch in this ſituation to exempt his tyrant from the dagger, which he plunges in his own boſom; content with being thus able to put an end to his miſery, and at the ſame time to diſappoint his greedy maſter of the profits ariſing from the ſweat of his brow. A female ſlave, who had been juſt bought at a high price, and rather prematurely treated with ſeverity by her miſtreſs, who lived in the *Roode-zand* diſtrict, hanged herſelf the ſame night out of revenge and deſpair, juſt at the entrance of her new miſtreſs's bed-chamber. A young man and woman, who were ſlaves at the Cape, and were paſſionately fond of each other, ſolicited their maſter, in conformity to the eſtabliſhed cuſtom, for his conſent to their being united in wedlock, though all in vain, as from ſome whim or caprice he was induced abſolutely to forbid it. The conſequence was, that the lover was ſeized with a ſingular fit of deſpair; and having firſt plunged a dagger into the heart of the object of his deareſt wiſhes, immediately afterwards put an end to his own life. But how many hundred inſtances, not leſs dreadful than theſe, might be produced to this purpoſe! Theſe, however, may ſuffice to create all that abhorrence for the ſlave trade, which ſo unnatural a ſpecies of commerce deſerves; we will, therefore, at preſent diſmiſs this diſagreeable ſubject.

On the 10th we ſet off from *Hex-rivier*, and went by the way of *Roode-zand*, a tract of land of the carrow kind, laid out in vineyards, and almoſt encircled with very high mountains.

mountains. The only road by which it was poſſible to go from hence to the Cape, went through a narrow, long, and tedious vale, along which runs part of *Klein-berg* river. 1776. April.

On the 12th, having got out of the diſtrict of *Roode-zand*, we met with ſome farmers from *Sneeuw-berg*, who had juſt been at the Cape. Theſe good people informed us, that a large lake had lately been diſcovered a little to the north of the latter diſtrict. Otherwiſe, there is not another lake to be found in the whole colony.—As far as I could underſtand them, it was of a ſpecies of *cactus* of a conſiderable ſize, that they made at Camdebo and other places in the colony, a kind of brandy, equally good with that which is prepared from grapes or malt. They likewiſe informed us, that there was a Swediſh ſhip in each of the harbours, *Table-bay* and *Falſe-bay*, both which were ſuppoſed to be ready to ſail. This piece of intelligence, neceſſarily cauſed me to make all the haſte I could to get to the end of my journey.

On the 15th we got back again to the Cape.

APPENDIX.

Some Account of the MUS PUMILIO, *a new Species of* RAT, *from the Southern Part of* AFRICA, *lately diſcovered and deſcribed by the Author.*

THIS animal, which has been hitherto totally unknown to naturaliſts, I found in the foreſt of Sitſicamma, hard by *Slangen*-rivier, two hundred uurs to the eaſt of the Cape. It is eaſily diſtinguiſhed from all the other numerous ſpecies of the genus to which it belongs, by means of the four black lines which run along its back. The figure annexed in Plate VII. of this volume, repreſents this rat of its natural ſize, being drawn from a ſpecimen which I have preſented to the Muſeum of the Swediſh Academy: and, as it ſeems to have attained to its full ſize, the *mus pumilio*, or *dwarf mouſe*, may certainly contend for the palm with the *mus minutus* and *mus betulinus* of M. PALLAS, as being the moſt diminutive quadruped in the whole world. The ſpecimen I have in my poſſeſſion at this time, though impregnated with the ſpirits in which it is preſerved, weighs no more than four ſcruples: conſequently, when compared with the gigantic quadrupeds exiſting in the ſame quarter of the globe, and of which I have given deſcriptions as well in the Swediſh Tranſactions

as in the preceding journal, it forms with them a ſtriking contraſt. Compared with the hippopotamus, for inſtance, an animal, which is ſeventeen or eighteen French feet long, and at leaſt ſix in diameter, the mus pumilio is but $\frac{1}{25052}$th of the ſize of the former, conſidering the bulk of this latter as being equal to a cubical maſs an inch and a quarter in length, and half an inch in diameter.

DESCRIPTIO.

Corpus tenue, compreſſiuſculum. *Color Velleris* in genere fuſco-cinereus; *Frontis* & *nuchæ* niger. Lineæ quatuor dorſales, longitudinales nigræ: Harum duo *intermediæ*, & in nucha & ad baſin caudæ in unum coaleſcunt; duo *exteriores* à nucha, paulloque pone aures ortæ, ſibi invicem parallellæ, ad baſin uſque caudæ ferè extenduntur. *Regiones utriuſque oculi* & *narium* pallidæ. *Pedes antici* & *poſtici* quinque-dactyli, anticorum *pollicibus* minutis, conſpicue tamen unguiculatis. *Cauda* longitudine $\frac{2}{3}$ corporis, nudiuſcula, pallida.

SPE-

SPECIMEN OF THE LANGUAGE OF THE HOTTENTOTS.

Numerals.

One, *Ui.*
Two, *t'Kammi.*
Three, *t'Knona.*
Four, *t'Hacka.*
Five, *t'Gisi.*
Six, *t'Golo.*

Parts of the Body and Clothing.

Hair, *t'Kum.*
Noſe, *t'Koi.*
Eye, *Mo.*
Ear, *t'Nunqua.*
Tooth, *t'O.*
Teeth, *t'Kong.*
Lip, *t'Gamma.*
Hand, *t'Unka.*
Leg, *t'Nu.*
Stocking, *t'Nus Tanka.*
Nails, *t'Koloqua.*
Finger, *t'Naniqua.*
Stomach, *t'Amsa.*
Tail, *Softe.*
Penis, *t'Ka.*
Caput penis, *t'Ora.*
Vulva, *t'Gau.*
Apron, *t'Netie.*
Hat, *t'Aba.*
Shoes, *t'Noaka.*

Men's Ages and Conditions in Life.

Father, *Bo.*
———, *t'O.*
Elder brother, *t'Ai.*
Younger brother, *t'Kana.*
Mother, *Mamâ.*
———, *Sausi.*
Parents, *Sanna.*
Elder ſiſter, *t'Kaes.*
Younger ſiſter, *t'Kangs.*
Young girl, *Traköſi.*
Girl, *t'Gos.*
Lad, *t'Go.*
Slave, *Kobbo.*
Maſter, Maſter of the houſe, *t'Kukoi.*

The

The Names of Animals and their Properties.

Tiger, *Kæſſau.*
Wolf, *Guka.*
——, *Nuka.*
Elephant, *Coa.*
Dog, *Tu.*
Dogs, *Tuna.*
Penis of a dog, *Tuna-ka.*
Bitch, *Tus.*
Lion, *t'Gamma.*
Tortoiſe, *t'Gammi.*
Elk, *t'Kan.*
Roebuck, *Za.*
Steenbock, *Gunima.*
Jackal, *d'Intai.*
Zebra, *d'Au.*
Horſe, *Hanqua.*
Stallion, *Karangaha.*
Mare, *Ahas.*
Fiſh, *t'Gau.*
Buffalo, *t'Kau.*
Sea-Cow, *t'Gao.*
Hog, *Hango.*
Horned Cattle, *t'Guku.*
Sheep, *t'Gus.*
Cow, *t'Goös.*
Bull, *Hara.*
——, *Ho.*
Baboon, *t'Gorloka.*
Bee, *Oi.*
Honey, *Denni.*
Milk, *Bi.*
Fat, *t'Nui.*
Fleſh, *t'Go.*

Subſtantives not reducible to the former heads, Adjectives, Adverbs, Pronouns and Phraſes.

Thunder, *t'Gulu.*
Fire, *t'Ei.*
Wood, *'é.*
Bread, *Bræ.*
Pipe, *t'Nov.*
Terra firma, *Houtniqua.*
Waſhing-river, *t'Kam t'naſi.*
Water, *t'Kamma.*
Houſe, *t'Kooqua.*
Road, *Dau.*
Bad road, *Tradau.*
——, *Tudau.*
Good road, *Skundaha.*
Callibaſh, *Karabu.*
Waggon, *Krohe.*
Good, *Huka.*

Better,

Better, *Oin.*
Bad, ugly, *Kaiſi.*
Sick, *Kaiſin.*
What belongs to you is good for nothing, *Zgu kaiſi.*
Angry, *Solo.*
Why, or with whom are you angry? *Solo naha.*
Cold, *Oro.*
Yes, *Io.*
No, *Aa.*
Thine, *Ta.*
Thy Horſe, *Ta Hanqua.*
Whoſe, which, *Danne.*
Who is come? *t'Danne koha.*
Who lives here? *t'Danne koha he.*
Our father, *Zika Bo.*
————, *Ty t'ka.*
I, *Tiri.*
— *Tili.*
— Fæmininum, *Titti.*
Thou, *Tats.*
She, *Tatiſi?*
He, *Hekoe.*
Ye, *Zita.*
They, *Hekoina.*
Will you have any bread? *Tats Bræ.*
———————— *Sas Bræ.*

Verbs Active and Neuter, with ſome Examples of them in Phraſes.

I am, *Titte.*
Thou art, *Kia.*
He is, *Oi.*
We are, *Zikatiſi.*
We are there, *Zikatiſi inaha.*
He is there, *Dan inaha.*
To come, *Ha.*
Come hither, *Heva ha.*
————, *Jata ha.*
Come quickly, *Suſa ha.*
Do not come, *Ha gutti.*
To do, *Hi.*
To give, *Male.*
———, *Mare.*
Give me, *Male gu.*
Give fire, *t'Ei mare.*
Give milk, *Bi mare.*
Order me ſome drink, *Ereka.*
Give victuals, *t'Koko mare.*
To eat, *t'Knu.*
I wiſh to eat, *t'Knu kau tiri.*
I am hungry, *Tiri kalu naha.*
Having one's fill, or one's belly full, *Ele tekaë.*
To lie down, or lie along, *t'Koe.*
————, *t'Kuwe.*
To ſleep, *t'Kom.*
I am ſleepy, *Tilika-kule.*
To boil, *Zain.*
The water boils, *Daukai t'kamma*

Truth, it is true, *Kammaſa.*
To lie, it is falſe, *Eige.*
It is fine weather, *t'Oroo.*
It rains, *t'Ukai.*
Remember me to your family! *t'Kabebare.*
Good day! Farewel! } *t'Abé.*
Good day, Maſter! *t'Abé t'kukoi.*
To ſteal, *t Sa.*
To kill, *t'Nautkam.*
A draught, To drink, } *t'Ka.*
Here, take it! See there! hold faſt! } *t'Katſi.*

N. B. t' Prefixed to a word, indicates that the ſyllable immediately following is to be pronounced with a *clack*, or application of the tongue to the roof of the mouth: this appears to me to be effected, according to the different dialects uſed, the different emotions of the ſpeaker, or the different ſubjects ſpoken of, with various degrees of force in one and the ſame word; and, indeed, ſometimes to be altogether omitted.

Specimen of the Language of the Sneſe, or Chineſe-Hottentots.

One, *t'Koa.*
Two, *Tinnano.*
Three, *Tinnankaita.*
Four, *Tinnanonaka.*
He, *t'Natko.*
Fire, *t'Ei.*
Water, *t'Kaē.*
Fleſh, *t'Goâ.*
Abuſive language, *t'Koägo.*
Lion, *t'Kalo.*
Tiger, *t'Abé.*
Good day! *t'Ave.*

N. B. I did not meet with any of this nation that could reckon farther than four. Notwithſtanding which, ſuch of them as are ſhepherds in the ſervice of the Chriſtians, are ſaid to diſcover much ſooner than their maſters, when any one of the ſheep in the numerous flocks committed to their care, is loſt or miſſing.

It

It ſhould farther be obſerved, that it is only the words denoting *fire* and *fleſh*, and the term uſed in mutual ſalutations, that bear any reſemblance to each other in the two preceding languages.

Specimen of the Language of the Caffres.

To reckon, *Sium.*
One, *Enje.*
Two, *Babini.*
Three, *A-tatu.*
Four, *Sanu.*
Five, *Sumenini.*
Six, *Sinje.*
Ten, *Sumi.*
A Hundred, *Enkuku.*
Father, *Bao.*
Mother, *Mau.*
A Man, *Doda.*
A Woman, *Ufaſi.*
Two Brothers, *Emkulo.*
Couſins, *Umsàla.*
Kindred, *Sinlobo Tetu.*
Friend, *Eklobo.*
Hand, *Fanſa.*
Finger, *Aëne.*
Thumb, *Umino.*
Arm, *Enkomo.*
Thigh, *Mulemſe.*
Foot, *Enjau.*
Toes, *Emauſſani.*
Head, *Loko.*

Water, *Maaſi.*
Milk, *Ammaſi.*
Fire, *Lilo.*
The Sun, *Lelanga.*
The Moon, *Janga.*
Rain, *Evula.*
Ox, *Gomo.*
Horſe, *Hanſhi.*
Lion, *Elepho.*
Buffalo, *Eujata.*
Jackal, *Pangalio.*
Elk, *Poſſo.*
Dog, *Seſiuja.*
To give, ——
A Road, *Uſala.*
——, *Eenzela.*
A ſick Perſon, *Jaſſa.*
One that is dead, *Ufile.*
The Ear, *Sila.*
Handſome, *Opepile.*
Angry, *Siala.*
Great, *Entue nune.*
Little, *Nonane.*
Javelin, Haſſagai, *Emkangota.*
Knife, *Siſhatſe.*

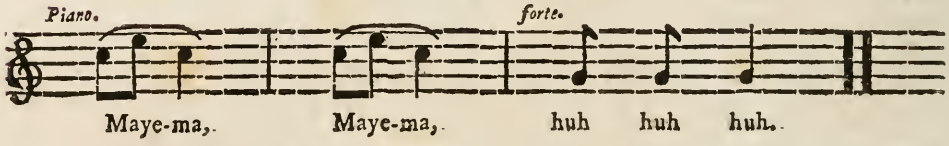
Waggon, *Noto.*
Copper, Braſs, *Emſibemſopi.*
Glaſs Beads, *Sintela.*
Small red Glaſs Beads, *Lenkitenka.*
More! Give more! *Ungeeſa.*
It is too little, *Ninneni.*
Good Day, *Echiöte.*
To dance, *Uſino.*
Come hither, *Iſat.*
Run! Haſte! *Hàrden.*
To ſleep, *Gualala.*
To awaken, *Vùka.*
To wake, ——
No! *Haij.*
Yes! *Aoë.*
Far away, *Kude.*

N. B. The Caffres do not make a noiſe with their tongue againſt the roof of their mouths in ſpeaking, as the Hottentots do, but pronounce their words in a manly and diſtinct manner, moſtly with a ſtrong accent on the penultimate.

A I R,

Sung by the *Hottentot-Caffres*, near Little *Sunday-river.*

(Vide page 28 of this volume.)



FINIS.

ERRATA.

Page 11, *l.* 2, from the bottom, before 66 *read* at.
—— 37, *l.* 3, *for* Kuranoi, *read* Kurenoi.
—— 43, *l.* 20, *for* orignate, *read* originate.
—— 16, *l.* 7, *for* peculiar, *read* ſingular.
—— 60, *l.* 4, from the bottom, after kill, *read* with guns.
—— 65, *l.* 8, from bottom, *for* is, *read* proves.
—— — — 7, ————, after as, *read* in that caſe.
—— 248, *l.* 7, from bottom, *read* CHAP. XV. JOURNEY FROM AGTER BRUNTJES-HOOGTE TO THE TWO VISCH-RIVIERS, AND RESIDENCE AT THOSE PLACES.
—— 289, *l.* 18, *for* globules, *read* ſmall lobes.
—— —, *l.* 26, *for* baſes, *read* baſe.
—— 300, *l.* 9, from bottom, *read* CHAP. XVI. JOURNEY BACK TO THE CAPE.
—— 303, bottom, *for* only, *read* but.
—— 304, *l.* 1, *for* and at the ſame time blowing, *read* blew at the ſame time.
—— 313, *l.* 7, from bottom, *for* of, *read* or.
—— 320, *l.* 12, *for* variatas, *read* varietas.
—— 313, bottom, *for* relation, *read* relations.

In the original of this Journal, as well as in the map, the author has written *Drooge* and *Vet*-rivier. But *Vet* is a Swediſh word, ſignifying wet in Engliſh; and as the river ſpoken of is in a Dutch colony, it ſhould doubtleſs have ſtood Drooge and *Natte*-rivier. We have accordingly printed it thus at page 244, Vol. I. though we have not taken the liberty of making any alteration with reſpect to this word in the map.

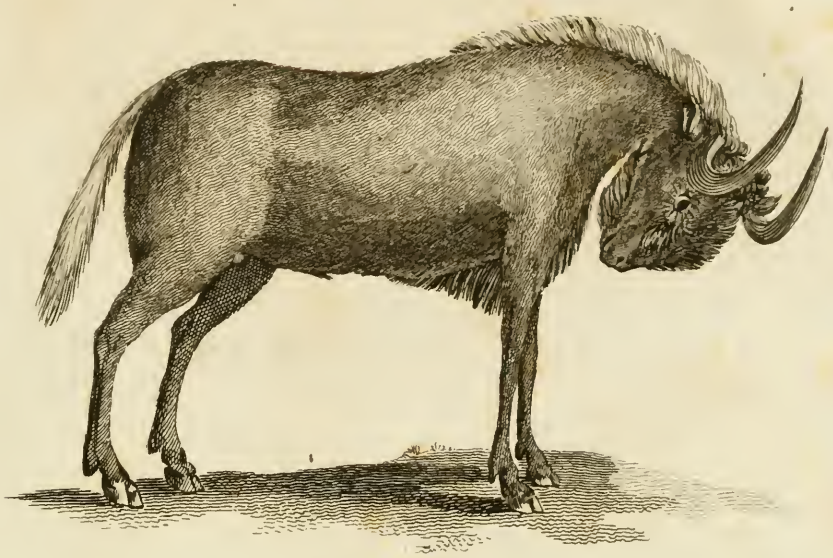
DIRECTIONS TO THE BOOK-BINDER.

The Landſcape is to make the Frontiſpiece to the firſt Volume. The other Plates belonging to this Volume are to be placed at the End: the Map laſt of all.

The Plates belonging to the ſecond Volume are to be placed at the End of it.

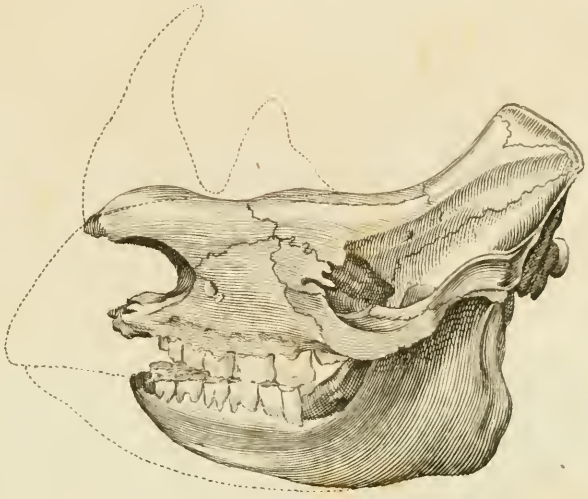
Hart-beast

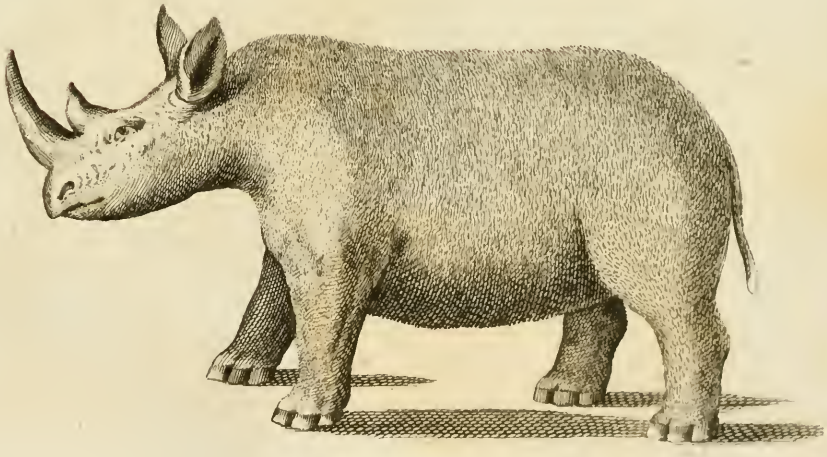
Elk-Antilope.



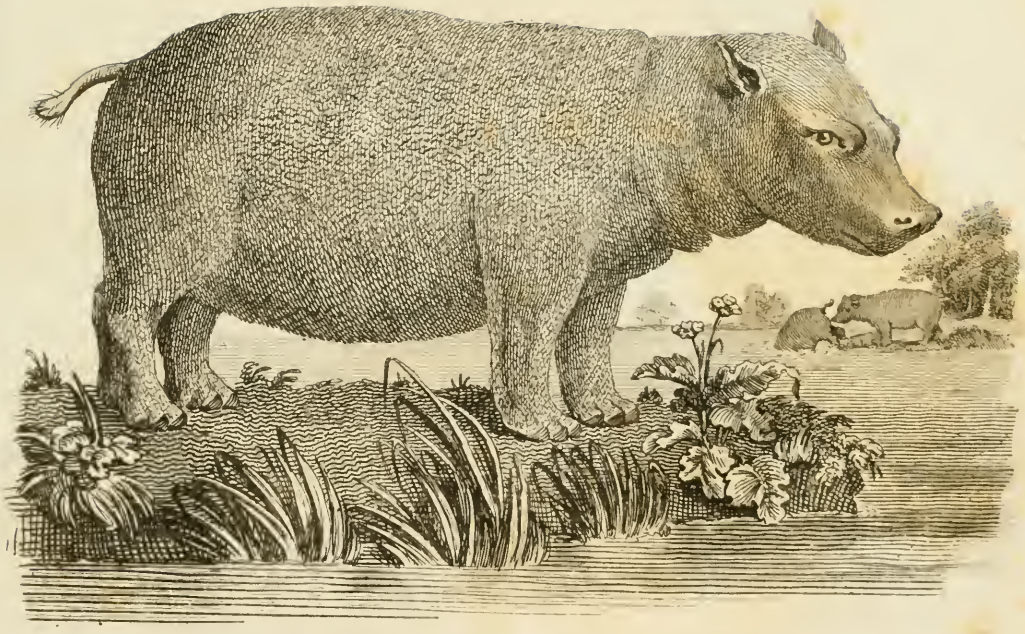
Gnu.

Buffalo.





Rhinoceros bicornis.



Hippopotamus.

Springaer, or Spring-bok.

Viverra Ratel

Wood-goat.

Dwarf-Mice, the natural size.

University of California
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
405 Hilgard Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90024-1388
Return this material to the library
from which it was borrowed.

MAY 01 2000

QL

Form I

3 1158 00310 1671

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY

D 000 001 505 7

Univers
South
Libr